

Museum Victoria



71378

PAPERS AND PROCEEDINGS
OF
THE ROYAL SOCIETY
OF TASMANIA

FOR THE YEAR

1947

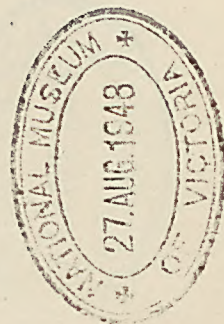


Edited by
JOSEPH PEARSON
and
D. COLBRON PEARSE

PUBLISHED BY THE SOCIETY
The Tasmanian Museum and Art Gallery, Hobart

1.8.48

Price: Ten Shillings



The Royal Society of Tasmania

Papers and Proceedings, 1947

CONTENTS

	Page
Fish Welfare. By Harold Thompson	1
Tasmania Araneae of the Family Hahniidae with Notes on their Respiratory Systems. By V. V. Hickman	21
The Taxonomic Position of <i>Idiogarypus Hansenii</i> (With). By J. C. H. Morris	37
A New Genus of Pseudogarypin Pseudoscorpions Possessing Pleural Plates. By J. C. H. Morris	43
A New Digenetic Trematode from the Barracouta (<i>Syncoeliidae-Digenea</i>). By Peter W. Crowcroft	49
Notes on the Occurrence of the Nematode <i>Mermis nigrescens</i> Dujardin and its Effect on the Common Earwig in Tasmania. By Peter W. Crow- croft	59
Péron in Tasmania. By L. A. Triebel	63
The Diary of the Rev. Robert Knopwood, 1805-1808	69
Geology of Country Around Tarraleah, Tasmania. By R. T. Prider	127
Boomer Marsh. By W. M. Curtis and J. Somerville	151
Abstract of Proceedings	166

Fish Welfare

By

HAROLD THOMPSON

Chief of the Division of Fisheries, C.S.I.R.

(Read 11th November, 1947)

PLATES I-III

SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

It is proposed in this lecture to make some examination of the responses of fish populations to influences brought to bear upon them in their physical and animate environments. I hope to focus particular attention on the relationship between research findings and fisheries' management and exploitation. Although I shall draw on almost world-wide sources for my examples, most of what is said will, I think, bear application to Tasmanian fisheries. The latter are an important factor in the economy of this sea-girt State and are, it is pleasing to note, at present in a phase of expansion. My remarks will, I trust, show that it is essential to ensure that such expansion must proceed rationally, guided by basic principles now well-established—principles which are in harmony with such as were espoused by the late Mr. Clive Lord, in whose memory this lecture is given, and to whose great work for science in Tasmania so much is due.

In his R. M. Johnston Memorial Lecture delivered to this Society, Professor W. J. Dakin (1934) dealt very fully with the great advances which had been made in fisheries' science in preceding, though comparatively recent, years. More than a decade has passed since this lecture was given, and we have had a second opportunity of witnessing, after a prolonged war period, the results of compulsory restriction on man's fishing efforts. Some apparently fundamental principles, which had required a more prolonged period of testing out, have now become firmly established in this intervening period. I shall therefore endeavour to illustrate, as far as possible from my own direct association with fisheries' research in several widely separated countries, some of these cardinal principles which, to a large extent, govern the welfare of fish stocks.

Great numbers of fish species have been described by taxonomists, each species being recognisable by certain body characters fixed within certain limits—characters such as size, shape, number of vertebrae, number of fins and of finrays, nature of dentition and so forth. Within these limits, as we shall see later, it is sometimes possible to recognise races exhibiting more or less constant minor variations in these characters. Thus it is that experienced fishermen in, say, Newfoundland, pride themselves on being able to say, from superficial examination of a catch of codfish brought to market, from what part of the coast this catch has come. They easily differentiate the round-snouted, plump, fast-growing cod of the Grand Banks from the sharp-snouted, comparatively lean or slinky, slow-growing cod from the deep bays or from Labrador. The general position is that certain species have become established, in greater or lesser numbers, to suit the conditions in particular environments. Thus we identify the cod as being the characteristic fish of Norway and Newfoundland, just as the barracouta appears to be the most prolific fish in



Tasmanian waters. In general, the rule holds that in the colder waters of high latitudes there are comparatively few fish species—e.g., cod, haddock, herring—but great numbers of each, whereas in tropical and sub-tropical seas there are great numbers of different species but no colossal quantities of any one species. Thus fewer than 100 fish species have been found in Newfoundland waters, whereas over 2000 species have been identified in Australian waters. In the latter, following the same rule, the number of species decreases from about 1900 in Queensland waters to about 700 off New South Wales and still fewer in the colder Tasmanian waters. Nor is it possible to introduce a prolific cold water species to warmer waters—for example, any effort to introduce the ordinary herring of commerce, the most prolific fish in north boreal waters, to Australian waters would almost inevitably fail, owing to the wide difference in temperature conditions between the two areas. It is also highly questionable whether this fish could be introduced to waters of suitable temperature conditions in the Antarctic, since other necessary conditions may well be lacking—for example, suitable sea-floor conditions for the deposition of eggs, and suitable food supplies for the developing and for adult fish themselves. I have myself participated in an experiment designed to effect the transplantation of a fish much esteemed in the Billingsgate Market—the Dover or Black Sole—over a distance of a mere few hundred miles from the East Anglian Coast to the Firth of Forth in Scotland. The effort was a total failure—we transferred several hundred of the soles, each carrying a tag for its identification should it be recaptured, to the Firth. No trace of these tagged soles was ever discovered. It is a fair deduction that the new environment was unsuitable for the soles and that they failed to survive.

In the case of marine fish it appears to be extremely difficult to effect the colonisation of new environments, whereas, of course, it has been found possible to achieve success in introducing certain fresh-water fish such as trout. The degree of success is, however, much less in the case of fish such as the true salmons, which under natural conditions spend a considerable portion of their life at sea.

EFFECTS OF PHYSICAL CONDITIONS

1. *Effect of Environment on Pigmentation*

The development of protective coloration is well exemplified among fishes, just as it is among terrestrial animals. Pelagic fish, and deep-sea fish which swim in the upper water layers, tend to have dark greenish, reddish-brown, or bluish coloration on the dorsal surface, and to be more or less silvery on the under surface. Thus some protection is afforded from predators, which view their prey against a dark or a light background from above and from below respectively. Many fish have the faculty of rapidly altering their colour pattern to match that of the environment. This has been shown experimentally in the aquarium by placing a Mediterranean flat-fish on a succession of substrates of different patterns. The fish rapidly assumed the patterns in succession to such a degree as to merge into the background and be quite inconspicuous. In the course of an extensive research cruise from Scotland to Iceland, via the Faroe Islands, I have had the opportunity of observing the range of variation in coloration of cod captured in different localities. During that cruise the cod taken varied from the ordinary reddish-brown of the so-called rock cod of the red and brown seaweed zones close inshore, to various darker tints in cod taken in deeper offshore waters, and so on to the yellow biscuit-like colour of cod captured on Faroe Bank, where the substratum consists of yellowish shell fragments, and to the black cod caught off the coast of Iceland in the vicinity of the volcano, Mount Heckla, where the sea-floor is covered with black gravel derived from the volcano, and from lava blocks which have been broken down

by wave attrition. Here, also, other fish such as soles, plaice, haddock, halibut, and flounders are black, though this is not their normal colour elsewhere. Albino cod were also taken during the cruise. Obviously, in the face of such variation, little reliability can be placed on coloration as a criterion in establishing some fish species.

2. *Effect of Temperature*

Variations in the average water-temperature conditions in which fish live do, however, have definite and recognisable effects. We have already seen that relatively few species, often prolific in numbers, have succeeded in colonising the colder waters.

We may again select the typical fish, the cod, as our example. It is essentially a cold-water fish—I have found it to occur quite plentifully off Labrador and on the Newfoundland Banks at temperatures around 1° Centigrade below zero, and it occurs commonly at temperatures below 7° Centigrade. On the east North American coast it occurs from Labrador, where the temperatures are around zero and the growing season is correspondingly short, southwards to the New England coast, where temperatures are considerably higher. McKenzie (1934), has shown in aquarium tests that cod will feed and live in water up to a temperature of about 19° Centigrade.

From a study of the vertebrae and the scales of cod over most of the above region, I was able to deduce that the entire cod population could be split into what may be termed races, each exhibiting certain definable characteristics according to the zone occupied in the total north-east to south-west distribution. There was, for example, a fall from around 55 vertebrae per fish on the cold Labrador coast to about 53 in warmer waters influenced by the Gulf Stream (Thompson, 1943). Similarly, for the East Atlantic, Schmidt (1930) has found a decrease from about 54 vertebrae in the colder northern waters to about 51½ vertebrae in the warmer southern waters. These are, of course, average figures.

A somewhat parallel effect of temperature can be traced from a comprehensive study of the scales of the cod. Under magnification the scales show what may be called annual zones, each containing a number of circular ridges, which we will call circuli. This is shown clearly in colder waters (Plate I, fig. *a*), where there is a long winter break in growth, and less clearly in warmer waters, where growth is more continuous. Counting the circuli in the first year zone of scales taken over a great range, I found that the average number varied from eight in the cold (Labrador) northern waters to about 20 in the warmer (Nantucket) southern waters. We may also see the imprint of the varying environmental conditions of this region in the scales of the salmon. Along with a co-worker (Lindsay & Thompson, 1932), I found that the average number of years spent by salmon in the parr stage in rivers, before entering the smolt stage and migrating to sea, varied from two in the warmer rivers of the south-west to six (with one case of seven) in the colder rivers of the north-east. Obviously, it takes much longer for salmon parr in the short summer of the cold north to attain a size at which migration to sea can be essayed.

In the large Australian area, where there is a wide range of water temperatures, we naturally find different species of fish acclimated to different regions. For example, several species of eels, each with its specific habitat, have been shown to occur, each in a more or less circumscribed region.

In the case of birds, it is common to find that migrations occur between warm feeding and cool breeding climes. Somewhat similar movements can be discerned in, for example, the case of the North Sea haddock, which has been shown (Thompson, 1927) to carry out annual migrations from northerly spawning to more southerly feeding grounds, the net average migration being over a space of about 2° in latitude.

It would appear that temperature requirements are fairly specific for spawning, whereas fish will spread out and feed over a much wider temperature range.

It is noteworthy that cod eggs, held in water of zero temperature, hatch with difficulty, and only 50 per cent of them develop at all, taking 40 days in the process, whereas at 9° C. hatching occurs in nine days.

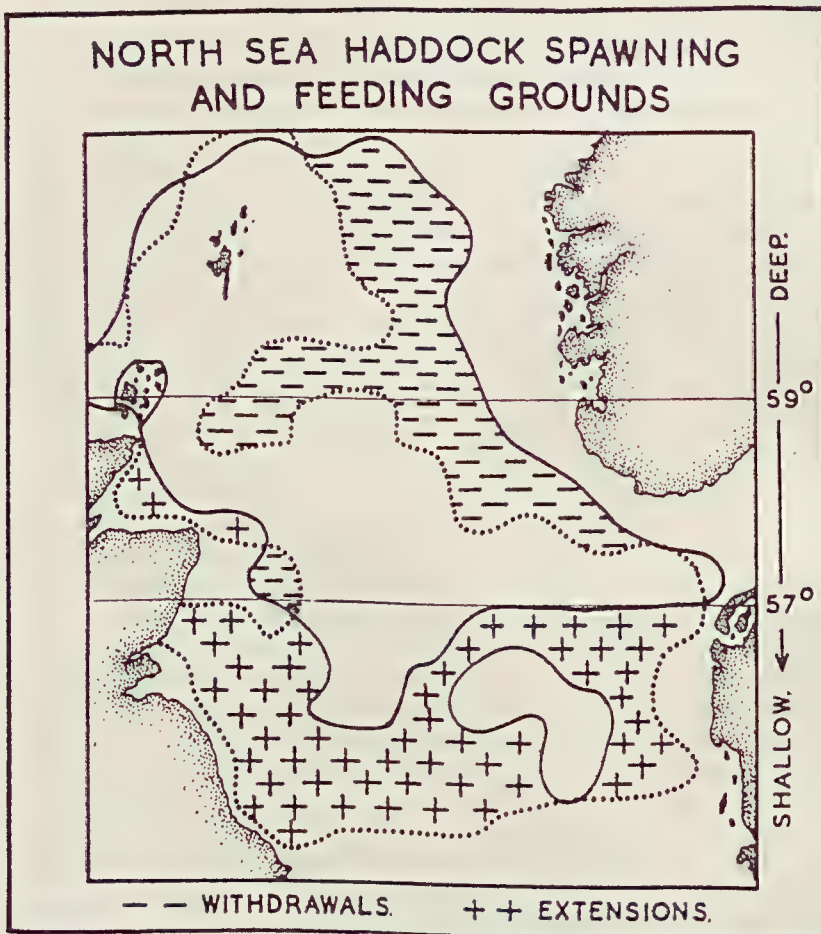


FIG. 1.—North Sea Haddock.
Limits of main spawning grounds—Fulcrum at approx. 59°N. Lat. Limits of main feeding grounds—Fulcrum at approx. 57°N. Lat.
In general, spawning takes place in the deeper northern waters.

In the warmer Australian waters hatching of fish and shellfish eggs takes place very rapidly. This would appear to be a favourable factor and should, in particular, aid in cultural experiments, some of which are about to be attempted.

Thus it is intended to attempt to introduce the Pacific oyster (*O. gigas*) from Japanese to Tasmanian waters. It has hitherto been introduced to east Pacific waters with considerable success, but the lower water temperatures there have hindered successful spawning. The difficulty has been got over to some extent by suspending the oysters in floats where the water could attain a higher temperature. Similarly, it is intended to experiment with the artificial culture of the pearl-shell oyster in tropical Australian waters.

Transplantation of fish to neighbouring but better feeding areas has been successfully accomplished. For example, plaice have been transferred from the

coastal waters of the North Sea to the Dogger Bank, where water temperatures are higher and there is plentiful food. The result was an increase in growth rate. However, as was indicated above, transplantation to entirely new regions is often a matter of great difficulty. For example, attempts to introduce herring and lobsters to New Zealand waters have failed. Better results appear to be attending current experiments to transfer lobsters from the West Atlantic to British Columbian waters (Pacific Fisherman, August, 1947).

Sudden temperature changes of any considerable extent are lethal, as are extremely low or high temperatures. For example, the past winter was a very severe one in the North Sea, temperatures as low as 1.7° C. at the surface, and minus 1° C. at the bottom, being recorded. Observations are to be made on the effect of these low temperatures on the plaice. When extremely cold winters have occurred in the southern North Sea in the past, large numbers of fish have succumbed, since the water is shallow and fish cannot have recourse to deep water which might be of higher temperature. Even in the case of Newfoundland cod, which are acclimated to very low water temperatures, sudden changes in temperature may be lethal. Such changes can occur when cold Arctic water floods a slightly warmer area. The cod are at times killed and float to the surface. Thus I have related (Thompson, 1943) an instance where a vessel, in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, steamed through 20 miles of sea where dead codfish, floating at the surface, were observed.

Instances are even known of cod having been driven by seals from deep water to very cold surface water, where the fish were paralysed by the cold, and killed.

It seems certain that the cod is sensitive to very slight temperature changes. During experimental fishing on the Grand Bank of Newfoundland, I found that in a given locality the fish were consistently aggregated in water of a certain temperature, and that in a nearby locality, where the water temperature was less than a degree higher, they were consistently absent. In general, cod were found at spots where lower temperatures prevailed, and haddock in neighbouring localities where temperatures were a very few degrees higher. Bull (1936) has shown experimentally that cod are sensitive to a change of temperature of less than one-tenth of a degree, thus confirming a finding in the field and carrying it to a finer degree of precision by aquarium tests.

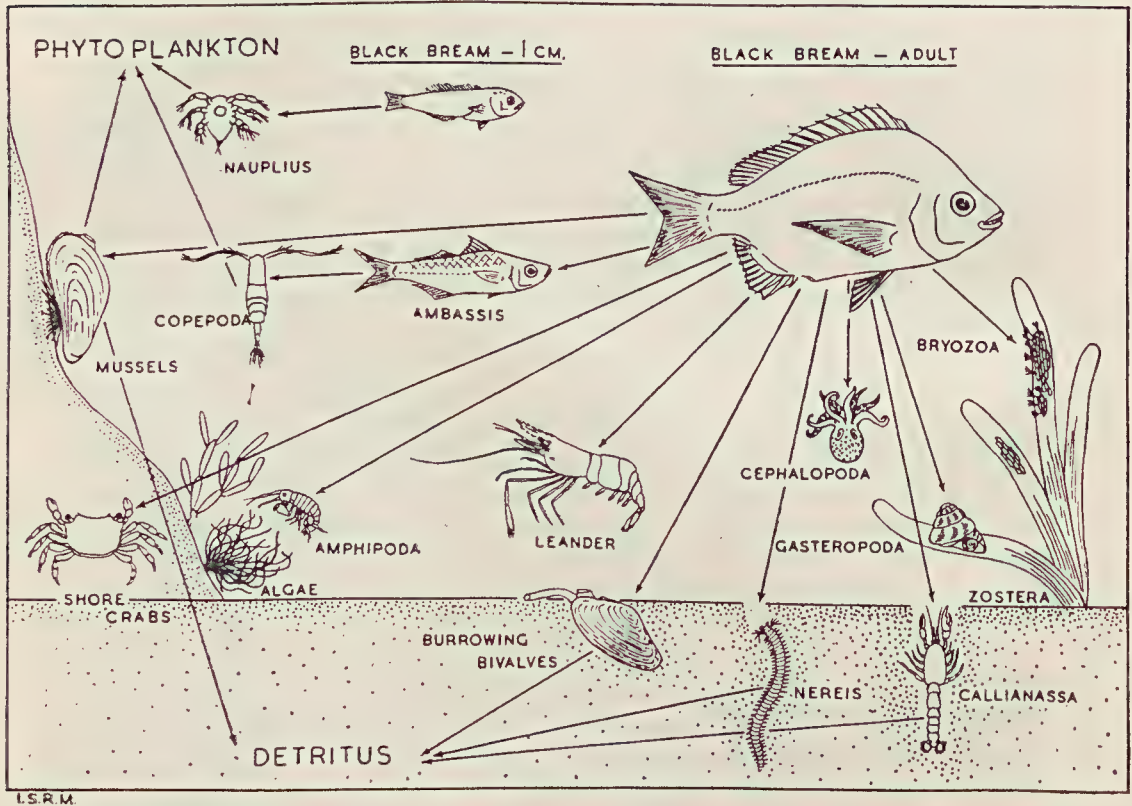
Enough has been said to show the very great influence of temperature on the welfare of fish. In Australian waters sudden changes of water temperature are less in evidence, at least in the lower temperature ranges. Where fish welfare is affected and mortality is caused by extreme temperatures it is usually due to high summer heating of limited bodies of water—particularly bodies of fresh or brackish water. Death in such cases may, however, be due to deoxygenation of the water through putrefaction of plant and other life which has succumbed.

3. *Effect of Salinity*

Little need be said on the subject of the effect of water-salinity on fish. It is well-known that fish in general are divided into fresh- and salt-water species respectively, although certain fish, such as salmon, mullet, and eels, spend different phases of their life in fresh and salt water respectively. As in the case of temperature, however, sudden and extensive changes of salinity are lethal. Such changes can, for example, take place at river mouths in the case of the occurrence of floods, with severe effect on shellfish, such as mussels and oysters. It is, of course, customary for sea-running trout, as a defensive measure, to accustom themselves very gradually to the change-over from fresh to salt water, thus avoiding abrupt changes in salinity.

THE IMPORTANT ROLE OF NUTRIENT CHEMICAL CONSTITUENTS OF WATER

Production of food in the form of fish flesh depends ultimately on the availability in the water of nutrient salts, such as phosphates and nitrates, just as crop production on land depends on similar nutrients in the soil. In the sea, when temperatures begin to rise in spring, there is, in the upper or phototropic zone, an outburst of microscopic plant life or microvegetation, production of which goes on until the nutrient salts are used up. This vernal outburst of plant growth provides food for minute marine organisms, which in turn form the food of the small larvae and fry resulting from the hatch out of fish eggs. These tiny fish are part of the food of larger fish, which at this period of the year feed well and



I.S.R.M.

FIG. 2.—Diagram illustrating the food cycle, culminating in the organisms fed on by the Black Bream (after I.S.R. Munro).

increase in size. In tropical and sub-tropical waters where there is pronounced stratification of water layers—with the warm water normally on top—salts are exhausted after a very few weeks or months, and the outburst of growth of microscopic plankton dies out. It is during this period that fish, e.g., mullet, put on most of their year's growth. In certain localities, however, there may be more or less continuous re-introduction of nutrient salts to the surface waters through the mixing of nutrient-rich waters from deeper layers by favourable currents or swirls. Particularly is this the case where persistent cold currents flow in from high latitudes and cause mixing. As an example of this phenomenon the Humbolt Current, flowing up the western coast of South America, may be mentioned. This region is renowned for its high production of plankton, which supports a great sea-bird

population, which has given rise to the great guano deposits of Chile and Peru. This cold current normally dominates the situation, but, to quote the words of D'Arcy Thompson (1937), 'now and then persistent northerly winds check it or thrust it aside. Then comes el Nino, a new warm current upsetting the old equilibrium; the fish die in millions, the water stinks, the birds starve, the guano industry cries aloud'.

To the south of Australasia there is a kindred movement of water, containing a certain admixture of cold Antarctic water, which, while it reaches the South Island of New Zealand, keeps well to the south of the southern coast of Australia. Even Tasmanian waters, the coolest of the Australian seas, do not receive this Antarctic water component, nor do they contain typical Antarctic organisms in the plankton. It should be mentioned that one method of determining the source or sources of water masses is to study the types of the organisms in the plankton. I have made an intensive study of the Tunicates in the plankton of the south-eastern Australian region (Thompson, 1942) and have found tropical and sub-tropical species to be present in great numbers, but have not detected the occurrence of any one of the very few species which occur in the Antarctic.

In the cold water of high latitudes there is much greater upwelling of deeper water, with copious phosphate and nitrate content. This movement occurs owing to the action of the currents, and mixing is also caused by convection which occurs when sharply cooled water descends in winter owing to its greater density. In the warmer parts of the ocean this mixing by convection is much less prevalent, the tendency being towards stratification of water layers, with the warmest water remaining near the surface.

In general, therefore, it is not surprising that phosphate values are high in Antarctic waters, and comparatively low in tropical and sub-tropical waters. These values can be expressed as units denoting parts of P_2O_5 per cubic metre (or one million cubic centimetres) of water. Values of from 50 to 100 units occur in Antarctic seas, and values of around 15 in Australian waters. It is therefore not surprising that plankton production appears to be greater in colder than in warmer seas, and that Jespersen (1935) found that, as far as his investigations went in the Tasman Sea, the relationship between the amount of plankton taken with a stramin net was reciprocal with water temperature. In a passage from east to west across the Tasman Sea he found rising temperatures between New Zealand and Australia. As the water temperature increased, so did the volume of plankton, obtained by a standard technique, fall.

Since total fish production is dependent, in the ultimate issue, on total plankton production, the colder waters of the world naturally produce the heaviest and most consistent fish catches. This appears to be due to the greater and more prolonged availability of nutrient salts and not essentially to lower temperature itself, since, as I shall now show, low temperature alone does not necessarily produce fastest growth in any particular species such as haddock, cod, or salmon. Indeed, the artificial introduction of nutrient salts to warmer waters can lead to very fast growth of fish. Thus, I am informed by Mr. Dunbavin Butcher that in Lakes Parrumbete and Coleraine in Western Victoria, Australia, the growth rate of introduced Quinnat salmon is very fast indeed. These lakes receive drainage from a rich agricultural hinterland, and hence are well supplied with nutritive salts. This suggests a task for the research worker—to show to what extent the productivity of rivers, lakes and ponds, and, possibly, of suitable estuaries, can be increased by the controlled addition of fertiliser or of superphosphate or other nutrient salts.

VARIATION IN GROWTH RATES, E.G., OF HADDOCK, COD, AND SALMON

My own first assignment in the field of fishery research was to a study of the haddock of the North Sea. This was in 1921. At that time there was considerable controversy as to the value of fish scales in indicating age. Hoffbauer (1898) had shown that, in carp, the scales showed annual rings. The position was, however, that proof had to be produced, species by species, that annual zones could be recognised on the fish scale. As I will show later, it was possible to produce this proof in the instance of most haddock, and it has been possible to do so also for many other fish species. But some species have proved troublesome. Thus the cod scale, except (Plate I, fig. *a*) in regions where there is a sharp difference between summer and winter temperatures, is not easily interpreted. Another prolific fish, the common herring of commerce, has been the subject of much controversy on this score, attempts having been made to prove that the numbers of apparent zones on the scales could be explained according to the laws of chance. Intensive research, which has indicated among other things that in the North Sea there are spring and autumn spawning seasons, has explained away most of the anomalies, and critics of the acceptance of the scale-age theory for herring have now been won round to the acceptance of this theory. In the case of haddock, the position was that whilst Norwegian workers claimed the age could be read with certainty from the scales, English workers had found at least a proportion of the scales unsatisfactory for age-determination owing to extra markings. There is sometimes one such extra ring found during the first year, when haddock change over from mid-water to bottom feeding conditions. I have also shown (Thompson, 1926) that, in transferring haddock from sea to the aquarium, the change in conditions can cause an extra ring to be formed. The position to-day is that most workers use the scales in the case of younger haddock, but that in regions such as Iceland waters, where many older haddock occur, otoliths are used as giving a clearer indication of age than do scales.

Within two or three years of commencing studies on haddock scales, I was impressed with two indications—the first of which was that fish of the same age attain different sizes in different regions. Thus there is gradation from the deep waters of the northern North Sea—where low temperature and scanty food supply (even *Foraminifera* are resorted to as food) restrict growth, and where a large size could never be attained—through the more genial conditions of shallower banks (e.g., Dogger Bank) and of inshore waters, to the regions of fastest growth, where food is most plentiful. Such regions are the west Scottish coast, subject to Atlantic conditions and, further afield, Faroe, Iceland, and the west Atlantic from Grand Bank, Newfoundland, to Brown's Bank, Massachusetts.

A region of fast growth will obviously, by providing fast recuperation, sustain a more intensive fishery than will one of slow growth. It is therefore of fundamental importance in fishery investigations to study rates of growth. Prior to the institution of current investigations, this had not been done in Australia. In recent years the growth rates of mullet, bream (Plate II), pilchard, &c., have been determined, and this work is proceeding with respect to other fish such as salmon, tuna, barracouta, and trawled fish such as flathead. In the latter case—the flathead—the tiny ear bones (otoliths) are being used (Plate III). Even in the case of the scallop—a shellfish—it is being found possible to make use, in general biological studies, of the periodic markings on the shell (Plate I, fig. *b*).

FLUCTUATIONS IN FISH STOCKS

The second indication that impressed me was that the year classes were not equally represented in the total haddock population. It soon became clear that the survival rates from successive spawning seasons varied, sometimes very greatly (Thompson, 1922). Norwegian workers had previously shown that in the case of the herring one year class could be born and survive in such great quantities as to form the major part of the catches for a series of years. In the case of haddock something similar was soon shown to occur. The year classes of 1920 and 1923 were, in succession, dominant, and those of the intervening years 1921 and 1922 almost complete failures. I found it difficult to convince some of my colleagues of the truth of this at the time—so much so that in 1922 extra cruises were organised to scour the North Sea for the baby haddock which, it was assumed, should be present, but which had not shown up in any numbers in the catches of the experimental trawler. At this time interest in the position of the haddock fishery was stimulated. We had seen an increase in the haddock stocks, occasioned by the rest period—one of recuperation—enjoyed by the stocks during World War I, when, as during the recent war, fishing activities were greatly reduced in the North Sea. In 1919, the year following the war, large haddock were four times as plentiful as they had been in 1913, the year before the war. A rapid sequence of events followed—the resumption of the fishery, which rapidly reduced the haddock stocks to a much lower level, and the failure of two successive year broods—those of 1921 and 1922, which further reduced fishery returns to an unprecedentedly low and unremunerative level—so that it was commonly thought in the trade that the fishery was finished with, at least for the time being. I therefore published a forecast in these words 'The 1920 brood in 1923 and 1924 should allow the haddock fisheries to recover from their present depression. Should this prove to be true, the scale theory, as far as the formation of one ring per year goes, should, in the main, be established for the haddock'. As was anticipated, catches turned upwards in 1923. The 1920 brood was being caught at commercial size, and formed 70 per cent of the total haddock catch in 1923. Furthermore, whereas in 1922 little trace could be found of baby haddock, in 1923 the research vessel found them in prolific numbers over most of the northern region, and it was possible (Thompson, 1923) to predict the further recovery of the haddock fishery in 1924 and 1925, when the 1923 fish would have attained marketable size. From that time, through a sustained study of the relative degree of success of successive year broods, a prediction system for North Sea haddock was maintained.

In more recent years forecasts have come to be made with regard to other fish whose biology has been intensively studied. Thus Hickling (1946) states that in any one year the abundance of small hake likely to occur to the south and south-west of Ireland can be forecast five years in advance, if the temperature of the sea surface in that year is known. A high temperature at the surface means a high survival rate of newly born hake. In the case of haddock the causes of good and bad survival rates are not known. They might include absence of suitable food supply for the myriads of young fry, or even the carrying by adverse currents of the eggs or early pelagic stages into regions where conditions for further development are unsuitable.

The study of growth rates and the study of fluctuations may therefore be bracketed together as being of fundamental importance to commercial fisheries. Examples have been drawn above from authenticated cases in large fisheries studied over a period of years. In Australia similar studies are now in progress and already we see signs of useful results. An instance (flathead fluctuation) will be mentioned below.

THE INFLUENCE OF MAN ON AQUATIC LIFE

Yonge (1947) states that man had little direct influence on marine life till about two hundred years ago, when there began a vast and indiscriminate slaughter, leading to the extermination of some species—for example the Northern Sea-Cow in the north Pacific. Another member of the sea-cow group (*Sirenia*)—the dugong of Indo-Pacific Seas—still survives, but requires protection. The population of whales in Arctic regions has been reduced to very meagre numbers, and that of the Antarctic, upon which the modern highly mechanised whaling industry is based, has also suffered great diminution and is receiving a measure of protection. Ommanney (1938), commenting on the position with regard to the elephant seal, states that at South Georgia, where killing is restricted to old bulls, numbers are being maintained, whereas on other islands where no regulatory measures have been adopted, this seal is dying out. It is the function of scientific investigations, such as those carried out so successfully by the 'Discovery' expeditions between the two world wars, to secure the necessary fundamental biological information upon which to base measures of conservation or, to use the words of D'Arcy Thompson (1937) 'to tell the commercial world how far greed might safely go'.

WEIGHT LANDED (IN CWT.) PER DAY'S ABSENCE FROM PORT.

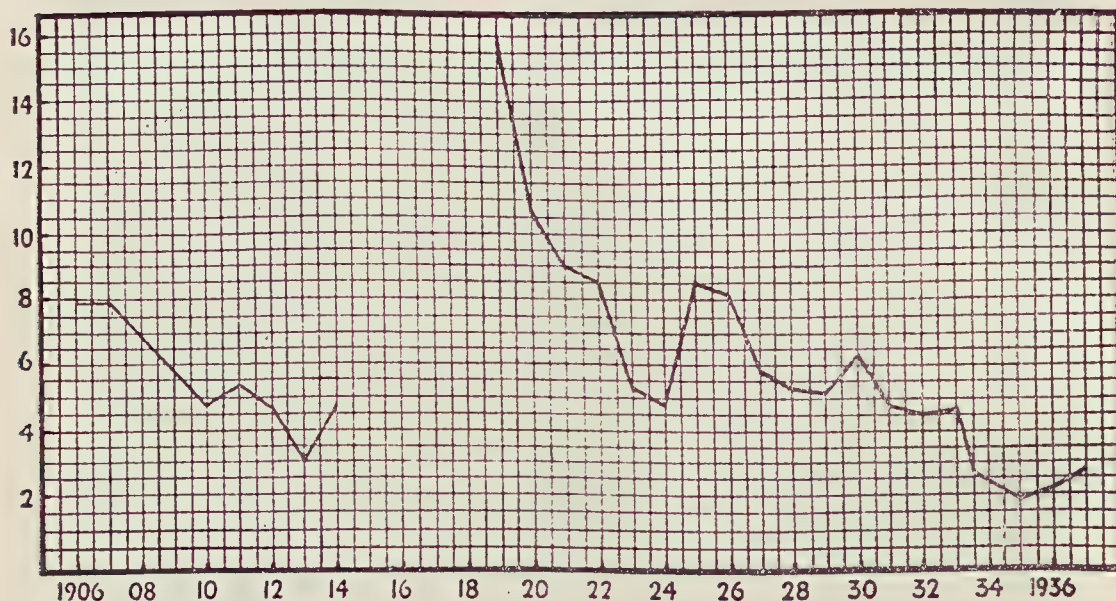


FIG. 3.—Graph showing weight (in cwt.) of haddock landed per day's absence by English steam trawlers in the North Sea.

Declines are shown prior to both world wars, but a considerable recovery is evident in 1919, subsequent to the recuperative period of 1914-1918. (Data from Russell, 1942.)

The scientific study of fish populations has usually been introduced long after the fishery has been taking its toll and has reduced the stocks. It is therefore impossible to say exactly how great these stocks were in their pristine condition. The occurrence of two wars within a generation has, however, through providing a partial closure of certain areas to fishing, given us some idea of how far depletion can go and how extensive the recovery can be in certain cases at least. Dr. E. S. Russell (1942) says that the average landings of haddock in hundredweights,

per days' fishing, by English steam trawlers was 7·8 in 1906. By 1914, at the beginning of the war, it had dropped to 4·6, but it recovered to 15·8 in 1919, at the conclusion of the war. However, by 1937, it had receded to a new low of 2·7—a desperate situation. Here we see unmistakable evidence of a fall due to increased fishing intensity up till 1914, a very marked recovery by the end of the war, and a subsequent and still more pronounced drop up to 1937. From a report (1946) on the sea-fisheries of England and Wales for the years 1939-1944 inclusive, we learn that the North Sea was closed throughout World War II, except for a belt down the east coast varying from 15 to 30 miles wide. The landings of demersal fish fell in 1940 to 31 per cent of the 1938 figures, and still further to 24 per cent in 1941, afterwards rising slightly. The report says that there has been in several areas a marked increase in the weight of fish on the grounds, due to the decrease in the intensity of fishing, this increase being of the order of from 250 to 400 per cent, according to area, and as measured by catch per unit of fishing effort. Besides being more numerous, the fish were larger than before the war. Here is a statement taken from this report: 'It is common knowledge that after the 1914-1918

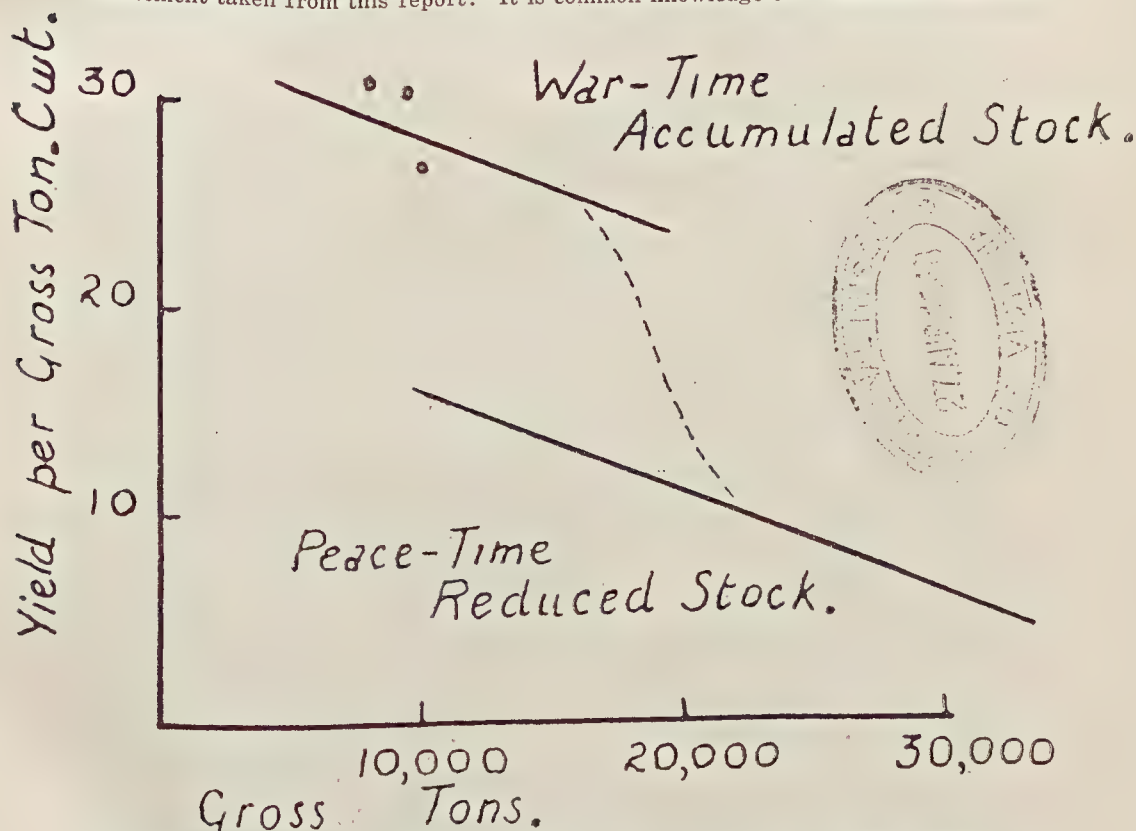


FIG. 4.—Transition from a 'war-time accumulated stock' of hake (in south-west British area) to a 'peace-time reduced stock', with increase in the size of the trawling fleet. The relation between the size of the fleet, in aggregate gross tons, and the yield of hake per gross ton, in the years 1920 to 1938, is shown as the regression line marked 'peace-time reduced stock'. The regression line shows that, the larger the fleet, the smaller the yield of hake to each unit of the fleet. A second regression line, parallel with the first and marked 'war-time accumulated stock', is drawn through the points representing the yield per gross ton in 1942, 1943, and 1944. (From Hickling, 1946.)

war there was an uncontrolled scramble . . . to send trawlers and other fishing vessels to those fishing grounds which had been closed for the duration of the war, without any regard to the consequences. For a year or two large landings and high prices resulted, but the inevitable slump followed and fishing became uneconomic. By the time the World War was in sight most of the British vessels working this area were working at a loss The North Sea had, in fact, been overfished, and the same was true of other areas. So many fish had been taken out that the remaining stocks could not maintain themselves'. Hickling (1946, 1946a) also states that since 1939 there was a spectacular improvement in the catch of fish per unit of fishing effort on Porcupine Bank, off the west coast of Ireland. The increase extended to many fish species and varied from 50 per cent in the case of small to 200 per cent in the case of large trawlers. With regard to hake, he states that the rate of reduction of stocks fell from 46 per cent per annum before the war to 21 per cent during the war. Consequently, from 1942 to 1944 a fleet reduced to 8000-9000 tons landed more hake than a previous fleet of 20,000-29,000 tons. In 1945 a fleet of less than 10,000 tons caught two-and-a-half times the amount caught in 1932 by a fleet three times as large.

However, Hickling, who recently visited Sydney, has informed me that North Sea catches have already fallen by about 50 per cent from the high level of the immediate post-war period. With regard to hake, which is fished chiefly on the western fringe of Ireland and Scotland, and hence mostly outside the North Sea, he shows the transition from the war-time accumulated stock to a peace-time reduced stock, occasioned by the increase in the size of the trawling fleet. For the period 1920-1938 he draws a regression line (the upper line in the accompanying diagram) showing that, the larger the fleet, the smaller was the yield per unit of effort expended. For the period 1942-1944 similar regression line has been drawn through points indicating yields per gross ton employed in the fishing fleet.

Other fish stocks now show similar war-time and inter-war-time trends. Thus G. A. Stevens (1947) states: 'Before the outbreak of the 1914-18 war and for a few years after its close the Cornish long-line fleet, working from Newlyn, used on an average to work from 1000 to 1500 hooks per vessel on from 2½ to 3 miles of line. Gradually they became obliged to use from 2000 to 4000 hooks on from 5 to 7 miles of line in order to catch the same amount of fish, or rather less. Moreover, instead of fishing as a rule within a radius of 50 miles from the port they had to operate on grounds up to 90 or even 100 miles distant. In due course no further increase in the amount of gear that could be used from the existing vessels could be made. The extreme limit of their range was also reached, and the catches continued to fall But war came and the grounds were rested, and catches were good once more'. The fishery referred to the elasmobranchs, or gristly fishes, the rays and skates, and we see a somewhat parallel state of affairs in the south-eastern Australian fishery for another elasmobranch fish, the school shark. This fishery received an impetus during the war on account of the need for liver oils rich in vitamin A, and Victorian fishermen have found it necessary to go further and further afield for good supplies.

Similarly, with regard to some crayfish grounds, the areas covered by fishermen in order to secure an economic catch is steadily increasing. In New Zealand and South Africa there has been little recovery in some areas where stocks of crayfish have previously been reduced to low limits.

With regard to the important trawling industry of New South Wales, investigations have been and are being made on the level of the more important fish stocks. The peak in this fishery was reached in 1929, when 15 million lb. were taken by 17 trawlers. There was a subsequent drop to a low of 10 million lb.

in 1935, but a reduction in the number of trawlers to 13 enabled the stocks to recover and a steady return of about 12 million lb. by 13 vessels can apparently be sustained. There was marked over-fishing from about 1928 to 1935. In the earlier days (1918-1926) this fishery produced from 5-7 cwts. of fish per trawling hour, compared with 2-2½ cwts. in the period 1930-1940. There was a phenomenal increase in the smaller (Danish seine type) trawlers in the late war and in the post-war years, so that in 1946-1947 there was a total fishing effort from a fleet of about 4600 trawler tons, compared with 4000 trawler tons in 1929. At present there is a fishing potential of over 5000 trawler tons, whereas a figure of about 3500 appears to be the maximum required if stability of fishing results is to be maintained.

There is no evidence of any very remarkable increase in stocks (on North Sea standards) during the war. The position is that the average catch of tiger flathead—the chief trawled fish—has dropped quite considerably since the war, and this decrease in flathead has directed more attention to the taking of other varieties of fish, such as morwong. It should be mentioned that Tasmania is interested in the trawl fishery to a more limited extent, the research seine trawler 'Liawenee' having from time to time made good catches off the east coast of the island.

Obviously, while it is certain that Australian fishery resources are far from fully utilised, there is a distinct need for careful management in some instances. This is necessary if the maximum return is to be achieved over an indefinite period, as it can be. A limit must be placed to the degree of exploitation in the case of most fish species (an apparent exception being the prolific herring in the North Atlantic). There is a limit to the number of new grounds which can be turned to, and the hatching and turning into the sea of fish fry has never been proved to be beneficial. Useful measures which can be taken, once sufficient basic data have been accumulated to suggest what they should be, may include the avoidance of the capture of a great proportion of what are termed undersized fish, whether by increasing the size of the meshes of nets, or by instituting minimum size limits of fish to be marketed; protection of spawning fish or spawning grounds; and limitation of the total permissible catch. One or two examples may be cited.

In 1935 W. C. Herrington, after investigating the alarming decline in the catches of haddock on the once prolific George's Bank off the east coast of the United States, drew attention to the effect of using in the cod-end of the commercial trawl a mesh of only 3 inches. He indicated that trawlers once destroyed 63 million baby haddock in one season and advocated a 4½-inch mesh in the cod-end. His experiments, carried out on a commercial scale, showed that four-fifths of these brood haddocks could be allowed to escape without reducing the amount of marketable fish captured. At the 1935 meeting of the North American Council on Fisheries Investigations, at which I was present, an international treaty was favoured to protect the fisheries of all banks. Nothing however was done. In the fisheries journal 'The Atlantic Fisherman', of January, 1947, it is stated that the Atlantic Fishermen's Union drew up, in 1942, a bill to be introduced to Congress, limiting the size of fish to be marketed and restricting fishing during the spawning season, but no one would sponsor the bill in Congress. The journal goes on to state that fishermen are now finding it necessary to go further from the home port.

It is of interest to note that similar experimental work in the North Sea has shown that an increase of mesh would spare a proportion of young fish without reducing the marketable catch. Since it was known that the fishing grounds of western Europe were again well stocked after the war, the British Government called an international conference in London in 1946 to discuss the over-fishing

problem. It was agreed to increase the mesh size of nets, and also to set a size limit on 12 of the most important demersal ground fish. An advisory committee was also appointed to give special attention to the matter.

In the case of the Australian flathead it is now proposed to test the effect of using a 3½-inch, instead of the existing 3-inch, mesh in the cod-end of nets used by trawlers, the object being to allow a considerable proportion of small and unsaleable fish to escape. Thus it should prove helpful if the small two-year flathead were allowed to escape and grow to a larger size. But quite apart from this conservative measure, it may also prove to be necessary to restrict the total tonnage of the fishing fleet, or to protect spawning fish.

In the case of the Pacific halibut, a sharp decline in stocks has been checked and the downward trend reversed—in this case, not by the intervention of a war period, but by the application of conservative measures based on scientific evidence. Through treaties subscribed to in 1924 and 1930, and renewed in 1937, by Canada and the United States, limits were set to the quantities of halibut to be taken, and certain important spawning grounds were protected. The halibut population has, as a result, greatly increased and the fishery has been rescued from its state of reduction to an uneconomic level. Here, as elsewhere, it has been abundantly shown that, paradoxical as it might appear, a greater quantity of fish can, in the case of some fish stocks at least, be taken by reducing the actual fishing effort.

AIDS TO THE FISHERIES FROM RESEARCH

The increasing tendency towards management of the fisheries on a scientific basis has manifested itself during the period between the two world wars. As in the case of forest management, it has come to be realised that only the natural increase can safely be removed.

During this period, scientific investigations have laid bare, or emphasized, certain truths of first-class importance. Let us recapitulate some of the chief of them.

1. Fundamentally, productivity in the sea, as on land, depends on the *availability of nutritive salts* such as phosphates and nitrates. The action of light rays, which penetrate to a depth of about 200 metres, creates a plant life upon which a herbivorous fauna grazes, this fauna being, in turn, utilised by animal life up the nutritive chain. The normal colour of water is azure blue, on account of its ability to absorb red rays. On fishing banks, such as the Newfoundland banks, the colour is green on account of abundance of microscopic plant life (diatoms, etc.), aided by matter in suspension. On banks, and in cold water generally, the supply of nutritive salts tends to be regenerated by mixing caused by water movements (upwellings, eddies, convection, etc.) after the supply of nutritive salts has been exhausted, as they tend everywhere to be by the outburst of growth ('flowering') each spring when temperatures begin to rise. Thus, as D'Arcy Thompson (1937) states, a vast abundance of life strikes every naturalist in Arctic or Antarctic seas, the coldest of Antarctic waters being the richest in the world. Commenting on the results of the investigations of the 'Discovery' expeditions, he states that the gathering places of the whales may be expressed in terms of plankton (e.g., the big shrimp-like *Euphausia superba* which is the staple food of the blue whale) and also of the phosphate supply.

A systematic survey of the availability of nutritive salts in Australian waters, which are tropical and sub-tropical, is proceeding. The general level is not high, although there are exceptions where local mixing occurs.

In fresh or in more or less closed waters it may be possible to augment phosphate supplies by artificial addition. This may, for instance, be of interest in the rivers and lakes of Tasmania. These will always provide satisfactory angling for the few, but to provide it for the multitude it will probably be necessary to adopt artificial measures, possibly including feeding under control as practised abroad. For example, at Healing, in North Lincolnshire, near the fishing port of Grimsby, rainbow trout are forced to a weight of about 6 ozs. in a year by being fed each morning in ponds with minced small cod and whiting, which are cheap at the fish market at Grimsby. (Barracouta might similarly be used in Tasmania.) Well over 100 lb. of trout are sold per week, each pound of trout requiring about three pounds of cheap sea food for its production.

It should be noted, however, that plankton is not necessarily uniformly distributed in water where nutrient salt content is uniform. As Lucas (1947) has pointed out, it has been shown in recent years that many organisms appear to require certain substances (e.g., of the nature of enzymes, hormones or vitamins) which they themselves cannot manufacture, and which are not normal foods. These substances may either stimulate or inhibit various biological processes. Thus the presence of some plants, when abundant, may have an inhibitory or even a lethal effect on associated animals, virtually 'excluding' them. This may be due to the effect of external secretions of such plants. Thus 'krill'—and therefore whales which feed on it, have been shown to avoid water of the highest degree of plant productivity. Likewise, Savage and Hardy (1935) have shown that the presence of dense patches of plankton (e.g., certain diatoms) over the normal herring fishing areas of the North Sea can be associated with poorer than average herring catches.

2. A second finding of supreme importance has been that *growth rates* of fish vary quite considerably. Within limits, growth rate is a function chiefly of food supply, and it is desirable to secure a high survival rate in areas where food is abundant. In areas of slow growth, only a restricted fishing intensity can be sustained. Increase of food by adding fertilisers to sea-water is still at the experimental stage, some success having been obtained in limited water masses (Gross, *et al.*, 1946). It is hoped to start preliminary fertilisation experiments in a freshwater area in Tasmania shortly, and such experiments have been instituted in connection with oyster cultivation in George's River, New South Wales. In densely populated regions of Asia, where manurial matter is abundant, large quantities of fish are, of course, produced by fertilisation of ponds, etc.
3. A third outcome of fisheries research during these years has been the production of proof absolute that, owing to natural causes, fish stocks fluctuate in number, the fluctuations being sometimes so violent as to be almost catastrophic in their effect. Perhaps the failure, in two successive years, 1921 and 1922, of North Sea haddock broods has so far provided the most striking demonstration of the disastrously low level to which fish stocks can be reduced when, with stocks already in an over-fished condition, spawning seasons fail to provide reinforcement of numbers.

From the continuous study of *fluctuations* and of the composition of age-groups of the stock, it has been possible to make short-term predictions of the course, not only of the haddock fishery, but of the fisheries based on other species (hake, herring, pilchard, etc.) in various regions. Such *predictions* are of obvious value to those concerned with outfitting for participation in

the fishery. Fortunately, in the case of any one species, fluctuations may affect one region more than another—thus the codfishery on the coasts of Norway and Newfoundland may be good now on one part of the coast, now on another; and, since the time of incidence of adverse fluctuations is not necessarily the same in different species, fishing effort can be directed from a species in an unfavourable phase to other species in more favourable phases. It is interesting to note, for example, that of the two great Californian fisheries, that for tuna was in 1946 the most productive on record, and that for pilchard the least productive. Thus those entering on new phases of the Australian fisheries would be well advised to equip their vessels for more than one type of fishing.

4. A fourth major finding in these last twenty-five years has derived from the gigantic, though involuntary, experiments in conservation imposed by the two world wars. It is that of the remarkable capacity for *regeneration* possessed by fish stocks which have been over-fished. After both wars fish taken in areas more or less closed to fishing have proved to be much more plentiful, and to be of a larger average size, than those taken at the commencement of hostilities. This is a heartening consideration, ensuring as it does positive results for such lesser measures of conservation as may be thought to be administratively advisable. The remarkable speed, and the extent, of the reconstitution of fish stocks towards a high level are doubtless largely due to the great fecundity of fishes—a fecundity not shared by marine mammals such as, for example, whales and seals. In the case of whales we know that a very great number of years must of necessity pass before a badly attenuated stock, such as that of the Arctic regions, can effect even a moderate recovery in numbers. In the case of the Bay of Biscay, for example, the Basque harpooners killed out the Atlantic whales, so that no more were seen for nearly 100 years. In the Antarctic, to quote Rudd (1939-41), 'the stock of the blue whales has been reduced to such a degree that the chance of catching a blue whale in 1938-39 was less than half of what it was in 1933-34, in spite of the increase in the efficiency of the boat and the activity of the gunner'. In other words, the stock of whales has fallen below a level which can be balanced by increased fishing activities.

PROBABLE FUTURE TREND IN FISHERY RESEARCH

It is to be anticipated that the tendency towards the application of scientific management to the fisheries will not only continue, but be accelerated, using techniques already to hand, techniques which may well be added to as further discoveries come to light. Thus, while fishing techniques for both pelagic (surface) and demersal (ground) fisheries have been well perfected, much might ensue from the development of methods of taking mid-water fish. Among other results there should accrue some much-needed knowledge of the mid-water phases of the life-histories of such fish as herring and salmon. Particular attention is likely to be given to causative factors in the occurrence of freshwater and marine life. A quarter of a century ago public interest, and that of the industry itself, in research was somewhat apathetic, but occurrences in the interim have quickened that interest. On all hands we see evidence of this. British fisheries research is being extended to cover the prolific, though distant, Arctic grounds, and a large-scale scheme of fisheries research is being planned (and in some cases has commenced) for the Colonial Empire. In the March, 1947, issue of the 'Pacific Fisherman', under the title of 'Tide of Research Rising', we learn of the intention in the United States to expend very large sums in research in its Pacific possessions

and the Philippines, and also that the great Californian sardine industry wishes Congress to provide \$1,000,000 for research on the sardine stocks which, owing possibly to natural fluctuations, have at times yielded disappointing catches. At the request of member nations, the Food and Agriculture Organisation of the United Nations intends to set up Regional Councils for the stimulation and co-ordination of oceanographic research. One such Council is expected to be established for the Indo-Pacific region, including Australia.

In Australia, the activities of the Fisheries Division of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research are being intensified with regard to securing the necessary data both for the further development of industries based on the marine resources, and for the rational management of such existing fisheries as are fully exploited.

With regard to the latter, for example, requests have been received from State departments and local authorities for investigations to be conducted into condition of various stocks upon which important fisheries are based, such as the New South Wales trawling industry, the Queensland mackerel, the Tasmanian whitebait and scallop, the school shark, the Tasmanian and other crayfishes, and the freshwater trout of Tasmania.

In Australia, as elsewhere, the prosecution of research is essential if only as a policy of insurance for the maintenance of existing fisheries; and in Australia, where fisheries are only partially developed, the outlay on such a policy must of necessity be increased to ensure expansion on a sound basis. At the same time, the expenditure on research must bear a reasonable relationship to the actual and anticipated commercial returns of the fisheries.

DEVELOPMENTAL POSSIBILITIES IN AUSTRALIAN WATERS.

Having seen that some sections of the Australian fisheries have been exploited to the extent that there is already a call for their conservation, let us now comment on other sections, some of which are probably not yet fully exploited, and others of which—particularly those dealing with pelagic fish—stand at the threshold of exploitation subsequent to the carrying out of much exploratory work by aerial reconnaissance and research vessels. Existing fisheries which could sustain expanded effort are, in my opinion, those based on barracouta (the catch of which in Tasmanian waters has risen considerably in recent years, partly owing to the stimulation of war-time regulations—and there are distinct possibilities further afield, e.g., in Western Australian waters); Australian salmon, upon which a canning industry is already based, and the distribution of which, being easily studied from the air, it is proposed to determine with precision; school shark and crayfish, both requiring some aid from conservational measures in Tasmanian waters where they are most heavily fished, but both probably capable of supporting an expanding fishery elsewhere in southern Australian waters; the fisheries of tropical waters in general—including those based on pearls and pearl-shell, in connection with which improved cultural methods are to be tested; the oyster and scallop industries, both of which are now the objects of scientific study; and the sea-weed industry, founded during the war for the production of agar-agar, but, as far as Tasmania, at least, is concerned, capable through the existence of extensive beds of *Macrocystis*, of providing raw material for the production of alginates.

With regard to the development of the pelagic fisheries, we stand at a most interesting stage. The preliminary study of the distribution and seasonal occurrences of the surface fish is now being actively continued beyond the region of south-eastern Australia. In the latter region, including Tasmanian waters, this

study has been reasonably well completed, and efforts are now being made to develop the canning industry. On shore there have been installed the necessary cold-storage facilities to accept and hold occasional large catches, which can then be gradually passed through the canneries. The horse mackerel (*Trachurus novae zelandiae*), since it had, during the appropriate season, frequently been observed to occur in dense shoals in more or less sheltered waters, was thought to be the first species of pelagic fish likely to be taken in quantity by the purse-seine net, and this has proved to be the case. Hauls have been made both in eastern Tasmanian waters and off the coast of New South Wales. So far several catches of around 18 tons each have been secured, and these may be expected to be improved upon with experience. The capture of tuna by purse-seine will also be attempted shortly. This operation calls for the exercise of considerable skill. Hitherto the method of jigging or trolling has been tried out in these waters with, on the whole, unsatisfactory results. The Division of Fisheries of C.S.I.R. is stimulating, and co-operating with, commercial interests and selected fishermen in the testing out of various types of fishing gear used in such work. This work extends beyond mackerel and tuna to smaller fish, such as pilchard, sprats, and anchovies. With regard to these three latter species smaller nets are employed and occasional catches of from a few hundredweights up to five tons have been effected. I think it can now be said with confidence that the development of an industry based on Australian pelagic fish has begun, and that this industry will reach significant proportions as compared with the already existing fishing industry, which is based largely on demersal and estuarine fishes. It is a virtual certainty that Australia, with its large seaboard, will share in a generally increased production from the marine resources of the southern Pacific, which at present yields only a paltry 2 per cent of the fishery products taken from the Pacific Ocean ('Pacific Fisherman', August, 1947).

REFERENCES

- ANON., 1947.—Tide of research rising. *Pacific Fisherman*. 45 (4) : 45.
 ———, 1947.—Who will harvest the Pacific? *Pacific Fisherman*. 49 (9) : 49-63.
 BULL, H. O., 1936.—Studies on conditioned responses in fishes. Part VII Temperature perception in teleosts. *Jour. Mar. Biol. Ass., N.S.*, 21 (1) : 1-27.
 DAKIN, W. J., 1934.—Science and sea fisheries, with special reference to Australia. R. M. Johnston Memorial Lecture. *Pap. & Proc. Roy. Soc. Tas.*, 1934 : 1-39 (1935).
 GREAT BRITAIN.—Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries. Fisheries in war-time. Report on the sea fisheries of England and Wales for the years 1939-1944 inclusive. London, 1946.
 GROSS, F., RAYMONT, E. G., NUTMAN, S. R., and GAULD, D. T., 1946.—Application of fertilisers to an open sea loch. *Nature*, 158 (4006) : 187-189.
 HERRINGTON, W. C., 1935.—Modifications of gear to curtail the destruction of undersized fish in otter trawling. *U.S. Bur. Fish., Invest. Rep.* 24.
 HICKLING, C. F., 1946.—The recovery of a deep sea fishery. *Min. Agric. Fish., Fish. Invest., Ser. II* 17 (1).
 ———, 1946, a.—Haddock on the Porcupine Bank. *Jour. Mar. Biol. Ass.*, 26 (3) : 398-407.
 HOFFBAUER, C., 1898.—Die Altersbestimmung des Karpfens an seiner Schuppe. *Allgem. Fischerei-Zeitung*, 23 Jahrg. (19) : 341-343 (1898).
 JESPERSEN, P., 1935.—Quantitative investigations on the distribution of macroplankton in different oceanic regions. *Dana Report No. 7*, 1935.
 LINDSAY, S. T., and THOMPSON, H., 1932.—Biology of the salmon (*Salmo salar*, L.) taken in Newfoundland waters in 1931. *Newfoundland Fish. Res. Comm. Rep.*, 1 (2).
 LUCAS, C. E., 1947.—The ecological effects of external metabolites. *Biol. Rev.*, 22 (3) : 270-295.
 MCKENZIE, R. A., 1934.—Cod and water temperature. *Biol. Bd. Canad. Atl. Biol. Sta., Progr. Rep.* 12. Note 41.
 OMMANNEY, F. D., 1938.—South Latitude. London.
 RUDD, JOHAN, T., 1943.—The effect of whaling on the stock of whales in the Antarctic. *Cons. Perm. Int. l'Expl. Mer, Annales Biologiques*, 1 (1) : 187-190 (1939-41).
 RUSSELL, E. S., 1942.—The overfishing problem. *Cambridge Univ. Press*.
 SAVAGE, R. E., and HARDY, A. C., 1935.—Phytoplankton and the herring. Part I. 1921 to 1932. *Min. Agric. Fish., Fish. Invest., Ser. II* 14 (2).

- SCHMIDT, J., 1930.—The Atlantic cod (*Gadus callarias*, L.) and local races of the same. *C.R. Lab. Carlsberg Copenh.*, 18 (6) : 1-72.
- STEVENS, G. A., 1947.—The British Raiidae. *Science Progress* 35 (138) : 220-236.
- THOMPSON, D'ARCY W., 1937.—The voyage of the Discovery. *Nature*, 140 (3543) : 529-532.
- THOMPSON, H., 1922.—Problems in haddock biology. *Fisheries Scotland Sci. Invest.*, 1922 No. V. (1923).
- , 1923.—Haddock biology II. Frequency and distribution of the age-classes in 1923. *Fisheries Scotland Sci. Invest.*, 1923. No. I. (1924).
- , 1926.—Metabolism of haddock and other gadoid fish in the aquarium. *Fisheries Scotland Sci. Invest.*, 1926. No. II.
- , 1927.—The haddock of the north-western North Sea. *Fisheries Scotland Sci. Invest.*, 1927. No. III. (1928).
- , 1942.—Pelagic tunicates and the plankton of south-eastern Australian waters, and their place in oceanographic studies. *Coun. Sci. Ind. Res (Aust.)*. Bull. 153.
- , 1943.—A biological and economic study of cod (*Gadus callarias*, L.) in the Newfoundland area. *Newf. Dept. Nat. Res.*, Res. Bull. 14.
- YONGE, C. M., 1947.—The Influence of man on marine life. *Endeavour*, January, 1947.

PLATE I

- FIG. a.—Microphotograph of a typical scale from a Newfoundland codfish, showing four completed years of growth.
- FIG. b.—One valve of the shell of a Tasmanian scallop, showing five apparent annuli and some growth in fifth year.

(Photos. A. Proctor.)

PLATE II

A bream, with a microphotograph of one of its scales showing four completed years of growth. The scale grows in proportion to the fish, and by measuring the annual increments in the scale, the rate of growth of the fish can be determined.

(I.S.R. Munro del. Photo. A. Proctor.)

PLATE III

Microphotographs of otoliths from six flathead:—

1. Length of fish 4 inches. No annulus yet formed in otolith.
2. Length of fish 7 inches. About to form second annulus.
3. Length of fish 11½ inches. Two complete annuli; third about to form.
4. Length of fish 13¼ inches. Three complete annuli.
5. Length of fish 15½ inches. Four complete annuli (first indistinct).
6. Length of fish 16½ inches. Four distinct annuli; fifth just forming.

(Prepared by W. S. Fairbridge. Photo. A. Proctor.)

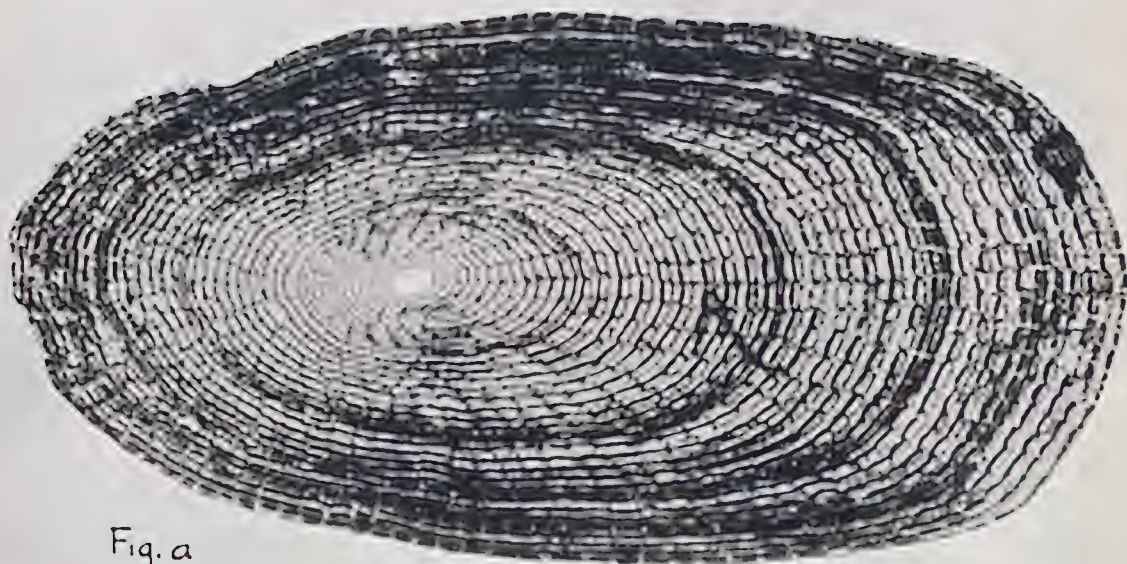
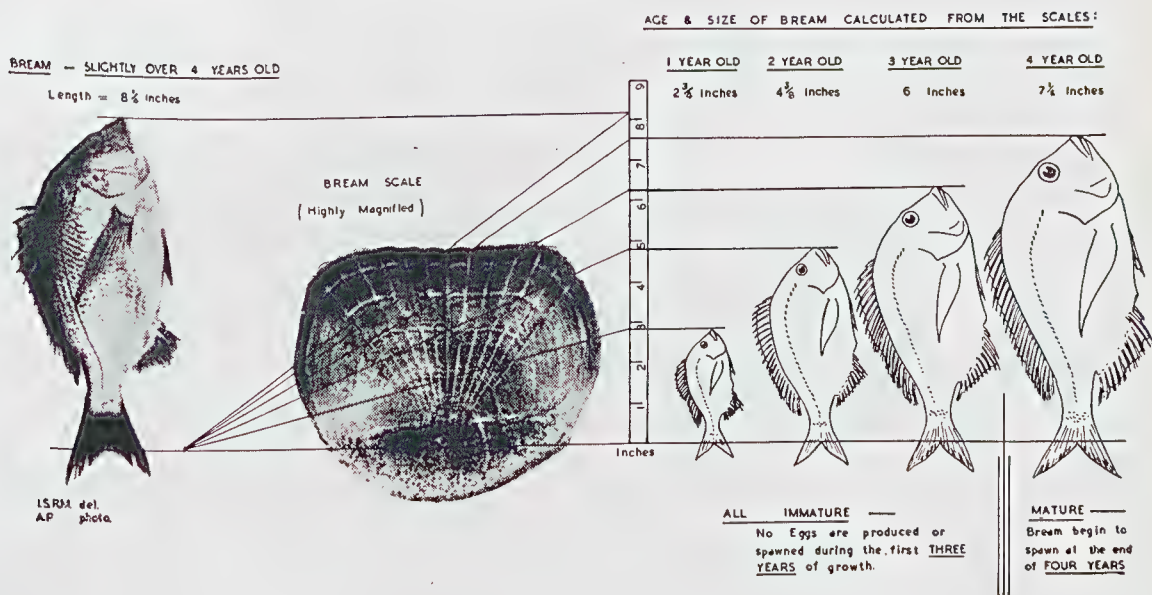


Fig. a



Fig. b

AGE & GROWTH — AUSTRALIAN BREEM (ACANTHOPAGRUS AUSTRALIS)





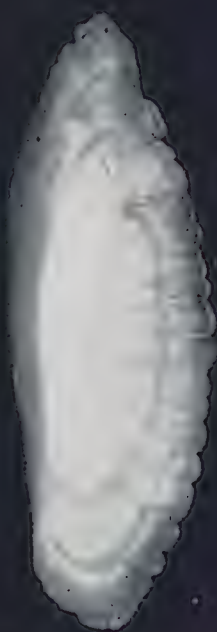
6



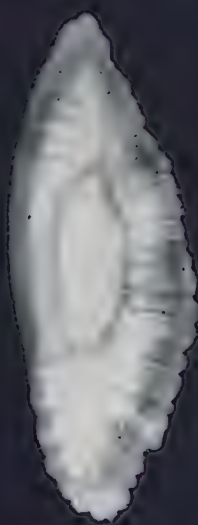
4



2



5



3



1

Tasmanian Araneae of the Family Hahniidae with Notes on their Respiratory Systems

By

V. V. HICKMAN

Ralston Professor of Biology, University of Tasmania

(Read 11th November, 1947)

FIGURES 1-28

Spiders belonging to the family Hahniidae are usually small, rarely being more than two or three millimetres in length. Most of them live near the ground in grass tussocks, low shrubs, moss or under stones. A few species are found under the bark of trees.

Members of the family are characterised by having the six spinnerets arranged in a single transverse row. The tracheal spiracle is somewhat in advance of the spinnerets, and the tracheal system extends into the cephalothorax. In some cases, more than three hundred fine tubules pass through the narrow petiolus, which joins the abdomen to the cephalothorax. The chelicerae lack lateral condyles. The margins of the cheliceral furrow are oblique and provided with teeth. The labium is free. Maxillae are converging and furnished with a scopula. The sternum is shield-shaped, about as wide as it is long and broadly truncated in front. In some exotic species a stridulating apparatus is present. This consists of two groups of short spines on the front of the abdomen, which rub against a roughened area on the posterior part of the carapace. The legs are provided with three tarsal claws, but are without scopulae and claw-tufts. Trichobothria are present on tibiae, metatarsi, and tarsi.

Little is known of the habits of the members of this family. Some of the species spin delicate sheet webs, which are suspended in shallow depressions in the ground. *Scotopsilus bicolor* Simon makes a small sheet web under the loose bark on eucalypts. The spider rests on the upper surface of the web, which is not provided with a retreat.

In spite of the fact that members of the Hahniidae are not uncommon, very few seem to have been recorded from either Australia or New Zealand. Those described from these regions are as follows:—

Scotopsilus bicolor Simon (1886, p. LXI) from Tasmania.

Scotopsilus sp. Simon (1909, p. 181) from West Australia.

Nannonymphaeus pusillus Rainbow (1920, p. 259) from Lord Howe Island.

Neoviolia insolens Butler (1929, p. 45) from Victoria.

Hahnia solitaria Bryant (1935, p. 80) from New Zealand.

The present paper deals with four Tasmanian species, three of which are new. Some features of the respiratory systems of three of the species are given in brief notes as an appendix to the paper.

Family HAHNIIDAE

Genus *Hahnia* C. Koch, 1841*Hahnia astrolomae*, sp. n.

(Figs 1-7)

Male							mm.
Total length							1.564
Length of carapace							0.812
Width of carapace							0.580
Length of abdomen							0.928
Width of abdomen							0.696
Leg	Femur	Patella	Tibia	Metatarsus	Tarsus	Total	
1	0.726	0.247	0.644	0.479	0.356	2.452	
2	0.617	0.233	0.493	0.397	0.329	2.069	
3	0.617	0.206	0.329	0.329	0.288	1.769	
4	0.589	0.206	0.452	0.397	0.315	1.959	
Palp	0.315	0.164	0.137	....	0.206	0.822	

Colour. Carapace, chelicerae, maxillae, labium and sternum brown. Front and sides of abdomen dark-grey. Dorsal surface cream with a dark-grey triangular patch on anterior half and four dark-grey chevrons, incomplete in mid line, on posterior half. Ventral surface cream in the middle merging into dark-grey speckled with cream spots at the sides. Coxae cream. First pair of legs and palpi brown. Other legs cream ringed with brown on metatarsi, tibiae, patellae and distal part of femora.

Carapace. Widest between second and third coxae. Thoracic groove longitudinal. Radial grooves distinct. An irregular longitudinal row of about eight hairs extends from the front of the thoracic groove to the eye-group.

Eyes. The eight eyes are arranged in two rows. Viewed from above the front row is slightly recurved and the posterior row procurved. The eyes are subequal in size. The ratio of the eyes AME : ALE : PME : PLE = 13 : 12 : 11 : 11. AME are mounted on a small black tubercle and are separated from each other by 6/13 of their diameter and from ALE by 4/13 of their diameter. The lateral eyes are contiguous. PME are separated from each other by 19/11 of their diameter and from PLE by 9/11 of their diameter. The median ocular quadrangle is wider behind than in front in ratio 37 : 31. Its length is shorter than its posterior width in ratio 32 : 37. The distance from AME to margin of clypeus is 20/13 of the diameter of AME. There is a single seta in front of AME and one on each side of clypeus.

Chelicerae. Vertical. Condyles absent. Fang moderately long. Two teeth are present on promargin and two on the retromargin. A light scopula of five or six barbed hairs is situated on the promargin (fig. 1).

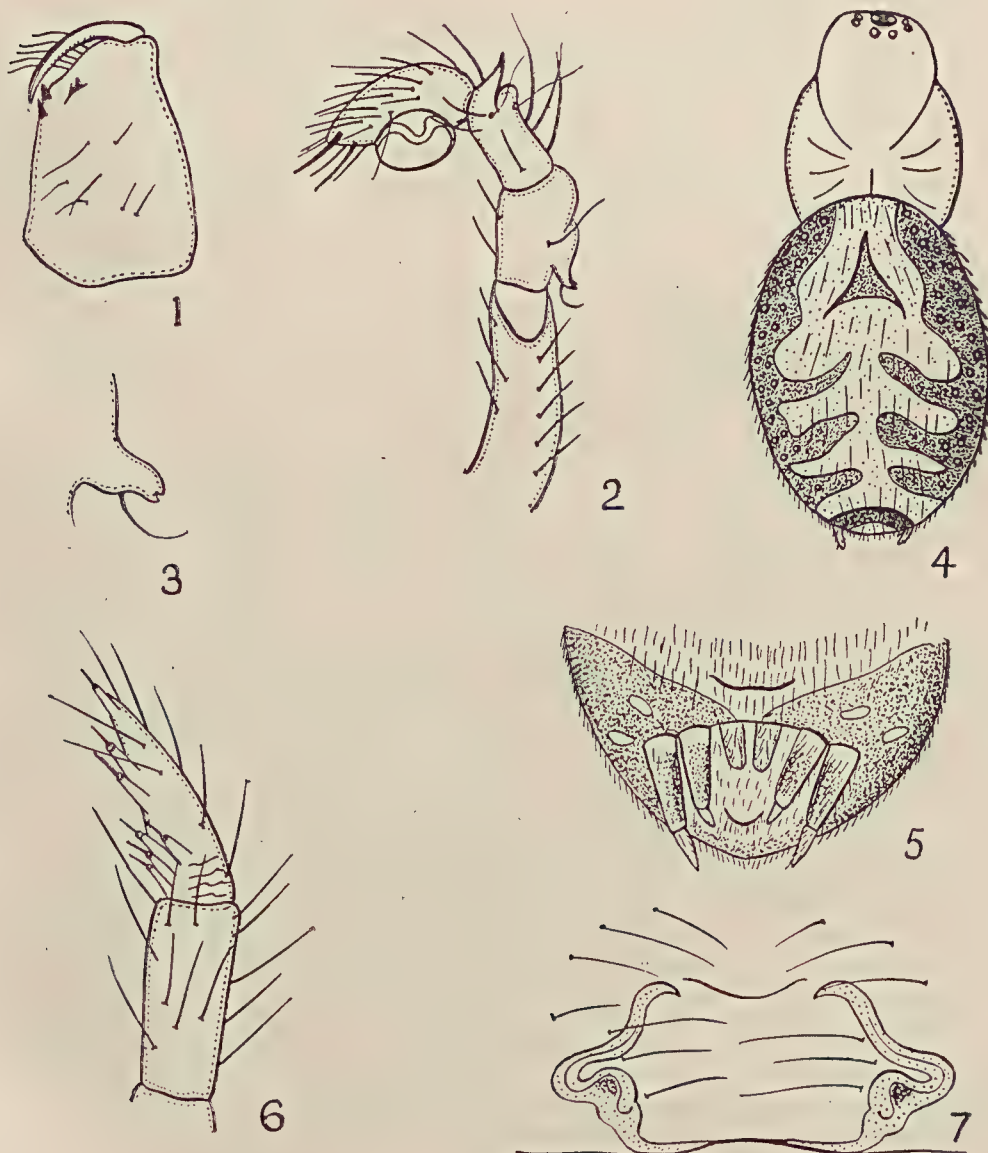
Maxillae. Somewhat rectangular, slightly converging, a light scopula on inner apical angle. The front margin is slightly curved and provided with a serrula which does not extend onto the side.

Labium. Wider than long in ratio 23 : 19. Rounded in front and clothed with a few long hairs.

Sternum. Longer than wide in ratio 26 : 25, convex, shield-shaped, lightly clothed with long hairs. Fourth coxae separated by about 2/3 of their width.

Legs. 1.2.4.3. Lightly clothed with finely barbed hairs. Two trichobothria on each tarsus, two on the apical half of each metatarsus and five on each tibia. Scopulae and claw-tufts absent. Three tarsal claws, the lower claw with two

teeth, the upper claws with about five teeth. A small 'drum' is present on the dorsal surface of each tarsus in the distal quarter. The first two pairs of legs have one prolateral spine near the apex of the femora and one ventral spine near the apex of the metatarsi. The last two pairs of legs have one dorsal spine at the apex of the patellae, 1 - 1 on the dorsal side of the tibiae, and 1 prolateral, 1 ventral and 1 retrolateral at the apex of the metatarsi. Elsewhere on the legs spines are absent.



FIGS 1-7.

Hahnia astrolomae, sp. n. Fig. 1: Retrolateral view of left chelicera of male. Fig. 2: Left palpus of male. Fig. 3: Apophysis on patella of male palpus. Fig. 4: Dorsal view of female. Fig. 5: Spinnerets of female. Fig. 6: Hind spinneret of female. Fig. 7: Epigynum of female.

Palpi. On the retrolateral side of the patella near the base is a short blunt tooth-like apophysis provided with a single curved hair (figs. 2 and 3). On the dorsal side at the apex is a long stout bristle. The tibia, which is nearly as long as the patella, has a stout bristle and four trichobothria on its dorsal side. On the retrolateral side at the apex the tibia is produced into a short curved apophysis. The tarsus is small and spoon-shaped. On its retrolateral margin it is furnished with four spine-like setae.

Abdomen. Ovoid, clothed with long coarse hairs on the dorsal surface and finer hairs on the ventral surface. The spinnerets are arranged in a transverse row. The apical segment of the hind spinnerets is $\frac{7}{8}$ the length of the basal segment. The fore spinnerets are longer than the basal segment of the hind spinnerets in ratio 15 : 11. The middle spinnerets are about $\frac{7}{11}$ as long as the fore spinnerets. The apical segment of the hind spinnerets has about seven spinning tubes. The fore spinnerets have one large and two very small tubes, and the middle spinnerets have four tubes. The tracheal spiracle is situated a short distance in front of the spinnerets.

Female						mm.
Total length						1.624
Length of carapace						0.696
Width of carapace						0.580
Length of abdomen						1.044
Width of abdomen						0.754
Leg	Femur	Patella	Tibia	Metatarsus	Tarsus	Total
1	0.507	0.206	0.356	0.288	0.288	1.645
2	0.466	0.206	0.301	0.274	0.288	1.535
3	0.397	0.178	0.274	0.247	0.233	1.329
4	0.521	0.192	0.370	0.315	0.288	1.686
Palp	0.206	0.123	0.151		0.192	0.672

Colour. As in the male but the dorsal surface of the abdomen shows a larger area of cream and not so much dark grey. The four chevrons are more pronounced (fig. 4).

The form of the carapace, eyes, chelicerae, maxillae, labium and sternum as in the male.

Legs. 4.1.2.3. The two front pairs of legs are much shorter than those of the male. Trichobothria and spines are arranged as in the male. The superior tarsal claws are similar and provided with seven teeth, which decrease in length towards the base of the claws. Inferior claw with two teeth. A 'drum' is present on the dorsal side of each tarsus in the distal quarter of the segment as in the male.

Palpi. Tarsus slightly longer than tibia, clothed with a number of coarse setae. Tibia has four trichobothria, but 'drum' and trichobothria are absent from the tarsus. The tarsal claw is slightly curved and provided with three small teeth.

Abdomen. Ovoid. Spinnerets in a transverse row (fig. 5). Middle spinnerets with six spinning tubes. Fore spinnerets with one large and two small tubes. The apical segment of the hind spinnerets about equal in length to the basal segment and provided with seven spinning tubes (fig. 6).

Epigynum. The form of the epigynum as seen in transparent preparations is shown in fig. 7.

Locality. The type specimens were collected in small recumbent shrubs, especially in *Astroloma humifusum*, on the Domain, Hobart, 24th August, 1942. The spider is quite common. It also occurs at Risdon and at the Punch Bowl, Launceston.

Hahnia ampullaria, sp. n.

(Figs 8-14)

Male		mm.
Total length	.....	1.682
Length of carapace	.....	0.754
Width of carapace	.....	0.696
Length of abdomen	.....	1.044
Width of abdomen	.....	0.750

Leg	Femur	Patella	Tibia	Metatarsus	Tarsus	Total
1	0.822	0.288	0.726	0.589	0.493	2.918
2	0.685	0.260	0.603	0.493	0.466	2.507
3	0.548	0.233	0.452	0.438	0.411	2.082
4	0.685	0.233	0.617	0.548	0.480	2.563
Palp	0.274	0.206	0.110	.....	0.329	0.919

Colour. Carapace dull yellow with a dark-grey patch in the middle and four dark-grey patches on each side. The eye-group is set in black pigment. Legs, chelicerae, palpi, maxillae and labium dull yellow. Sternum yellowish with dark-grey margin. Dorsal surface of abdomen light yellow with dark-grey markings. Ventral surface of abdomen light yellow with dark-grey areas in the middle and in front of the spinnerets. The spinnerets are light yellow.

Carapace. Widest between second coxae. Thoracic groove longitudinal. A median row of four or five long hairs on the dark area in front of the groove.

Eyes. The eight eyes are arranged in two rows. Viewed from above the first row is slightly recurved and the second row slightly procurved. AME dark, the other eyes pearly white. Ratio of eyes AME : ALE : PME : PLE = 11 : 20 : 17 : 17. Laterals contiguous. AME almost contiguous with ALE but separated from each other by 5/11 of their diameter. PME separated from each other by 15/17 of their diameter and from PLE by 3/17 of their diameter. The median ocular quadrangle wider behind than in front in ratio 48 : 26. The length of the quadrangle is less than its width behind in ratio 35 : 48. Height of clypeus in front of AME is almost three times the diameter of AME.

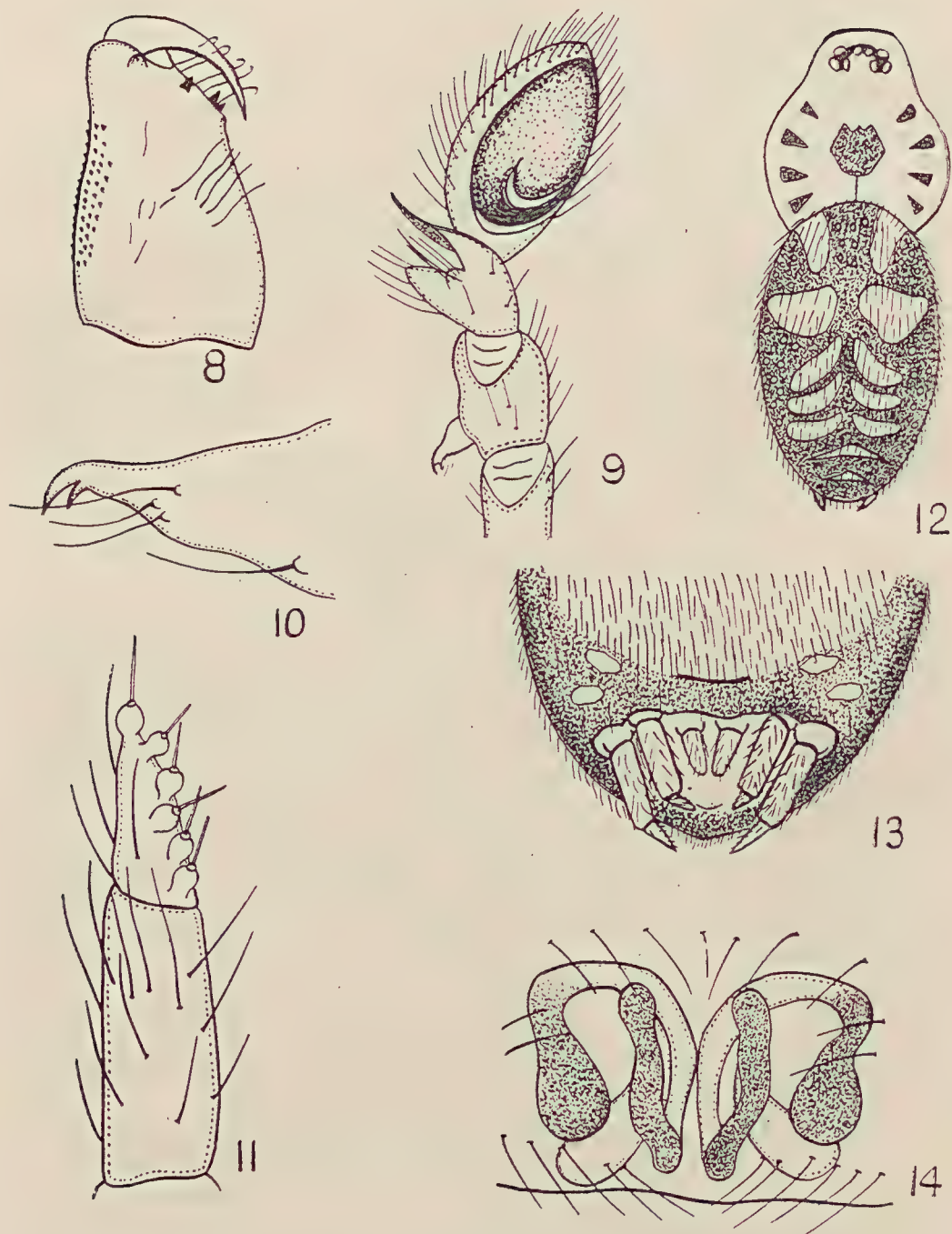
Chelicerae. Vertical, conical, devoid of lateral condyles. Outer surface of paturon coarsely granular. Furrow oblique. Retromargin provided with one tooth, the promargin with two teeth (fig. 8). A light scopula of five or six barbed hairs along promargin.

Maxillae. Converging. A light scopula at inner apical angle. Front margin rounded and provided with a serrula.

Labium. Wider than long in ratio 39 : 25. Rounded in front and fringed with a few long hairs.

Sternum. Shield-shaped, convex, longer than wide in ratio 30 : 29. Clothed with a few long hairs, which are more numerous round the margin than in the centre. The fourth coxae are separated by about once their diameter.

Legs. 1.4.2.3. Lightly clothed with long finely barbed hairs. Two trichobothria on each tarsus, two on the apical half of each metatarsus and six on each tibia. A small 'drum' is present on the dorsal side of each tarsus in the apical quarter. Scopulae and claw-tufts absent. Three tarsal claws, the upper claws similar with



FIGS 8-14.

Hahnia ampullaria, sp. n. Fig. 8: Retrolateral view of right chelicera of male. Fig. 9: Right palpus of male. Fig. 10: Apophysis on patella of male palpus. Fig. 11: Hind spinneret of male. Fig. 12: Dorsal view of female. Fig. 13: Spinnerets of female. Fig. 14: Epigynum of female.

six teeth, the lower claw with two teeth. No spines are present on any of the segments. The hairs on the ventral surface of the femora are longer and coarser than elsewhere.

Palpi. Tarsus spoon-shaped. Tibia short and produced into a long sharp apophysis as shown in fig. 9. Near the base of the apophysis is a small tubercle bearing a group of five setae. There are four trichobothria on the dorsal side of the tibia. The patella is nearly twice the length of the tibia and is provided with a hook-like apophysis on the retrolateral side near the base. The apophysis has a tooth near the hook-like end and is provided with three setae (fig. 10).

Abdomen. Ovoid, clothed with long hairs. Spinnerets in a transverse row. Apical segment of the hind spinnerets slightly shorter than the basal segment, and provided with six spinning tubes, which have the form of small bulbs or ampullae (fig. 11). The fore spinnerets are longer than the basal segment of the hind spinnerets in ratio 3 : 2. Each is provided with one large and one small bulbous spinning tube on the small conical segment at the apex. The middle spinnerets are shorter than the basal segment of the hind spinnerets and are furnished with four bulbous spinning tubes. The tracheal spiracle is a short distance in front of the spinnerets.

Female

	mm.
Total length	1.740
Length of carapace	0.812
Width of carapace	0.638
Length of abdomen	1.160
Width of abdomen	0.812

Leg	Femur	Patella	Tibia	Metatarsus	Tarsus	Total
1	0.699	0.247	0.589	0.493	0.466	2.494
2	0.617	0.247	0.507	0.425	0.438	2.234
3	0.548	0.219	0.411	0.411	0.384	1.973
4	0.671	0.247	0.575	0.548	0.452	2.493
Palp	0.233	0.137	0.205	.....	0.274	0.849

The female resembles the male in coloration and markings (fig. 12). Only the following features need be described.

Legs. 1.4.2.3. The first and fourth pairs are almost equal in length. Trichobothria, spines and tarsal 'drum' are present as in the male.

Palpi. The tarsal segment is clothed with hairs and stiff bristles but lacks trichobothria and a 'drum'. The tarsal claw is almost straight and has one small tooth. The tibia is slightly shorter than the tarsus and is provided with four trichobothria.

Abdomen. Ovoid. Spinnerets as in the male (fig. 13), but the spinning tubes on the apical segment of the hind spinnerets are more numerous.

Epigynum. The form of the epigynum as seen in transparent preparations is shown in fig. 14.

Locality. The type specimens were collected on the Domain, Hobart, 20th August, 1947. This spider is found on the under side of stones, especially on those lying amongst the debris at the foot of Casuarina trees.

Genus *Neoaviola* Butler, 1929*Neoaviola wellingtoni*, sp. n.

(Figs 15-21)

Male							mm.
Total length							1.276
Length of carapace							0.638
Width of carapace							0.522
Length of abdomen							0.754
Width of abdomen							0.580
Leg		Femur	Patella	Tibia	Metatarsus	Tarsus	Total
1	.....	0.466	0.192	0.329	0.288	0.329	1.604
2	.....	0.452	0.178	0.301	0.274	0.329	1.534
3	.....	0.411	0.178	0.274	0.274	0.315	1.452
4	.....	0.507	0.178	0.411	0.384	0.369	1.849
Palp	.....	0.178	0.150	0.082	.....	0.233	0.643

Colour. Carapace light brown marked with a dark brown area in front of the thoracic groove, a dark brown margin and four triangular brown patches on each side (fig. 15). Legs brown but lighter in colour on basal half of femora. Palpi, chelicerae and labium yellowish. Sternum light brown in the centre, darker at the sides. Maxillae and coxae dull yellow. Abdomen above and at the sides very dark-grey, nearly black. The dorsal surface ornamented with a pair of yellowish spots on anterior half and six thin yellowish chevrons on posterior half. These markings on both carapace and abdomen are not constant and in some specimens the dark brown markings on the carapace are very faint or absent.

Carapace. Widest between second and third coxae. Thoracic groove longitudinal. Radial grooves distinct. An irregular double row of hairs is situated in a median longitudinal line between thoracic groove and eyes.

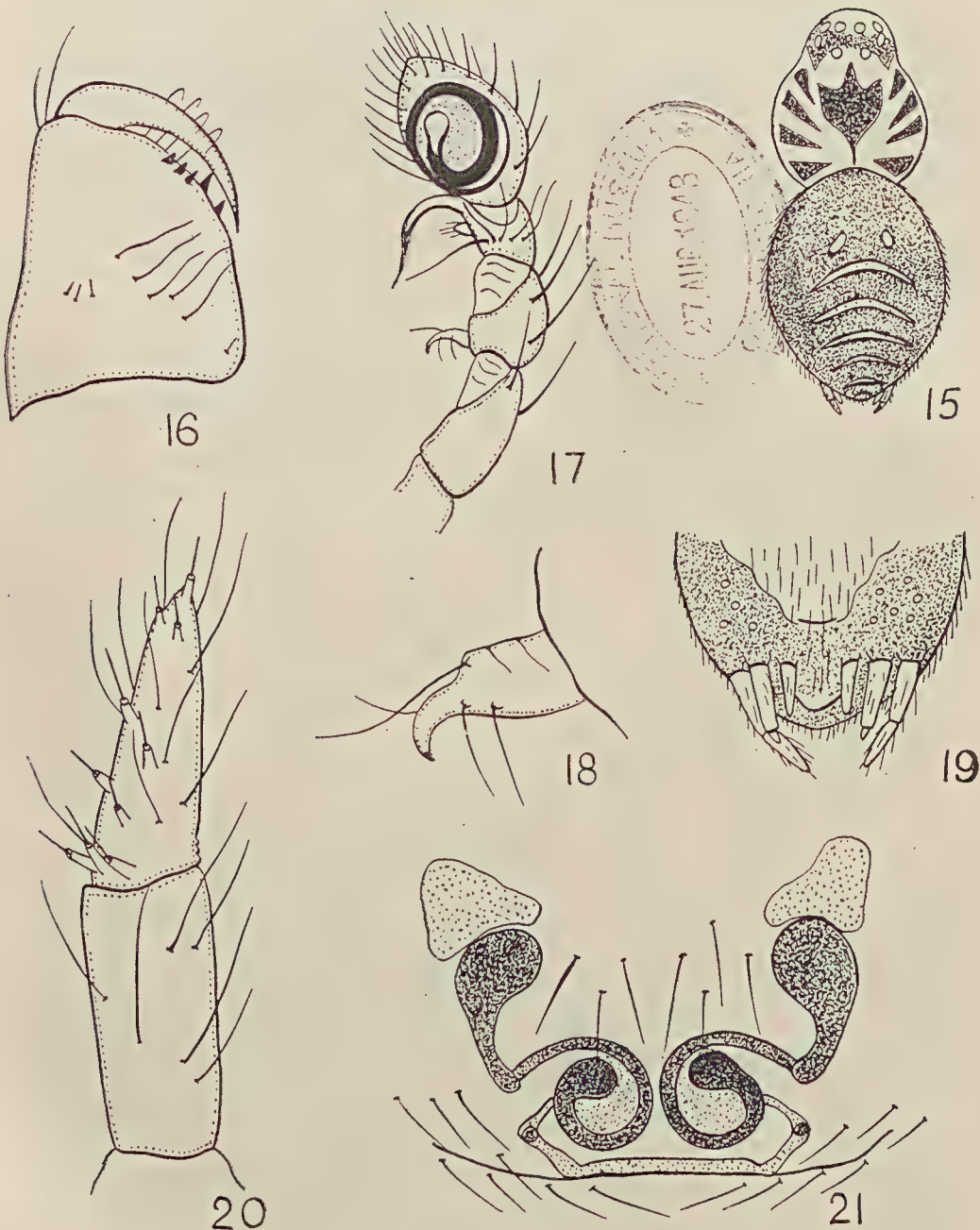
Eyes. The eight eyes are arranged in two rows. Viewed from above the front row is slightly procurved and the hind row distinctly procurved. AME dark, other eyes pearly white. The eye-group occupies almost the full width of the head. Ratio of eyes AME : ALE : PME : PLE = 13 : 14 : 14 : 17. The laterals are contiguous. AME are almost contiguous with ALE but are separated from each other by 4/13 of their diameter. PME are separated from each other by 15/14 of their diameter and from PLE by 9/14 of their diameter. The median ocular quadrangle is wider behind than in front in ratio 44 : 31, and is shorter than its posterior width in ratio 38 : 44. The height of the clypeus is 20/13 of the diameter of AME.

Chelicerae. Vertical, clothed with a few long hairs in front. Lateral condyles absent. Fang moderately curved. Furrow oblique with three small teeth on the retromargin and one large and one small tooth on the promargin (fig. 16). There is a light scopula of six or seven barbed hairs on the promargin.

Maxillae. Short, broad and convex. Slightly converging, anterior margin with a well developed serrula. The inner anterior angle is furnished with a slight scopula.

Labium. Wider than long in ratio 3 : 2. Rounded in front and fringed with a few long hairs.

Sternum. Shield-shaped, longer than wide in ratio 12 : 11. Convex, truncate between the fourth coxae, which are separated by about once their diameter. Surface clothed with a few long hairs.



FIGS 15-21.

Neoaviola wellingtoni, sp. n. Fig. 15: Dorsal view of male. Fig. 16: Retrolateral view of right chelicera of male. Fig. 17: Ventral view of right palpus of male. Fig. 18: Apophysis on patella of male palp. Fig. 19: Spinnerets of male. Fig. 20: Hind spinneret of male. Fig. 21: Epigynum of female.

Legs. 4.1.2.3. Lightly clothed with long hairs. Two trichobothria on basal half of each tarsus, two on each metatarsus and five on each tibia. A 'drum' is present on the dorsal side of each tarsus in the apical quarter. Scopulae and claw-tufts absent. Three tarsal claws present. Upper claws similar and with a row of six teeth. Lower claw with two teeth. The teeth on the upper claws of the third and fourth tarsi are much smaller than those on the first and second tarsi. There is a slender dorsal spine at the base and apex of each patella. On each tibia there is a slender dorsal spine and a prolateral spine near the base. Elsewhere on the legs spines are absent.

Palpi. Tarsus spoon-shaped. Tibia much shorter than patella and produced into a long curved sharp apophysis on the retrolateral side at the apex (fig. 17). In the normal flexed condition of the appendage the tip of the apophysis is almost in contact with a hook-like projection from the retrolateral side of the patella (fig. 18). There are four trichobothria on the tibia.

Abdomen. Ovoid, clothed with barbed hairs. Tracheal spiracle a short distance in front of spinnerets. The six spinnerets are in a transverse row (fig. 19). The middle pair are separated from each other by little more than once their diameter. They are slightly shorter than the basal segment of the fore spinnerets and are provided with six spinning tubes. The apical segment of the fore spinnerets is small and conical. It is provided with one spinning tube. The hind spinnerets are nearly twice the length of the fore spinnerets. The apical segment of the hind spinnerets is longer than the basal segment in ratio 10 : 7 and is provided with ten spinning tubes (fig. 20).

Female

						mm.
	Total length	.....	.....	.....	.....	1.624
	Length of carapace	.....	.....	.....	.....	0.638
	Width of carapace	.....	.....	.....	.....	0.580
	Length of abdomen	.....	.....	.....	.....	0.928
	Width of abdomen	.....	.....	.....	.....	0.812
Leg	Femur	Patella	Tibia	Metatarsus	Tarsus	Total
1	0.521	0.219	0.343	0.315	0.343	1.741
2	0.493	0.219	0.343	0.328	0.343	1.726
3	0.466	0.206	0.301	0.315	0.343	1.631
4	0.603	0.206	0.493	0.424	0.411	2.137
Palp	0.219	0.123	0.164	.....	0.247	0.753

The female is somewhat lighter in coloration than the male but otherwise resembles it in appearance and only the following characters need be described.

Palpi. There are four trichobothria on the tibia but none on the tarsus. A tarsal 'drum' is also lacking. The claw is almost straight and appears to lack teeth. Spines are present and arranged as follows. Patella: dorsal 1-1. Tibia: dorsal 1. Tarsus: dorsal 1-1, prolateral 1-1, ventral 1-1. Elsewhere 0.

Epigynum. The form of the epigynum as seen in transparent preparations is shown in fig. 21.

Spinnerets. Arranged in a transverse row as in the male. The middle spinnerets are 2/3 the length of the fore spinnerets and are furnished with eight spinning tubes. The fore spinnerets are about half as long as the hind spinnerets and have a short apical segment carrying three spinning tubes. The hind spinnerets are long and slender, the apical segment being nearly twice as long as the basal segment and bearing 12 spinning tubes.

Locality. The type specimens were collected on Mount Wellington, 19th December, 1944. The spiders were found in moss.

Genus *Scotopsilus* Simon, 1886*Scotopsilus bicolor* Simon

(Figs 22-26)

This species is the type of the genus and was described by Simon (1886, p. LXI) from a female specimen taken at Launceston. The description is very brief and is not illustrated. However, in a later publication Simon (1898, p. 271) gave a figure of the spinnerets.

The following account deals with the hitherto unknown male and gives some additional notes on the female.

Male						mm.
Total length						4.176
Length of carapace						1.856
Width of carapace						1.566
Length of abdomen						2.494
Width of abdomen						1.972
Leg	Femur	Patella	Tibia	Metatarsus	Tarsus	Total
1	1.276	0.580	1.102	0.928	0.696	4.582
2	1.160	0.580	1.044	0.928	0.638	4.350
3	1.044	0.464	0.870	0.986	0.638	4.002
4	1.334	0.580	1.160	1.160	0.754	4.988
Palp	0.522	0.348	0.174	....	0.464	1.508

There are considerable variations in size, some mature specimens being little more than half the size of the specimen selected for description.

Colour. Carapace, legs, maxillae and sternum golden yellow. Clypeus, chelicerae and sides of head brown. Black pigment between the eyes. Palpi brownish yellow. Abdomen black above and at the sides, lighter underneath. Specimens preserved in alcohol show the black dorsal surface of the abdomen speckled with small grey dots, which tend to be arranged in oblique rows at the sides and to form five indistinct chevrons on the posterior half of dorsal surface.

Carapace. Widest between second coxae. Thoracic groove longitudinal. Radial grooves distinct. A group of about eleven hairs in front of thoracic groove and a median row of hairs leading forward to the eyes. A few short hairs on the dorsal surface of the head. Thoracic region of the carapace smooth and without hairs.

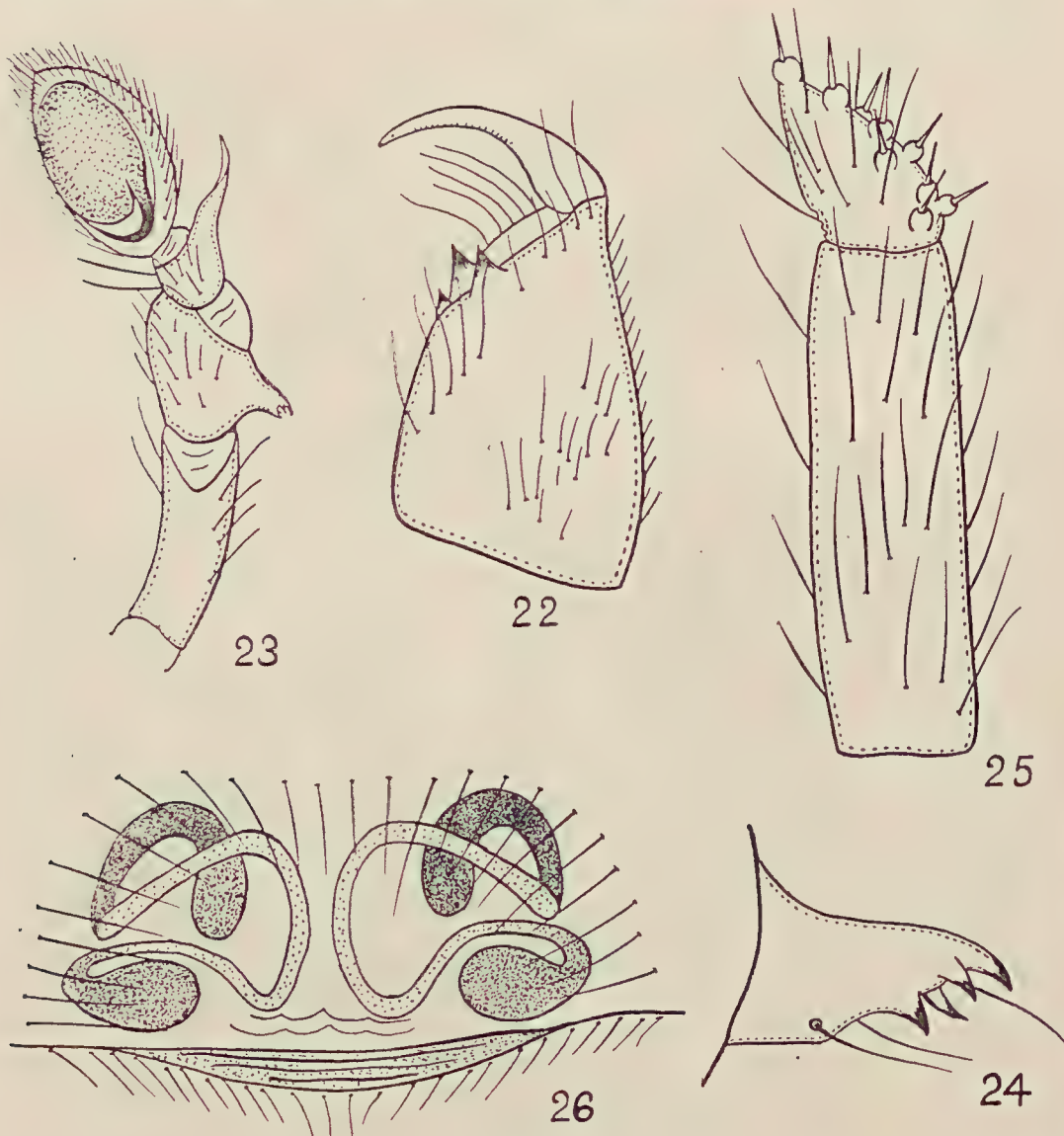
Eyes. The eight eyes are arranged in two rows. Viewed from above the front row appears slightly recurved and the hind row distinctly procurved. The eye-group is shorter than the width of the head in ratio 5 : 8. AME are the smallest of the group. The ratio of the eyes AME : ALE : PME : PLE = 5 : 10 : 7 : 9. AME are separated from each other by $\frac{2}{5}$ of their diameter and from ALE by the same distance. Lateral eyes almost contiguous. PME separated from each other by $\frac{8}{7}$ of their diameter and from PLE by $\frac{5}{7}$ of their diameter. Median ocular quadrangle wider behind than in front in ratio 22 : 12. The posterior width is greater than the length in ratio 22 : 18. The height of the clypeus below AME is $\frac{9}{5}$ of the diameter of AME. The margin of the clypeus is fringed with about ten long hairs.

Chelicerae. Conical and vertical. Clothed with a few stiff hairs in front. Lateral condyles absent. Fang moderately long and curved. Furrow oblique. Promargin with a light scapula and one large and one small tooth. Retromargin with a single large tooth. (fig. 22).

Maxillae. Broad, rectangular, somewhat converging and slightly depressed in the middle. A small scopula on the inner anterior angle. Serrula confined to front margin and not extending onto side.

Labium. Wider than long in ratio 6 : 5. Truncate in front and fringed with a few hairs. Depressed in the middle. Extending forward for more than half the length of the maxillae.

Sternum. Shield-shaped. Longer than wide in ratio 20 : 18. Clothed with short black hairs, which are more numerous at the sides than at the centre. Posterior coxae separated by slightly more than their diameter.



FIGS 22-26.

Scotopsilus bicolor Simon. Fig. 22: Retrolateral view of left chelicera of male. Fig. 23: Ventral view of left palpus of male. Fig. 24: Apophysis on patella of male palp. Fig. 25: Right hind spinneret with apical segment extended. Fig. 26: Epigynum of female.

Legs. 4.2.1.3. Clothed with black hairs which are more numerous on the sides of the tibiae, metatarsi and tarsi than elsewhere. True spines are absent, but there is a short dorsal bristle at the apex of each patella and one near the base of each tibia. There are two trichobothria and a 'drum' on the apical half of each tarsus, two trichobothria towards the apex of each metatarsus and five in two rows on each tibia. Three tarsal claws are present. The upper claws similar and with about nine teeth. Lower claw with two teeth. Scopulae and claw-tufts absent.

Palpi. Tarsal segment spoon-shaped. Tibia very short and produced into a long sharp curved apophysis on the retrolateral side at the apex. Patella is twice the length of the tibia and, on the retrolateral side, is produced into a short stout apophysis which has four curved teeth at the apex and is furnished with several setae (figs 23 and 24). There are four trichobothria on the tibia.

Abdomen. Ovoid, clothed with black hairs. Tracheal spiracle a short distance in front of the spinnerets. The spinnerets are cylindrical and arranged in a slightly curved transverse row, the hind spinnerets being external to and slightly above the fore spinnerets. The apical segment of the hind spinnerets is very short, being only $\frac{2}{5}$ of the length of the basal segment. It is furnished with nine short bulbous spinning tubes, and in the living spider, is turned inwards (fig. 25). The fore spinnerets are slightly shorter than the basal segment of the hind spinnerets and are provided with two bulbous spinning tubes at the apex. The middle spinnerets are about $\frac{2}{3}$ the length of the fore spinnerets and are furnished with about twelve bulbous spinning tubes.

Female						mm.
Total length						3.190
Length of carapace						1.392
Width of carapace						1.102
Length of abdomen						2.030
Width of abdomen						1.566
Leg	Femur	Patella	Tibia	Metatarsus	Tarsus	Total
1	1.044	0.406	0.870	0.754	0.580	3.654
2	0.986	0.406	0.812	0.696	0.580	3.480
3	0.870	0.348	0.754	0.754	0.522	3.248
4	1.044	0.406	0.928	0.928	0.580	3.886
Palp	0.406	0.174	0.290	.....	0.348	1.218

The female resembles the male in coloration and in the form of the carapace, eyes, chelicerae, maxillae, labium, sternum and legs.

Palpi. The tarsal claw is almost straight and devoid of teeth. The tarsus is clothed with barbed hairs and stout spine-like setae, but lacks trichobothria and a 'drum'. The tibia is furnished with four trichobothria and several stout setae.

Abdomen. Ovoid. The spinnerets are cylindrical and arranged as in the male but their relative lengths differ from those of the male. The apical segment of the hind spinnerets is a little less than half the length of the basal segment and is furnished with eleven bulbous spinning tubes, one near the base being much larger than the others. The fore spinnerets are slightly longer than the basal segment of the hind spinnerets in ratio 25 : 22, and are provided with four bulbous spinning tubes at the apex. The middle spinnerets are $\frac{3}{5}$ of the length of the fore spinnerets and are furnished with about twelve spinning tubes. The distance of the tracheal spiracle from the base of the spinnerets is equal to about $\frac{1}{3}$ of the distance from the base of the spinnerets to the epigastric furrow.

Epigynum. The form of the epigynum as seen in transparent preparations is shown in fig. 26.

Locality. The allotype male was collected at Risdon during January. The spider lives under the loose bark on eucalypts, and is widely distributed throughout the State. It has been collected at Trevallyn, The Cascades, Fern Tree and elsewhere. Specimens kept in the laboratory spun small sheet webs.

APPENDIX

NOTES ON THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEMS OF SCOTOPSILUS, HAHNIA AND NEOAVIOLA (FIGS 27 AND 28)

In *Scotopsilus bicolor* Simon the tracheal spiracle opens into a wide atrium, which gives off two stout trunks. These pass forward for a short distance and then each divides into a short outer branch and a slightly longer inner branch (fig. 27). The inner branches lie between the longitudinal muscle bands, whilst the outer branches lie outside them. Each inner branch divides to form a bundle of about 150 tracheal tubes and each outer branch divides to form a bundle of 26 tracheal tubes. The two inner bundles pass forward to the petiolus. The two outer bundles pass forward on the outer side of the dorso-ventral muscles and genital ducts until in line with the book-lungs. Here they bend inwards towards the petiolus. The tubes of the four bundles now come together and pass through the petiolus into the cephalothorax. In the petiolus they lie below the gut (fig. 28), the tubes from the outer bundles being above those from the inner bundles. There is a noticeable difference in the size of the tubes forming the inner and outer bundles. The average diameter of those forming the outer bundles is about 8 micra, whilst that of those composing the inner bundles is about 5 micra. The total number of tubes entering the cephalothorax is about 312. This number includes nearly all the tubes from the two outer bundles and most of those from the two inner bundles, very few supplying the abdomen. The two book-lungs are in the usual position. Each has about 13 leaves.

The respiratory systems of *Hahnia astrolomae* sp. n. and *Neoaviola wellingtoni* sp. n. resemble that of *Scotopsilus bicolor*. The tracheal spiracle leads into a wide atrium, which gives off two trunks. These divide into inner and outer branches from which tracheal tubes arise and pass forward to the petiolus. In the case of *Hahnia astrolomae* the outer branches each give rise to about 25 tubes having an average diameter of 5 micra, whilst the inner branches each give rise to about 35 tubes having an average diameter of 3 micra. About 113 tubes pass through the petiolus into the cephalothorax. The book-lungs have six leaves.

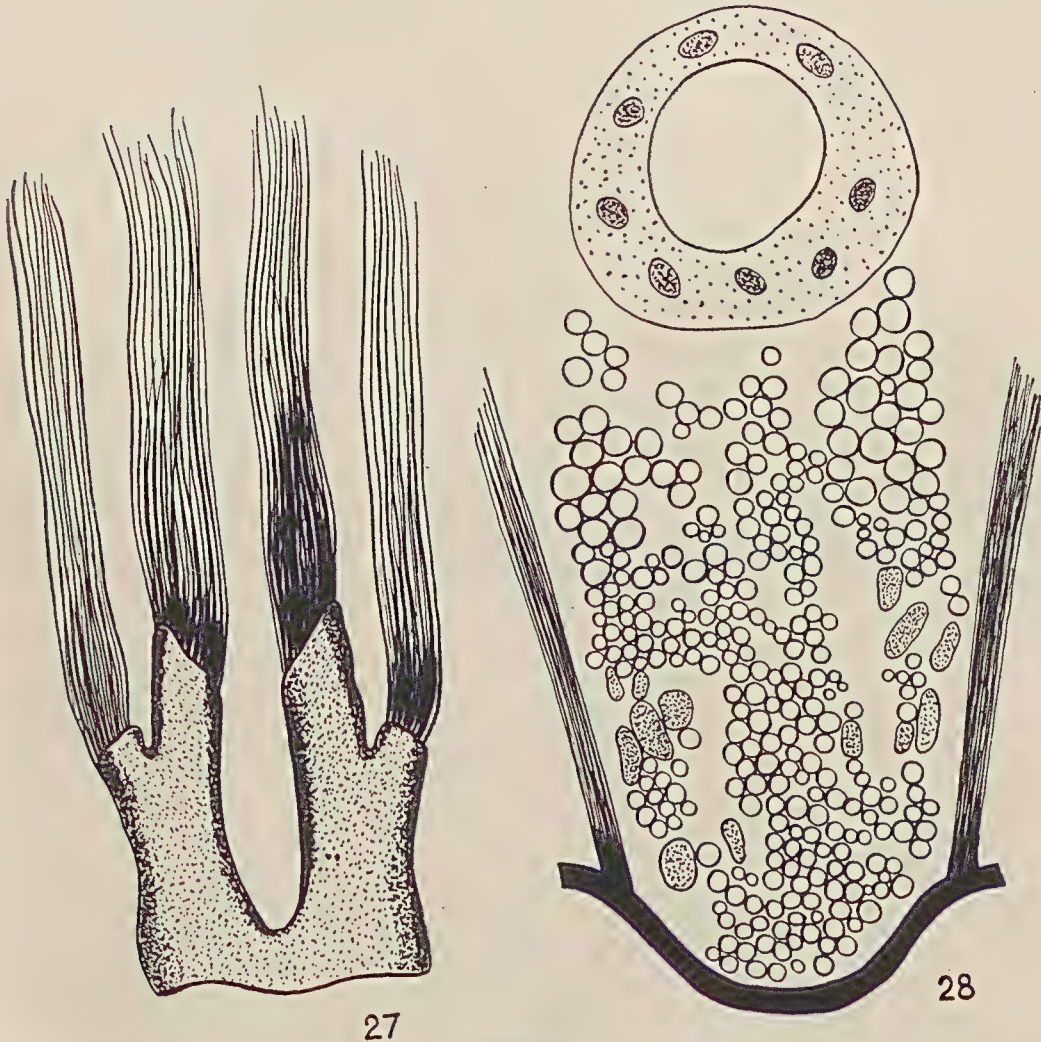
In *Neoaviola wellingtoni* each inner bundle is made up of 19 tubes having an average diameter of 4 micra. Each outer bundle is composed of 13 tubes having an average diameter of 5 micra. About 55 tubes pass into the cephalothorax. The book-lungs have four leaves.

Acknowledgments are made to the Trustees of the John Ralston Bequest under whose auspices the above work was carried out.

REFERENCES

- BRYANT, E. B., 1935.—Some New and Little Known Species of New Zealand Spiders. *Rec. Cant. Mus.*, vol. IV, No. 2, pp. 71-94.
 BUTLER, L. S. G., 1929.—Studies in Victorian Spiders, No. 1. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Victoria*, vol. 42 (N.S.), Pt. 1, pp. 41-52.

- RAINBOW, W. J., 1920.—Arachnida from Lord Howe and Norfolk Islands. *Rec. S. Austral. Mus.*, vol. I, No. 3, pp. 229-272.
- SIMON, E., 1886.—Descriptions de quelques espèces nouvelles de la famille des Agelenidae. *Ann. Soc. ent Belg.*, vol. 30, C.R., pp. LVI-LXI.
- , 1898.—Histoire naturelle des Araignées. Tome 2, fascicule 2, Paris, pp. 193-380.
- , 1909.—Araneae, 2e partie. in *Die Fauna Südwest-Australiens*, Bd. II, Lief. 12. Jena, pp. 155-212.



FIGS 27-28.

Scotopsilus bicolor Simon. Fig. 27: Atrium and tracheal trunks giving rise to the inner and outer bundles of tracheal tubes. Fig. 28: Transverse section through the petiolus showing the large number of tracheal tubes below the gut.

The Taxonomic Position of *Idiogarypus Hansenii* (With)

By

J. C. H. MORRIS

Demonstrator in Zoology, University of Tasmania

(Read 11th November, 1947)

PLATE IV

The original description of *Garypus hansenii* was based on a single male specimen which had been collected in Tasmania by Mr. Peckham. The exact part of the island from which it was obtained is not mentioned. It was deposited in the British Museum, and from here it was eventually sent with several other pseudoscorpions to be studied by C. J. With. His description of it was published in 1908. Chamberlin in 1930 made a note on the possible generic position of this pseudoscorpion, which he at that time placed in the genus *Garypus* of the sub-family Garypinae. The next mention of this form is to be found in Beier's work on the Pseudoscorpionidea in *Das Tierreich* (1932) where it was placed in the genus *Maorigarypus*. However, in 1943 *Maorigarypus* was reduced by Chamberlin to sub-generic rank in the genus *Synsphyronus*. In the same paper (1943), a new genus *Idiogarypus* was erected for the pseudoscorpion under consideration. Chamberlin noted that it was closely related to *Synsphyronus*, but based the establishment of the new genus on three main points, viz.:—

- (1) There are only seven tactile setae on the fixed finger of the chela.
- (2) The position of the galeal seta is much caudad of the terminal attachment of the serrula exterior.
- (3) The small eyes (eight ocular diameters from the anterior end of the carapace).

Efforts to obtain specimens of *Idiogarypus hansenii* were unsuccessful, but it was found that the most commonly occurring pseudoscorpion near Hobart resembled it very closely—even to the proportions of the parts—except in the three points mentioned above which mark off *Idiogarypus* from *Synsphyronus*. Two male specimens of this local type were sent to the British Museum where they were compared by Dr. E. Browning with the orthotype of *Idiogarypus*, and found to be the same species. It appears that the original description by With was not accurate in the three points enumerated above. As the differences between *Synsphyronus* and *Idiogarypus* mentioned by Chamberlin are therefore non-existent, the true systematic position of this pseudoscorpion is in the sub-genus *Maorigarypus* Chamberlin of the genus *Synsphyronus* Chamberlin.

A redescription of this species follows, and is based on a female and a male (homeotypes) which were collected at Risdon, near Hobart, in June, 1947. The specimens were boiled in 10 per cent KOH solution, and after clearing, mounted in Canada Balsam.

Synsphyronus (Maorigarypus) hansenii (With)

All the following measurements are in millimetres, and have been made in the way Chamberlin describes (1931, p. 24). Length always precedes breadth, and measurements of the segments of the palpi and legs are given in the order, trochanter, basifemur, telofemur, both femoral segments together, tibia and tarsus (both tarsal segments are measured together as a miotarsus). The length of the trochanter of the palpus is measured from the proximal edge of the pedicle to the anterior distal edge which articulates with the femur. All measurements exclude the pseudoderm.

Female

Length 4.351. *Breadth of abdomen (6th tergite)* 2.052.

Carapace 1.090-1.292, *Cucullus* 0.300, *Ocular breadth* 0.627.

Palpus—(0.475-0.355), (1.349-0.304), (0.950-0.332), *chela* (1.881), *hand* (0.912-0.446-*depth* 0.380), *fingers* 0.941.

Leg I—(0.290-0.190), (0.361-0.172), (0.304-0.190), (0.645-0.190), (0.380-0.123), (0.390-0.088).

Leg IV—(0.418-0.200), (0.304-0.180), (0.684-0.218), (0.931-0.218), (0.627-0.133), (0.473-0.105).

Chelicera—0.263-0.174, *mov. finger length* 0.230.

Maxilla—0.580, *al.* 0.513, *b.* 0.361, *ab.* 0.456.

Male

Length 3.857. *Breadth of abdomen (6th tergite)* 1.957.

Carapace 1.017-1.197, *Cucullus* 0.285, *Ocular breadth* 0.608.

Palpus—(0.446-0.323), (1.216-0.275), (0.893-0.306), *chela* (1.710), *hand* (0.836-0.410-*depth* 0.342), *fingers* 0.893.

Leg I—(0.266-0.189), (0.310-0.160), (0.293-0.187), (0.580-0.187), (0.361-0.114), (0.370-0.085).

Leg IV—(0.342-0.205), (0.247-0.171), (0.665-0.209), (0.874-0.209), (0.587-0.150), (0.470-0.100).

Chelicera—0.224-0.159, *mov. finger length* 0.202.

Maxilla—0.500, *al.* 0.475, *b.* 0.323, *ab.* 0.418.

The colour of the living animal is slate-grey, but on preservation in alcohol it becomes a yellowish brown. The whole surface of the chitinised parts is reticulately rugose. The reticulation occurs in a hyaline pseudoderm (which is found in all members of this genus). This may be easily removed from the true derm (e.g., by boiling in KOH solution). If this is done, the reticulate pattern is still retained by the true derm.

The carapace (Plate IV, fig. 2) has the usual garypoid, sub-triangular form, and is broader posteriorly than long. There are no transverse furrows and no longitudinal groove. The anterior margin of the carapace is a little indented in the middle. There are two pairs of eyes, the anterior pairs being elliptical in shape (Plate IV, fig. 2a) and situated from 5.3-6.8 ocular diameters from the anterior end of the carapace (these figures are based on measurements of 25 specimens, including three living). There is a short clavate seta between the anterior and posterior eyes of each side. The chaetotaxy and lyrifissures of the carapace are shown in fig. 2. The number of setae on the central disc varies quite considerably. On examining 10 males and 11 females, it was found that the number

of setae varied in the males from 12-17 (average 14), and in the females from 13-22 (average 17). Owing to this variation, care should be taken in using the number of setae on the central disc in taxonomy.

The coxal area is of the garypoid type, and has been adequately figured by With (1908, pl. II, fig. 2).

The abdomen is oval, longer than broad. It is broadest at the 6th and 7th segments, which are almost equally broad. The 1st tergite is entire; the 2nd-10th are divided and the 11th is partially so. The setae along the posterior border of the tergites are clavate, but the number on each particular tergum varies from one individual to another. However, a few generalisations based on the examination of 13 females and 11 males may be given. On the average, the adult female has more broader setae than the male. The minimum number for one tergite seems to be four, and the maximum 11. The number on the 1st two tergites, however, ranges from 4-6 in both sexes, on the 3rd tergite from 4-9, and on the 4th-9th from 6-10 (one female had 11 setae on the 6th tergite). The tergites also possess a row of lyrifissures, ranging from 7-21 per tergite. On the ventral surface, the 4th-10th sternites in the male, and the 5th-10th in the female, are divided, and in both sexes the 11th is partially divided anteriorly. The border setae are fewer than on the tergites, and are acute to slenderly clavate. The former kind are found mostly on the anterior segments. The number per sternite varies from 4-8 in males and from 4-10 in females. There is also a row of lyrifissures on each sternite; the number of lyrifissures per sternite varies from 6-18. In the male, the 4th sternite is rather narrower than the other sternites. The anterior genital plate is very much larger than the posterior one. The posterior border of the large plate has a number of acute setae about the genital opening. The anterior portion of the smaller plate has a large number of small lyrifissures in a corresponding position. Both plates are reticulated, although the posterior one is only slightly so. The female genital area (Plate IV, fig. 4) is very pale in contrast to the rest of the sclerotised parts, and is only very slightly reticulated. This pale area takes in the genital plates, and the median part of sternite four (Plate IV, fig. 4). The setae on this area are all acute. The arrangement of these and the lyrifissures is shown in the figure.

The pleural membrane is strongly wrinkled like that of most of the Garypidae.

Chelicerae. These are similar to those of other members of this genus (1943, pl. I, fig. 11). Plate IV, fig. 5, shows the galea and chaetotaxy. The position of the galeal seta (Plate IV, figs 3 and 5, g.s.) is on a level with the terminal attachment of the serrula exterior, and *not* halfway along the movable finger as in With's figure (1908, p. 13, fig. 2). The flagellum consists of one long and two smaller blades (Plate IV, fig. 5a). The large blade has two fine 'teeth' about halfway along it, which may easily be overlooked unless the chelicera is lying in the right position. The serrula exterior has about 18 teeth (Plate IV, fig. 3). The lamina exterior is present. The lamina interior possesses a series of about 10 rounded, rather broad teeth. The galeal (g.s.), sub-basal (s.b.) and basal (b.) setae are all much shorter than the laminal (l.s.), interior (i.s.) and exterior (e.s.) setae. The fixed finger has three large sub-median, and two small sub-apical teeth.

Pedipalpus. This has also been figured by With (1908, pl. I, fig. 11 and pl. II, fig. 3). The chela is shown (Plate IV, fig. 1) with the positions of the tactile setae, which are similarly arranged to those of *S. (M.) mimulus* (1943, pl. II, fig. 23). There are eight of these setae on the fixed finger—not seven, as reported by With—and three on the movable finger. There is no sense-spot near the sub-basal (s.b.) seta on the movable finger. Both fingers possess poison

ducts. Each finger possesses a dense row of marginal teeth—there are 56 on the fixed finger, and 43 on the movable finger of the male used in this description. The trochanter (excluding the pedicel) is only a trifle longer than wide; (the rest of the description of the palp is taken from With's paper, 1908, pp. 13-14), 'posteriorly (i.e., on the trochanter) there are two somewhat conical eminences, separated by a deep cleft. The femur, which is about four times as long as broad, has a well marked stalk; the anterior outline has, just beyond the stalk, a low elevation, and is then a little concave, while the posterior is slightly convex. The tibia, which has a rather short, but well marked stalk, is distinctly shorter, but somewhat wider, than the femur, and 2.9 (With's figure is 2.7) times as long as wide; anteriorly it is, just beyond the stalk, slightly convex and then a trifle concave, while the posterior outline is, beyond the well marked basal elevation, straight and then slightly convex. The chela, which is about four times as long as wide, is about 1.3 times as wide as the tibia; the hand is shorter than the tibia, and is a little shorter than the fingers'.

The Legs. These have been figured by With (1908, pl. I, figs 12 and 13). Quoting With once again (1908, p. 14)—'Rather short and clavate hairs are found dorsally, pointed and more or less simple ones ventrally. The arolium extends distinctly beyond the claws. The articulation between the two femoral joints is of the usual structure, with the tooth best developed posteriorly (1908, pl. I, figs 14-15); the basal femoral part is longer but lower than the distal, and almost twice as long as deep. The two tarsal joints of the 1st pair, of which the basal is the longer', are together somewhat longer than the tibia. The femur (taken as a whole) of the fourth pair 'is almost four times as long as deep, as deep as the second tarsal joint is long; the combined tarsi are much shorter than the tibia'. Measuring both tarsal segments as a motarsus, tarsus I is 4.1-4.4 times, and tarsus IV 4.4-4.7 times as long as deep.

Synsphyronus hansenii has been collected at Hobart and the surrounding parts, and also in the north of the island near Launceston, and in the north-west at the Forth Falls near Sheffield. It may be found under stones, especially between the flakes of broken stones, in grass tussocks and under the bark of gum trees towards the base. Occasionally it is brought in with firewood, and may be found on the walls of sheds or even in the house.

Synsphyronus (M.) hansenii very closely resembles the South Australian form, *S. (M.) mimulus* Chamberlin (1943, p. 496). The Tasmanian form is larger, and, judging from Chamberlin's description, possesses more setae on the average on the central disc and on the abdomen. In *S. mimulus* the chela of the male is 4.2-4.4, of the female 3.5-3.8 times as long as broad. In *S. hansenii* the proportions are similar (about 4.2) in both sexes. The main difference, however, between these two forms is their size (*S. hansenii* varies from about 3.8-4.4 mm. when adult, and *S. mimulus* varies from about 2.2-2.8 mm.).

The homeotypes (one male and one female) on which this re-description is based are to be deposited in the British Museum. Other specimens are to be sent to the Australian Museum, American Museum of Natural History and the Muséum d'Histoire Naturelle, Paris.

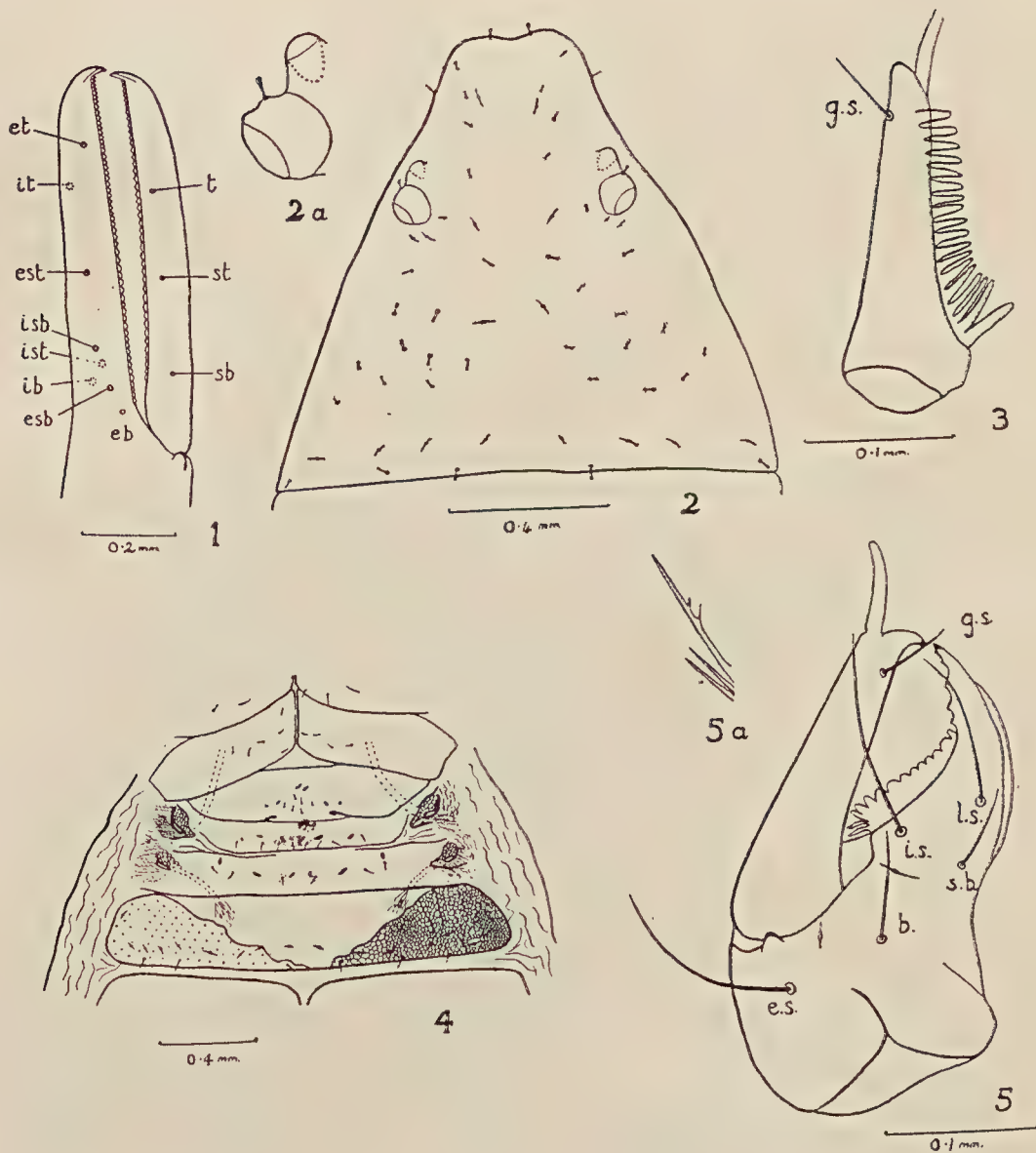
I wish to thank Mr. Clarke, Librarian at the University of Tasmania, for obtaining papers for me, and also the various people who have brought specimens to me. I wish to especially thank Professor Hickman for his kind and helpful interest and guidance, and Dr. E. Browning of the Arachnological Section of the British Museum (Natural History), who kindly examined the specimens I sent, and compared them with the orthotype.

REFERENCES

- BEIER, M., 1932.—Pseudoscorpionidea I. *Das Tierreich*, 57; p. 226.
CHAMBERLIN, J. C., 1930.—*Ann. and Mag. Nat. Hist.* (10) 5 : 612.
———, 1931.—The Arachnid Order Chelonethida. *Stanford Univ. Publ. Biol. Ser.* 7, No. 1.
———, 1943.—The Taxonomy of the False Scorpion Genus *Synsphyronus*, etc. *Ann. Ent. Soc. Amer.* 36, No. 3, pp. 486-500.
WITH, C., 1908.—*Vidensk. Meddel. Naturk. Foren.* (6) 10 : 12; pls 1 and 2, pp. 12-15.

PLATE IV

- FIG. 1.—Right chela of male. *t*, terminal; *st*, sub-terminal; *sb*, sub-basal; *et*, exterior terminal; *est*, exterior sub-terminal; *esb*, exterior sub-basal; *eb*, exterior basal; *it*, interior terminal; *ist*, interior sub-terminal; *isb*, interior sub-basal; *ib*, interior basal.
FIG. 2.—Carapace of female, showing chaetotaxy and lyrifissures.
FIG. 2a.—Left eyes greatly enlarged.
FIG. 3.—Movable finger of chelicera, showing serrula exterior and the galeal seta (g.s.).
FIG. 4.—Female genital area.
FIG. 5.—Exterior view of chelicera of female. *g.s.* galeal seta; *i.s.* interior seta; *l.s.* laminal seta; *s.b.* sub-basal seta; *e.s.* exterior seta; *b.* basal seta.
FIG. 5a.—Flagellum.



A New Genus of Pseudogarypin Pseudoscorpions Possessing Pleural Plates

By

J. C. H. MORRIS

Demonstrator in Zoology, University of Tasmania

(Read 11th November, 1947)

PLATES V, VI

I have been able to study this interesting new pseudoscorpion through the kindness of Professor V. V. Hickman, who made available a number of specimens he had collected near Launceston in 1931. All the specimens had been preserved in methylated spirits. They were boiled in 10 per cent KOH solution, and after clearing were mounted in Canada balsam. I find that this material consists of only one species and requires the establishment of a new genus. This genus belongs to the family Pseudogarypidae of the superfamily Feaelloidea. This superfamily as defined by Chamberlin (1931, p. 230) includes forms with 'either carapacal alae or abdominal pleural plates'. I propose to alter this to include forms with 'either carapacal alae, abdominal pleural plates, or both'. I also propose to alter Chamberlin's definition of the family Pseudogarypidae (1931, p. 230), which includes only those forms in which 'abdominal pleural plates are absent', to include forms in which 'abdominal pleural plates are *either absent or present*'.

Neopseudogarypus gen. nov.

With the characters of the family (viz., venom apparatus absent; lamina exterior absent; four prominent eyes; cucullus broad, well developed and strongly lobate; femoral articulation of all legs freely mobile and of similar structure (homofemorate); legs I and II similar superficially to III and IV. Anus ventral and, together with the minute anal (12th) segment, surrounded by a large sclerotic plate composed of the fused 11th tergite and sternite. Abdomen ovate and much broader than the cephalothorax; pedipalpi of the normal prehensile type; without a ginglymous articulation between the cephalothorax and abdomen such as occurs in the Feaellidae). Carapacal alae and three rows of abdominal pleural plates are present. Pseudocoxal spines on the coxae of the first pair of legs. Posterior pair of eyes are covered above by a sclerotised roof. A pair of accessory setae at the end of the fixed finger of chela. The serrula exterior is free for a short distance at distal end. Genital plates are not divided.

Genotype. *Neopseudogarypus scutellatus* gen. et. sp. nov.

Neopseudogarypus scutellatus gen. et. sp. nov.

(Plates V, VI, figs 1-20)

Professor Hickman informs me that all the specimens of this pseudoscorpion were found only on the undersurface of stones, and collected on the line of hills extending from Glen Dhu to Trevallyn, near Launceston, Tasmania.

The following description is based on three specimens: the holotype (female) and two paratypes (a male and a female).

Measurements. All the following measurements are in millimetres, and Chamberlin's method has been followed (1931, p. 24). Length always precedes breadth, and measurements of the segments of the palpi and legs are given in the order, trochanter (without pedicel), basifemur, telofemur, tibia and tarsus.

Holotype (Female)

Length 2.59. *Breadth of Abdomen (6th segment)* 1.824. *Carapace* (0.608-0.418), *Cucullus* 0.170, *Ocular breadth* 0.361.

Palpus—(0.228-0.27), (1.054-0.25), (0.456-0.209), *chela* (1.425), *hand* (0.513-depth 0.325), *fingers* (0.912 fixed, 0.890 movable).

Leg I—(0.143-0.150), (0.304-0.114), (0.290-0.114), (0.247-0.095), (0.46-0.06).

Leg IV—(0.290-0.165), (0.237-0.120), (0.437-0.155), (0.437-0.095), (0.650-0.06).

Chelicera—0.258, *depth* 0.137, *mov. finger* 0.109.

Maxilla—0.570, *al.* 0.44, *b.* 0.210, *ab.* 0.37.

Paratype (Male)

Length 2.415. *Breadth of Abdomen (6th segment)* 1.653. *Carapace* (0.589-0.380), *Cucullus* 0.152, *Ocular breadth* 0.325.

Palpus—(0.209-0.247), (1.007-0.22), (0.415-0.209), *chela* (1.311), *hand* (0.494-0.285 *depth*), *mov. finger* (0.817).

Leg I—(0.140-0.135), (0.255-0.11), (0.266-0.114), (0.228-0.090), (0.440-0.057).

Leg IV—(0.266-0.133), (0.230-0.115), (0.380-0.133), (0.418-0.085), (0.608-0.057).

Chelicera—0.246, *depth* 0.129, *mov. finger* 0.104.

Maxilla—0.532, *al.* 0.399, *b.* 0.209, *ab.* 0.325.

The colour of the preserved specimens is yellowish brown. The carapace (Plate V, figs 1 and 9) is much longer than broad, narrower than the abdomen. There is a slight trace of a median longitudinal furrow, as an elevated ridge runs along each side, and the space between these ridges is concave anteriorly. Each lower antero-lateral angle of the carapace is prolonged into a horn which arises from under the eye tubercles, and extends forward until almost in a line with the anterior median part of the carapace. The horns are not deeply separated from the central lobe, and are in this respect similar to those of *Pseudogarypus banksi* Jacot (1938). The anterior end of the carapace is folded under (fig. 10) and there is on this part a median longitudinal ridge. There is a trace of the posterior suture, which is situated almost at the posterior border of the carapace. There are two pairs of prominent eyes (plate V, fig. 4), the anterior pair looking antero-laterally, the posterior pair looking postero-laterally. The two eyes on each side are separated by less than an ocular diameter. The anterior eyes are on a very slight projection, but the posterior pair are borne on prominent tubercles. The posterior eyes are covered above by the sclerotised roof of the tubercle. Closely associated with the eyes are two lyrifissures. The carapacial alae are wing-shaped, beginning just behind and below the posterior eyes. The posterior rounded ends of the alae extend back almost until in line with the posterior margin of the coxae of the 3rd legs (Plate V, fig. 3). The surface of the alae is particularly rugose.

The coxal area is shown in Plate V, fig. 2, and is very similar to that of *Pseudogarypus*. Pseudocoxal spines (fig. 8) are present in the triangular posterior portion of the coxae of the first pair of legs. (In the holotype there are seven on each coxa.)

Between the abdomen and the carapace on the dorsal surface is a well-marked membranous area (figs 1 and 9). The abdomen is broad, narrower at the anterior end than the posterior end, broadest at the sixth segment. There are ten visible tergites in a dorsal view (Plate V, fig. 1), and of these the first eight are divided, and the ninth partly so, by a distinct membranous area. The tenth tergite is entire. The first two tergites lie between the carapacial alae. Measuring from the anterior to the posterior edge, the first tergite has the smallest, and the second the largest dimension. The tergites bare numerous minute setae. The arrangement of the lyrifissures is shown in Plate V, fig. 1, and will probably be typical of the genus. Although slight variations occur, the arrangement of one lyrifissure near the inner border and a group of two or three near the outer border for a half tergite is typical. The tergites (as is almost the whole surface of the chitinised parts) are marked in a reticulate pattern. The eleventh tergite is fused with the eleventh sternite and surrounds the minute anal (12th) segment. The ventral segmentation is as is usual for the family, the second (? or first) sternite being absent. The genital plates are entire, but the fourth to tenth sternites are divided by a membranous area. The fourth sternite is very narrow, and the anterior part of it is heavily rugose. The arrangement of the lyrifissures is shown in Plate V, fig. 2, and the genital plates with chaetotaxy and lyrifissures for both sexes in Plate V, figs 5 and 6. The genitalia of the male appear to be the same as figured for *Cerogarypus agassizi* Jacot (= *Pseudogarypus bicornis* Chamberlin 1923, Plate 5, fig. 14), except that there are only three setae on the crescent-shaped sclerites.

The pleural membrane and inter-tergal spaces are marked by wavy striations. The pleural membrane (Plate V, figs 3 and 7) is raised into three folds, and in each of these folds is a row of chitinised plates. It is interesting to note that the carapacial alae reach behind to beneath the second tergite. Corresponding to the remaining eight free tergites (the eleventh tergite and sternite are fused) there are eight sclerotised plates in the top row. Parallel to each carapacial ala there is a long chitinised area. Although this appears to suggest a correlation between these plates and the tergites, it may be purely coincidental.

The Chelicera. In a dorsal view the carapace hides all but the fingers. The hand is stout, and the outer and dorsal surfaces of it are roughly reticulated. The flagellum (Plate VI, fig. 17, *fl.*) is typical of the family—i.e., a pair of long, slender, simple setae curved distally. The other setae are also shown, but I am not sure of the homologies of these. The seta near the exterior condylar lyrifissure seems to be the 'exterior seta'. The galeal seta (*gls.*) and what appears to correspond to the laminal seta (*ls.*) are shown in Plate VI, fig. 18. The four lyrifissures are also shown in Plate VI, figs 17, 18. The serrula exterior consists of about 17 teeth. The distal part is free for a short distance (Plate VI, figs 17 and 19) and is produced into a 'beak'. The lamina interior is difficult to make out, but appears to be of a broad plate-like type. Near the apical tooth of the movable finger on the outer side is a second, smaller tooth. The galea is simple and like that of other members of the family (Plate VI, figs 17 and 19).

Pedipalpus. The coxa (maxilla) is very large, and is similar to that of *Pseudogarypus*. The central elliptical lyrifissure is very small. The shape of the palpus is shown in Plate VI, fig. 13. The chela is raptorial, with slender fingers,

both of which (especially the fixed finger) are gracefully curved (Plate VI, fig. 15). The chaetotaxy is also shown in fig. 15: *t* is about 1/5 the length of the finger from the tip and is much closer to *st* than *st* is to *sb* (*tip-t*, 0.18 mm.; *t-st*, 0.076 mm.; *st-sb*, 0.164 mm.; *sb-b*, 0.098 mm.). On the fixed finger *it* is about 1/5 the length of the finger from the tip, and twice as far from the tip as *et*; *ist* is about 1/2 way along the finger, and *est* is about 2.5 areolar diameters distal to *it*; *eb* and *esb* are separated by about 8 areolar diameters; *eb* is a little more than 1/4 of the finger length from the base of the finger; *isb* is a little more proximal than *esb*; *ib* is at almost the same level as *eb*.

Near the end of the fixed finger is a pair of accessory setae (Plate VI, fig. 14, *as*) not so well developed as the regular tactile setae, and very similar to the condition found near the finger tip of some of the Heterosphyronida. Just proximal to the accessory setae on the fixed finger on the external surface is what appears to be a sensory spot. There is also one of these spots on the movable finger at about the same distance from the tip (Plate VI, fig. 14, *s*). The first two teeth at the end of the movable finger are rather small and close together (Plate VI, fig. 14b). On the fixed finger between the first and second normal teeth, and higher up on the inner surface is a small accessory tooth. The rest of the teeth are prominent, peg-like, not contiguous basally and are evenly spaced, 38 on the fixed, and 27 on the movable finger of the holotype.

The Legs. These are similar to those of *Pseudogarypus*, and are figured in (Plate VI, fig. 20). The surface of the legs is marked by the reticulated pattern. Two pairs. The femoral articulations of all the legs are freely mobile. The tarsus consists of a single, relatively long segment. The claws and arolium are shown (Plate VI, fig. 20). The surface of the legs is marked by the reticulated pattern.

Remarks. It is most interesting to record from Tasmania a representative of the rare and unusual family Pseudogarypidae. Hitherto only two genera consisting of four species (*Pseudogarypus* (three species) and *Cerogarypus* (one species)) have been described—all from the United States of America. (Two fossil forms from Baltic amber have also been placed in this family (1937)). *Neopseudogarypus* therefore forms yet another link between Tasmania and the Americas.

Another feature is the possession of pleural plates. It is interesting to note that, hitherto, pleural plates have been described only in the aberrant, but related, family Feaellidae, but I am not sure that these plates are the same as in *Feaella*. I have already pointed out the possible correlation between the upper row of plates and the tergites, and the long, narrow plate parallel to the carapacial ala.

The serrula exterior is also interesting in that the distal end is free for a short distance, and in the possession of a forward projecting 'beak' (cf. *Feaella*).

Neopseudogarypus has more in common with *Pseudogarypus* than with *Cerogarypus*—both possess pseudocoxal spines; have a roof over the posterior eyes; in *P. banksi* the antero-lateral lobes of the carapace are broadly connected to the central lobe, and the positions of the tactile setae on the chela, including the accessory setae in *P. bicornis*, are similar to those of *Neopseudogarypus* (1946).

The holotype and two paratypes mentioned in this paper are to be deposited in the British Museum, and homotypes in the Australian Museum, American Museum of Natural History and the Muséum National d'Histoire Naturelle, Paris.

I wish to thank Mr. Clarke, Librarian at the University of Tasmania, and Miss Taylor at the Royal Society Library for obtaining papers for me. I also wish especially to thank Professor V. V. Hickman, not only for providing the material for study, but also for his kind and most helpful assistance.

REFERENCES

- BEIER, M., 1937.—Pseudoscorpione aus dem baltischen Bernstein. *Festschrift f. Embrik Strand*. 1936-7, 2, 306-7.
- CHAMBERLIN, J. C., 1923.—The Genus *Pseudogarypus* Ellingsen. *Ent. News. Philadelphia*, 34, No. 6. 161-166, pl. 5.
- , 1931.—The Arachnid Order Chelonethida. *Stanford Univ. Pub. Biol. Ser.* 7, No. 1.
- HOFF, C. C., 1946.—A Study of the Type Collections of some Pseudoscorpions originally described by Nathan Banks. *Journ. Wash. Acad. Sc.* 36, No. 6, 197-200.
- JACOT, A. P., 1938.—A Pseudogarypin Pseudoscorpion in the White Mountains. *Occ. Pap. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist.* 8, 301-303.

PLATE V

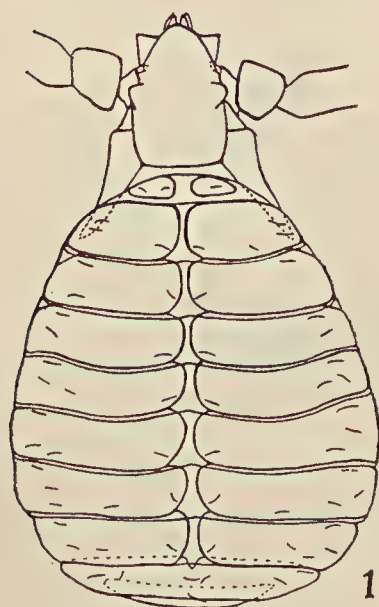
(All measurements are in millimetres.)

- FIG. 1.—Dorsal surface without legs. Lyrifissures are shown.
- FIG. 2.—Ventral surface with chelicerae and the left first and fourth legs dissected off. Lyrifissures are shown.
- FIG. 3.—Side view, without pedipalpi and legs, showing arrangement of pleural plates.
- FIG. 4.—Eye region.
- FIG. 5.—Female genital plates with chaetotaxy.
- FIG. 6.—Male genital plates with chaetotaxy.
- FIG. 7.—Enlarged view of anterior part of pleural membrane of left side, showing pleural plates and folds. *c.a.*, carapacal ala.
- FIG. 8.—Coxae of first pair of legs, showing pseudocoxal spines.

PLATE VI

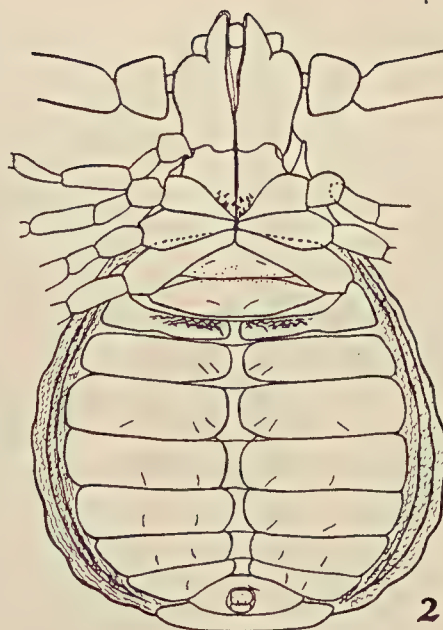
(All measurements are in millimetres.)

- FIG. 9.—Dorsal view of carapace and carapacal alae, showing typical reticulation of portions.
- FIG. 10.—Ventral view of anterior end of carapace.
- FIG. 11.—Fourth left leg.
- FIG. 12.—First left leg.
- FIG. 13.—Ventral view of left pedipalpus.
- FIG. 14.—End of (a) fixed finger, and (b) movable fingers. *x.s.*, accessory tactile setae; *s.*, sensory spots.
- FIG. 15.—External view of right chela, showing chaetotaxy and dentition.
- FIG. 16.—View of dorsal edge of left chelicera.
- FIG. 17.—Ventero-lateral view of right chelicera. *fl.*, flagellum; *i.c.l.*, internal condylar lyrifissure; *i.l.*, internal lyrifissure.
- FIG. 18.—Dorso-lateral view of right chelicera. *e.c.l.*, external condylar lyrifissure; *e.l.*, external lyrifissure; *gls.*, galeal seta; *ls.*, laminal seta.
- FIG. 19.—Movable finger, showing galea and serrula exterior.
- FIG. 20.—Ventral view of tarsus, showing claws and transparent arolium.



0.5

1



0.5

2



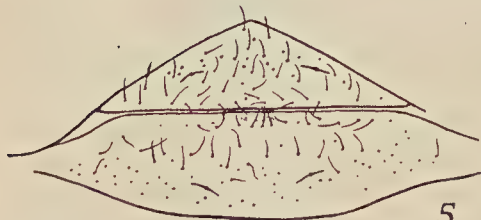
0.5

3



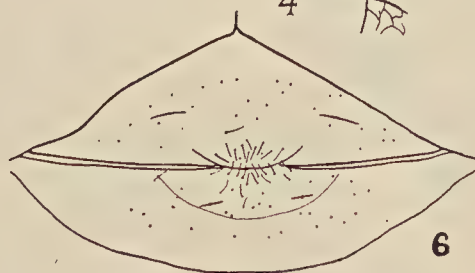
0.05

4



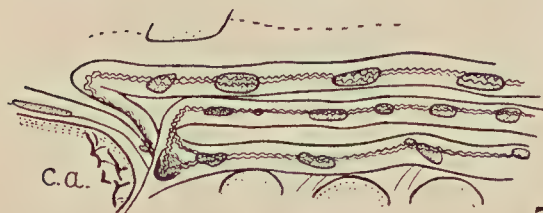
0.2

5



0.2

6



0.05

7



0.1

8

A New Digenetic Trematode from the Barracouta (*Syncoeliidae-Digenea*)

By

PETER W. CROWCROFT

Zoology Department, University of Tasmania

(Read 11th November, 1947)

FIGS. 1-9

ABBREVIATIONS USED IN TEXT FIGURES

Cop, copulatory organ; *Cut*, cuticle; *E*, egg; *Hd*, hermaphrodite duct; *Int*, intestine; *Met*, metra-term; *Mgl*, Mehlis' gland; *O*, ovum; *Oes*, oesophagus; *Oo*, ootype; *Os*, oral sucker; *Ov*, ovary; *Ovd*, oviduct; *Ph*, pharynx; *Pp*, pars prostatica; *Pros*, prostate gland cell; *Sem v*, seminal vesicle; *Sp*, spermatic fluid; *Sph*, sphincter; *Tes*, testis; *Ut*, uterus; *Yk d*, yolk duct; *Yk gl*, yolk gland.

On the twentieth day of May, 1947, Professor Hickman and I examined a dozen specimens of the Barracouta (*Thyrsites atun* Euph.), which had been taken by a fisherman operating from Nubeena. We found numerous individuals of a species of digenetic trematode attached to their gill-rakers. The majority of the digenetic Trematodes of fishes are internal parasites. Some species have been described from the gills and the pharyngeal region and certain forms have been found externally on the skin, although in such cases they are suspected of migrating thence from the pharynx or the intestine upon the death of the host. The present species appears well adapted for its relatively exposed habitat. Each individual attaches itself by the acetabulum to the apex of a gill-raker. Efforts to dislodge the trematode from its hold reveal a most tenacious grip, the tip of the gill-raker frequently breaking off and remaining in the acetabulum. This will be shown to result from specialisation of that organ accompanied by unusual internal muscular development.

The species strongly resembles *Accacoelium contortum* (Rudolphi) from the gills of *Mola mola* (L.), in superficial characters, but examination of the internal structure excludes it from the Accacoeliidae. Apparently a similar habit has resulted in parallel adaptation in spite of significant differences in internal organisation. The species presents unusual anatomical features and I have erected a new genus of the family Syncoeliidae Dollfus 1923, to accommodate it.

Family SYNCOELIIDAE DOLLFUS 1923

Capiatestes thyrsitae n.gen. n.sp.

Generic Diagnosis. Medium sized elongate distomes with extremely mobile fore-body. Cuticle non-spinous, papillate. Acetabulum pedunculate, elongated antero-posteriorly. Gape a longitudinal slit dilated at extremities. Extrinsic musculature of acetabulum well developed. Intestinal caeca sinuous, fused posteriorly.

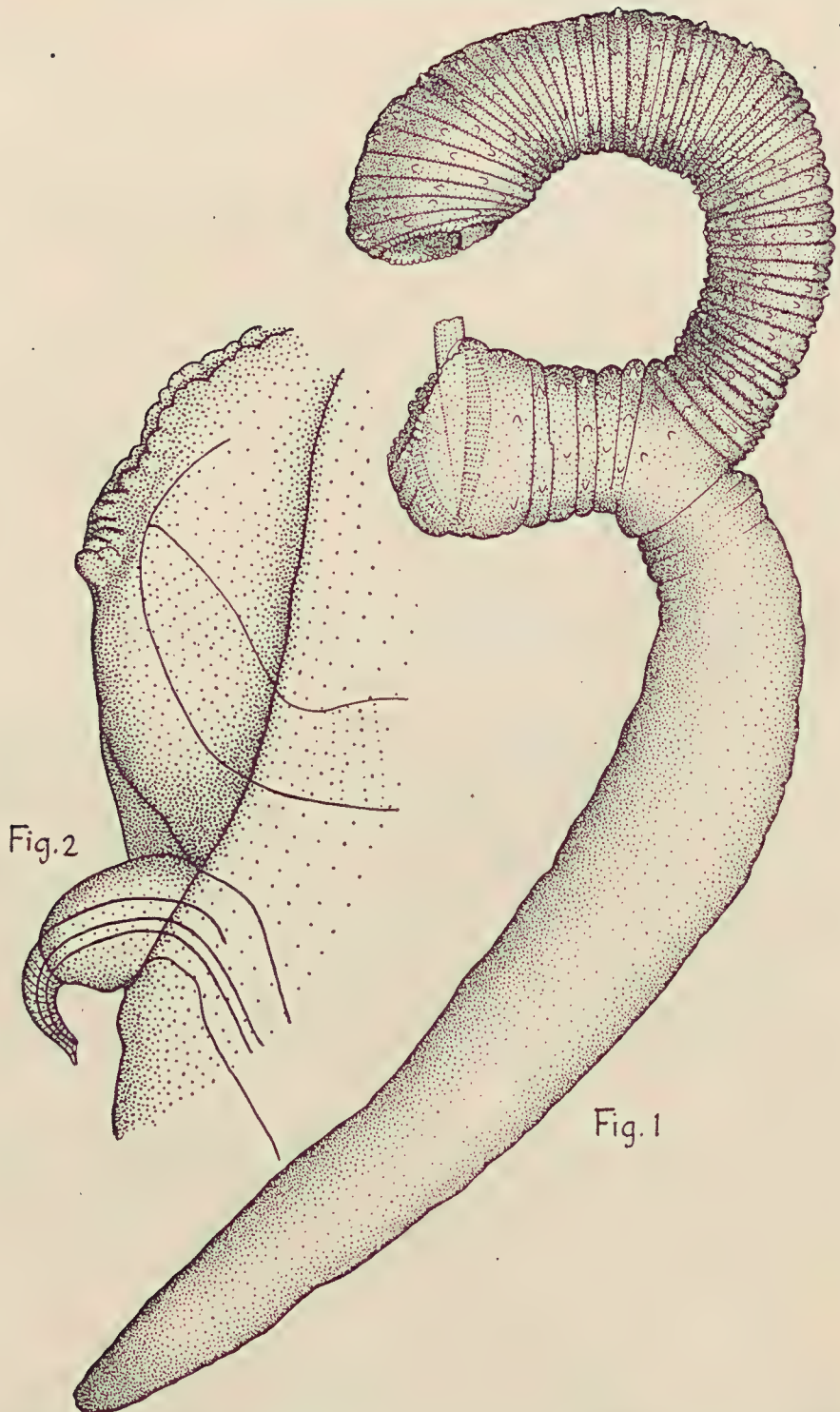


FIG. 1.—Unmounted specimen viewed from the left side. The acetabulum is seen to contain the broken apex of a gill-raker.

FIG. 2.—Portion of anterior end of a mounted specimen with the copulatory organ protruded.

No connection between gut and excretory vesicle. Genital atrium large immediately behind rim of oral sucker, and containing protrusible copulatory organ. No cirrus or cirrus sac. Testes postacetabular, intercaecal, eighteen in number. Vasa deferentia two. Seminal vesicle long and tubular entirely in fore-body. Pars prostatica tubular, prostatic cells free. Ovaries post-testicular intercaecal, five in number opening separately into common oviduct. Uterus large, very long, regularly coiled in hind body dorsal to and obscuring gonads. Receptaculum seminis uterinum present. Eggs very numerous, small ovoid, thick shelled. Yolk glands seven in number, post-ovarian. Metraterm and pars prostatica fused, forming hermaphrodite duct. Excretory vesicle very short, lateral branches sinuous fusing anteriorly. Body tissue extremely glandular.

External Features. The worms are fairly large, measuring approximately 9-15 mm. long when contracted, but extending to a much greater length in life. The body is slender and clearly divisible into a cylindrical pre-acetabular region or fore-body, and a somewhat stouter tapered post-acetabular region or hind-body. When fixed free from pressure the worms contract into a characteristic shape similar to the numeral '3' (fig. 1). The middle arm of the '3' is formed by a stout pedicle, cylindrical in form, which bears the acetabulum. However, individuals mounted under cover-glass pressure may assume a variety of forms. In a large number of whole mounts the fore-body measures 0.48-0.72 mm. wide, the hind-body measures 0.77-1.28 mm. at its broadest point, and the pedicle measures 0.96-1.76 mm. long and 0.88-1.12 mm. broad. The cuticle is non-spinous, but on the fore-body and pedicle is produced into circlets of large, blunt papillae. When the fore-body is contracted, its surface becomes completely annular.

The oral sucker is terminal, with its aperture directed forwards and downwards. The oral aperture proper is bounded by a fleshy papillate lip. A second lip originates dorsally and runs obliquely backwards as it approaches the ventral surface, where it forms the posterior border of the genital atrium (fig. 2). This is a deep pocket-shaped invagination immediately behind the mouth. The acetabulum is elongated antero-posteriorly. It does not possess the usual cup-shaped cavity owing to the thickness of its lateral walls which reduce the cavity to a deep longitudinal slit. The slit-like gape is dilated at its extremities, the posterior dilation being the more pronounced. A fleshy papillate lip protrudes from the pedicle and surrounds the gape. The oral sucker is slightly larger than the acetabulum. In the whole mounts the former measures 0.72-0.88 mm. in diameter, while the latter which is mounted on its side, measures 0.56-0.72 mm. long and 0.4-0.5 mm. deep.

The excretory pore is situated at the posterior tip of the body. It leads into a short invaginated chamber.

Alimentary System (fig. 3). The form and position of the oral sucker is described above. A prepharynx is lacking, the oral cavity leading directly into the pharynx. This is pyriform, with its narrowest diameter at its junction with the oral sucker. It measures approximately 0.33 mm. long and 0.2 mm. in maximum diameter. A very short muscular oesophagus connects the pharynx with a transversely elongated chamber which extends directly to left and right for a short distance. On each side, the transverse duct is abruptly constricted by a strong sphincter into a narrow duct leading into the digestive tube. The oral sucker, pharynx, oesophagus, and transverse chamber are lined by an inward extension of the cuticle. Within the digestive tubes the cuticle is replaced by a digestive epithelium of densely packed cells. The cells stain selectively into two layers, the basal portions only absorbing nuclear stain. Although the proximal regions of the

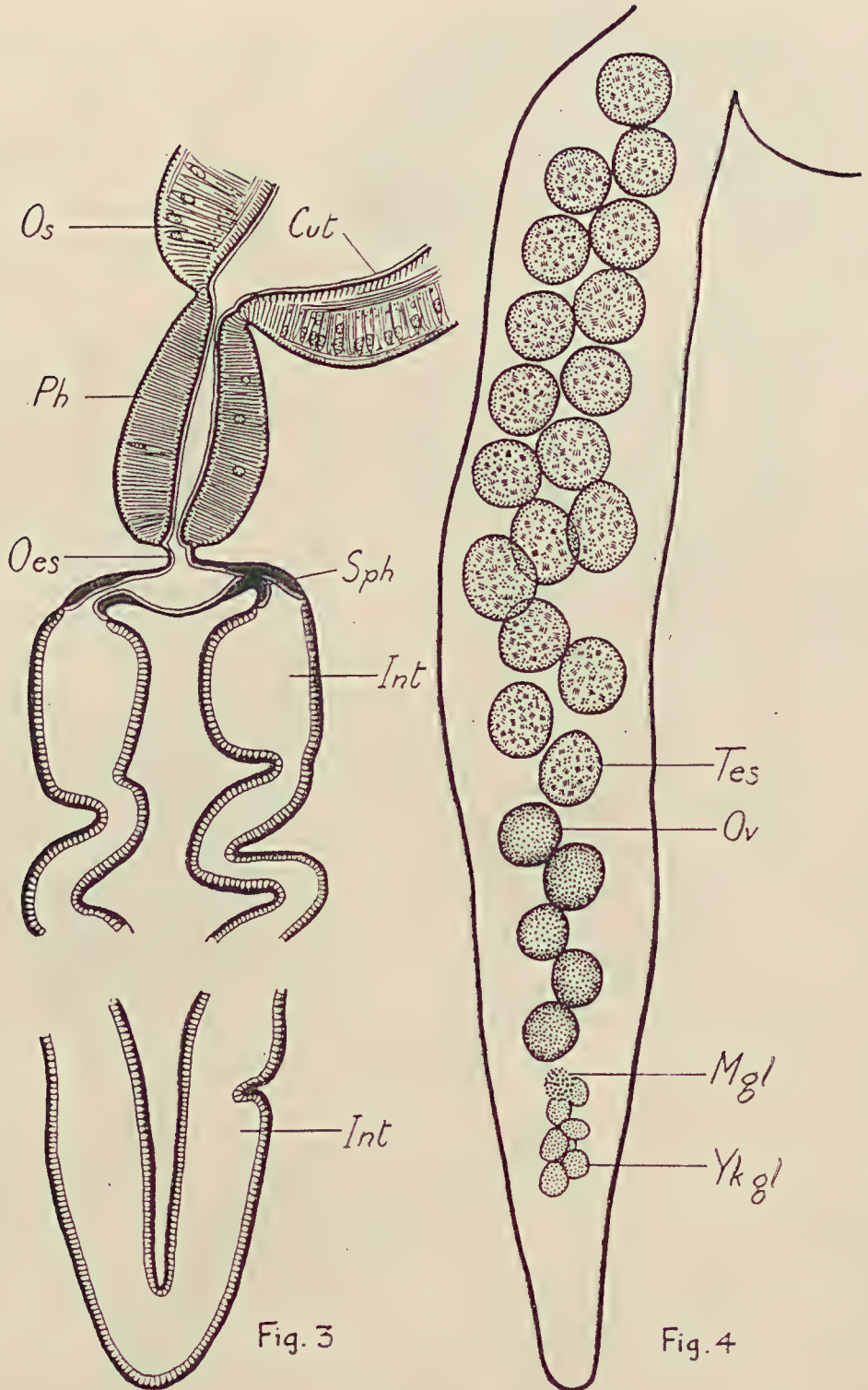


FIG. 3.—Diagram of the anterior and posterior portions of the gut.

FIG. 4.—The hind-body of a mounted specimen. The uterus and the intestine are omitted for clarity.

rami are typically somewhat expanded, no 'Drüsenmagen' are present, as the epithelium of the expanded portions appears identical with the lining of the remainder of the gut. The two gut rami run directly backwards through the fore-body at some distance from the lateral margins. In fixed contracted specimens, their course is extremely and regularly sinuous. In the post-acetabular region the rami remain in a lateral position, slightly towards the ventral surface. They are separated from the lateral margins by the uterus. As the body tapers posteriorly the rami approach one another and fuse in an acute arch a short distance from the posterior extremity. There is no anus or communication with the excretory system.

Excretory System. A narrow excretory vesicle runs forward from a short invagination at the posterior tip of the body and branches above the posterior arc formed by the fusion of the gut rami. The two main collecting trunks diverge and pass forward and downward until they come to lie ventral to the gut rami. In this position they pursue a sinuous course to the pedicle of the acetabulum. They describe convolutions within the pedicle and continue forward through the fore-body. Anteriorly, they expand and pass to the dorsal surface, where they fuse above the junction of the oral sucker and the pharynx.

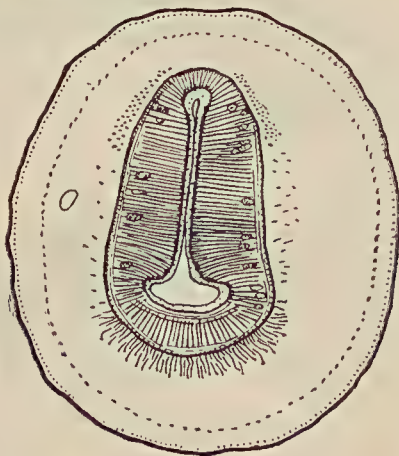


FIG. 5.—Transverse section through the pedicle and acetabulum which shows the form of the gape and a portion of the extrinsic musculature.

Muscular System. The oral sucker is a normal well-developed globular organ, consisting of the usual outer and inner, equatorial and meridional layers, separated by a parenchymatous zone which is traversed by weaker radial fibres. The pharynx is continuous with the oral sucker, but the meridional fibres are lacking. The radial fibres are stouter and more numerous. Few parenchymatous cells are present. The acetabulum is elongated antero-posteriorly. The form of the gape has been described above. It is a well-developed sucker, but is less muscular than the oral sucker. Numerous parenchymatous cells with abundant contents are present (fig. 5).

A most striking feature of the animal is the extreme development of the extrinsic musculature of the acetabulum. The pedicle is packed with stout fibres, which are inserted into the dorsal surface of the acetabulum. These fibres separate into anterior and posterior bundles. The anterior group occupies a central position in the 'neck' region. It partly encloses the seminal vesicle above and the uterus below. Most of the fibres terminate in the posterior surface of the oral sucker. The posterior group of the fibres passes backwards in the mid-line but below the

gonads and near the ventral surface. The vasa deferentia are enveloped. The fibres become diffused near Mehlis' gland. Scattered fibres run between the proximal portion of the uterus and the yolk glands.

The body wall of the pre-acetabular region contains well-developed muscle layers. These consist of outer longitudinal, inner oblique, and intermediate circular layers. It is unusual to find the longitudinal layer enclosing the circular. The former is more strongly developed ventrally. However, in the pedicle and in the post-acetabular region the longitudinal and circular layers are completely lacking. Here, the oblique layer consists of very numerous fine fibres.

The form of the acetabulum, coupled with the extraordinary development of the internal muscles, accounts for the tenacity with which the animal grips the gill-rakers of the host. A raker is always gripped in either the anterior or the posterior dilation of the gape. It is engulfed to the maximum extent possible. Thus its apex is thrust obliquely into the posterior or anterior roof of the cavity farthest from the entrance. When efforts are made to dislodge the animal,

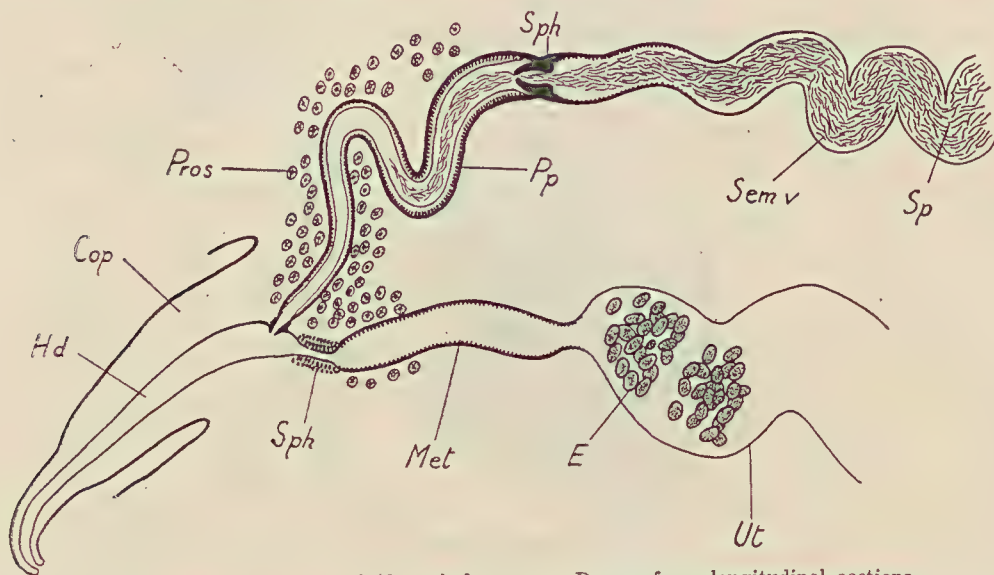


FIG. 6.—Details of the terminal genital organs. Drawn from longitudinal sections.

the tightly closed slit prevents movement of the raker along the length of the sucker to allow a direct pull. This results in the apex being levered further into the sucker. The musculature in the pedicle prevents the rotation of the acetabulum which would allow a direct pull with the resulting extraction. Further it appears that rotation in the opposite direction to that induced by the gill-breaker is set up. This causes the angle at which the raker enters to become more acute and that component of the pull in the direction of the raker is lessened.

Genital System: 1. Male. The testes are eighteen entire round, or oval, bodies measuring approximately 0.36 mm. in diameter in slightly compressed whole mounts. they occupy the intercaecal space immediately behind the pedicle and commonly occur in two alternating linear rows (fig. 4). In some whole mounts they are much displaced, and in strongly contracted flattened specimens become angular in form by mutual compression. Each testis leads by a narrow vas eferens into one of the two vasa deferentia. It was not established whether or not the collection of spermatic fluid is equally divided between the two male collecting ducts, but it is certain that the division is into anterior and posterior groups, as only one vas

deferens is present in transverse sections of the posterior testicular region. The vasa deferentia run forward in contact with one another within the large bundle of longitudinal muscle fibres arising from the acetabulum. Approaching the pedicle, they emerge from the muscles and pass towards the dorsal surface. A short distance in front of the pedicle they open into the seminal vesicle. This is a sinuous tube 0.06 mm. in diameter which runs forward through almost the entire length of the fore-body. It is situated near the dorsal surface and is enclosed ventrally by the longitudinal fibres which link the acetabulum and the oral sucker. As the seminal vesicle approaches the pharyngeal region its wall becomes muscular, due to the presence of increasingly stout outer longitudinal and inner circular fibres. The vesicle is then obstructed by a stout sphincter which projects into the cavity and encloses a narrow lumen. This separates the seminal vesicle from the pars prostatica into which it projects as a blunt conical nozzle (fig. 6). The pars prostatica is a strongly muscular tube lined with stout circular fibres and a thick, clear layer which resembles the prostatic layer of many other species but which

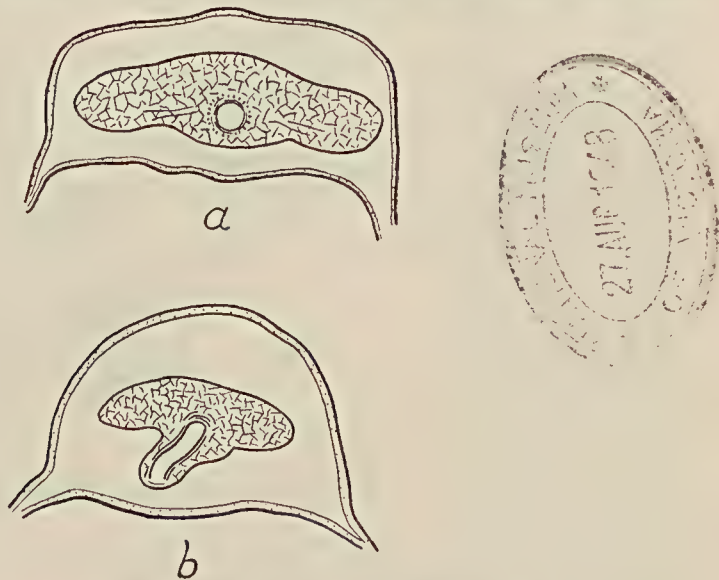


FIG. 7.—Diagrams of two transverse sections through the copulatory organ. (a) Near its base. (b) Approaching the tip.

does not appear to be of a cellular nature. The pars prostatica narrows and opens into the hermaphrodite duct through a small papilla. A well-developed prostate gland consists of numerous very small cells lying free in the tissue about and above the pars prostatica. The weakly muscular hermaphrodite duct perforates a well-developed copulatory organ, which is not to be considered a cirrus as it is clearly not derived from the male duct. It represents an outgrowth from the wall of the genital atrium. The organ is produced into lateral expansions near its base, but near the tip it narrows abruptly, forming shoulders and terminating in a slender recurved portion which is reminiscent in form of a miniature elephants trunk (fig. 2). Genuine copulation does not seem possible in this species, the copulatory organ serving to deposit spermatic fluid within the genital atrium of the other individual, from whence it is later drawn into the recipients body through its own copulatory organ.

2. *Female*. Five smooth, round ovaries occur in the intercaecal space immediately behind the testes. They are situated one behind the other, each being obliquely in contact with its predecessor (fig. 4). In slightly flattened whole mounts the ovaries measure 0.33 mm. in diameter. The ova measure 0.0125 mm. Each ovary leads ventrally into a branch of the common oviduct which runs directly backwards in the mid-line below the ovaries (fig. 8). After receiving the ducts from the ovaries the oviduct expands slightly and passes along the dorsal surface of Mehlis' gland. It then tapers and enters the gland. After receiving the yolk duct it turns forward and becomes the ootype. Here it receives numerous fine protoplasmic threads from the surrounding gland cells. The female duct then turns dorsad and emerges from Mehlis' gland as the uterus. The narrow proximal convolutions of the uterus lie behind the gland and function as a receptaculum seminis. The uterus passes to the posterior tip of the body, where it expands and begins a regularly

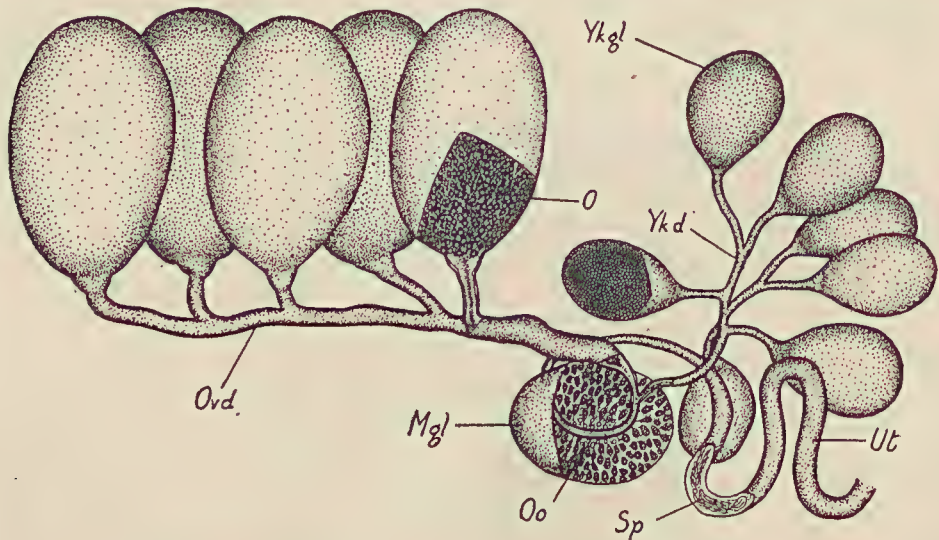


FIG. 8.—Diagram of the female complex reconstructed from sections.

convoluted path forwards. It is extremely long, turning alternately to left and right, the coils passing completely across the body dorsal to the gonads. The loops pass between the intestine and the lateral body margins on each side and extend inwards for a short distance near the ventral surface (fig. 9). On reaching the pedicle, the uterus turns directly forward as a sinuous tube which lies in the mid-line near the ventral surface. Dorsally, it makes contact with the muscle fibres connecting the acetabulum and the oral sucker. As it approaches the base of the copulatory organ the uterus narrows abruptly into a muscular metraterm which possesses well-developed outer longitudinal and inner circular fibres. Near the aperture of the male duct the metraterm communicates with the hermaphrodite duct through a strong sphincter (fig. 6). There is an interesting development in the nature of the wall of the uterus and of its contents as it progresses through the post-acetabular region. In the early convolutions, i.e., those near the posterior of the body, the uterine wall is membranous and the contents consist of a homogeneous mass of groups of yolk cells with their ova. The contents of each egg is bounded from its companions by a thin membranous covering. No sign of shell development is evident. However, as the uterus approaches the pedicle it becomes lined with large gland cells which are packed with darkly staining contents, and the

shells of the eggs become progressively thicker. In the loops of the uterus, immediately behind the pedicle and throughout its course through the fore-body, the eggs are fully formed and possess a thick golden shell. They are roundly ovoid and measure 0.025-0.03 mm. long by 0.0175-0.0215 mm. broad. This indicates that the shell-forming material is passed into the uterus by its glandular lining. The uterine glands are not present in the fore-body.

The yolk glands are constantly seven in number. Each is a smooth pyriform body measuring 0.16 mm. by 0.13 mm. which opens into a slender branch of the yolk duct. They are grouped immediately behind Mehlis' gland (fig. 8).

Discussion. The presence of a multiple of the usual number of two testes is not now thought unusual, but the writer has encountered only one description of a form possessing more than one ovary *Biovarium cryptocotyle* Yamaguti 1934. Species are known to occur in which the ovary is deeply lobed, e.g., *Paracryptogonimus americanus* Manter 1940, and *Metadena globosa* (Linton 1910), etc.

However, in *Copiatestes thyrsitae* n.gen. n.sp. the ovaries are separated well-developed organs. Similarly, although in the genus *Paronotrema* Dollfus which also belongs to the Syncoeliidae, the large number of testes are said to represent segments of two tubular testes (Manter 1940), this is not the case in the present species.

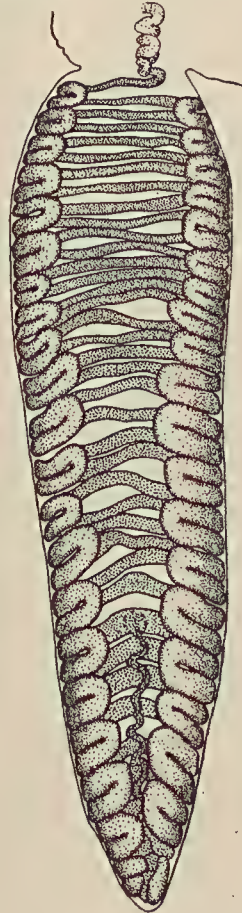


FIG. 9.—Diagram of the course of the uterus in the post-acetabular region. The gonads and intestine are omitted. Drawn from the ventral aspect.

REFERENCES

- YAMAGUTI, S., 1934.—Studies on the Helminth Fauna of Japan 2. Trematodes of Fishes 1. *Jap. Journ. Zool. Tokyo* 5, pp. 249-541.
- MANTER, H. W., 1940.—The Digenetic Trematodes of the Galapagos Islands and the Neighbouring Pacific. *Rep. Alan Hancock Pac. Exped.* 2, 14, 1940.

Notes on the Occurrence of the Nematode *Mermis nigrescens* Dujardin and its Effect on the Common Earwig in Tasmania

By

PETER W. CROWCROFT

Zoology Department, University of Tasmania

(Read 11th November, 1947)

Since its introduction into Tasmania at a probably early date, the common brown earwig (*Forficula auricularia* Linn.) has multiplied and spread throughout the State. It is present in such considerable numbers as to cause great annual damage to fruit and green vegetable crops and is a scourge of the amateur gardener. *Forficula auricularia* has long been known to harbour the nematode *Mermis nigrescens* Dujardin. Baylis (1944) described the artificial infection of earwigs by feeding them aphids coated with the eggs of the worm. Baylis also indicated that the emergence of the larvae from the body of the host prior to the worm's sojourn in the soil brought about the death of the host. Further, earwigs were sometimes killed by heavy initial infections before the larvae had developed to any degree.

Mermis nigrescens Linn. has apparently been introduced into Tasmania through the earwig. This insect provides the University Zoology Department with a convenient source of the Sporozoon *Gregarina ovata* Duf. During the dissection of the earwigs, students and instructors frequently find the abdomen occupied by the well-developed larvae of *Mermis*. In class procedure this generally occurs in March or April. Infection apparently takes place in October or November of the previous year when the females of *Mermis* are stimulated by the warmth and moisture of the infrequent thunderstorms of that period. They rise to the surface of the soil and climb low plants to lay innumerable eggs.

Some indication of the incidence of *Mermis* in the earwig and of its effect on that host should not always prove of interest to Tasmanians but supplements the work of Baylis.

In January, 1946, one hundred earwigs were collected from my garden at Glenorchy, and dissected. The details of the infections are as follows:—

	Sex of Earwig	Worms Present	Respective Lengths mm.
January 4, 1946	f	1	72
	f	3	47 57 65
	f	2	54 65
	m	3	37 54 66
	f	1	29
	m	3	52 55 56
	f	1	86
	?	2	58 90
	?	2	55 88
	f	1	78
	f	1	34
	6m	0	

	Sex of Earwig	Worms Present	Respective Lengths mm.
January 10	m	2	54 90
	m	3	50 51 58
	f	1	75
	m	9	31 32 36 40 43 45 45 45 50
	m	1	100
	f	6	33 35 36 41 43 45
	m	5	30 35 36 53 53
January 11	m	1	67
	f	1	120
	m	1	87
	f	1	100
	m	1	128
	m	1	34
	m	1	71
	f	4	42 42 46 84
	m	1	114
	m	1	68
	9m	0	
	3f	0	
January 14	m	2	39 102
	m	1	52
	?	8	25 29 34 35 39 41 41 41
	5m	0	
	9f	0	
January 17	f	2	83 85
	m	4	45 50 54 57
	m	6	32 33 35 40 42 45
	f	1	85
	1f	0	
January 19	f	3	55 75 77
	m	3	61 62 66
	f	1	97
	f	8	34 39 39 40 41 45 53 55
	f	4	42 51 55 58
	m	2	79 92
	f	3	59 71 75
	?	5	27 29 29 29 29
	f	9	34 35 37 38 40 41 41 42 75
	f	1	106
	m	1	? (emerged and damaged)
	m	9	22 25 32 35 36 38 41 55 67
	f	2	52 55
	f	1	83
	m	2	90 93
	m	1	108
	4m	0	
	11f	0	
	1?	0	

Thus fifty-one of the hundred earwigs were infected by *Mermis*. Generally speaking, the number of larvae present in a single earwig is in inverse ratio to their average size. This is to be expected, as the size of the body cavity of the insect is the limiting factor. The larvae are found tightly packed in the abdomen but may extend into the thorax. The worms lie free in the cavity, not being enclosed by a cyst or envelope of any kind. No fat body is present in infected insects and, whereas most of the females free from worms are carrying eggs at this time of the year, no eggs are present in infected females.

On the 8th February, 1946, Professor Hickman kindly collected eighteen earwigs at New Town. These remained in a jar, with lettuce leaves, for three days, at the end of which they were examined. Damaged and partly eaten nematodes were present in the jar and two male earwigs were dead. Of these two, the one appeared to be pierced ventrally between the posterior pair of legs and the other between the fifth and sixth abdominal segments. Of the remaining sixteen insects only one male was found to be infected. Two larvae were present 32 and 102 mm. long respectively.

On the third of March I collected a further one hundred and thirty-eight earwigs from my garden at Glenorchy. One hundred and twenty were dissected, but only thirteen of these were infected. The remaining eighteen, which appeared to be distended and therefore likely to contain worms, were separately confined in Petri dishes containing lettuce and a moist filter paper. These were observed daily and the following noted:—

March 5: One larva 86 mm. had emerged from a female earwig which died during the evening.

March 6: One larva (partly eaten) had emerged from a female which died on March 8th.

March 7: One larva 111 mm. had emerged from a female which died during the evening of March 8th.

March 8: No emergences.

March 9: Two larvae 51 mm. and 65 mm. had emerged from a female which died during the evening of March 10th.

March 10-16: No emergences.

March 17: One larva 74 mm. had emerged from a male which died during the evening of March 19th.

As no further emergences had occurred by April 8th the remaining thirteen earwigs were dissected and found to be free from infection. All the females contained eggs.

On March 15th a parallel experiment was conducted with a number of earwigs collected from New Town. The following observations were made:—

March 20: A larva 121 mm. had emerged from near the anus of a male earwig. The insect bled a little from this region and died during the evening of March 21st.

March 25: Three emergences had taken place—

1. A larva 116 mm. had emerged from a male which was bleeding from the abdominal spiracles. The insect died on March 26th.

2. Two larvae 62 mm. and 126 mm. had emerged from a female which was now dead.

3. A single larva 148 mm. had emerged from a female which died on March 26th.

A further eighteen insects were dissected on April 8th. One further male was found to be infected containing a single larva 73 mm. The females all contained eggs.

These results showed that emergences of *Mermis* are taking place rapidly during March and resulted in all observed cases in the death of the host earwig.

SUMMARY

The presence of *Mermis nigrescens* Dujardin in the body cavity of the common earwig *Forficula auricularia* Linn. in Tasmania is reported. This is considered to be of some economic importance in Tasmania, as it reduces the earwig population in the following ways:—

1. The presence of nematode larvae prevents the formation of eggs during a period in which the females are normally producing offspring.
2. It is possible that the fertility of the males is similarly affected.
3. The emergences of the nematode larvae are responsible for a considerable number of deaths.
4. Very heavy initial infections may cause the death of the host (Baylis 1944).

REFERENCES

- BAYLIS, H. A., 1944.—Observations on the nematode *Mermis nigrescens* and related species. *Parasitology* 36 (1/2), 122-132.

Péron in Tasmania

By

L. A. TRIEBEL

(Read 11th November, 1947)

François Péron, French scientist and explorer, was the first man to write, after direct contact, an accurate account of the Tasmanian aborigines. His record of their vanished race is a monument of careful and truthful observation. Supplemented by the modern anthropologists' wider knowledge of the origin of Tasmania's earliest inhabitants, the French naturalist's description merits close examination.

Professor Wood-Jones and others have analysed the evidence proving that the Tasmanians belong to the Melanesian Negroid stock nearly related to the New Caledonians, the Philipinos and Fijians—a race distinct from the Australian natives—and that Tasmania's aborigines came by sea from their Melanesian island home; a fact which, however, does not preclude inter-relations with those of the mainland. Wood-Jones tells the story of the race after contact with European voyagers and from the date of the Risdon settlement; physical and social characteristics are excellently described. The burden of his conclusions, identical with those of other Tasmanian historians who quote from the earlier parts of Péron, is that the cheerful, laughter-loving people, 'living happy lives in their native forests, languished under the régime of the kindly, but misguided catechist, the military, and the impressive administration of British justice'. Now, to what extent were the Fathers of the Church in Tasmania and the Old Flag to blame?

Péron's recorded observations are so frequently referred to that it is pertinent to examine them more closely with a view to determining whether the work of the brilliant French scientist, trained as he was by Cuvier, Laplace, Lacépède, and other world-renowned members of the Institut de France, justifies the words 'cheerful, friendly, laughter-loving and happy', as applied to Tasmanian aboriginals with whom Péron consorted during the stay of some months in southern and eastern Tasmania and on the islands of Bass Strait. Did he see them through rose-tinted glasses as perfect children of Nature and draw of them pictures coloured by the doctrines of Rousseau and so let his enthusiasm outrun scientific accuracy?

By reading the French text I discovered that the modern anthropologist's attitude to aboriginals may be akin to Rousseau's towards the noble savage running wild in woods (which made Voltaire want to walk on all fours and of which Dryden had known something). Péron, however, at the end of the only volume that he himself wrote of his voyages, after many native contacts made by him and other members of the Baudin expedition sent out by Napoleon (1800-04) just before the British settlement at Risdon and the massacre, flatly denounced Rousseau's worship of the uncivilised state and warned other travellers. Péron was early disabused of his first impressions during a chance encounter with a Tasmanian family.

François Péron has been the subject of several French memoirs. An excellent account of him was also given by the late Sir Ernest Scott in 'Terre Napoléon', in spite of some mistranslation from the original documents. Born in 1775, Péron fought in the revolutionary army on the Rhine, was wounded and taken prisoner. Exchanged in 1794 and suffering the loss of an eye, he devoted himself to medicine and to comparative anatomy. Lacépède encouraged the student to read a paper before the Institute. His biographer affirms that Péron was disappointed in love at the time (some women prefer a two-eyed man) and that his main theme, the desirability of having a trained anthropologist with Baudin's expedition, was also not unreasonable from a personal point of view. The Institute convinced the Minister of Marine: Péron, with detailed programmes suggested by Cuvier and Lacépède, joined 'Le Géographe' just before she sailed on her purely scientific exploration, ultimately rich in zoological and botanical results, but poor in geographical gains. So bad was the map-drawing of the French navigators that Scott had little difficulty in demolishing the charge that they had copied from Flinders whilst the latter was imprisoned on Mauritius. However, Captain Baudin's chief cartographer, Freycinet, who completed Péron's history of the expedition, used information volunteered by Flinders. The latter's 'Investigator' carried a midshipman by name John Franklin, when British and French met in Port Jackson during 1802. Fifty leagues of charted coast was the full extent of Terre Napoléon. Péron wrote in glowing terms of the prosperous young colony of New South Wales and of British hospitality to an enemy, for, despite the long and bitter naval warfare of the years leading to Trafalgar, the Admiralty had made out passports promising safe conduct to Baudin's ships. True science, like philosophy, music, art, and literature, is often super-national.

Péron's biological specimens were classified and discussed between 1804 and the year of his death, 1810. By order of Napoleon, the first part of the historical account was published at the Imperial Press in 1807; the second, mainly by Louis Freycinet, in 1816. Atlases and a series of excellent coloured engravings were also issued, these depicting aborigines, native weapons, adornments, baskets, canoes, huts, and tombs observed on the southern and eastern shores of Tasmania and on some of the islands in Bass Strait. The title of the finely printed and well-preserved volumes in the library of the Royal Society of Tasmania and in the Tasmanian State Library is 'Voyages de découvertes aux Terres australes, exécutés par ordre de sa majesté l'Empereur et Roi, sur les corvettes Le Géographe et le Naturaliste—pendant les années 1800, 1801, 1802, 1803, et 1804'.

The scientific equipment of Baudin's expedition was lavish; but Péron and Freycinet have little to say in his favour as a navigator. Food supplies were bad after Mauritius and the journey to the West Australian coast took 220 days. The charts made of the north-west coast were ill-defined and inaccurate, whilst Port Darwin, like Port Phillip later, was missed altogether. Scott mentions the interesting detail that when Péron came to write his account in Paris during October, 1805, he named a small island off the broken coast of the Kimberley division 'Isle of Lucas', in honour of the captain of the 'Redoubtable' from whose mizzen-top a shot had fatally wounded Nelson. Scourged by scurvy and separated from the 'Naturaliste', Péron's ship made Timor for water and fresh fruit; thence she turned and stayed in Tasmanian waters for three months. This was the longest stay of any white navigators during the time of unchallenged aboriginal possession.

No steps were at any time taken towards a French settlement. Renewed scurvy and heavy storms compelled the expedition to sail for Port Jackson. The crew were in such a plight when they stood outside the heads that a party of blue-jackets

from the 'Investigator' had to take the Frenchmen to safe anchorage in Neutral Bay. A stay of six months enabled Péron to visit the country around Sydney; of the latter he wrote in admiration. Once more Baudin's men then set out on their leisurely way—King Island, Kangaroo Island, further explorations on the west and northern coasts, then Timor again and home *via* Mauritius, with a rich load of specimens, including emus, kangaroos, and black swans. At Shark's Bay, Péron, unlike Tasman when he discovered Van Diemen's Land, was not deceived by the crew's reports of giant footprints and of fierce blackfellows of extraordinary strength and stature. Together with two of Baudin's officers, he advanced boldly towards a group of forty Australian aborigines. This show of fearlessness by the three whites disconcerted the blacks who slowly vanished. None was over 5 feet 4 inches in height; many were thin-limbed and feeble-looking.

Cuvier later reported highly on the skill and diligence of Péron in classifying an enormous number of specimens. His personal character appears from an obituary notice printed in the 'Moniteur' and contributed by one of the ship's surgeons under Baudin—'Péron carried upon his face the expression of kindness and sensibility . . . he made himself useful to most of those who were the companions of his voyage. There was joined to his confidence a great modesty. He was so natural that it was impossible to resist the charm of his manners'. One valuable contribution to knowledge made by Péron was his explanation of the structure and functional processes of those mass-organisms producing phosphorescence in the sea. At the feet of the great Cuvier he had learnt the importance of structure and function in the lives of creatures; Péron's own life was too short for him to master the mass of material collected in those four years at sea.

Péron was the first trained anthropologist to enter into personal relations with Tasmania's vanished race; on January 13th, 1802, Baudin's ships sailed into Port Cygnet. The earliest encounter with Diemenese was pleasant. A party searching for water met two natives with their gins. The younger black was so amazed when given a glass bottle that he threw it into the sea; he was also extremely puzzled by the way in which the whites' boat was moored. When a fire was lit a sailor took off his fur gloves to warm his hands. Péron adds—'The young woman at the sight of that action gave forth such a loud cry that we were at first alarmed, but we were not long in recognizing the cause of her fright. We saw from her expressions and gestures that she had taken the gloves for real hands, or at least for a kind of living skin that could be taken off, put in pocket, and put on again at will. We laughed much at that singular error; but we were not so much amused at what the old man did a little later with a bottle of arack. As it contained a great part of our drink, we were compelled to take it from him, which he resented so much that he went off sulkily with his family in spite of all I could do to detain them longer'.

The naturalist's excursions delighted him. Within a space of two hours he collected forty new species of molluscs, shell, crustaceus and fish; whilst he noted the plumage of swarming parrots and the 'blue head and neck' tomtit. He came across one or two wretched aboriginal huts, semi-circular shelters, made of bark supported against dry branches—rough protection against the south-west wind. Around the huts arose putrid and nauseous odours from animal remains in shells. Péron also examined the natives' 'unskilful attempt at the art of navigation'—canoes, each formed of three strips of bark clumsily joined together and fastened with a slip of the same bark. A family of nine natives was next encountered; they were loaded with shellfish. For a while all were confident, bidding the whites to sit down (*medi, medi*) and share a meal of fish broiled on flat stones. Péron and his companions roused admiration by rendering the song 'so unhappily

prostituted during the revolution', nevertheless 'so full of enthusiasm and spirit'. He was impressed by the lively, merry children, and by the gentility and charm of a young woman, Ouré-Ouré, who showed him the use of burnt charcoal crushed in her hand for fard; it was like red ochre, an ornamental grease for hair and body. He examined the native granite knives, axes and points of assegais. The idyll ends abruptly when a shot is heard, fired by a hunting party of the expedition. Péron reflects on the privations and miseries of the state of nature, but concludes that the character of the women is less dependent than that of men on the influence of climate, on physical causes and the improvement of society. But their bodies were torn by bush and bramble; the bodies of the older women, he remarked later, were scarred with wounds, the result of bad treatment by their superior spouses.

Péron's subsequent meetings with the Tasmanian aborigines in 1802 caused him radically to revise his views on 'our good Diemenese'; he appears contented with his scientific observations, these including the determination of many Tasmanian tree species; giant eucalyptus, 180 feet in height and as much as 36 feet in circumference, are noted. Throughout his account he admired landscapes of mountains and glades; the Port of Swans charmed him. The fiercest Tasmanian aborigines were those of the islands in the Channel, particularly Isle Bruni and Isle Maria. In the original Péron, the evidence is clearly set out on pages 235-239. Anthropologists and historians have, to the best of my researches, overlooked it. I draw attention first to the Maurouard incident.

It will be noted that, as in all their native encounters, the Frenchmen loaded the aborigines with gifts. This, however, is the only aboriginal outrage recorded by Péron for which the white man attempted retaliation. It appears that in speed alone was he surpassed by the blacks. A few days later, in another part of the Channel, a native attack followed. Showers of stones fell on the same party, the assailants lying in ambush. More serious was the assault on one of the artists with the expedition, M. Petit, who with others, including Baudin, had meanwhile made contact with other islanders. I translate what Péron says—'I discovered on my return that on the morning of the 15th (January, 1802), the jolly-boat of the "Géographe" having gone to fish on Bruni Island, the natives had appeared in great numbers and that our ship-mates had given them many presents and spent the greater part of the day in their midst. Monsieur Maurouard, one of our cadets, eager to test for himself the much-vaunted strength of barbarous tribes, had suggested a wrestling match to one of the natives who appeared to be the strongest. The Tasmanian, having accepted the challenge, had seen himself thrown several times in succession by the French midshipman, and had been compelled to admit himself beaten. From then on till the time of leaving several hours later there had apparently been no weakening or change in the trustful and friendly character of the natives; however, although our friends had given them still more presents, so that suspicion was out of the question, at the very moment of reshipping, Monsieur Maurouard was suddenly hit on the shoulder by a long assegai thrown from behind the rocks nearby. This uncouth weapon had been hurled with such force that after glancing the whole length of the shoulder-plate, it had penetrated the flesh between shoulder and neck. The crew of the jolly-boat were exasperated by this barbarous and cowardly treachery and had sought vengeance upon the savages by pursuing them; but, already, all had disappeared amidst the rocks and undergrowth.

'Soon after our return the commander himself came back from a short excursion on the mainland (*i.e.*, of Tasmania). With him had been Captain Hamelin, Monsieur Leschenault (botanist), and Monsieur Petit (artist). These gentlemen had again encountered the natives, and this interview also was ended

by a violent attack on their part. As a matter of fact, Monsieur Petit had made a sketch of several of the natives, when one of them, as our party was getting ready to return to the ship, threw himself on the artist and tried to snatch from him the sketches that he had just finished. On being resisted, the infuriated savage seized a log and would have killed our weak messmate if the others had not rushed to his aid. However, and far from trying to avenge such an insult, they took pleasure in loading the aggressor with fresh presents, doubtlessly in the hope of calming his fury with such generosity and of winning his goodwill and that of his fellow countrymen. Yet hardly had these sullen savages seen our men engaged in re-embarking when they themselves again made for the woods. A moment later a hail of stones fell; one stone struck the commander on the lower part of the back and caused a large, severe bruise. In spite of such baseness our comrades still persisted in their generosity. In vain the savages exposed themselves to shots by provocations from the beach just left; it was useless for them to brandish their assegais and to make more threatening gestures; not a single gun-shot was fired at them'.

Not a single shot fired in retaliation; the aggressors were overwhelmed with gifts! And still treacherous attacks were made from under cover. Vast tracts of bush were fired by the aborigines to scare off the expedition. One of the officers, Captain Hamelin, observed thirty-six natives marching along the shore in groups of five or six, each with one man carrying a bundle of assegais; and at the head of this little army one man with a burning poker in hand set fire to bushes hiding the ground. Other threatening parties were noticed on shore, and of the bush-fires Péron says that the ferocious inhabitants thus destroyed their ancient and venerable forests. Once more, with two companions, he advanced on a horde that retreated before them up a mountain whose slopes were burning—once more the natives melted away.

Péron quotes, with approval, the views of the botanist, Leschenault, on the hostile aboriginal attitude to all attempts at conciliation—'The latest attacks were made by the natives without our having in the slightest degree given any occasion for them; on the contrary, we had loaded them with gifts, and nothing in our bearing could have given them offence. I confess myself astounded, after the reports of so many instances of treachery and cruelty in all the voyages of discoveries, to hear rational people repeat the opinion that men living in a state of nature are in no wise evil and that they can be trusted and that they will not be aggressive unless they are excited by vengeance. Unfortunately, many have fallen victims to such vain sophistries. For my own part, I think that, in consequence of all that we could see, it would be impossible to be too mistrustful of men whose nature has not yet been refined by civilisation, and that prudence should be exercised in landing on shores inhabited by such men'.

On Bruni Island, Péron and others had one more relatively harmless chance encounter with a party of native women; their form and features were repulsive; many were covered with sores, two or three of the younger ones excepted. Again a French song rendered them friendly. One of them made a kindly effort to colour the naturalist's skin to her fancy, he submitting in the cause of science. A face to please her should be black; charcoal was the lady's substitute for science. He learnt that the white European skin was really a defect or deformity which must give place to the hue of charcoal or of red ochre. On the sudden reappearance of their men-folk, the women dropped the catch of crab-fish at their feet and cowered silently on the sand dunes at a distance from their men whose surliness promptly ended the hospitality towards the strangers.

Péron's remaining pages on Tasmania continue his scientific observations (basaltic rock, volcanic scoria, new fish and shells, lichen, fungi, mosses, grasses, sea-grasses, with comments on snow-capped mountains and further notes on the aborigines and their habits. A 'tetraedre' pyramid reveals one of their burial-places; this was a monument made of bark covering charred human bones in a small hole and indicating the custom of burning the dead near the sea and near a stream of fresh water. On Isle Maria, where two carpenters were savagely attacked, Péron studied the physical proportions of aborigines whom he managed to interest for short spells before their suspicious, restless perfidiousness asserted itself. Few were over 5 feet, with head enlarged, shoulders bony and disproportionately large, legs lank and weak. Here the natives were extremely covetous; liberal presents of knives and handkerchiefs failed to satisfy one who grabbed at Péron's jacket and savagely pulled at his gold ear-rings. Moreover, Péron collected dynamometric data based on Regnier's apparatus and found that none of the aborigines could move the beam as far as he could. One historian asks that account should be taken of their lack of familiarity with the instrument which attracted them, and with the white men's directions for its use. But he quite overlooks the fact that Péron tested their grip with his own hand and that none could release his grip! This is conclusive evidence, supported as it is by the story of the wrestling match, of the physical inferiority of the blacks, whose moral status is perhaps best designated by 'cowardly ferocity'; their intelligence was low. Péron, the ex-revolutionist, ends the account of his visit to Tasmania with a warning against the state of nature glorified by the heirs of Rousseau and perhaps by some anthropologists.

The Diary of the Rev. Robert Knopwood, 1805-1808*

Continued from the Papers and Proceedings
of the Royal Society of Tasmania, 1946, p. 124

JANUARY 1807

- | | | |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| Thursday
C.S.
New Year | 1 | at 10 the morning cool & rain is very much wanting the grass all dried up and the Country on Fire by the Natives at 1 p.m. I waited upon the Lt. Govnr my Men came down the River from Hunting in the Eve a little Rain Lt. Henderson was put under an arrest for ungentleman-like conduct by Capt Johnson |
| Friday
C.S.
Longtown | 2 | am this morn I sat upon business at my House at home all the day |
| Saturday
C.S.
South | 3 | am at home all the day till 3 p.m. walkd out to Mr. Bowdens—Capt. Johnson came home with me |
| Sunday
C.S.
Leedlow | 4 | am my not being sufficiently recovered Divine Service was not performd—at 4 p.m. I dind with the Lt. Govnr |
| Monday
C.S.
Luton | 5 | At home till 2 p.m. when calld upon Capt. Johnson Mr Bowden & Lt Lord calld in the Morning this day began Wheat Harvest at the Govmt Farm |
| Tuesday
C.S.
Limington | 6 | at 8 a.m. I walkd with the Govnr to the Farm where we Breakfasted and returnd home about 12 at 8 it began to Rain $\frac{1}{2}$ past 10 a very fine shower and very dark |
| Wed.
C.S.
Cheshire | 7 | the morning fine after the Rain. at 11 I went across the Water and killd three snipes came home late to dinner |

January 1807

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|--|
| Thursday
C.S.
Kent | 8 | am at 5 I got up and went to the Govmt Farm to see them Reep and returnd to Breakfast at 12 waited upon the Lt Govnr |
|--------------------------|---|--|

* Prepared for publication by W. H. Hudspeth and S. Angel from the original manuscript in the possession of Miss Mabel Hookey, Rokeby, Tasmania.

- Friday 9 am at 9 G. P. Harris Esq Breakfasted with me at 11 I
C.S. sat upon the bench and was detain'd there on business till
Essex 3 p.m.
- Saturday 10 am at 9 Mr. Harris Breakfasted with me and we walkd to
C.S. the farm upon business in the Eve I call'd upon Mrs and
Malpas Mr Groves, was taken ill at night
- Sunday 11 am at 11 perform'd Divine Service and was obliged to go
C.S. to bed as soon as it was over, 4 p.m. I dind with his Honor
Manchester the Govnr—Perform'd Divine Service at the Carpenters
shop
- Monday 12 am at 11 I went to the Court and sat upon some prisoners
C.S. that had kill'd a Goat, found them Guilty and Sentenced
Mansfield North, Long, Vasey to receive 500 Lashes and Cruse and
At 9 I married Briscoe 300 for absenting themselves from the Colony
Mr Cockrells Capt Johnson Lieut Breedon Mr Bowden & Mr Fosbrook
daughter to came to the Court to hear the trial very unwell the
Mr Littlefield Settlers and people very busy in Harvest—
settlers
- Tuesday 13 am at home all the day unwell
C.S.
Margate

January 1807

- Wednesday 14 am at home all the day
C.S.
Marlow
- Thursday 15 am at 10 I went to Risdon and found Mr Mountgarrets
C.S. House burnt to the ground by Rush and Hunter, received
Maryport the information from Gadsby a prisoner who was at work
at Mr Clarks Farm
- Friday 16 am upon business all the morn at Court and all the
C.S. Civil officers came to Court Stay'd at home the remainder
Matock of the day
- Saturday 17 am at 8 I went down the River afishing sell five to the
C.S. Hills near my House.
Midhurst
- Sunday 18 am at 11 perform'd Divine Service. 5 p.m. dind with
C.S. Captain Johnson and bought a dog name Chance gave
Middleton him £25 for it

January 1807

- Monday 19 am the morn very warm at 12 a Royal Salute of 21 Guns
C.S. was fir'd from the ordinance this day I began my Wheat
The Queen Harvest. Gains Richardson Earl Haffart reap'd the wheat

- Tuesday 20 am at 11 I took a walk with my Gun did not see a Kangarro,
C.S. the Country so lately set fire to by the natives. at 6 p.m.
Milford we had a moderate shower of rain my men cut a little
Wheat
- Wed. 21 am at home all the day busy in Harves
C.S. this Eve we had a little Rain
Minehead
- Thursday 22 am at five I went out afishing and had very good success
C.S. came home to Breakfast at home all the day busy in
Modbury harvest 5 p.m. we had Thunder at a distance
- Friday 23 am at 5 went out afishing had very good Success. at 11
C.S. waited upon his Honor the Lt Govnr Sat upon the bench,
Monmouth returnd home at 1 p.m. busy in harvest Mrs. M. C
birthday = 24 octate
- Saturday 24 am at 6 I went out afishing had very good success returnd
C.S. home at 9.11 we had Thunder at a distance many of the
Montrose farmers have got most of their corn in
- January 1807
- Sunday 25 am at 11 performd Divine Service at 4 p.m. I dind with
C.S. the Lt Govnr. we got exceedingly Merry
Moreton
- Monday 26 am at 11 sat upon the bench to try Archers (?) for
C.S. mealing some corn belonging to Government this aft had
Needham a fine shower of Rain
- Tuesday 27 am at home all day sent 3 men out aKangarroing busy
C.S. about the Corn
Newberry
- Wednes 28 am this morn Engaged a man to break up some Stubble
C.S. ground, walkd to the Farm upon business Watts a
Newmarket Prisoner was taken. wounded a Marine and got away
- Thursday 29 am at home all day busy about my Corn and in my
C.S. Garden. in the Eve I took a walk with my Gun and was
Newpork lost did not get home till late at night
- Friday 30 am at 12 calld upon the Govnr and stayd some time,
C.S. at home else all day got some more corn cut the Country
Northhampton all on fire by the Natives
Capt Johnson calld upon me
- Saturday 31 At home all the day
C.S.
Northhampton

Feb. 1 am at 11 performd Divine Service 4 p.m. I dind with the
 Sunday Govnr at 6 Mr Collins Boat came up the River Cape Barren
 where they had been aseeling since September killd 2000
 Seals

February 1807

Monday 2 am This morn got all my wheat in my barn and my men
 C.S. came down the River no success in Kangarroing
 Oakampton

Tuesday 3 am employd all day in getting up Potatoes Jones was
 C.S. taken at Risdon by Mr. Clark absent on the 1 of Oct. 1806
 Olney

Wed. 4 am at 8 I went out ashooting and Kild a Couple of Ducks
 C.S. very bad success in fishing
 Orford

Thursday 5 am at home all the day, Busy in breaking up land for
 C.S. Wheat
 Ormskirk

Friday 6 am Capt Johnson calld upon me and I walkd home with
 C.S. him
 Otley

Saturday 7 am at 11 I dischard My Man Gains for ill treating my
 C.S. dogs and took Groves man in his stead
 Overton

Sunday 8 am at 11 performd Divine Service at 4 p.m. I dind with
 C.S. His Honor the Lt. Govnr. Sent Stokes and 2 Men out
 Oxford with my Dogs.

February 1807

Monday 9 am at 11 engaged. upon the Bench trying some Prisoners
 C.S. At 1 p.m. waited upon the Govnr upon some Business this
 Parkgate day laid the foundation of my new room

Tuesday 10 am at 11 I walkd to the Govmt farm upon business and at
 C.S. $\frac{1}{2}$ past 3 p.m. I dind with the Lt. Govnr at the Farm walkd
 Pembroke home with him at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 7 and took tea with him

Wed. 11 am at home all the day. at 4 p.m. Lieut Laycock of the
 C.S. New South Wales Regt and 4 Men armd arrivd here by land
 Penrith from the Settlement at Pt Dalrymple. they were 9 days
 from the Settlement but 7 walking it the first party that
 have ever come from Pt. Dalrymple he came to inform
 this Govnr of the distress of that settlement. We can
 afford no relief

Thursday 12 am at home all the morn. busey at my Garden 2 p.m. I
C.S. took a walk with my Gun did not kill anything
Penzance

Friday 13 am at 11 I sat upon the Bench at least 20 people came
C.S. there upon business, which detaind me till 4 p.m.
Laycock

February 1807

Saturday 14 am at 10 calld upon the Lt Govnr we took a walk till 12.
C.S. this aft I Buried Robert Waring One of Mr Fosbrooks
Perth men that hunted for him, he was forced from the hut
by the Natives which came in great number to him
they took the man some distance from the Hut and one
of the party throwd a Spear at him which entered his
side. He pulld it out and on the natives going to pick
it up to Spear him again, He shot the Native and killd him.
They all went away and left him and with great difficulty
he got to the first falls where he met with a boat which
brought him to Hobart Town his death was caused by
the Spears entering his side. At 4 p.m. Capt Johnson
Lieut Laycock and self dind with the Govnr

Sunday 15 am at 11 performd Divine Service attended by all the
C.S. Military Lt Govnr Lt Laycock &c &c.
Petersfield

Monday 16 am at 9 I sent for Guest the Principal Blacksmith to have
C.S. my churn finisd by order of the Lt Govnr he said that
Return he had no Charcoal nor has any work been done for
9 days owing to Clark the principal burner having per-
mission to go aKangarroing he lives servt to Richd Clark
and gives him 50£ per annum Guest informd me that he
should not have any ch,coal till Friday next Clark having
permission to be out. at 9 Lt Laycock and his men left
Hobart Town in a Govmt Boat to Herdsmans Cove. the
day very hot

February

Tuesday 17 am at home all the day bust in getting my Ground hoed
C.S. up the day very hot
Petworth

Wed. 18 am this day very hot scarce able to Stir out we have not
C.S. had any rain for a very long time no grass and the Country
Dock on Fire by the Natives who were very troublesome to the
men out aKangarroing--the Colony in very great distress
for wheat which is six pounds per bushell and potatoes
15s per lb.

A strong Sea Breeze

Thursday 19 am at home all the day a strong Sea Breeze
C.S.
Poole

Friday 20 am at 11 sat upon the Bench to try a Prisoner which was
C.S. sent in from the Farm this Eve Henry Hakin returned
Portsmouth from going part of the way with Lt Laycock to Pt
Dalrymple the wr very hot. we had a very small shower
of rain this Eve—Sea Breeze strong

Saturday 21 am at home all the day at 12 Capt Johnson calld upon me
C.S. 2 p.m. the Govnr calld upon me at the Cottage strong Sea
Prescott Breeze

February 1807

Sunday 22 am at 11 Performd Divine Service the day at home all the
C.S. day till 4 p.m. when I dind with the Govnr
Putney

Monday 23 am at 11 confind Stokes my Man for insolence afterwards
C.S. sat upon the Bench to try Coward and Terret for gambling
Radnor on the Lords Day at home the remainder

Tuesday 24 am at 12 waited upon the Lt Govnr and informd him of
C.S. Stokes conduct. he begd of me not to punish him The
Ramsey distress of the Colony very great Meat 3s. 6d per lb very
small fish 2/- per dozen, the flathead which are by much
the most plentiful in the River. Wheat not to be obtained
at 6£ per Bushell and Barley 5£ per Bushell—Salt Pork
2s/6d and 3s per lb Potatoes 1s.6d per lb Rio Tobacco
£2.10 per lb and very difficult to be obtained. Sugar very
coarse at 1£ per lb not a peice of lump Sugar in the Colony

Wed. 25 am at 11 I walkd to the Farm and see my Goats at Mr.
C.S. Hayeses, came home at 4 p.m. the day very warm but Eve
Reading cold no rain.

Thursday 26 am this morn I got my Goats home from Mr. Hayeses, and
C.S. went out afishing. no success, 2 p.m. His Hon the Lt Gov.
Retford come and walkd in the garden

Feb. 1807

Friday 27 am the day very windy. Williams appointed stock keeper
C.S. whose brother is a magistrate at Malborough in Wiltshire
Ringwood

Saturday 28 am at home all the day Mr Fosbrooks and Shipmans
C.S. Kangarro Hunters drove in by the Natives they took the
Ripley Kangarro from them. Mr. Bowdens men drove by the
Natives and George Brewer speared by them. the Men
left Brewer behind

Sunday 1 March 1807
C.S. am at 11 performd Divine Service. this morn we had a
St. David little Rain, at home all the day

Monday
C.S.
Rochester

2 am at 9 Mr Harris Breakfasted with me afterwards walkd to the Farm there met all the Settlers upon business concerning a Public Road. 4 p.m. we returnd this aft my man Richardson came in from Kangarroing he brought 80 w t and left Earl and Kemp in the bush he informd me that on Saturday morn about 9 a.m. He and Earl were out with the Dogs and that the Natives to the number of 60 came down to them throwing stones and shaking their spears at them. One man came forward to Richardson and was going to spear him, but he shot him another came to Earl he killd him my men immediately made up the Hill for fear the Natives should surround them and kill them and Dogs. The two Natives

March 1807

that my men shot, the others they took away, and made a very large Fire for the purpose of Burning the dead. the Natives have been very troublesome for a long time, but not so desperate as lately, no doubt but they have killd Brewer. The Natives endeavour to keep the Men and Dogs in the vallies that they may throw stones at them which they do with great force and exactness

Tuesday
C.S.
Romford

3 am at home all the day collecting some seeds—Garden seeds. Waited upon the Lt Govnr—

Wed.
C.S.
Romsey

4 am at home all the day 7 p.m. Lt. Henderson came down the River and gave information that a ship was seen coming up the River. 8 the Lt Governnor sent a Boat down at 9 it returnd saying that they could not find one, it cast a general damp upon the whole Colony

Thursday
C.S.
Forrest

5 am at Daylight Lieut Lord took his boat and went down the River, on going observd a Brig laying in Kangarro Bay made sail to her. at sunrise she fird a Gun the whole of the Prisoners were so rejoiced that they gave three cheers at 8 a boat came from her, with Captain Forrest who had the Sydney the Brigs name Dutches of York from India in 2 Months passage. Capt Forrest in going to India in the Sydney had the Misfortune to run his ship upon a Reef of Rocks lost the ship and Himself and 49 men took to the launch and long boat and with difficulty in 49 days reach Amboina, at 1 p.m. I went on boat the Dutches of York 3 Capt Forrest and self came on shore and at 4 Capt Johnson Forrest and self dind with the Lt Govnr.

at 7 she made sail to come into this bay
at 10 she arrivd (?) and saluted with 11 guns ..

March 1807

Friday
C.S.
Arrival

6 am at home all day the people employd in getting things from the ship at 5 p.m. I dind at Lt Lords but was very unwell was obliged to come away very early

- Saturday 7 am at 9 took a walk with Capt. Johnson and Forrest
C.S. 12 the Govnr and self with Mrs P. went on board Capt
Forrests ship and took Tiffin. We stayd there some time.
a quantity of spirits was landed and almost everybody
was drunk
- Sunday 8 am at 11 the Lt Govnr and self with Capt Forres took a
C.S. walk Divine service was not performd—
Rugby unwell that I could not dine at Capt Johnson
- Monday 9 am this day a quantity of spirits was landed I got 223
C.S. gall from the ship and many things
Rye unwell that I could not dine at Mr Bowdens
- Tuesday 10 am at 11 I went on board the Dutches of York, 5 p.m.
C.S. Capt. Johnson Lt Lord Lt Breedon Capt Forrest Lt Rankin
St Albans Mr Fosbrook Mr Janson and Mr Bowden dind with me
- March 1807
- Wed. 11 am at 1 p.m. Mr Bowden and self went on Board. at 5 p.m.
C.S. I dind at Mr Fosbrooks and met the same party
St. Ives
- Thursday 12 am at home all day
C.S.
Saltash
- Friday 13 am this morn I took a long walk with my Gun at 5 p.m.
C.S. I dind with Mr Janson and met Mr Fosbrooke Bowden Lt
Salthill Lord
- Saturday 14 am at home writing 2 p.m. waited upon the Govnr
C.S.
- Sunday 15 am Divine Service was not performd, being busy in clearing
C.S. the Ship at 10 p.m. we had a fine Shower of Rain which we
Selkirk had not had for 5 months in the Eve I hurt myself violently
with a fall from my steps of the Door
- March 1807
- Monday 16 am very ill all Day
C.S.
Shaftsbury
- Tuesday 17 am St. Patricks Day the Colours were hoisted on Hunters
C.S. Island very ill till the day with a pain of the side from my
Dublin fall. Lt Govnr sent frequently to know how I was—
- Wed. 18 At home all the day very unwell
C.S.

- Thursday 19 am at 7 the Dutches of York moved out into the fair way,
C.S. at 9 I went on board to get my tea cheanged &c. came
Sherborne on shore at 11 very unwell at 4 p.m. a disturbance arose
among the following Prisoners and the Military Patrole
Jame Cole Tho Salmon Benjn Blackford, James Butler
Wm Smith Wm Marsh, Finch Harrison Jas Parnell Wm
Leach James Campble they were all secured and confind
in the Guard House
- Friday 20 am at 11 I sat upon the Bench and tryd the above Prisoners
C.S. those markd 200 each and the others (but Blackford)
Dispatch 100 each. at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 5 p.m. a signal was made that a ship
was coming up the River and she anchor'd H.M. Brig
Estremona Lt. Symonds from Pt. Jackson The Govnr
took my letters for England.
- March 1807 V.D.Land
- Saturday 21 am at 11 call'd upon Mr Lord 12 went on board H.M.
C.S. Schooner Estremona Lt. Simmonds the Prisoners were all
Simmonds punish'd but Salmon who was drunk at 9 a.m. Sergt Thorne
was upon Duty at the Guard House and he inform'd me
that he had just taken a bottle of spirits from Marsh one
of the prisoners, who was supplying those who were confind
in the Guard House
- Sunday 22 am Divine Service could not be perform'd by reason of the
C.S. people being employ'd in taking Stores from the Estremina
Dutches of York $\frac{1}{2}$ past 11 the Dutches of York Saluted with 11 guns and
made Sail for Pt. Dalrymple. 1 p.m. his Honor the Lt. Govnr
call'd at my House and invited me to dine with him 4 p.m.
we dind
- Monday 23 am at 11 I went to Court and tryd 3 Prisoners acquitted
C.S. them. 1 p.m. call'd on Capt Johnson Lt Simmonds there.
Patterson
- Tuesday 24 am at home all the day on business Capt Johnson and Lt
C.S. Simmonds call'd upon me
Townson
- March 1807
- Wed. 25 am 11 Mr. Fosbrook call'd upon me and sat some time
C.S. 12 Capt Johnson and Mr Bowden came and stay'd till
Shooters Hill 2 p.m. I took a walk on my return was inform'd a ship
was coming up the River.
- Thursday 26 am at 11 I waited upon the Govnr we had a very fine
C.S. shower of Rain which we have not had for these five
Sidmouth months—1 p.m. took a walk with my Gun return'd at 3 p.m.
the Govnr sent for me respecting some spirits which had
been sav'd by the Patrol. Came up and anchor'd off the
coast the bound for Sydney Ferret Whaler from off the

coast New Zealand she had very bad success the weather was so bad Just before he made for the Derwent he fell in with a ship the Two Brothers from England 5 months 10 days

- | | | |
|---|----|--|
| Friday
Good Friday
C.S.
Skipton | 27 | am at 11 performed Divine Service waited upon the Govnr. 4 p.m. Capt Skelton calld 5 I dind with the Lt. Govnr and Capt. Johnson Capt Townson of the New S. Wales Corp Lt. Simmons Lt Lord |
| Saturday
C.S.
South | 28 | am this morn the Court met according with being adjourned, but on account that Mr. Bate not being present deferrd till Monday next at 9 a.m. |
| Sunday
C.S.
Stains | 29 | am at 11 performd divine Service. I had the New Surplice for the first time— |
| Monday
C.S.
Stanford | 30 | am this morn at 9 the Court met and Mr Fosbrooke, Mr Janson, Mr Bowden and Mr Power the Court sat till late upon the business I dind at Mr Bowdens in the Eve Mr Collins arrivd with the Govnr Hunter Schooner |
| Tuesday
C.S.
Collins
we would not
a fine rain | 31 | am this morn the Court met again and the proceedings were sent to the Lt Govnr he was dissatisfied with them and requested that the magistrate would alter their opinion in sending Mr Power to Sydney |
- April 1807
- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---|--|
| Wed.
C.S.
Stanley | 1 | am at 11 the Lt Govnr sent for me and requested I would take the depositions of John Downs and Manby respecting the sheep stealers $\frac{1}{2}$ past one the following Prisoners went on board His M. Schooner Lt Symonds to take their trial at Sydney |
| | | Lush Sheep stealer |
| | | Jones killing
a bullock
Wright setting |
| | | fire to Mrs Peters House
this aft Richardson went out aKangarroin for me and took 4 of my Dogs and a Gun |
| Thursday
C.S.
Simmons | 2 | am at 7 I got into my boat and with 4 hands went down the River afishing at 4 p.m. returnd with one Dozen Cray fish
this morn Early sailed H.M. Brig Estremina Lt Symons for Pt Dalrymple Capt Skelton calld upon me in the Eve. |
| Friday
C.S.
Stanmore | 3 | am at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 10 the Lt Govnr sent for me upon Magistrate business at 1 p.m. sent my men down the River to get Cray fish at home all day in the morn Early the Mountain was covd with snow |

- Saturday 4 am the Wind blowing hard in the morn Early my men came
C.S. home with out any Cray fish
Stilton
- Sunday 5 am at 11 performd Divine Service 2 p.m. the Lt Govnr
C.S. went in his boat round the Ferret Capt. Skelton
Stone
- April 1807
- Monday 6 am at home all the day upon Business
C.S.
Stowe
- Tuesday at home all day
C.S. 7 am at 9 I walkd to the Government Farm upon Business
Stroud and the Lt Govnr sent for me Job Stokes was this morn
tryd by a Court Martial for Theft and was turnd over to
the Civil Power. at 4 p.m. the Lt Govnr sent for me
- Wed. 8 upon the business
C.S.
- Thursday 9 at 8 Capt Skelton Breakfasted with me $\frac{1}{2}$ past I sat upon
C.S. the Bench and took the Depositions respecting Job Stokes
Swansea at 3 p.m. it was over and the Prisoner and witness went
on board the Ferret Capt Skelton at 5 the Ferret saild
5 p.m. much lightning
11 the wind increased very much and continued all night
- Friday 10 am the wind blowing very hard all the morning Early at
C.S. 11 I went to Court and Tryd the following prisoners Wright
Tavistock and Rapheal Hannah Edwards Patrick Plunket I sent for
MacAllenon into the Court and desired him to repair the
Road opposite his House after the court was over I went
to see the Street, and desired MacAllenon to repair a part
by the Paling as he had brought the Stones there I desired
him to cover them over with mould or to take them away,
he put his hands into his pocket lookd at me and laughd
and said he would not do it at which McCarty being with
me I desid him to be confind. I went home and wrote an
order and gave it to McCarty the principal of the night
watch Sargt James McCarty was with me all the time.
at 2 p.m. I waited upon the Lt Govnr and informd him of
McAllenon Misconduct and requested that he would punish
him he said he would, the same Eve when McCarty went
for orders the Govnr said that he would punish him
- Saturday 11 Upon business all the Morning trying Prisoners
C.S. MacAllenon confind
Taunton

Sunday 12 am at 11 performd Divine Service the Military did not
C.S. attend. at home all the Day
Tenby

Monday 13 am at 11 I walkd to the Govmt Farm come home at 2 p.m.
C.S. shot some Wattle Birds
Thetford

April 1807

Tuesday 14 At $\frac{1}{2}$ past 10 I waited upon the Lt Govnr and spoke to him
C.S. about the 6 Bushells of wheat which he gave me an order
Thorme for from Mr. Clark he said that all the wheat should go
through Mr. C. hands and requested I would have it from
him which I said I would. I then said to the Govnr that
McAllenon was in the watch house he said yes has he not
written to you. I said yes, but that it was too pointed an
insult that I could not look over, and that I laid it before
him as the Lt. Govnr to whom I look for redress. The
Govnr said that he was in hopes that I had forgiven him
as he was getting forward, now, better than he has for
some time, but Sir I will punish him with 25 lashes and
the Govnr said. And. I have to observe that this morn
the Govnr punishd Plunket with 300 lashes for fighting
with the M in the Eve went out to McCaleys.

Wed. 15 am this morn took a long walk with my Gun and killd
C.S. some Wattle Birds
Tiverton

April 1807

Thursday 16 am at home all the day. 1 p.m. the Lt. Govnr paid the
C.S. Royal Marines a second payment since they came from
Tooting England 1803

April 1807

[Blank page here]

Friday 17 am at home all the day upon business till 1 p.m. when the
C.S. Governor sent for me to settle the Business between Mr.
Totness Isat Nichols of Sydney and Foker and George Robinson
my Men came home from Kangarroing and hid one in the
Sails of the Boat, and I took it away.

Saturday 18 am at home all the day. Busy in the Garden, the weather
C.S. very cold. This morning saild the Government Hunter
Truro Schooner for Cape Barron after seals

Sunday 19 am at home all the morning 2 p.m, Cap Johnson & Lt Lord
C.S. calld upon me. this morn, we were informd that a ship
Wells was in Frederic Henry Bay she was seen standing in by

Mr Hapley
Mr Harris
Mr Bate was
detaind a
little time by
the Patrol
because they could
not give the Counter
Sign

some of the Prisoners that were aKangaroing at 9 My Man Richardson came home having been absent 19 days. He gave information that the Natives had nearly killd him and Dogs. the Govnrs People were out and fell in with them when a Battle ensued and they Killd one of the Natives. the Natives killd one of the Dogs it is very dangerous to be out alone, for fear of them. they are so hardend that they do not mind being shot at.

April 1807

- | | | |
|----------------------------|----|---|
| Monday
C.S.
Arrival | 20 | am at 11 I waited upon the Govnr. Capt Johnson was with him, as I went into the room Mr. Bate and Mr Harris came out, The Govnr Informd me that Russell (a free man) was to be tryd for breaking into John Wilkin-sons House. and that Smith a Prisoner that Mr Bate had confind was in the Watch House. The Govnr informd me that both Mr Bate and Mr Harris told him they would never send for the C. Sign either to me or to Lt Lord. the orders are that nobody should pass without it. he further said that Mr B. would not come into court and deliver his complaint in confining the Prisoners. When I went to Court I desired McCarty to inform Mr Bate that I was setting, and if he had anything to bring forward respecting the Prisoners he had confind I would attend to it. Mr B. said he did not know there would be a Court that morn but he would come directly, he came and delivd his Deposition. at 7 p.m. a strange Boat came up the River, and brought the Cap of the Ship Aurora which lays in Frederic Henry bay. 11 Mr Bate was confind in the Guard House by Rey one of the Royal M. and a Patrole on Duty. the Eve very cold. A cask of Pork and 12 Bushells of wheat was found planted in the Bush near Mansfields a Settler who came and gave information of it to the Govnr who sent men and seizd it |
| Tuesday
C.S.
Moorick | 21 | am at 9 the weather very cold blowing hard from the N.W. with Rain. At 3 p.m. Thunder from the N.W. at home all the morning busey in my Garden preparing ground for Cabbage Plants &c. much rain in the Eve. |
| Wed.
C.S.
Milford | 22 | am this morn after Breakfast I took my Gun and a Man and walkd to Peters Farm which I had not yet seen before shot some wattle Birds in the Eve wind Blowing hard. Sow'd onion seed this day— |

April 1807

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|----|--|
| Thursday
C.S.
St George | 23 | am Blowing a Gale of wind this morn at home all the day. the Barn that Nichols valued at Capt Sladens for £350 was blown down. the barn cost Capt S. £30 and that paid in property at a great price. |
|-------------------------------|----|--|

- Friday 24 am this morn waited upon the Govnr and afterwards Sat
C.S. at Court. The day very cold. 8 p.m. a party of the
Uxbridge Patrole went across the river to take the bush rangers
but Blackford gave them information of their coming.
- Saturday 25 am the morning very cold at 10 the Govr sent for me and
C.S. shod me a letter which Mr Fosbrook had found of a most
St Helens alarming nature of Robbing the Stores and if detected to
set fire to the thatch. Afterwards I sat upon the bench
and tried Coller Blackford Cammel 3 of the Boats Crews
who went and gave information to the bushrangers the
Eve before that they were after them—the day very cold
and blowing hard from the N. West, at home all the aft
sowd Turnip Seed.
- Sunday 26 am The morn very cold and blowing hard from the N. West
C.S. at 12 I waited upon the Lt. Govnr respecting the Letter
Wakefield which was found 2 p.m. a Military Guard was placed upon
the Island. 4 p.m. I dind with the Lt. Govnr.
- Monday 27 am this day blowing a Gale of wind at home all the day
C.S. busey in the Garden in the Eve do Wr—
Walden

April 1807

- Tuesday 28 am the wr very fine after the Gale at 9 sent for the
C.S. Bakers and reduced the price of Bread a fine Loaf 2 lbs
Ware for 4s before 5s afterwards walkd to the Gymt Farm
killd 6 wattle Birds, sowd Parsely seed the Eve Rain,
sent my men out after crayfish to Brown River
- Wed. 29 am The Morning very fine after the rain. At home all
C.S. the morning Lt. James MacCauley went out to try his New
Warwick Bitch. my men came home with Crayfish some very large
about 3 Dozen and some Perch
- Thursday 30 am at 11 I sent the Lt Govnr some Crayfish Capt Johnson
C.S. and self took a long walk 1 p.m. very fine Rain
Whatton

May

- Friday 1 am at 11 upon Business and afterwards calld upon the
C.S. Lt Govnr. the Aurora whaler came and anchord in Ralphs
Welford Bay Cap Merrith
- Saturday 2 am at 12 waited upon the Govnr at home the remainder
C.S. of the day planting cabbages and sowing seeds after the
Wells Rain Lt Lord and Mr Bowden went on board the Aurora
- Sunday 3 am Divine Service was not performd the wr being very
C.S. uncertain for Rain
This Eve came home my Dog Ponto who has been absent
since the first of April

Monday 4 am upon business all the morn afterwards busey in the
C.S. Garden
Weymouth at

Tuesday 5 am this morn I waited upon the Govnr who was very ill.
C.S. 1 p.m. I Xnd Sergt Thorns 2 children Lt. Breedon stood
Whitby for one. at home all day getting my new rooms Tiled &c
&c and busey in the Garden $\frac{1}{2}$ past 8 Rain.

May 1807

Wed. 6 am at home all the morning in the Eve I went out and at
Whitby $\frac{1}{2}$ past 11 three men with their faces blackd came to my
House and was challenged by Moffart my man, they went
away

Thursday 7 and at 3 a.m. came again when Moffat shot at one of
C.S. them Chishole the Patrole see the three men but could not
Wilton get them. at home all the day at 11 p.m. some men came
again when my three Men went out but the Night was
so dark they could not see them. Capt. Johnson and Mr
Lord calld upon me

Friday 8 am at 7 this morn Mr. Blinkworth a Settler came with
C.S. his Six Men sowd and chipd in 2 acres of wheat at 11
Windsor calld upon the Govnr and tryd Ann Benchs for taking
an apron sentenced her to six Months to Govmt Work.
Mr Blinkworth dind with me busey all the day after the
men at 7 Mr. Blinkworth man was confind in the Guard
House by Capt Johnson I went to him and had him
liberated

May 1807

Saturday 9 am at home all the morning busey with the Men sowing
C.S. and Chipping in the wheat and sowd some Barley at 11
Witney information that a large ship was standing up the River
this day I gave McCauley 4 acres of Ground to cultivate
at 7 p.m. anchored in the Bay the Elizabeth whaler Capt
Bunker from Pt Jackson belonging to the House of Bennet
and Co London she was from England 18 months has been
off the coast of New Zealand

Sunday 10 am at 12 calld upon the Lt Govnr. at 2 p.m. Capt Johnson,
C.S. Lt. Lord Capt Bunker & Capt Meerick calld upon me.
Bunker

Monday 11 am at home all the morn 5 p.m. I dind with Mr. Janson
C.S. met Mr. Harris Bowden Fosbrook Lt. Breedon
Supply

Tuesday 12 am at home all the day busey about my Garden and House
C.S.
Woodbridge

Wed. 13 at home all the morning 5 p.m. Capt Johnson Lt Lord
C.S. Capt. Bunker Capt. Merrith Mr Janson Mr Bowden Mr
Woodstock Fosbrook dind with me

May 1807

Thursday 14 am at 10 I went to the Island to see some Pork condemned
C.S.
Worcester

Friday 15 am employd upon the Bench all the morn afterwards at
C.S. home busey in the Garden planting
Wye

Saturday 16 am This morn the Govnr sent for me to try Garret a
C.S. prisoner for purchasing stolen Property from the ship
Yarmouth Elizabeth Capt Bunker at 1 p.m. I went on board to take
some refreshment with Capt. Bunker. the Night very cold

Sunday 17 am at 12 I waited upon the Lt Govnr the day very cold
C.S. and the mountain was covd with Snow. In the Eve Mr & Mrs
York Groves drank Tea with me

Monday 18 am this morn busey upon the bench. At 12 I waited upon
C.S. the Lt Govnr Captain Bunker and Capt. Merrick calld upon
Wymondham me Xtaind Mr Blinkworth little Girl Capt. Johnson went
down the River saild the Elizabeth Capt, Bunker to
Frederic Henry Bay a whaling.

May 1807

Tuesday 19 am at home all the Day sowing Barley in the Mr & Mrs
C.S. McCauley came to live at my House theirs under repair
Queen Charlotte at 2 p.m. Mr Janson & Mr Bowden calld upon me

Wednesday 20 am at 12 waited upon the Lt Govnr at 1 calld upon Mr
C.S. Bowden
Camden

Thursday 21 am this Morn Lt Lord and self had a dispute respecting
C.S. the stock at 12 I waited upon the Lt Govnr whom Lt Lord
Dublin said he would mention what passed, the Govnr sent for
him and we made it up there

Friday 22 am upon business all the morning. Mr Harris and Mr
C.S. Hopley attended having confind two prisonrs for Laughing
Moir at them, the day very wet. at home all the aft Capt
Johnson returnd from down the River

Saturday 23 am This morn I got up very early to shoot Wattle Birds
C.S. found only one, which I killd at 1 p.m. calld upon Capt
Wentworth Johnson and meet Capt Merreth and Lt Lord at his House

Sunday 24 am at home all the Day, the mountain covrd with Snow
C.S. and a very severe frost this morning
Howick

Monday 25 am this morn the Lt Govnr sent for me to settle the
C.S. business between Henry Hays and Edward Miller free
Erskine settlers respecting the damage that Millers Piggs' had done
the 1st whale to Martha Hays corn which was settled to the satisfaction
killd by a of all parties and approved by His Honor the Lt. Govnr.
Mr Bunker At home the remr of the day.

May 1807

Tuesday 26 am at home all the Day busey in my Garden.
C.S.
Althope

Wed. 27 am at 11 the Lt. Govnr sent for me upon business at 1 Mr
C.S. Bowden calld and stayd till late.
Lansdowne

Thursday 28 am at 11 calld upon Mr. Fosbrook and Mr. Janson after-
C.S. wards killd some Wattle Birds.
Lennox

Friday 29 am at 9 I breakfasted with Mr Bowden and we walkd to
C.S. his Farm to see his stock about 5½ miles from Hobart
King Town they were out at a distance near Faulkerners distance
from Hobart Town 7½ or 8 miles. We returnd home to
dinner at 5 p.m. the Eve very wet and blowing hard

Saturday 30 am blowing very hard at 11 the Aurora and Elizabeth
C.S. anchord near the town blowing so very hard 12 I waited
Success upon the Lt Govnr and in the aft Capt Merrick and Capt
Bunker came up to Hobart Town.

Sunday 31 am at 7 Capt Merrick went on board the Aurora and at
C.S. 11 seeing a whale he went after it with only one boat he
Sidmouth struck her and when she rose again he put another Iron
into her, she then turned and struck the boat and stove it,
that they were obliged to cut the ropes, which held the
whale the boat filld so fast that they were obliged to hang
on their oars in that dreadful state they continued 5 hours
One man was knockd over when the whale struck the Boat
and went down at 1 p.m., another one of the men died in the
Boat and at 2 another died. Capt. Merrick and 2 Men
continued in the Boat with the water up to their waists
till a boat from the Elizabeth came to their assistance
and when they arrived they were very near going down
they were 5 hours in the water expecting every moment
that the Boat would part with them—and had not the Boat
fortunately arrived every soul must have perishd as they
were so deep in the water and they began to be stiff with
the cold water

- Monday
C.S.
Aurora
- 1 June 1807
am at 11 the Lt Govnr sent for me and requested that I would bury 2 Men from the Aurora Capt Merrick, at 12 4 Boats came up the River 3 from Capt Mc. and the other from Capt Bunkers towing the bodies of the deseasd in the Bd they landed at the Waff and the Bodies were attended to the Grave by Capt Merrick as chief morner and Capt Bunker Mr Collins and the crew of both ships &c Capt Johnson Lt Lord G. P. Harris Esqre. at 1 p.m. the corps was put into the ground afterwards we all went to Lt Lords and took refreshment when Capt Merrick informed me of the melancholly sceine which took place he said that when he struck the second Iron into the whale that she came up and in cutting her flukes off she went down rose immediately and cut the stern of the boat off one man immediately went down they then cut the stear oar in halves and kept padling with it by which means Capt M. and his boatshearer preservd their lives.
- June 1807
- Tuesday
C.S.
Spencer
- 2 am at home all the Day this my Birth day aged 44. In the Eve I gave my men Spirits Shaffart made me a very excellent Cake with the Letters upon it The Rev. R. K. Capt Bunker in the Elizabeth saild for Frederic Henry Bay.
- Wed.
C.S.
Pole
- 3 am at home all the Day the wr very cold. Capt. Merrick in the Aurora a whaler saild for Frederick Henry Bay whaling
- Thursday
C.S.
King George
- 4 am at 8 The Colours were hoised on Hunters Island at 1 the Royal Marines fired three Vollies and a Royal Salute was fird from the ordinance. 5 pm Capt Johnson Lt Lord Lt. Breedon and self dind with His Honor the Lt. Govnr and a very Excellent Dinner we had The morning there was a very severe frost the Ground I never see so white before, the Day very cold and evening
- Friday
C.S.
Clarence
- 5 am very unwell with a bad cold 2 p.m. Capt Johnson calld upon me The Eve very cold
- Saturday
C.S.
Kent
- 6 am The morning a severe frost at home all day very unwell The Lt Govnr sent to know how I was
- Sunday
C.S.
Sussex
- 7 am The morn very fine, at home all the Day unwell.

June 1807

- Monday
C.S.
Sophia 8 am at 11 I sat upon the Bench to try Salmon and Davis for cutting Broderic a man of Mr. Collins no proof against them I liberated them—unwell
- Tuesday
C.S.
Russell 9 am at home all the day $\frac{1}{2}$ past 11 p.m. Sargt McCauley with a party of Royal Marines went down to Ralphs Bay in search of the Bush Rangers information had been given to the Lt Govnr that they were at the Lime Burners by Capt Johnsons servt with whom they were with the day before, and they robdd the boat of everything and put her afloat.
- Wednesday
C.S.
Sheriden 10 am the morning very fine but cold at 1 p.m. calld upon Mr Fosbrook afterwards took a walk at 7 Wolly one of the Marines that went away with Sargt McCauley returnd to my house and informed me that he had landed the party below the Charcoal Burners
- Thursday
C.S.
Minto 11 am at home all day the Wr very cold. Mrs. Bean came to work for Mr McCauley
- Friday
C.S.
Sullivan 12 am the Morn evry fine at 1 p.m. I went across the River and at 5 returnd to Dinner. 7 Sargt McCauley returnd from after the Bush rangers and unsuccessful the information that was given to the Lt. Govnr was void of foundation. Capt Johnsons man Brown see them and supplied them with Bread and rice
- 2 loafs of
Bread

June 1807

V. D. Land

- Saturday
C.S.
Carysfort 13 am at home all the day information was given that a ship was come into the river and anchord in Storm bay Passage
- Sunday
C.S.
HUMPHREY 14 am at 12 Mr. Humphry landed from the Albion whaler Capt Richardson at home all the day at 7 p.m. Mr. Humphry call upon me
- Monday
C.S.
Albion 15 am very unwell at 6 p.m. I dind with Lt. Lord to commemorate his Birthday and met Capt Johnson Lt Breedon Mr Janson Mr Bowden Mr Fosbrook G. P. Harris Esqr at 9 I came away so unwell
- Tuesday
C.S.
Temple 16 am at home all the day unwell Lt Lord calld upon me—
- Wed.
C.S.
Albemarle 17 am at home all the day the wr very cold

- Thursday 18 am at home all the day very unwell
C.S.
Townsend
- Friday 19 am at home till 5 p.m. then dind with Mr Janson and
C.S. met Lt Lord Mr Humphrey Mr. Bowden Fosbrook Harris
Bond Lt Breedon very cold and severe Wr
- Saturday 20 am took a walk to the Farm with Mr Bowden he came and
C.S. took refreshment before we went out
Garrow

June 1807 V.D.Land

- Sunday 21 am the wr very cold I have been unwell since the 2nd June
C.S. at 5 p.m. dind with Mr. Bowden and met Capt Johnson
Deal Lt. Lord Lt Breedon Mr Fosbrook and Mr Humphrey came
home at 8 very unwell, a very severe Frost this Eve—
- Monday 22 am The morn very Severe Frost upon business all the
C.S. morn Mrs McCauley very unwell, at 2 p.m. Mr & Mrs
Blinkworth came to see her, dind and stayd all night
Mr Fosbrook Mr. Janson calld upon me. I calld upon Mr
Lord. Mr Bowden cald and took refreshment
- Tuesday 23 am This morn Mr Fosbrook and self calld upon the Lt.
C.S. Govnr afterwards upon Lt. Lord with Mr Fosbrook in
Hythe the Eve very severe Gale from the S. West This day
finished 2 Beds of early Potatoes.
- Wed. 24 am blowing very hard at home all the day not well
C.S.
- Thursday 25 am Mr. Bowden came to see me the wr very cold went
C.S. to Mr Collins on business at a Quarter past 10 p.m. Lieut
Weldon Ranking of the 75 Regt. departed this life, he came from
India with Capt Forrest and went to Sydney from hence
and returnd with Capt Bunker to take his passage to
England.
- Friday 26 am this morn upon business on the Bench tried Plunket
C.S. and Wasey two Bushrangers came in this morning early
Wellow sentenced each 400 Lashes
- Saturday 27 am 11 I went with the Govnr to attend the Punishment of
C.S. Plunket and Wasey and 3 more men for neglect of Duty.
Matloch 2 p.m. I Buried Lt Rankin of the 75 Regt. the Lt Govnr
Lt. Lord Mr. Janson Mr. Bowden and Mr Collins attended
the Funeral carried by 6 Marines
- June
- Sunday 28 am at home all the morning 4 p.m. I dind with the Lt
C.S. Govnr the day very cold

Monday 29 am at 12 a court of Inquiry set upon the conduct of
C.S. Mr. H. by order of His Honor the Lt. Govnr the following
Warwick members sat Capt. Johnsom Lt. Lord Rev. R. K. Mr. Janson
Mr. Bowden at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 3 the court adjourned till I sat
upon the Bench to try some bush Rangers

Tuesday 30 am at 12 a Court of enquiry sat by order of His Honor
C.S. the Lt Govnr to inquire into the conduct of Mr H wich
Hull took place at St Thomas on the 21 inst. Capt Johnson
Lt Lord

[Here one page is cut from the original Diary]

July 1807

Wed. 8 am at home all the day. the Weather very fine at 8 p.m.
C.S. some men came to take away my Dogs as supposd some
Fenton of the Stock

Thursday 9 am the wr very fine this morn at home all the day at
C.S. $\frac{1}{2}$ past 10 Russell and Tomlins were fird at by Mr Lightfoot
Tyne &c &c

Friday 10 am this morn Sargt McC brought me a Pipe which was
C.S. found by some of the military. at 11 I waited upon the
Stourbridge Governor afterwards sat upon the Bench to try Mr Bates
Man in the Eve, drank tea with Mr & Mrs Groves, Mr
Bowden calld upon me

Saturday 11 am at 11 Mr Bowden calld I took a long walk to the Farm
C.S. and killd a Couple of Ducks came home to Dinner. the day
Nevil very fine at 12 p.m. some Theves went to Mr Fosbrook
Marsh absented they were disturbed by the Patrole
himself from
the Colony

Sunday 12 am at 4 I was disturbed by some Theves who were attempt-
C.S. ing to get into my house my Man Shaffart heard them but
Kendal the morn was so dark we could not see them, at home all
the morning 4 p.m. I dind with His Honor Lt Govnr Collins
we had some rain

July 1807

Monday 13 am at home all the day, at 9 p.m. McCartys men were
C.S. stopd by the Patrole and confind in the Guard House.
Woodford when the Patrole went to the Boat which laid off Hangans
Farm, they found 9 Kangarros and 2 Emews in it which
they left it.

Tuesday 14 am at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 10 I went upon the Parade and at 12 walkd
C.S. home with the Lt. Govnr upon business this day very fine,
Preston busy in the Garden planting and sowing seeds. this day
I had information that my men were going to take my
Dogs away

- Wed. 15 am The morning very foggy at 11 it cleared up at home
C.S. all the morning Mr. Bowden came and bled C employd
Stowe all the day in the Garden in the Eve I was taken very ill
4 p.m. 3 large whales were opposite my house
- Thursday 16 am at home all the morning upon business taking Examina-
C.S. tions respecting Luis's Child at 2 p.m. waited upon the
Buckden Govnr a very fine day
- July 1807
- Friday 17 am this morn went out with my Gun no success. In the
C.S. Eve we had some rain
Chelmsford 2 whales opposite my house
- Saturday 18 am at 11 Mr Bowden calld upon me 2 p.m. I took my
C.S. Dogs out to kill a Kangarro saw one but the Brush was
Dunmow so thick I could not kill it returnd at 5 p.m. wet through
everything it continued raining all the Eve
- Sunday 19 am at 9 the morn fine after the rain the Lt Govnr unwell
C.S. at home all the day in the afternoon much rain
Bath
- Monday 20 am the day very wet and cold at home all the day G. P.
C.S. Harris calld upon me, in the eve snow. I dind in my new
Morton room for the first time in vesphere postquam Mrs. P.
I bat alle dicit mihi fuit ille. apud ejus domus flagulat
illa ferrit ille malus
- Tuesday 21 am at 9 we had moore snow than I ever see the mountain
C.S. and hills near the town were coverd with it at 12 it began
Appledore to rain which continued till 9 p.m. then it blew a Gale
from the S.W. a very bad night of rain/and wind and
Lightning
- July 1807
- Wednesday 22 am in the morning Early a severe Gale of wind from the
C.S. S. West a very great quantity of Rain and snow all the
Wainfleet morn at 11 the Hills were all covered with snow. this day
we had more snow upon the Hills than has been seen on
Mt Omnia the Ground the day very cold and in the eve a severe Gale
of wind
- Thursday 23 am the morn cold and blowing a gale. At home all the Day.
C.S.
Denver
- Friday 24 am at Daylight I got up and took my Gun and went down
C.S. to Sandy Bay after Ducks killd one and returnd to Break-
Wilson fast. at 11 I transacted Business at my House which
detaind me till one p.m. respecting Wilkinson and Loui's
Child of 5 years and 3 months old afterwards I waited
upon the Govnr and took some wine &c with him. at 9
p.m. blowing a severe Gale and rain

Saturday 25 am The morning blowing hard with rain till 8 when it
C.S. began to clear up at 11 I went Capt. Johnson calld upon
Weston me and took a Kangaroo stake afterwards I went to his
Mr. Collin's House house with him. This day Hopkins servt to the Lt Govnr
was robdd of opend a Publick House the Sign of the Whale Fishery,
property to the and at 8 p.m. Capt Johnson Lt Lord Lt Breedon Mr Janson
amount of 250£ Bowden Humphrey and self suppd there myself in the
or 300 chear at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 11 we came away the wr very wet and cold

[Here one page is cut from the original Diary]

Friday 31 am at 8 the morning very cold $\frac{1}{2}$ past I see many whales
C.S. opposite my House. making a great noise at 12 calld
Kenton upon Mr Bowden who informd me that at 8 this morn
there were 17 whales counted at the same time

Saturday 1 August 1807
C.S. the morning very fine at 11 I took a walk with my Gun
Pennard near Mr Millers the Settler and met with Capt Johnson
and Mr Bowden. Mrs B geret male in vespere—My Bitch
Miss Philis was taken by the Bush-rangers and Spott
wounded by the Natives

Sunday 2 am the morn remarkably fine at 1 p.m. Eight Boats
C.S. belonging to the Aurora Elizabeth and Albion were after
Dunkirk whales opposite my House at $\frac{1}{2}$ past they killd one at 2
they towd the whale down the River to the ships. calld
upon Capt Johnson and Mr. Humphry 4 p.m. I dind with
His Honor the Lt Gov Collins

Monday 3 am at 10 Mr. Collins calld upon me respecting his robbery
C.S. and Examind some of the Prisoners at 2 transacted business
Bristol with the Lt Govnr at 3 calld upon Lt Lord at his new
house where Cap Sladden and Capt Johnson lived.

Tuesday 4 am at 10 Mr Harris and self sat upon Business at my
C.S. house respecting Wilkinson. at 2 p.m. His Honor the Lt.
Abbey Govnr calld upon me and took wine in the Eve I calld
upon Mr Collins upon business. this afternoon Little Mary
a child of 1 year old came to my House and Mrs McCauley
took her, the mother being a poor distressed woman. 4
Boats after whales this day but no success

Wed. 5 am at 11 the Lt Govnr sent for me and spoke about
C.S. ironing John Clark. I calld upon Mr. Collins and met
Brickdale Capt Bunker Merrick and Richardson there they came up
after whales. My man Earl returnd from Hunting with
his shoulder bone out of joint

Thursday 6 am This day at 1 p.m. a reward of Free Pardon and
C.S. passage to England was offered to any Prisoner Male or
Reward Feamale who would discover the Robbery of Mr Collins so
that the offenders can be convicted. was offered by the
Lt Govnr. Philip Strickland servant to Mr Collins came
forward and promisd to confess to me the next morning

Friday 7 am The morning very wet. at 11 the Lt Govnr sent for
C.S. me and requested I would take the Confession of Philip
Norton Strickland I staid with him till near 4 p.m. He implicated
Tho, Wm Stoker, and P. Nowland. Maria Gardner &c &c

[Here part of one day is cut from the original Diary]

Sat. Killary one hour . . . according to the order the
C.S. Magistrates for having committed an assault on the body
Blackdown of Sarah Lewis a child of 5 years old. 4 p.m. Ph Strick-
land was taken down the river on board the Albion Capt
Richardson as some of the prisoners said they would kill
him for having confesd. Mr Collins went down in the
Governmen Cutter, and Mr Blinkworth

Sunday 9 am at home all the Day this aft Mr Blinkworth returnd
C.S. from the ship Albion and informd the Lt Govnr that during
Yeovel Saturday night or Sunday morning some person or persons
had cut the Painter of the Cutter and let her go adrift
from the Ship diligent search was made on Sunday by
all the Whale Boats but could not be found

Monday 10 am at home all the Day. unwell
C.S.
Ludlow

August 1807

[Here one day is cut from the original Diary.
See also Saturday, 7th August]

Wednesday 12 am at 8 the Colour were (hoisted?) in Honor of the Day.
C.S. I waited upon the Lt Govnr upon business
Wales

Thursday 13 am the day very cold and a very great quantity of snow
C.S. fell at home very unwell
Snow

Friday 14 am This morning the ground was covered with Snow and
C.S. all the Hills around the town The thermomiter 31
Mowbray

Sat, 15 am the day being very fine I took a walk and calld upon
C.S. Capt. Johnson and Lt Lord, sowd raddishes &c. The Names
Bromley of the Prisoners which are Bushrangers at this time and
they are all armed and have plenty of Dogs James Carrot
Thos Story Joseph Fernander James Watts John Williams
alias Rush. Richd Grover Joseph Meyers Wm. Russell,
Sam Tomlins Wm Marsh, John Brown, James Duff John
Parish Wm Bowers. 14.

August 1807

[Here one day has been cut from the original Diary]

- Monday 17 am at home all the day busy in preparing
C.S. for Potatoes Capt Merrick came up and informd us that
Lynn Capt Bunker was gon in his ship for to Frederick Henry
at 1s/6d per lb Bay His Honor the Lt Govnr took in Kangarro
- Tuesday 18 am this morn employd on the Bench the Lt Govnr sent
C.S. for me on other business
Rutland
- Wed. 19 am at 8 I receivd infermation that my Bitch Miss was at
C.S. the Lime Burners. at 11 I waited upon the Lt Govnr and
Langford requested that Sargt McCauley might go down after her
at 2 p.m. he took 3 of My men and one of the Patrole down
with him

August 1807

[Here two days are cut from the original Diary.
See also Sunday, 16th August]

- Sat. 22 am this morn at Reviellie Beat I got up and with my
C.S. Men workd all Day planting of Potatoes the day very fine
Aulton
- Sunday 23 am the day very fine at 2 p.m. I calld upon Capt. Johnson.
C.S. $\frac{1}{2}$ past 8 p.m. I was alarmd by my Men calling out to my
Hafeld Dogs Hold him &c &c When I enquird what was the
matter they informd me that a great noise was in the
Skillion they though it was the dogs but on looking they
see a Man run out from them

August 1807

- Monday 24 am this Morning at Daylight my Men and self began
C.S. setting potatoes and continued all the morning. when a
Saeville very great quantity of rain fell. I waited upon the Lt
Govnr all the afternoon and Eve wet
- Tuesday 25 am This morn I sent my two Men out after Kangarro
C.S.
Northfield
- Wednesday 26 am at 11 I went over to Morgans Farm and took refresh-
C.S. ment with me Came home 5 p.m. Mr and Mrs M C with me
Redbrook
- Thursday 27 am upon business this morn afterwards Mr. & Mrs. M C
C.S. and self went in my boat to Sandy Bay where we dind
Somerset and returnd home in the Eve

- | | | |
|--|----|--|
| Friday
C.S.
Hatton | 28 | am at 11 I calld upon Mr. Bowden. 5 p.m. G. P. Harris Esqr came and took a pipe with me busey in my Garden all the aft |
| Saturday
C.S.
Needham | 29 | am Employd all the day in my Garden Sowing Beans and preparing Ground for Potatoes |
| August | | |
| Sunday
C.S.
Dickson | 30 | am at home all the morning at 11 Capt. Merrick and Capt. Richardson came up in their Boats and infermd the Govnr that there was a mutiny on board the Elizabeth Capt Bunker, the men would not do their Duty because they had a scarcity of provisions at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 3 the Elizabeth anchord in the Bay at 4 Capt Johnson and self dind with the Lt Govnr 6 Capt. Bunker and Merrick waited upon the Govnr Capt M. said that he should sail for England on Tuesday the first of September |
| The Govnr sent
a Guard of
Mariens on board
the Elizabeth | | |
| Monday
C.S.
Embark | 31 | am at 11 Mr Collins Capt Bunker Capt Merrick and Capt Richardson calld upon me to see the Garden and Grounds which they very much liked. at 3 p.m. I waited upon the Lt. Govnr, 14 men that behaved in a very mutinous manner on board the Elizabeth Capt Bunker were landed and put into the military barrack they were Iron'd and Guard over them. at 5 oclock Capt. Johnson Merrick Bunker, Mr Harris Bowden, Fosbrook Humphry and self dind with Mr Janson at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 9 we heard a shot fird, Capt. Johnson was informd by the Sgt of the Guard that Tomlins and Russell two of the bushrangers had got into Mr. Clarks stock yard, he was alarmd at the Noise of the cattle and went to see what was the cause when one of the men fird a Pistol at him. they made their escape the same night |
| three men went
into the House
of John Crofts
a prisoner with
bags about their
faces | | |
| memorandum to
England | | |
| September 1807 | | |
| Tuesday
C.S.
Aurora | 1 | am busey in preparing letters for England at 11 Capt. Bunker Merrick and Richardson calld upon me. afterwards I waited upon the Govnr Capt Johnson calld |
| Wed.
C.S.
Elizabeth | 2 | am setting Potatoes this morn I cut some asparagus the first that has been cut in the Colony, and I believe the only bed that is in the settlement. This day I was employd in prepar letters for England and sat up till past 12 p.m. |
| Thursday
C.S.
Johnson | 3 | am at 4 this morn I went to bed after finishing my letters $\frac{1}{2}$ past Capt Johnson came to me and took his leave for his departure for England in the Ship Aurora Capt Merrick at home all the day |
| Friday
C.S.
Craven | 4 | am busey all the morning at writing, I killd a very large Eagle by my pigeon house. At 2 p.m. His Honor the Lt Govnr calld upon me in the eve Mr. Evans the first mate of the Elizabeth Capt Bunker calld and took a pipe |

Saturday 5 am in the morn I went to Mr Collins upon business at 10
C.S. the Govnr sent for me and stay with him till 1 p.m. upon
Rye business

September 1807

Sunday 6 am at home all the morning. 2 p.m. I took a walk and
C.S. observed a boat coming up the River on my return,
Hereford I receivd two letters from England one from Ld Spencer
and Mr. Tustin by the ship Sarah Capt Bristow who left
this settlement on the 4th of August 1806 in the ship
Ocean. His Lordship informd me that he had receivd
1 of the Black Swans safe by the Carlton whaler Capt
Halcrow

Monday 7 am at 8 Capt. Bristow calld upon me 10 I went upon the
C.S. Parade and afterwards sat upon the Bench when that
Bristow was over I calld upon the Lt. Govnr who read me some
English papers at 4 p.m. I dind with His Honor the Govnr
and Capt Bristow dind there

Tuesday 8 am at home awriting till 2 p.m, when I delivd my letters
C.S. to Capt Bunker at 3 Mr Bate the Judge Advocate and
Banks Lt. Henderson went on board the Elizabeth Capt B. for
Sydney and to take their passage to England at 4 saild
the Elizabeth.
Sent a letter
to Ld Spencer This morn I finishd putting in all my Potatoes

September 1807

Wednesday 9 am in the morning very busey in planting Cabbages and
C.S. lettices &c &c in my Garden. a very strong wind from
Arrival the N.W. at 9 blowing a Gale from the sam qr.

Thursday 10 am very fine after the Gale employd in my Garden setting
C.S. Peas and Beans and transplanting of Cabbages.
Thannet

[Here part of one day is cut from the original Diary]

Friday 11 am this morn I sent His Honor the Lt Govnr 21 Heads
C.S. of Asparagus. at 1 p.m. I waited upon the Govnr and
Enderby we took a long walk afterwards he read to me an account
of the Death of Lord Clermont. This day I received a
very large Cheshire Cheese of 60 lbs from Ld Spencer and
a barrel of Porter, but by some means the cask was not
more than half full only 25 Gallons. Marsh one of the
Bushrangers came in and the Govnr punishd him 300
Lashes

Saturday 12 am at home all the day employd in the Garden the wr.
C.S. remarkably fine. Powers settts his 60 Gal Cask of Porter
Portland at 30£ per Cask he had landed 300 gall Spirits in 2 Casks

Sunday 13 am at home all the Day
C.S.
Mulgrave

September 1807

Monday 14 This morning early I went to the Stores to put in Kangarros
C.S. at 11 I sat upon the Bench and tried James Davis,
Borwell for purchasing Kangarro from Mr Bowdens and
Mr Harris Men and for their coming

[Here part of two days is cut from the original Diary.
See also Thursday, 10th September]

... Afterwards I went to Millers the Settlers with Hays
and returnd home to Dinner when McC went out after
his first Camis et rediit vespere et amimus malus fuit.
The Equinoctial Gales

Wed. 16 am mene ibat sine at 11 I waited upon the Lt Govnr
C.S. Mr Janson and Mr Bowden calld upon me
Minto

Thursday 17 am at 12 I waited upon His Honor the Lt. Govnr and we
C.S. went on Board the Sarah Capt Bristow the owners Names
Maida Enderby of London where we took refreshment and at
Whe Battle was ft between the English & French under the
command of Gen Stewart
three Cheers Blowing hard the Equinoctial Gales continuing—

Friday 18 am at home all the day employd in the Garden. This morn
C.S. I out a quantity of Grass for dinner
Sicily

Saturday 19 am the wr blowing at home all the morning sowing
C.S. Pumkin seeds at 12 p.m. Mr Bowden calld $\frac{1}{2}$ past 10
Sandgate McCauley came home from the bush no success in finding
his Bitch. blowing very hard

Sunday 20 am a very severe Gale from the N.W. at 10 do wr at
C.S. home all the day Sargt McCauley took Tomlins and Rush
Gales alias Williams two of the Bushrangers at Henry Hayses
the Settlers at New Town

[Here part of one day is cut from the original Diary]

Monday 21
C.S. this morning engaged upon the
Gloscester

September 1807

- Tuesday 22 am at 12 the Govnr sent for me on Business Captain
C.S. Bristow deliverd me another Letter from Ld. Spencer.
South busey in my Garden in the afternoon and broke up some
new Garden ground
- Wed. 23 am at home all the Day busey in my Garden
C.S.
Darnley
- Thursday 24 am at 11 I walkd to the Govmt Farm and calld at some
C.S. of the Settlers to see their Crops of Corn, 3 p.m. I
Yarmouth returnd home 4 I dind with His Honor the Lt Govnr at 7
Mr Grimes the Surveyor General and Lieut Piper of the
New South Wales Corps arrivd at the Govnrs from Port
Dalrymple. at 10 I came home the day very Windy
- Friday 25 am at 11 Mr. Humphry and Mr. Grimes calld upon me
C.S. 4 p.m. I dind with the Lt Govnr and met Mr Grimes and
Grimes Lt Piper Lt Lord and Mr Humphrey
- Saturday 26 At 11 I waited upon the Lt. Govnr and we attended the
C.S. punishment of 2 of the bushrangers Tomlins and Rush
Piper alias Williams. Afterwards Mr. Gromes Lt Piper Lt. Lord
Mr Humphry and Mr Fosbrook came and took a Kangarro
stake at my house afterwards I walkd to Lt. Lords
- Sunday 27 am this morning I was informd that the heifer which the
C.S. Lt Govnr gave me had a Bull Calf and at 12 I walkd to
Montrose Government Farm to see it. 2 pm His Honor the Lt Govr
but it was out called upon me. At 4 I dind with Mr. Fosbrooks and met
with the stock Lt Piper Mr Grimes Mr Humphrey Mr Janson Lt Lord
- Monday 28 am at home all the day. I sent my man to the farm for
C.S. the Cow and calf; but the calf was lost Mr Clark sent
Abbot me word
- Tuesday 29 am at 11 I walkd to the Govimt Farm with Mr. Grimes
C.S. Mr Harris to settle the road between Mr. Cockrill and
Colchester Mr Blinkworth and we calld upon Mr Clark who told me
the calf was not found. at 5 p.m. Mr Grimes Mr Piper
Lt Lord Mr Fosbrook Mr Janson Mr. Humphrey Mr. Harris
Mr. Bowden dind with me the same Eve I had infermation
that the calf was found and I sent word that I should send
for it in the morning

September

- Wed. 30 am at home all the morning 2 p.m. I calld upon Mr Janson
C.S. at 5 I dind with Lt Lord and met the Governor. Mr Grimes
Montgomery Lt Piper Lt Breedon Mr. Janson Humphrey Bowden Fos-
brook

October 1807

- Thursday
C.S.
Powis
- 1 am This morning Early Garret and Duce took my boat and went on board the Sarah Capt Bristow and 5 men made their escape from the ship. 2 pm I waited upon the Govnr
- Friday
C.S.
Cullen
- 2 am this morn said the Sarah Capt Bristow on a Whaling Voyage at 10 the sea breeze set in and was obligid to anchor at Trywork Bay at 7 p.m. the Lt Govnr sent for me on business at 11 a musquet was fird from the Sarah whaler Capt Bristow and at a Qr before 12 he fird 2 great Guns. The Govnr immediately sent a Party of the R. marines on board
- Thcs Salmon
went on board
the Sarah

- Saturday
C.S.
Sarah
- 3 am at 1 Raphel and Edwards two Prisoners attempted to board the ship and were taken by the Guard which was left on board. at 6 she saild. 10 the boats left the ship 11 Mr Grimes Lt. Piper and Mr Humphry calld upon me Strong Sea Breeze

October

- Sunday
C.S.
Wilson
- 4 am at 11 Mr Grimes and Mr Humphry Lt Piper calld upon me. at home all the day—Sea Breeze
- Monday
C.S.
Moffit
- 5 am employed all this morning in moulding up the Potatoes at 5 p.m. I dind with Mr. Janson this morn Mr. Bowden gave a Breakfast to Mr Grimes Lt Piper Lt Lord Lt Breedon Mr. Janson Mr Harris Mr Fosbrook and self The same party dind at Mr Jansons
Do.
- Tuesday
C.S.
Harris
- 6 am Mr Grimes and Lt Piper calld upon me to take their leave prior to their going to Pt Dalrymple and at Two p.m. they with Mr Harris and Mr Humphry went up to Herdsmans Cove in my large Boat. a strong Sea Breeze
- Wed.
C.S.
Humphrey
- 7 am at home all the day employd in moulding up my Potatoes

October

- Thursday
C.S.
Blare
- 8 am at 8 Mr and Mrs McCauley and self went down to Browns River where we dind and returnd in the Eve. as we went down we see a great many Natives but we did not go on shore

- Friday
C.S.
Upton 9 am at 11 we went down to Browns River for my man Earl whom I had left the day before, and we see a great many of the Natives in the Same Place and on our return we landed amongst them the Women and Children were together and the men out ahunting at 5 p.m. they returnd and they all came amongst us between 250 and 300. they were all very friendly and we gave them presents. at 7 we got home
- Saturday
C.S.
Sheffield 10 am at home all the day Employd in the Garden I cut a great quantity of Asperagus five of the Sailors which ran away from the Sarah Capt. Bristow came in from the Bush
- October 1807
- Sunday
C.S.
Hartwell 11 am this day blowing a strong land breeze at 2 p.m. My Men came down for Kangarroing and informd me of the death of my Dog Spott which was speard by the Natives some time since at 4 p.m. dind with His Honor Lt Govnr Collins
- Monday
C.S.
Otley 12 am blowing very hard all the day from the North. this morning Mr Shipman the store keeper was discharged ex officio I bought a new Dog from Ancors for 8£
- Tuesday
C.S.
Gatcomb 13 am a strong wind from the Nth at 11 I attended a punishment of Tomlins and Rush and waited upon the Lt Govnr 1 p.m. calld upon Mr. Fosbrook
- Wed.
C.S.
Burton 14 am the day very windy at 12 I went out afishing caught 4 salmon and some Rock Cod returnd home at 5 p.m. Mr Clark of the Govmt Farm appointed a store keeper
- Thursday
C.S.
Selby 15 am this morn at 11 I went out with my Gun to the Lagoons on the East side of the River but could not see any Ducks I went then afishing and a Gale came on, at 4 p.m. with great difficulty I got my Boat in at Sandy bay where I was obiged to leave it at 9 blowing a Gale of wind from the N.N.W.
- October 1807
- Friday
C.S.
Russell 16 am this morning the Mountain was covrd with snow and we had some rain with a gale of wind. at 11 I calld upon Mr Janson at home in the garden the remainder of the day
- Saturday
C.S.
Middleton 17 At home all the Day employd in the Garden
- Sunday
C.S.
Cotton 18 am at home all the murning afterwards calld upon Lt Lord a Sea Breeze

Monday C.S. Hagley	19	am upon business all the morning afterwards employd in the Garden a Gale of wind from the N.W. at 9 Rain which continued all night
Tuesday C.S. Dudley	20	am the morning at 10 very moderate and clear after the Gale but a very great quantity of snow upon the Mountain at home all the day
Wednesday C.S. Nelson the battle of Trafalgar	21	am at 11 I calld upon the Commissary (Mr Fosbrook) we walkd into his Garden afterwards dind with him and Mr Janson came soon after dinner we made a late eve.
Thursday C.S. Cavendish	22	am this morning Mr Fosbrook Mr Janson and Mr Bowden calld upon me
Friday C.S. Powlett	23	am Mr and Mrs McC and self went out in my boat up the River a little way
Saturday C.S. Supply	24	am at Daylight this morning Mr and Mrs McC went in my boat to Browns river where we dind and at 5 p.m. as we were coming up we observd 2 ships standing up the river at 6 I waited upon His Honor the Lt Govnr to inform him of them
Sunday C.S. George Capt Folger	25	am at 9 His Majesty Ship Porpose anchord in the Bay and fird a Salute of 13 Guns which was returnd by the Garrison Likewise the Topaz American ship anchord in the Bay. at 10 I waited upon the Govenor where I see Lt Simmons who commanded the Porpoise at 11 performd Divine Service.
Monday C.S. Simmons	26	am at home til 1 p.m. when I calld upon the Lt Govnr and met Lt Simmons Doctor Townson Mr Lutteridge the Surgeon of H.M. Ship Porpose receivd 4 Boxes and a Parcel of Papers with Letters &c &c from England with a New Gun
October 1807		
Tuesday C.S. Topaz	27	am at 11 Lt Simmons and Lt Ellison calld upon me who invited me to go on board with them. I went and the wr being so bad I stayd and dind
Wed. Ellison	28	am at home all the Day this day I got 20 Gallons of spirits from Capt Folger of the Topaz
Thursday C.S. ARRIVAL	29	am at home in the morning sowing seeds from England

- Friday 30 am at 11 Doctor Townson and Surgeon Lutterige calld upon me Lt Lord landed a Cask of Spirits from H.M. Ship Porpus without any permitt his man came past my house with it in a Barrow
- October 1807
- Saturday 31 am at 7 I went on board H.M. Ship Porpus and Breakfasted. 8 Mr Slone the Purser Mr Short Masters Mate. and Midshipman G. Collins and self got into the Porpus launch with 7 Man and went down the River at 11 we enterd Storm bay passage and proceeded to the N.W. Port where we went after some black Swans and killd three in Lieut Lord's Boat which we borrowd to pull after the Swanns it being very light at 5 p.m. we left the Port and proceeded a little way up the Passage. The wind headed us and we anchord in a small bay. got all our things out of the boat, and dressd some dinner on Isle Brune where we slept
- Sunday 1 November
At 4 a.m. we got into the boat and saild through the passage. Passed Houin Island at 7 p.m. landed on an Island next to Gardners Island where we slept
- Monday 2 am at 4 Lue got into the Launch and passd Swan Port then got into the small boat and proceeded up to the Flatts the Swanns were in great abundance it came on to blow so hard that the Launch was obliged to put back and run into Swan Port at 5 p.m. we came down and at 7 landed where we got our dinners and slept there.
- Tuesday 3 At 4 we Breakfasted and sent the small boat down to Swan Port and we proceeded in the Launch at 5 o'clock the Men caught 23 swans and we shot 7. at 1 p.m. the Wind came against us and we continued beating up till 9 at night when we landed
- Wed. 4 am at 3 we made sail for Storm Bay Passage the wind strong against us we were obliged to go round Gardners Island. at 12 we left the Houin and anchord off the Rock and took refreshment 40 past 2 made sail but could not get forward we anchord, made a fire on shore and slept
- Thursday 5 am at 3 made sail beating through the Storm bay passage at 6 it began to rain at 2 got through the passage and at 9 p.m. reach H.M. Ship Porpus. it continued raining from 6 a.m. to 10 p.m. we were all wet through. When we first set out our stay was to be only 4 days, at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 9 I got home wet through everything. The Topaz saild from Storm bay passage this morn where she has laid two days through contrary winds. On my arriving home I heard the following prisoners had deserted from Hobart Town
- the Speedewell schooner from Sydney commanded by McAlease laid in the Bay

November 1807

Friday 6 am at 12 I waited upon His Honor the Lt Govnr and
C.S. Doctor Townson was with him at 5 p.m. I dind with the
Powlett Govnr and met Doctor Townson Lieut Simmons Lt Lord
and Breedon Mr Janson Mr Bowden Mr Fosbrook and
Mr Collins

Saturday 7 am at $\frac{1}{2}$ past 11 Doctor Townson and Mr Slone the Purser
C.S. of H.M. Ship Porpoise calld upon me to see my Garden
Carew and Ground I went on board and took refreshment. Lieut
Ellison gave me 4 Loquet seeds which I planted as soon
as I returnd

November 1807

Sunday 8 am at 5 saild H.M. Ship Porpus for Sydney at home all
C.S. the day
Simmons male Vespere

Monday 9 at home all the day busily employd in my Garden
C.S.
London

Tuesday 10 am at 1 p.m. I waited upon His Honor the Lt Govnr
C.S. at home the rest of the day
Norris

Wed. 11 am at 9 Mr Shipman came and measured two acres of land
C.S. for me which I gave a grant to my friend Mrs McCauley
Brampton at 4 p.m. Mr Shipman and Mr Chase who married the
Lt Govnr Daughter dind with me

Thursday 12 am at home till 11 when I walkd to the Govmt Farm upon
C.S. business at home the rest of the day
Stephens

Friday 13 am at 11 sat upon the Bench on business of Mr Bowdens
C.S. and at 1 p.m. waited upon His Honor the Lt Govnr at
Betton home the rest of the day

Sat. 14 am at 4 I got up and took a walk with my Gun
C.S.
Mortimer

Sunday 15 am at 11 performd Divine Service attended by the Lt Govnr
C.S. &c. Mr. Bowden came home with me and took refreshment
Marley

Monday 16 am busey upon the Bench all the morning
C.S.
South

- Tuesday
C.S.
Newport 17 am at 11 the Lt Govnr sent for me and requested I would make inquiry respecting some Spirits being seizd by the Patrole. I could not fix it that it was going on Board the ship therefore ordered it to be returnd
- Wed.
C.S.
Wynn 18 am at home all the Day busey in the Garden and marking out my Land
- Thursday
C.S.
Boxley 19 am at 11 sat upon the Bench afterwards came home and Employd in the Garden &c
- Friday
C.S.
Brackley 20 am at 11 I calld upon the Lt Govnr who requested I would enquire of Mr Aleses conduct at Mrs C. after examining him I releasd him and reported it to the Govnr
- November 1807
- Saturday
C.S.
Chesterfield 21 am at 7 saild the Speedewell Schooner to Sydney commanded by Mr. Alease. $\frac{1}{2}$ past Sergt McCauley and one of the Patrole went on board the Schooner At home all the Day. The Govnr sent me some Prayer Books and Bibles to distribute to whom I think proper. in the Eve Thunder at a Distance
- Sunday
C.S.
Grantham 22 am at 11 performd Divine Service attended by the Lt Govnr &c—at home the rest of the Day
- Monday
C.S.
Wells 23 am at home all the day at 6 p.m. Sergt McCauley return from the Speedewell Schooner
- Tuesday
C.S.
Ripley 24 am this morn at 11 I walkd to the Govmt Farm took my Gun and killd some Pigeons I bought 2 Piggs of Poteskie
- Wed.
C.S.
Clinton 25 am at 11 Mr Humphrys friend calld upon me and dind with Mrs McCauley at 4 p.m. I took a walk to the Govmt Farm ashooting
- Thursday
C.S.
Barkley 26 am at 8 I went in my boat to Sandy Bay and observd a Vessel standing up the River, came home and killd some Pigeons at 4 p.m. the City of Edingborough anchord in the Bay last from Port Dalrymple and brought Mr Harris from thence, she came from the Cape of Good Hope
- Friday
C.S.
City of Eding-
borough 27 am at 11 I went upon the Parade and see Capt Patterson and Mr. Berry the super cargo of the City of Edingborough, she came from the Cape of Good Hope

- Saturday 28 am this morn I walkd to the farm and on my return I see
C.S. the Lady Nelson Brig coming into the bay at 2 she anchord
Berry and brought some Settlers Men and their Wives and
Children commanded by Lieut Kent
- Sunday 29 am at 11 performd Divine Service. Mr. Berry Capt.
C.S. Patterson Mr. Fosbrook Lt. Breedon came home with me
Kent and took some Bread and Chese at 2 p.m. I went on board
the City of Edingborough and Lt Kent of H.M. Brig Lady
Nelson at 7 we came on shore and they took a pipe with me
- Monday 30 am at 11 upon Business afterwards Employd in the Garden
C.S.
Piper
- December 1807
- Tuesday 1 am at 11 a Man belonging to H.M. Brig
C.S. Lady Nelson behaved very ill to me I made a complaint
Yorkton to Lieut Kent who had him punishd at home the chief of
£ the day
- Wednesday 2 am at home all the morning. at 5 p.m. Lieut Kent H.M.
C.S. ship Lady Nelson Capt Patterson of the City of Edin-
Caledon borough and Mr Berry of do and Lieut Lord and Mr Harris
The Govnr of Mr. Fosbrook Mr. Janson and self dind at the Governors
the Cape in his New House for the first time that he dind there
- Thursday 3 am at home all the morning between 2 and 3 p.m. we had
C.S. a great deal of Thunder and Lightning and the most
Grey Severe Gale of wind from the N. West, since we have been
in the settlement at 4 p.m. I dind with Mr Bowden and
met Mr Berry Capt Patterson Mr Janson and Mr Harris
- Friday 4 am I receivd a box of Pines from Lieut Kent at 4 p.m.
C.S. I dind with Mr Fosbrook and met Mr Berry Capt Patterson
Cornwall Lieut Kent H.M. Brig Lady Nelson Lt Lord Mr Har.
Janson Bowden the day very squarly

December

- Saturday 5 am at home all the Day 4 p.m. Lieut Kent Mr Berry Lt
C.S. Lord and Messrs. Ganson. Bowden. Fosbrook. Harris. dind
Blyth with me
- Sunday 6 am at 7 saild H.M. Brig Lady Nelson Lt Kent for Sydney
C.S. at 1 p.m. the following Prisoners who had been absent
Weldon from the Colony for a very long time and had accepted
the Lt. Govnrs Pardon on their returning to the settlement
arrivd at Govmt House when the Govnr sent for me. Duff
Quinn Meyers Grover, Story, Watts, Russell, Fernandez,
at 2 I went to Mr Bowdens to take Lunch afterwards
Mr Bowden and self went on boart the ship City of Eding-
borough where we dind

Monday 7 am at 11 Mr Bowden calld upon me in the aft I calld upon
C.S. Mr Fosbrooks but did not say—I dind on board the ship
Salt Fleet the City of Edinburgh

Tuesday 8 am at home all the Morn. 2 p.m. Mr Harris Fosbrook Lt
Sackville Lord and self dind on board the City of Edi

Wed. 9 am at 12 Mr Bowden and Fosbrook calld upon me and we
C.S. went and got some spirits from the Sd Ship
Bennet

December

Thursday 10 am at home all the day
C.S.
Glastonbury

Friday 11 am I took a walk to the Farm in the morning at 6 arrived
C.S. the Governor Hunter schooner from Sydney with Grain.
Hedham

Sat. 12 am at 10 I took a walk with Mr. Berry and Capt. Paterson
C.S. to see his men cutting a fine mast 68 feet and not a Not.
Matlock Cap P came home with me and afterwards I went on board
to dine I had 2 Melay fowls given me

Sunday 13 am at 11 performd Divine Service at home all the day
C.S.
Burton

Monday 14 am upon business at the Bench all the morning Strong
C.S. Gales of wind all the Night
Denbigh

Tuesday 15 am upon business till 3 p.m. a very strong Gale of wind
C.S. at 4 the Mountain was coverd with snow the Eve very cold
Gales

Wed. 16 am at 8 a very strong Gale of wind from the N. West and
C.S. such weather that we have not been accostomd to at this
Wilmot Season of the year, The mountain this morn was covd
with snow at 4 p.m. the Lt Govnr Janson Bowden Fosbrook
Lt Breedon Capt Patterson and Mr Berry and self dind
with Lt Lord

December

Thursday 17 am at 11 I went and examined some Beef that was landed
C.S. from the City of Edinburgh at 3 p.m. I dind on board with
Anderson Mr Fosbrook

- Friday 18 am upon business all the morn at 3 p.m. took a walk with
C.S. my Gun Lt Lord and Mr Berry took refreshment with me
Crayham
- Saturday 19 am at 11 I went with Lt Lord to examine the Beef
C.S. brought by the City of Edinburgh at 1 p.m. His Honor
Ware self and Lt Lord went to Mr Fosbrooks and eat a peice of it
- Sunday 20 am at 11 performd Divine Service at 4 p.m. I dind with
C.S. the Lt Govnr the day was very hot
Silkirk
- Monday 21 am the morning very hot with a North Wind blowing fresh
C.S. I waited upon the Governor at home the remainder of the
Day
- Tuesday 22 am at 11 I waited upon the Lt. Govnr. and at 12 Mr Harris
C.S. and self went on board upon business where we dind and
Morwood a day of continuel rain
- Wed. 23 am at 11 I went on board to settle with Mr Berry at home
C.S. all the day
Bath
- Dec. 1807
- Thursday 24 am at 11 upon business for Mr Harris. 4 p.m. Mr H
C.S. dind with me and stayd the Eve and Mr Berry call upon me
Halifat
- Xmas Eve
- Friday 25 am at 11 performd Divine Service attended by Lt Govnr
C.S. Collins &c &c and the whole of the Service was performd
Xms and for the first time I read the Prayers out of the New
Xmas Day Prayer Book and Bible presented to the Colony by His
Majesty King George the Third at 4 p.m. Mr Berry and
self dind with the Lt Govnr
- Saturday 26 am upon business all the morning at 9 Mr. Humphrey came
C.S. from Pt Dalrymple He walkd it to Herdsmans Cove in
Ord three days. at 4 p.m. the Govnr calld upon me $\frac{1}{2}$ past
Sarah Mr Bowden and self went on board the City of Edinborough
in the eve Mr. B. smoakd a pipe with me and at 9 calld
upon Mr Humphry. McCauley sent the little girl away
that he kept
- Sunday 27 am at home all the morning 5 p.m. I dind with Mr Bowden
C.S. and met Mr Humphry
Leeds
- Monday 28 am at home all the morning This afternoon I began
C.S. Harvest. Saild the City of Edinborough for Sydney very
Dunkirk busey at the Govt Farm in Harvest

- Tuesday 29 am at home all the morning busey in harvest 3 p.m. I took
C.S. my Gun and went out with the Dogs to kill a Kangarro
Darlington but could not find any. the wr very fine
- Wed. 30 am at home all the morn busey in Harvest in the eve took
C.S. a walk with my gun did not kill anything
Harley
- Thursday 31 am this morn I finishd cutting Barley at 12 I went across
C.S. the water to shoot pigeons and sent my men afishing
Oliver I kild 5 and the men caught some very fine Rock Codd
- Men came in Duff
Quinn
Meyers
Grover
Story
Watts
Russell
Fernander

January 1808

- Friday 1 am The morning very hot at 11 His Honor the Lt. Govnr
C.S. and Lt. Lord calld upon me, I walkd with them to Govmt
New Year House where we took wine afterwards I went to Mr Lords
and Named His Child I gave my men Spirits &c to welcome
in the New Year
- Saturday 2 am at home all the morning the Lt Govnr went to Morgans
C.S. Farm across the water—at 3 Mr & Mrs. Mc and self went
Morgan up the River near the Govmt Farm where we dind
- Sunday 3 am at 11 performd Divine Service attended by all the
C.S. military and most of the Civil officers—at home all the day
Louth
- Monday 4 am when walking out this morn the Govnr met me and
C.S. we took a walk and afterwards I took refreshment, at
Bowden 2 p.m. Mr Harris calld upon me
- Tuesday 5 am this day Mr & Mrs Mc and self went to Mich Mansfields
Hinton the day very wet and came home late.

January 1808

- Wed. 6 am at home all the day very busy in Harvest cutting wheat
C.S.
- Thursday 7 am very busey in Harvest the Govnr calld upon me, and
C.S. I went home and took wine with him this aft I finishd
Princess of Wales cutting my wheat gave the men Spirits &c

Friday 8 am at 11 I sat upon the bench the Lt. Govnr sent for me
C.S. the day very hot at 20 past 3 p.m. the Thermomiter 99
Tenbury in the Eve the wind changed from the N. to S. when we
had rain

Sat. 9 am this I carried all my Barley and in a very fine condition
C.S. sent my men up to Risdon for Thatch
Brentwood

January 1808

Sund 10 am performd divine service and Church Lt. Lords friend
C.S. where I dind at 4 p.m. and met Mr. Janson
Kendal

Monday 11 am at Court all the morning 2 p.m. the Lt. Govnr sent for
C.S. me in the Eve went out a Pigeon shooting
Doncaster

Tuesday 12 am at Court all the morning in the Eve I walkd to the
C.S. Govmt Farm
Payne

Wed. 13 am at eight Mr & Mrs McCauley Mr and Mrs Powers and
C.S. self went to Risdon where we dind and in the eve came
Greenland and landed at the Govmt Farm drank Tea there and
walkd home

Thursday 14 am the morning very warm employd all the morning in
C.S. getting in my wheat which I finishd at 4 p.m. and gave
Middleton the Men spirits &c &c
finishd This day I cut a coumber.
Harvest

January 1808

Friday 15 am at 11 I waited upon the Lt. Governor sent my men to
C.S. Risdon for some straw employd in getting my onions
Nevill ready for the House the day very hot

Saturday 16 am at 10 my men came from Risdon with a boat load of
C.S. straw the morning, very hot with a N. Wind at 11 so
Stourbirdge hot that it was im-possible to stir out the Country all
on fire and all round the Town. at 20 minutes past 3 p.m.
a strong Sea Breeze set in from the S.E.

Sunday 17 am Early this morning a Gun was fird from a ship in
C.S. Sandy Bay, a boat was sent down with the Pilot H.M. Ship
Simmons Porpoise arrived from Norfolk Island with 180 Settlers
with thirty childn for this Colony at 10 she anchord in
the bay at 11 performd divine Service. at 2 p.m. several
of the officers of the Porpoise calld upon me

- Monday 18 am at 8 the Colours were hoisted in Honor of the day
C.S. at 12 the ordinance fired 21 Guns and at 1 p.m. H.M. Ship
The Queen Porpoise did the same at 4 I dined on board H.M. Ship
Porpoise
- Tuesday 19 am at home all the morning till 12 when the Lt. Govnr
C.S. sent for me at 3 p.m. I dined with Lt Lord and met Lt.
Trent Simmons Mr. Janson and the little Girl
- Wed. 20 am the Govnr sent for me and at 11 I attended punishment
C.S. 1 p.m. I went on board H.M. Ship Porpoise and Lt Ellison
Pelham came on shore with me
- Thursday 21 am at 11 I went across the Water to shoot Pigeons and
C.S. returned 2 p.m. this day finished my new Barn 30 feet long
Ellison 16 wide
- Friday 22 am employed all the Day in getting up Potatoes
C.S. Mr Fosbrook called upon me
Panton
- Saturday 23 am employed all the morn after my potatoes at 4 p.m. I dined
C.S. with Mr Janson with Lt. Lord Lt Simmons in one Room
Slone and a ½ I had 270 lb of Potatoes. we have a very great
quantity. Lt Simmons of the R.N. gave me a very fine
Cock Turkey and hen
- January 1808
- Sunday 24 am at 11 performed Divine Service attended by the Lt Govnr
C.S. and the Norfolk Settlers very early this morn one Great
Arrival Gun was heard at a distance and the Lt Govnr sent the
pilot down the River & Frederick Henry Bay in the Eve
he returned but could not see a ship
- Monday 25 am at 11 engaged upon business finished getting up the
C.S. Potatoes at 3 p.m. a fire broke out at Sergt McCauleys
Wellington House occasioned by the neglect of Mr & Mrs Hibbins
Norfolk settlers, who were put into their house illegally
at 5 p.m. Lieut Simmons Lieut Ellison Mr Slone Purser of
H.M. Ship Porpoise and Mr Lutteridge the Surgeon of do
with Lt Lord and Breedon, Mr Bowden Mr Collins and
self dined with the Lt Governor
- Tuesday 26 am in the morn called upon Mr Bowden and Mr Lutteridge
C.S. came home with me
Alford
- Wed. 27 am in the morn busy on board H.M. Ship Porpoise 5 p.m.
C.S. Lt. Ellison and Mr Bowden Surgeon called upon me took tea
Grantham and stayed till past 9

Thursday 28 am this morning upon business respecting the Sarjt of Marines wives things (Mrs Petty) and Maria Gardner at 4 p.m. C.S. I dind on board H. M. Ship Porpoise with Lt Lord Breedon Blackmore and Mr Bowden

Friday 29 am this morning early saild H.M. Ship Porpoise for Sydney C.S. Porpoise

Sat. 30 At home all the day C.S. Clinton

Sund. 31 Performd Divine Service at 11 attended by all the settlers C.S. &c. I dind with the Lt Govnr Maitland

February 1808

Monday 1 at home all the day C.S. Scott

Tuesday 2 am at 12 Mr Bowden calld upon me 3 p.m. I took my boat C.S. and went across the Water where I met my man who had Wallace been aKangarroing brought home 2 Men from the Lime Kiln, they were driven away by the Natives who had killd 2 of their Dogs

Wed. 3 am this morn a general Muster of all the prisoners at 11 C.S. I waited upon the Lt Govnr with Lt Lord Bell

Thursday 4 am this aft went out afishing and caught some fine rock C.S. Codd Wakefield

Friday 5 am this morn Employd in collecting Garden seeds in the C.S. aft I went out afishing Wakefield

Sat. 6 am at home all the morn 4 p.m. I dind with Mr. Fosbrook C.S. Lt. Lord. Breedon. Bowden. and Mr Humphry Broomfield

Sund 7 am at 11 performd Divine Service attended by all the C.S. Military and Civil &c during the time we were at Church Patterson a serjt and 7 men arrived here from Port Dalrymple they Brumley came after some men that had absconded from the settle- ment at 4 p.m. I dind with the Lt Govnr

Mond, 8 am this morn fird my wheat stubble 2 p.m. I went across C.S. the River ashooting and my men afishing very bad success Boone the aft very wet. Watts was confind a party of Men was sent off after the Port Dalrymple Bushrangers

- Tuesday
C.S.
9 am this morn I went across the Water and see Watt
- Wed.
C.S.
Barrow
10 this day went out afishing the wr blowing hard calld upon the Lt Govnr
- Thursday
C.S.
Lumley
11 at home all the day the wr Blowing hard
- Fri/
C.S.
Penryn
12 Early this morn went out afishing and came home at 11 went out again blowing very hard
- Feb. 1808
- Sat.
13 am at 11 waited upon the Lt. Govnr at home the remainder of the day Mr Bowden and Mr Humphry took lunch with me
- Sund.
C.S.
Parker
14 am at 11 performd Divine Service at home all the day blowing wr
- Monday
C.S.
Springfield
15 am at home all the morn 3 p.m. I walkd to the Government Farm
- Tuesday
C.S.
Smith
16 am this morn early I went out in my boat to Sandy bay, at 8 Sarjt Broomley and the party that went out after Lemon and Brown returnd without seeing them—
- Wed.
C.S.
Thanet
17 am waited upon the Lt. Govnr the party of Port Dalrymple men went away I went out afishing in the Eve
- Thursday
C.S.
Bell
18 am at home all the day in the Eve took a walk with my Gun no success
- Friday
C.S.
Tunbridge
19 Upon business all the morning in the afternoon went out with my Gun to the Govmt farm
- Sat
C.S.
Cavendish
20 am in the morning Early I went in my boat down the River and walkd home with my Gun. in the afternoon I go my cow and calf from the Farm given to me by the Lt Govnr—
- February 1808
- Sunday
C.S.
Langford
21 am at 11 performd Divine Service. Lt Govnr Collins being unwell he did not attend. at home all the day

- Monday 22 am at home all the day busey in Breaking up my land
C.S.
Devonshire
- Tuesday 23 am this morn I took my boat and went out afishing it
C.S. came on to blow that I was obliged to run the boat to
Recovery Risdon and there leave her and walk home
- Wed. 24 am at home all the day blowing hard from the S. the
C.S. Lt Govnr ill in bed all day—
Collins
- Thursday 25 am I calld at the Govnors. Afterwards went out with
C.S. my Gun and killd some Pigeons my men went afishing
Convalescent busey threshing wheat
- Friday 26 am at home all the morning and at 3 p.m. I took my boat
C.S. and went out afishing
Hobart
- Sat. 27 at Day light this morn I got up and went down the River
C.S. aHunting and Fishing returnd at 3 p.m. at 5 p.m. I
Arrival buried Jeremiah Emblen formerly an Eminent Attorney
in London
- Feb 1808
- Sunday 28 the morning very hot at 11 performd Divine Service
C.S.
Lord
- Monday 29 this morn upon business at Court. in the Eve I met with
C.S. a dreadful accident fell from the steps of the door and
Minto cut my thigh by falling on the scraper
- Tuesday 1 March 1808
C.S. Very ill in bed at 9 Brumley and 2 Privates arrived from
Johnson Pt Dalrymple with Dispatches from Govnr Patterson.
10 Mr Humphry and Mr Bowden calld and gave me this
information Pt Jackson New Governmen 26 Jan 1808—
Major Johnson Govnr vice —Blyth
Grimes J. Advocate —Atkins
Williamson Commry —Palmer
Bayley Pro Marshall —Gore
Jamison Nav Off —Cambell
Bayley Sec —Griffin
Lt. Lawson Aid De Camp —Portland Dead
Harris Officer of Police
Blaxcell 2 Blaxland Magistrates
at 11 Mich Manfield Duff and Jones came in with the Head
of Lemon and brought Brown in prisoner the two Port
Dalrymple Murderers. at 1 the Lt Govnr and Lt Lord
calld upon me and shew the Letter and proclamation of
Lt Govnr Johnson at Sydney

- Wed. 2 Very ill in bed several of the officers calld upon me
C.S. the Lady Nelson arrivd from Norfolk with Settlers
Stockport
- Thursday 3 am this morn I was assisted in to my dining room but
C.S. kept my bed. Lt Lord Fosbrook Harris calld upon me
Kent at 1 p.m. arrivd the Harrington Capt Cambel with Tea
Sugar Spirits &c &c &c from India
this Eve we had some rain
- Friday 4 am this day at 12 Lt Breedon of the R.M.F. went to
C.S. Pt. Dalrymple and a party with Brown the murderer to be
Davison deliverd up to Govnr Patterson Lemon was killd by Mans-
till further field a Settler G-Order-no Potatoes to be receivd into the
orders Store
- Sat. 5 am this morn Lt Kent calld upon me with Mr Bowden
C.S. Mr Whitehead put in two Tonn of Potatoes this day
- March 1808
- Sunday 6 am confind to my bed all Day. Lt Lord, Fosbrook, Harris,
C.S. Janson calld upon me
Carlisle
- Monday 7 am at 8 The Lady Nelson fird a Gun as a signal for
sailing I finisd all my letters and sent on board Mr &
Mrs P. Ld Spencer Grimes &c &c
- Tuesday 8 am this morning saild The Lady Nelson and Ship Harrington
for Sydney—in the Eve some Rain
- Wed. 9 am Very ill all day
- Thursday 10 Do the day very wet
- Friday 11 this day better though confind to my bed till 3 p.m.
Mr Bowden dind with me the day very wet
- Sat. 12 am at 12 Lt Lord Fosbrook and Mr Harris calld upon me
- Sund 13 am at 12 the Lt Govnr came and stayd with me a long time
several friends calld upon me
- Mond 14 am Mr Harris calld upon me
- Tuesday 15 at home still confind—the day very fine. Mr H's friend
dind with Mrs MC.
- Wed. 16 am Mrs. Sawyers [?] calld upon Mrs MC at 4 Lt. Lord
dind with me Mr. & Mrs. McCauley went to the Govmt
Farm to get their stock which the Govnr had sent there
for their House being destroyd—

March 1808

- Thursday 17 in the Morn Mr Bowden and Mr Hoply attended me, the Lt Govnr and Mrs Power came and sat with me some time
- Friday 18 this day I was to walk about a little Mr. Harris calld upon me and in the Eve Mr Groves smokd a pipe with me
- Sat 19 I finisd breaking up my land for wheat
- Sund 20 we had some Thunder this afternoon but at a distance
- Mond. 21 Lt Lord. Mr Fosbrook calld upon me
- Tues. 22 Mr Harris calld and Mr. Hopley in the aft we had a severe Tempest of thunder and lightning
- Wed. 23 The morn very fine with gentle rain
- Thurs 24 this morning Mr Harris calld upon me with Mr. Bowden at 1 p.m. I waited upon the Lt Govnr the first of my walking up Town since my accident happend I took wine &c with him and in the aft he sent me some Mellon Mr Humphry calld upon me
- Fri 25 this morning I calld upon Lt Lord and stayd with him some time
- Sat. 26 at home all the Day Mr Bowden and Mr. Humphry calld in the morn Mr Harris and Hopley at about 12 p.m.

March 1808

- Sund. 27 am after Breakfast I calld upon Mr Humphry with Mr
Parole Bowden and upon Mr. Janson the Lt Govnr came pas
Knopwood and when I came from Mr Jansons he askd me to walk
C.S. home with him I stayd with him till near 3 p.m. when he
Recovery gave the countersign the day very fine
- Monday 28 am at 11 I waited upon the Govnr at 3 p.m. the ship
C.S. Rhodes Capt Brookes arrivd from England with a valuable
Bodmin cargo for Mr Cambel of Sydney, at 4 Mr Janson Harris
Bowden Fosbrook Humphry dind with me and a very merry
meeting we had
- Tuesday 29 am at 12 Mr Bowden and Humphry calld upon me we took
C.S. a walk and they dind with me the Lt Govnr and Mrs Power
Brooks went on board the ship Rhodes
- Wed. 30 am This morn waited upon the Lt Govnr and being so
C.S. lame I went up to the Farm in my boat and dind with
Douglas Mrs Powers, the Govnr walkd up and dind there in the Eve
was obliged to come down in the boat

Thursday 31 am this morn waited upon the Govnr
C.S.
Cathcart

April 1808

Friday 1 am this morn I waited upon the Lt Govnr and at 4 I dind
C.S. with him and met Capt. Brooks of the ship Rodes the
Collingwood mountain was covered with snow this morning

Sat. 2 at 12 I went on board the Ship Rose with the Lt Govnr
C.S. to take refreshment and returnd at 4 p.m. Mildred Rose
Popham dind here

Sunday 3 am The morn performd Divine Service the first after my
C.S. illness and took refreshment at Govmt House afterwards
Breedon I killd a White Hawk

Monday 4 am at 12 I waited upon the Lt Govnr and afterwards
C.S. went on Board the Rose Capt Brooks at 5 dind with Mr
Spencer Humphry

Tuesday 5 at home all the day my men busey in marking out the
C.S. land for Wheat
Wynn

Wed. 6 am at home all the day
C.S.
Farnham

Thursday 7 am this Eve the Super cargo Mr Gorden of the Brig
C.S. Perseverance came up
Arnold

Friday 8 am this morn I walkd to the Government Farm and calld
C.S. upon Mrs Power at Martha Hayes and dind with her
Gordon came home in the eve and waited upon the Govnr, this
morn arrived the Perseverance Capt Faulkner from India

Sat. 9 am this morn said the Rose Capt Brooks for Sydney.
C.S. out afishing this day
Brooks

April 1808

Sund 10 At 11 performd Divine Service and at 4 I dind with the
C.S. Lt Govnr my poor Bitch Miss Died this aft
Perserverence

Monday 11 am This morn I began Sowing my wheat last year I began
C.S. sowing my wheat on the 8 of May.

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|----|--|
| Tuesday
C.S.
Brackley | 12 | am busey in sowing wheat Rush alias Williams was taken by Schuller |
| Wed.
C.S.
Blackburn | 13 | am this morn Mr Humphrey and self calld upon Mr Bowden and at 2 p.m. Lt Lord calld upon me and I dind with him |
| Thursday
C.S.
Sunbury | 14 | am this day I finid putting in my wheat at home all the day |
| Friday
Good
Tunbridge | 15 | At 11 Performd Divine Service at 5 I dind with the Lt Govnr and met Mr Gorden super cargo of the Perseverance Capt. Faulkner Lt Lord and Collins at 10 p.m. Sargt Thorne wounded Bowden R.M.F. |
| Sat.
C.S.
Arrival | 16 | am This morn we heard that Hall and Lockley was drownnd at 5 p.m. arrived the Estremina Mr Apsey commander |
| Sund
C.S.
Estremina | 17 | am performd Divine Service this Eve Hussy a Norfok settler hung himself |
| Monday
C.S.
Clermout | 18 | am Engaged upon the bench all the morn respecting Hall and John Lockley being drownnd and Mitchell saved Mr Harris sat upon the Body of Hussy the Jury |
| Tuesday
C.S.
Denbeigh | 19 | in the morn I went down to Nagans Farm Hussey was buried by Sandy bay |
| Wed.
C.S.
Lord | 20 | am at 1 I went to Mr Lords and met Fosbrook at 5 Mr Humphry dind with me and Mr LittleJohn came |
| Thursday
C.S.
Scott | 21 | am this morn I went out afishing at 5 the Perseverance went into mid channel |
| Friday
C.S.
Sydney | 22 | am Early this morn said the Perseverance for Sydney and Lt Lord on board |
| Sat.
C.S.
England | 23 | Early in the morning Mr Humphry breakfasted with me and we went down the River afishing where we dind and came home at 8 in the Eve |
| Sund.
C.S.
Booth | 24 | Divine Service was not performd at 4 p.m. I dind with the Govnr |

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|----|---|
| Monday
C.S.
Lynn | 25 | Engaged all the morn upon the Bench respecting Booth man in the aft calld upon Mr Fosbrook and took a pipe with Mr Groves |
| Tuesday
C.S.
Tame | 26 | Waited upon the Govnr and took Lunch afterwards calld upon Mr. Humphry in the Eve much lightning |
| Wed.
C.S.
Sandford | 27 | upon business all the morning with the Lt Govnr Mr Humphry and Harriet dind with me in the Eve much lightning |
| Thursday
C.S.
Oxford | 28 | At Court all the morning the day very cold and rain |
| Friday
C.S. | 29 | Upon business all the morning much rain |
| Sat.
C.S.
New Norfolk | 30 | This morn Mr Humphry and self went over the water, when we came home he dind with me New Norfolk the Name of the Place where all the Norfolk Settlers resides |
| Sunday | 1 | May 1 1808
at 2 p.m. Mr. Humphry and self with 4 Men got into my large Boat and went up the River to Mr Faulkeners where we intended to sleep at his House but meeting with some of the Prisoners there made a fire and slept out by the River side |
| Monday | 2 | soon after Breakfast we got into the boat and proceeded up the River. I killd 2 Ducks and sent the men out aKangarroing, they had no success made a fire got our Dinner and slept there it was a dreadful cold night |
| | | May 1808 |
| Tuesday | 3 | at Daylight we sent out 2 of our men aKangarroing and they were to meet us at the first River. I killd a Duck and they brought 1 Kangarro. Breakfasted there and at 12 Proceeded up the River to the first fall got there about 4 took refreshment and came down to Dennis McCartys where we Dind sent the men to fish for Eeels, they caught some and we had them for supper, slept there and had a very wet night, the House was not coverd in— |
| Wednesday | 4 | am at 12 we made sail and came down the River the wind fair till we came to long reach when it blew a Gale of wind against us. it was with great difficulty that we could keep the Boat off shore, the Sea ran very high at 7 oclock as we came by Hunters Island we heard 4 Guns fird from a ship in the River. and the Lt Govnr sent a boat down the river, when I got home Mr LittleJohn was at my house |

- Thursday 5 after Breakfast I waited upon the Lt Govnr who informd
C.S. me that the Captains Name was Chase and the ship Du
Chase Buck last from Timor. she has 300 Ton of Sperm oile,
one year from England at 1 p.m. Mr. Humphry and Mr
Bowden calld upon me and took refreshment
- Friday 6 am this Morn sowd Pees and Beans &c took a walk & the
C.S. mountain covrd with snow
Timor
- Sat. 7 Waited upon the Lt Govnr
C.S.
York
- Sunday 8 am the morning fine at home all the day
C.S.
Ray
- Monday 9 This morning Mr. Humphry and self went across the the
C.S. Water I killd my white Calf.
St. Ives
- Tuesd. 10 At 9 I calld upon Mr Bowden and we walkd to his Farm
C.S. returnd about 4 and I dind with the Lt Govnr
Ripley
- Wed. 11 At 10 I went upon the Parade afterwards calld upon Mr
C.S. Bowden
Talbot
- May 1808
- Thursday 12 am this day we had a great quantity of Rain. This morn
C.S. the Du Bucke saild to Frederic Henry Bay
Dorchester
- Friday 13 am busey in Planting Cabbages &c at 4 Maria Risby dind
C.S. with Mr. & Mrs. McC, the wind blowing very fresh Mr
Burton Bowden calld upon me
- Sat. 14 The day fine at 12 waited upon the Govnr and in the aft
C.S. went out ashooting
Bath
- Sunday 15 I calld upon Mr Humphry this morn and Married Elizabeth
C.S. Smith the day fine but cold
Pelham
- Monday 16 am calld upon Mr Humphry and at 2 p.m. Mr. Bowden calld
C.S. upon me smoaked a pipe at Mr Humphrys
Bowden
- Tuesday 17 At home all the morn at 5 p.m. I dind at Mr Janson's
C.S.
Tounely

- Wed. 18 At 12 Mr Humphry and self went across the River and walkd to the Coal River 12 Miles into the country. we got there about 6 made fire in the oven a place very large which will contain 100 men the Enterence is small but it rises gradually and at the side is a hole where the smoake goes out. the night was very wet but we felt no inconvenience from it
Constitution Hill
Breakneck Hill
- Thursday 19 The morning very wet went to the Coal River and got Coals my man went out aKangarroing but no success he killd a Duck and I some birds
- Friday 20 At 10 we prepard to come home the day very wet arrived Breakneck Hill about 1 p.m. where we stoppd and made a fire dressd some Pork and at 5 p.m. we arrivd home
- Sat. 21 the Day very wet at 2 p.m. I waited upon the Govnr
C.S. Mr Humphry and self calld at Lt Breedons &c
Dee
- Sund. 22 am the morning wet at 4 p.m. I dind with His Honor the
C.S. Lt Govnr—
Thornton
- Monday 23 upon business all the morning at Court afterwards waited
C.S. upon the Lt Govnr
Clermont
- Tuesday 24 upon business all the Morning at Court the Weather very
C.S. cold and stormy—and the night very bad—
Linton
- Wed. 25 the day very stormy in the Eve I smokd a pipe at Mr
C.S. Humphrys Mr & Mrs Bliss dind with Mrs. McCauley
Thornhill
- Thursday 26 am this morn I walkd to the Govmt Farm upon business
C.S. and returnd at 4 p.m. Mr LittleJohn was at my house
Warren
- Friday 27 Upon business at Court all the morning Mr Humphry
C.S. calld upon me
Duckworth
- Sat. 28 this morn Mr Humphry and Mr Bowden call upon me
C.S. at 12 infermation that a Brig was coming up the River
Arrival we had information that it was the Eagle Brig from India belonging to the House of Cambel and Hook super cargo. Capt Webster
- Sund 29 in the morning performd Divine Service at 4 p.m. I went
C.S. to the Govnrs to dinner and was introduced to Mr Hook
Eagle the super cargo and owner of the Ship Eagle this morning Early Sargt McCauley went out Early after the Bush-rangers

May 1808

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|----|---|
| Monday
C.S.
Hook | 30 | at home all the morning Mr Humphry calld upon me and we went to Mr Bowdens |
| Tuesday
C.S.
Gilmore | 31 | This morn I took a walk with my Gun at 4 p.m. dind with His Honor the Lt Govnr and met Mr. Hook the Super-cargo of the Eagle and Capt Webster |
| Wed.
C.S.
Cary | 1 | June 1808 I walkd to the Farm and home at 5 p.m. to dinner killd some Wattle Birds, the wr very fine |
| Thursday
C.S.
Madrass | 2 | am the morning very fine this day I gave my men some Meat and Spirits it being my Birth day |
| Friday
C.S.
Pellew | 3 | I went on the East Side of the River and returnd home to dinner |
| Sat.
C.S.
The King | 4 | am at 12 I waited upon the Lt Govnr and a Royal Salute was fird from the Ordinance at 5 p.m. he had all the Officers to dinner with him Mr Hook and Capt Webster of the Eagle Mr. Janson Bowden Humphry Fosbrook Lt Breedon Mr Collins and self |
| Sunday
C.S.
Estremina | 5 | at 11 performd Divine Service H.M. Schooner Estremina arrivd from Norfolk Island with Settlers |
| Monday | 6 | am at home all the day |
| Tuesday | 7 | At 10 Mr Humphry and self went down the River to the N.W. arm in Storm Bay Passage at 3 we landed and made a fire where we slept |
| Wed. | 8 | Early this morn we sent out 2 Men to kill Ducks and my two men came to me and brought a Kangarro of 90 weight we slept there all night Mr Harris and Mr. Hopley arrived from Port Dalrymple |
| Thursday
C.S.
Dorset | 9 | am early this morn one Man went a duck hunting and 2 aKangarroing they brought home one of 80 weight. we breakfasted and at 12 got into the Boat as we came out of the passage we see 2 Vessells going up to Hobart Town. at 5 we landed at Nagans Farm where we dind, and at 6 got into the boat arrived at Hobart Town ¾ past 7 arrivd the Eliza and Govnr Hunter Schooners from Sydney |
| Friday
C.S.
Eliza | 10 | Upon the bench all the Morn. Lt Breedon Mr Humphry and E. P. Harris came into Court at 4 p.m. I dind with his Honor the Lt Govnr, and met Capt Webster of the Ship Eagle the night very bad with Snow |

Sat. 11 am Mr Bowden and Mr Humphry calld upon me I waited
C.S. upon the Govnr at 12 the day very cold and the mountain
Courtney covrd with snow

Sund. 12 am at 11 performd Divine Service, this morn we heard
C.S. the report of a Gun down the River, at 2 p.m. we had
Ward information that Capt Chase of the De Bucke fird a Gun
to a ship which he saw at anchor off Capt Piller. Vessell
laying in Sullivan Cove Hobart Town the Eagle Brig
from Canton. the Colonial Vessel Estremina with Settlers
from Norfolk Island. the Govn Hunter schooner and Eliza
with Corn from Sydney

June 1808

Monday 13 am in the morning I waited upon the Lt. Govnr who
C.S. informed me that there was a ship in Storm bay at anchor
Dundee all hands bad the Dundee from Pulopenang Capt Cumming
at 9 saild H.M. Schooner Estremina for Sydney

Tuesday 14 am engaged upon the Bench all the morning calld upon
C.S. Mr Fosbrook
Eagle

Wed. 15 am this day I went out with my Gun and killd some fine
C.S. Wattle Birds
Mason

Thursday 16 at 12 saild the Brig Eagle for Sydney the wind blowing
C.S. very fresh at N.W. in the Eve I smokd a pipe with Mr
Webster Humphry

Friday 17 Engaged all the morning upon the bench afterwards Mr
C.S. Humphry and self walkd to Sandy bay to see the ship
Longford Dundee coming up

Sat. 18 am The morning very cold and a great quantity of rain
C.S. and snow, there was more snow upon the Mountain than
Cumming ever I see before. Capt Cumming landed from the Dundee
and waited upon the Lt. Govnr—the wind blowing hard
from the S.W.

Sunday 19 am the morning very cold Divine Service could not be
C.S. performd at 4 p.m. I dind with the Lt Govnr

Monday 20 at 11 upon the bench all the morning and in the Eve
C.S. smokd a pipe at Mr Bowdens met Mr Janson Mr Humphry
Carlisle and Capt Cummings

Tuesday 21 At 9 Breakfasted with Mr Bowden and walkd to his Farm
C.S.
Rose Castle

June 1808

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|----|--|
| Wed.
C.S.
Mollet | 22 | This morn went across the Water with my men Mr Bowden Mr. Fosbrook Mr Humphry and Capt Cumming calld upon me |
| Thursday
C.S.
Randall | 23 | this morn calld upon Mr Humphry and Capt Cumming came at 2 we went on board and Dind met Mr Bowden came on shore in the Eve very cold— |
| Friday
C.S.
Graves | 24 | am at home all the morning at 4 I dind with Mr Humphry and met Capt Cumming |
| Sat.
C.S.
Curtis | 25 | At home all the day |
| Sund.
C.S.
Brompton | 26 | At 11 performd Divine Service |
| Monday
C.S.
Maltby | 27 | At 10 I walkd to the Government Farm upon business at 4 dind with Mr Bowden and met Mr. Janson. Fosbrook Humphry and Capt Cumming |
| Tuesday
C.S.
Norton | 28 | am I waited upon the Lt. Govnr and dind with Mr Humphry at 4 p.m. the day very fine |
| Wed.
C.S.
Acton | 29 | am at 10 the De Buke came and anchord in the bay— at home all the day |
| Thursday
C.S.
Scott | 30 | am a very sharp Frost this morning at 4 p.m. Capt Cumming of the Ship Dundee Mr. Janson Bowden Fosbrook Humphry dind with me |

July 1808

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---|---|
| C.S.
Danbury
Friday | 1 | at home all the day |
| Sat.
C.S.
Graham | 2 | The Duboc saild a whaling after delivering her Spirits into the Store at 2 Mr. Humphry and self went on board the Dundee Saild the Eliza sloop for Sydney |
| Sund.
C.S.
Rixton | 3 | the morning very wet and cold Divine Service could not be performd |
| Mond.
C.S.
Bennet | 4 | am upon business all the morn in the Eve Lightning it was a general observation that in the Winter Season scarce a night passes but we have Lightning |

- Tuesday 5 am at home all the day In the Eve Lightning from the
C.S. N.W.
Dumfries
- Wed. 6 At 10 the Dundee made the Signal for sailing at 12
C.S. Capt Cumming Mr Bowden Mr Humphry calld upon me
Dashwood about 7 p.m. saild the Dundee Capt Cumming for Sydney
the Eve very fine. Joseph Powell died. In the Eve Lightning
from the N.W.
- Thursday 7 am at home all the morning. Mr Humphry calld upon me
C.S.
Chandos
- Friday 8 am upon the bench all the morning
C.S.
Colchester
- Sat. 9 This morn I took my boat and landed at Sandy Bay
C.S. walkd home in the Eve I receivd Bechew a Melay man
Payne that deserted from the Dundee Capt Cumming ship
- Sund. 10 The morning very cold at home all the day
C.S.
Powis

July 1808

- Mond 11 At 11 waited upon the Lt. Govnr upon business and took
C.S. a walk at 1 I took a lunch with him Mr Humphry dind
Calder with me and Mr Groves took a pipe in the Eve
- Tuesday 12 at home all the day
C.S.
- Wed. 13 Early this morn I took my boat and went over to Ralphs
C.S. Plain where I had 400 acres of Glebe land markd out by
Cooke Mr Shipman and in the Eve I returnd home
- Thurs. 14 at home all the day I got 40 Gallons of Spirits from the
C.S. Store
- Friday 15 in the morn I waited upon the Lt Govnr calld on Lt
C.S. Breedon &c &c
Pellican
- Sat. 16 at home all the day
C.S.
Alton
- Sund/ 17 am the day being very cold Divine Service could not be
C.S. performd
Lawson

Constables—Forbid releasing persons taken in charge until discharged by a
Magistrate May 14. 1802

Convict Servants—not to be beaten by their Masters who are to complain to a
Magistrate when necessary on pain of forfeiting such future accommodation.
Mar 8 1803

Licensed Persons—bound by recognizance to the due assize of Weight and Measure
to permit no Gaming Drunkenness indecency or Disorder, to pay due respect to
existing regulations, not to entertain persons from Tap-too beating to the following
noon, nor during Devine Service. Penalty forft of license and recognizance, the
latter to informer and 5£ to orphans. B.M. Oct. 26 1805

Things from Mr Bevan 1806

	£	s	d
Pr Estremina McCauley			
12 pairs of Cotton Stockings	6		
2 lb Pepper			
6 pair of Black Silk Stockings			

Kangarro killd by my dogs since August 24 1804 and Emews
Kan. 42 Emews 4

Kangarro 1805

1805								
Jan.	10	Kangarro	1					
	15	"	1	May				
	19	"	1	1	Kangarro	1	Aug.	2
	21	"	1	2	"	3	7	"
	26	"	4	13	"	1	10	"
	30	"	9	16	"	1	16	" 2 very
Feb.	15	"	1	18	"	1		large
	17	"	1	26	"	10	3	24
	22	"	3	June 2	Do " very	3		"
Mar.	1	"	3		large			
	11	"	2	7	do	1		
	23	"	2	14	"	1		
	28	" small	2	19	"	3	Aug.	29
	31	" 10	1	24	" "	3	Sept.	9
Apl.	1	"	1	27	"	1	13	
	3	"	1	30	"	1	15	
	8	"	1	July 6	"	4	23	
	9	"	1	11	"	2	27	
	11	"	2	15	"	3	Oct	Shot one
	16	"	3	21	"	4	do	do
	20	"	2	31	One I shot	13	18	"
	23	"	1				24	"
	24	"	3				27	"
	27	"	16				31	"
Nov.	5	Kang.	4					
	8	"	5					
	10	"	1					
	15	"	6					

	January 1805	Emews 1805
	3 Emew	1
Feb.	25 do	1
Mar.	1 "	1
	5 "	1
Apl.	25 "	1
	27 "	2
May	17 "	1
June	14 "	1
	19 " very large	2
	24 " " "	2
July	30 "	1
	15 "	1
Aug.	2 "	2
	10 "	2
	16 "	1
	29 "	1
Oct.	31 "	1
Nov.	21 Kang	4
	30 do	3
	do 23	

Head and Pluck . 8d
 Forequarters 8 lb.
 Skin 2/- a piece

14th April 1807

the Sum of Sixty Nine pounds 15 shillings and six pence
 being the payment of 927 pounds of kangarro
 Marshals Court
 Mareshall Saxon, from mare a horse and
 schall Governer

So true it is that in all countries poverty is considered rather a
 crime than a misfortune, and that he who has nothing to bestow,
 is immediately suspected of an intention to take away

Ewe 4 May 1805 S Gunn Lt 9 May 1805
 Blackcat 23rd May 1805 No Spirits 6 May 1805

March 5th £3 to Mrs MC.

Horatio Nelson
 Honor est a Nils

Rev. R. K. return of Land Stock &c 14 Aug 1807

Wheat	acres					
5	Potatoes	Garden 1	Total 30			
	$\frac{1}{2}$					
Cows	Bull Calves	Cow Cal	Goats Ram	Feamale	Servts	
2	2	1	1	6	4	

Miss Mabel Hookey has supplied the following information:—

‘Some of the Knopwood diaries were purchased at the sale of the Rev. Robert Knopwood’s effects by my grandfather George Stokell, and were for many years stowed away in a cupboard at his home “Rokeby House”, at Rokeby. The volumes so purchased comprised those covering the years 1801-1804; 1814-1820; 1822-1834; and 1836-1838. Those covering the years 1808-1813; 1821; and 1835, were not included in the purchase and their fate is unknown.

George Stokell’s volumes were inherited by his daughter Henrietta Stokell, who gave volume I (1801-1804) to her brother George Stokell. This volume passed to his daughter Alice Stokell, who sold it to the Mitchell Library.

The remaining volumes were given by Henrietta Stokell to me. I kept volume II (1805-1808), which is still in my possession. The other three volumes were sold by me to Angus & Robertson, who resold them to the Mitchell Library’.

The Geology of the Country Around Tarraleah, Tasmania

By

REX T. PRIDER

(Department of Geology, University of Western Australia)

PLATES VII, VIII

Abstract. The regional geology of an area of 260 square miles in the vicinity of Tarraleah on the central plateau of Tasmania is described. The most extensive formation is the Jurassic dolerite. Smaller inliers of Permian marine and Triassic freshwater sediments are of sporadic occurrence. A reclassification of the Permian into the Marlborough Series at the base, Woodbridge Formation and Ferntree Formation at the top is suggested. Extensive areas are covered by Tertiary basalts and smaller areas by Pleistocene glacial till. The structure in the pre-Tertiary rocks shows a gentle regional dip to the east which is interrupted by several strike faults with large downthrows to the west.

I. INTRODUCTION

This paper is the result of a geological reconnaissance of the country in the vicinity of Tarraleah (42° 18' S.Lat., 146° 26' E.Long.) made in January-February, 1947, on behalf of the Hydro-Electric Commission of Tasmania and is published through the courtesy of the Commission.

The area examined, which is shown on the accompanying geological map, is somewhat irregular in shape, covering an area of approximately 260 square miles. It is the stretch of country north and east of the River Derwent, extending from Derwent Bridge on the west to the hamlet of Dee on the east, with an extension to the north along the valley of the River Nive as far north as its confluence with the Pine River. The village of Tarraleah is situated to the south-east of the centre of the mapped area.

The mapping was effected by stereoscopic interpretation of aerial photographs, supported by traverses on the ground. All of the roads, tracks, transmission lines, and main streams in the area have been traversed, in addition to

numerous other cross country traverses, so that, with the exception of areas specifically indicated on the map as untraversed, the geologic boundaries can be regarded as of fairly high reliability.

The western margin of this area receives an average annual rainfall of 60 inches, which falls off rapidly to 35 inches per annum along the eastern margin. The entire area, except for scattered marshes, is thickly covered by Eucalypt forest with very dense undergrowth, which, however, becomes less dense in the lower rainfall areas to the east. The dense vegetation makes traversing on foot very slow and obscures the geology, both on the ground and in the air photos. With the exception of some of the basalt-covered plains in the vicinity of Bronte which have been cleared for sheep grazing purposes, the area is almost entirely in its virgin state.

II. PHYSIOGRAPHY

The area examined is part of the high dolerite plateau of Tasmania standing at an average elevation of approximately 2500 feet above sea-level, above which rise some isolated hills such as Brady's Sugarloaf (3361 feet) and the Wentworth Hills scarp. The plateau is a somewhat undulating surface with broad N.W.-S.E. trending depressions, and on its surface are many high-level marshes. Small marshes occur throughout the area, but more extensive marshes (Brady's Marsh, Big Marsh, Father of Marshes) are developed at an approximate elevation of 2150 feet to 2200 feet in the belt of country extending south from Bronte. All of these marshes are somewhat elongated in shape in a general N.W.-S.E. direction and their development, as will be shown later, has been controlled largely by the geologic structure.

The plateau is deeply incised by the Rivers Derwent, Nive, and Dee, and their tributaries. All the main rivers drain in a general southerly direction and in this area, for the most part, pursue parallel courses.

The *Derwent*, rising in Lake St. Clair to the north of Derwent Bridge, flows almost due south through a wide U-shaped (glacial) valley for 10 miles south of Derwent Bridge to Butler's Gorge, where it changes its course abruptly to flow through a rather mature valley for approximately two miles in an E.N.E. direction before again resuming its more or less normal south-easterly trend through a very immature valley in the dolerite. There are no important tributaries to the Derwent in this area, except the Nive, which joins it near the southern margin of the map—it appears here that the Nive is actually the master stream and the Derwent is its tributary.

The *Nive*, with the exception of minor bends, pursues a north-south course throughout the mapped area. North of its junction with the Pine River the Nive flows in a south-easterly direction in an immature valley deeply incised in the dolerite plateau. At approximately one mile south of its confluence with the Pine the Nive valley becomes much wider and more mature, the river flowing through a flood plain approximately half a mile wide for a distance of one mile, where it is joined by the Serpentine Creek entering on the east bank. South of this it flows through a narrow gorge in the dolerite, and downstream from this gorge it enters the basalt area where the nature of the valley again changes markedly. It is here incised only 250 feet in the basalt-covered plains and is characterised by broad sweeping curves, meandering at will and not controlled in any way by the geological structure—the bed has a braided character with many boulder accumulations, and it receives tributaries from both east and west. This is its nature where it crosses the Lyell Highway (Plate VIII, fig. A). At a short distance downstream from the Lyell Highway the Nive leaves the basalt area and again suffers a marked change in character—the valley becomes narrower

and the river is incised approximately 1000 feet. This immature nature persists as far south as its crossing with the Tarraleah-Ouse Highway, where it enters an area of Triassic shales and its valley becomes more mature. Other than the Pine and Derwent, which have already been mentioned, the main tributary of the Nive in this area is the Clarence River entering from the west at approximately eight miles north from the Tarraleah power house; other west bank tributaries being Wentworth Creek, Horne's Creek, and Wilson's Creek. All of these west bank tributaries have very steep grades where they enter the Nive and in the lower parts of their courses are characterised by many waterfalls. On previously published maps (e.g., the 4-mile State map No. 3 of Tasmania, 1944), Wentworth Creek is shown as entering the Nive at two miles north of Horne's Creek. Actually, the Wentworth flows into Horne's Creek and the single stream enters the Nive at three and a quarter miles upstream from the Tarraleah power house.

The *River Dee* is the third main drainage channel. It also flows in a general southerly direction. In the area shown in this map (Plate VII) it has similar characteristics to the Nive between the Pine River and Bronte Gorge, i.e., after entering the mapped area in an immature valley it flows through a wide flat area for several miles to where it crosses the Lyell Highway. Downstream from this point its valley again becomes immature like that of the Nive near Tarraleah, although it is not so deeply incised as the Nive.

III. GEOLOGY

1. General Outline.

By far the most extensive formation developed in this area is the Jurassic dolerite. Smaller inliers of Permian and Triassic sediments are of sporadic occurrence. Extensive areas are covered by Tertiary basalts and in places there is a thin veneer of Pleistocene glacial deposits. The general geological structure of the pre-Tertiary rocks shows a gentle regional dip to the east, which is interrupted by several strike faults with large downthrows to the west. Owing to the extensive areas of dolerite in which the geologic structure is indeterminable it is difficult to obtain a complete picture of the regional structure and it is very difficult to correlate the various isolated occurrences of Triassic sediments throughout the area. The regional easterly dip was responsible for the pre-basalt topography which has been to some extent drowned by the extensive outpourings of basalt which are now dissected by the River Nive. Except in the westernmost part of the area in the valley of the River Derwent the Pleistocene glaciation appears to have left very little trace of its activity.

2. Stratigraphy.

A. Permian Sediments.—Rocks of Permian age occur in one part of the area only—in the section (which for convenience may be called the Marlborough inlier) extending from London Marsh Farm in a north-westerly direction to the Marlborough Highway, which runs from Bronte to Great Lake. The best outcrops of these rocks are to be seen along the valley walls of Serpentine Creek in the vicinity of 814N., 447E.* The only previous examination of this Permian section was made by Strzelecki, who collected a number of fossils from this locality which were described by Lonsdale and these descriptions have been referred to in the literature

* Co-ordinates are units of 1000 yards and refer to the grid on the accompanying geological map (Plate VII), which is the same as the military grid on the 4-mile State map of Tasmania, published in 1944. Co-ordinate references given elsewhere in this paper refer to the grid on the accompanying geological map.

since. Strzelecki's account of these rocks, published in his 'Physical Description of New South Wales and Van Dieman's Land' (1845) is so brief that it may be repeated here in full—

'8th. The sources of the river Nive, in the Upper Country, and the locality east of Marlborough, exhibit perhaps the most complete section of this group that is to be seen. Here a massy fossiliferous limestone abuts against a very inclined argillaceous and siliceous slate: upon this limestone rests a slaty fragmentary rock without fossils; a fossiliferous, arenaceous, and argillaceous massive rock, with somewhat of a slaty fracture, follows. This is crowned by a sedimentary deposit of mud and fine sand, which reaches an elevation of 5200 feet. The series in this locality contains the following fossils:—

Crinoidal columns
Productus brachythoerus
Spirifer subradiatus and *S. Stokesii*
Fenestella internata and *F. ampla*.'

Johnson (1888, p. 128) only gives a brief reference to Marlborough, which he quotes directly from Strzelecki's earlier description and it is apparent that Johnson himself did not visit the area.

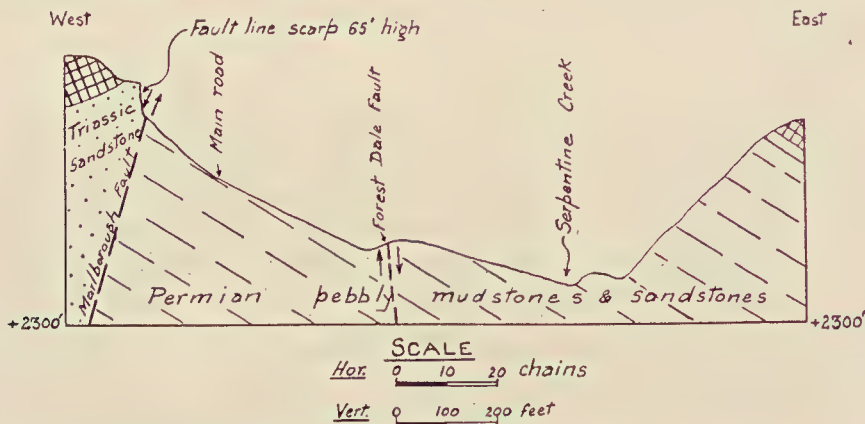


FIG. 1.—Diagrammatic east-west section at co-ordinate line 818 N, across the Marlborough and Forest Dale faults showing the fault line scarp along the Marlborough fault. The cross-hatched areas at the east and west ends of the section are of dolerite.

In this area the Permian rocks form a belt from one to one and one-half miles wide trending in a north-south direction (fig. 2). To the west this Permian inlier is truncated abruptly by the Marlborough Fault, which has thrown down Triassic rocks and associated dolerite sills to the west, and we find here Triassic sandstones in contact with the lower members of the Permian sequence. The contact crosses the main road at 814N., 446.3E., and here the Permian is in juxtaposition to the dolerite. Further north (due west of Forest Dale Farm) the contact is between Triassic quartz sandstones and Permian pebbly mudstones (fig. 1). It is interesting to note here that, although the west is the downthrown side of the fault, the scarp along the fault line is facing east, due to the Triassic sandstones being more resistant to erosion than the Permian pebbly mudstones and sandstones, and this occurrence indicates that topography is not an infallible indicator of faulting in this region.

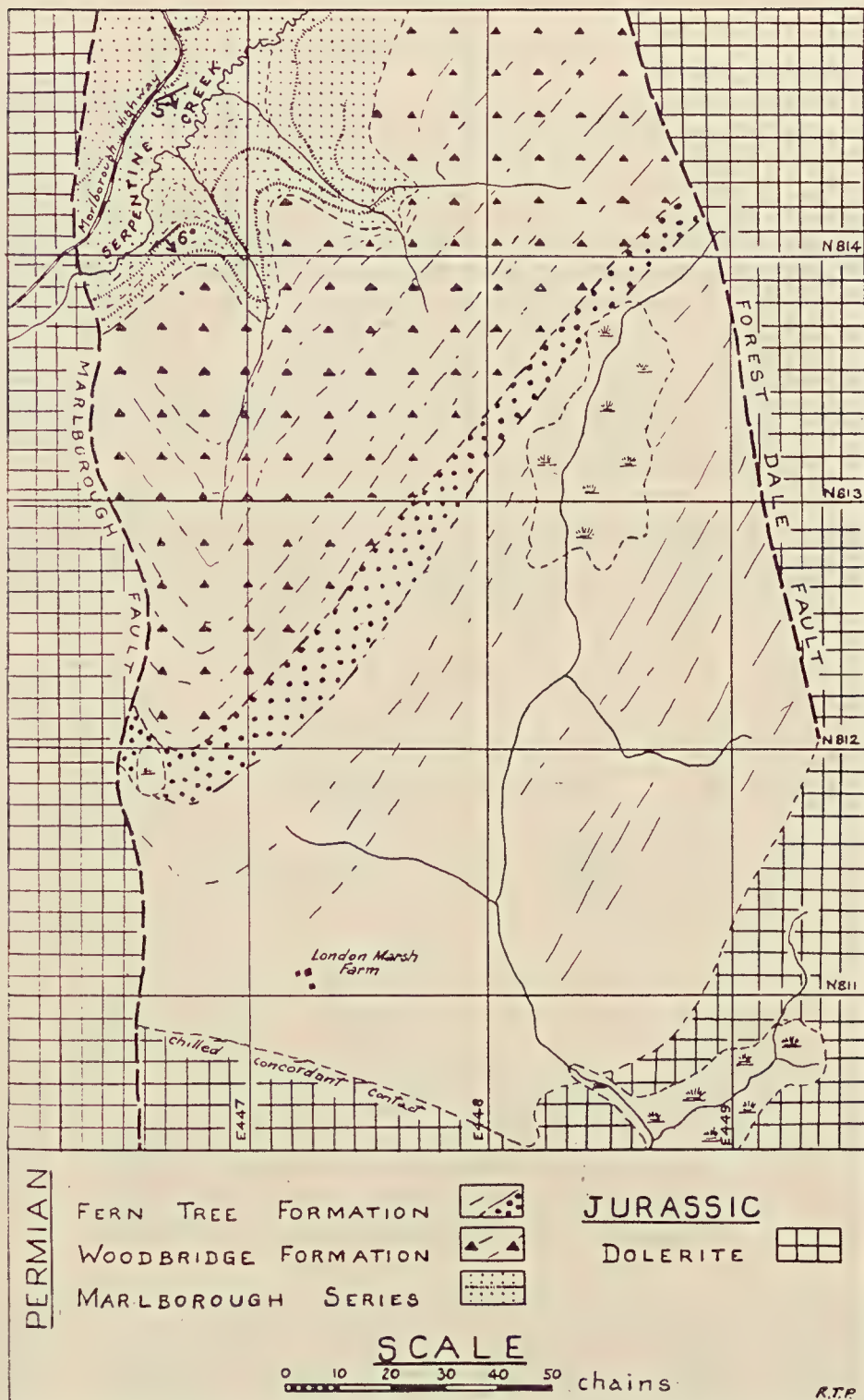


FIG. 2.—Geological map of the Marlborough Permian inlier showing subdivision of the Permian. The dotted section at the base of the Fern Tree Formation is a sandstone which may be the Risdon Sandstone of the Hobart District. Within the Marlborough Series exposed in Serpentine Creek the dotted areas are the Bronte Sandstone Facies and the hatchured bands are the Granton-Grange calcareous mudstone Facies. Grid lines refer to the grid on the Geological Map (Plate VII).

The eastern margin of the Permian belt is in part a concordant intrusive contact with dolerite and in part a faulted contact. To the east of Forest Dale Farm the Permian dips flatly to the east under the dolerite forming the higher country, the contact being here a concordant intrusive one. Again to the south and east of London Marsh Farm the Permian mudstones dip conformably under the dolerite, but there is considerable doubt as to whether this horizon of the Permian is the same as that of the contact east of Forest Dale Farm. Elsewhere the eastern contact of the Permian with the dolerite is a discordant one—on the air photos the bedding of the Permian sediments can be seen to be sharply truncated by the dolerite to the east. This contact is considered to be a fault (the Forest Dale Fault) which was either slightly older than or contemporaneous with the Jurassic dolerite intrusions, along which the dolerite has arisen in the form of a dyke (fault intrusion) and spread out at different stratigraphic horizons in the Permian to the east and west.

The strike of the Permian sediments in the part of the Permian belt lying between the Marlborough and Forest Dale Faults is north-east with a uniform gentle south-easterly dip of 5° , while in the section to the east of the Forest Dale Fault the general strike is north to N.N.W. with an easterly dip of 5° to 10° . There is no apparent distortion of the Permian beds at the Marlborough Fault.

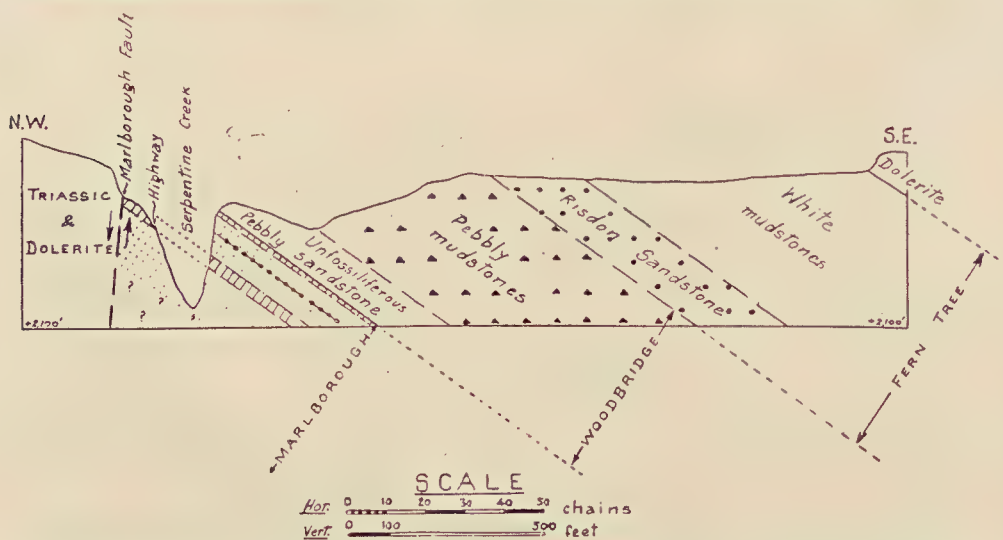


FIG. 3.—Geological cross-section of the Marlborough Permian inlier showing proposed subdivision into the Marlborough Series, Woodbridge Formation, and Fern Tree Formation (with the basal sandstone member which is probably the Risdon Sandstone of the Hobart District). Within the Marlborough the dotted sections are the Bronte Sandstone Facies, and the hatched strata are the Granton-Grange Mudstone Facies. There is a well-defined stratum, 10 feet thick, of richly fossiliferous conglomerate between the two prominent mudstones and is indicated on the section by small circles.

Permian Lithology.—The Permian sediments grade from calcareous mudstones through pebbly mudstones to sandstones and pebbly sandstones. The most complete section available is that running in a south-easterly direction from a point on the Marlborough Highway at four and a half miles north from Bronte. The Permian section exposed here is estimated to have a stratigraphical thickness of 1250 feet (fig. 3) and it can be conveniently subdivided into three main formations,

which can be correlated with the Permian rocks of the Hobart District described by Lewis (1946) and Voisey (1938), as follows:—

1. *The Marlborough Series*.—The lowest part of the section consists of interbedded white fossiliferous conglomeratic sandstones, yellow fossiliferous mudstones (lithologically similar to Lewis' Grange Stage of the Hobart District), and dense bluish-grey fossiliferous calcareous mudstones (lithologically similar to Lewis' Granton Stage of the Hobart District). The base of the Permian rocks is not exposed in this area. The name *Marlborough Series* is here proposed for this fossiliferous section of the Permian, in which there are three distinct facies thus:—

(a) *Bronte Facies*.—A pebbly fluvio-glacial sandstone facies which is richly fossiliferous in places. The fauna is dominated by large Spirifers, including *S. avicula*, *S. vespertilio*, and *Martiniopsis* sp. Other fossils present are *Conularia*, *Platyschisma*, *Aviculopecten*, *Eurydesma* (rare), various *Fenestellidae*, *Stenopora*, and crinoid stems. The typical rock of this facies is a creamy white pebbly fossiliferous sandstone. It carries angular boulders up to six inches diameter of various rock types of which quartzite is the most abundant, set in a sandy matrix. This sandy matrix (from a microscopic examination) is composed of poorly graded detrital material ranging from clay to coarse sand, the sand grains being angular and consisting predominantly of quartz with minor amounts of clear fresh feldspar (both microcline and plagioclase) and muscovite. There can be little doubt that the poorly graded material forming the rocks of this facies is of glacial origin. A variant of these pebbly sandstones (from a small roadside quarry five miles north from Bronte along the Marlborough Highway) is a cream coloured silty mudstone containing abundant crinoid stems along with *Fenestellidae*, *Stenopora*, and *Mytilus*—this rock contains a considerable proportion of fine silt in which quartz, fresh feldspar, and muscovite were identified.

The Bronte facies forms the greater part of the Marlborough Series exposed by Serpentine Creek. It does not appear to be developed in the Hobart District.

(b) *Grange Facies*.—A richly fossiliferous yellow mudstone facies in which the fauna is dominated by *Fenestellidae* and *Stenopora* (*Batstomella*) with abundant *Strophalosia*, *Spirifer*, and *Aviculopecten*, and also *Productus* and *Mytilus*. The yellow mudstones of this facies are practically free of calcareous material and the fossils are casts only. Lithologically these rocks are identical with Lewis' Grange Stage mudstones of the Hobart District.

(c) *Granton Facies*.—A richly fossiliferous bluish-grey calcareous mudstone facies with the same fauna as the Grange facies. The rock is essentially a mudstone, the only calcareous material being present in the actual shell remains, and it differs from the Grange facies only in colour and the presence of the actual shell remains rather than casts. It is lithologically similar to Lewis' Granton Limestone Stage of the Hobart District.

2. *The Woodbridge Formation*.—This consists of unfossiliferous pebbly mudstones with occasional erratics up to several feet in diameter. This formation conformably overlies the Marlborough Series (fig. 2) and extends in a southerly and south-easterly direction from the crestline of the southern side of Serpentine Creek. Throughout this area the bedding can be distinctly seen on the air-photos in the lines of vegetation which grows mostly along the lines of the almost imperceptible escarpments and not on the dip slopes. For the most part the

lithology of this section of the Permian is white pebbly mudstones with thin interbedded pebbly sandstones and it may be correlated with Voisey's Woodbridge Stage of the Hobart District (Voisey, 1938, p. 314).^{*} In places grey to white mudstone fragments in a clayey soil predominate, elsewhere accumulations of pebbles and boulders weathered out of the mudstones are the only materials exposed—these boulders are up to 20 inches in diameter and include a variety of rock types such as granite, porphyry, phyllite, quartz, quartzite, West Coast Range conglomerate, chlorite schist, &c. No fossils were found here. This stage is undoubtedly of glacial origin.

The Woodbridge Formation developed in the Marlborough Permian inlier has a stratigraphical thickness of 360 feet and is overlain conformably by a well-defined sandstone which is here considered to be the basal member of the Ferntree Formation now to be described.

3. *The Ferntree Formation.*—The pebbly mudstones of the Woodbridge Formation pass abruptly up into a sandstone band, which, from the air photos, is conformable with the underlying pebbly mudstones. The sandstone is a yellowish-grey, fine even-grained rock, which under the microscope consists of angular grains of quartz and clear unaltered plagioclase in approximately equal amounts. Fossils may occasionally be found near the base of this sandstone. It is overlain by white unfossiliferous mudstones which extend to the south of the London Marsh homestead. It is probable that this sandstone horizon represents the *Risdon Sandstone* (Carey & Henderson, 1945), which is considered by Carey and Henderson to lie at the base of the Ferntree Mudstone Formation as defined by Lewis (1946, p. 34). Above this sandstone the white mudstones are comparatively free of pebbles and the rocks are lithologically similar to the Ferntree Mudstones of the Hobart District.

The above is a description of the section of the Permian lying to the west of the Forest Dale Fault. To the east of this fault the rocks are interbedded pebbly mudstones and sandstones which I have not been able to correlate with the sequence to the west of the fault. The only fossiliferous horizon found was a narrow band of dark grey shaley mudstone with *Spirifer* and rare *Fenestellidae* exposed in the bed of the Serpentine Creek at 50 chains south-east of the Forest Dale homestead. This appears to be a poorly fossiliferous equivalent of the Granton facies of the Marlborough Series.

B. *Triassic Sediments.*—Triassic sediments, consisting in the main of quartz sandstones with minor amounts of micaceous shales containing *Phyllothea* occur in a number of places in the mapped area. The most general occurrence is in the form of elongated strips generally with a meridional trend, flanked to east and west by dolerite, and the regional dip is always to the east. These Triassic strips are separated by wide expanses of dolerite in which the structure is not determinable with certainty, and this, together with the paucity of fossil remains makes the matter of correlation of the Triassic from place to place in this area

^{*} *Permian Nomenclature.*—Voisey (1938, p. 314) has called the unfossiliferous glacial pebbly mudstones which overlie the fossiliferous Granton-Grange limestones the Woodbridge Glacial Stage, whereas Lewis (1946, p. 32) refers to the same group as the Lindisfarne Stage. The overlying non-pebbly mudstones have been called the Lindisfarne Stage by Voisey (1938, p. 314), and Ferntree Stage by Lewis (1946, p. 34). In order that these anomalies in nomenclature be cleared up it is suggested here (with the concurrence of Drs. A. H. Voisey and S. W. Carey) that:—

1. Voisey's name *Woodbridge* be retained for the pebbly mudstone formation overlying the fossiliferous Grange-Granton limestones.
2. Lewis' name *Ferntree* be retained for the overlying non-pebbly mudstone formation.
3. The name *Lindisfarne* about which there is some ambiguity in both Lewis' and Voisey's classifications be allowed to lapse.

very difficult. There are six main occurrences of Triassic sediments together with a number of small inliers which appear to be xenolithic bodies in the dolerite. The Triassic rocks to the east of the Marlborough fault will be dealt with first because their relationships to the Permian rocks are more evident.

(i) *The London Marsh-Seven Mile Creek Belt.*—At 15 chains south of London Marsh homestead (811N., 447E.) the white Permian mudstones pass under the flat-lying dolerite sill, the contact here being a concordant intrusive one. At 56 chains south along the London Marsh track from this contact the dolerite is overlain by a dark-grey to black flinty hornfels which extends for approximately one mile further south and to London Marsh on the east. This area of approximately 300 acres of flat country sloping gently down to the east is covered with a veneer of this flinty rock. The dolerite around the margin of this hornfels sheet is very fine-grained and closely jointed and the hornfels area is considered to represent a veneer of hornfelsed mudstone overlying a dolerite sill. The hornfels is a very fine-grained dark-grey to black flint-like rock with a thin weathered skin of earthy, yellowish-grey clayey material. Under the microscope the original clastic nature is evident in the presence of innumerable minute quartz and clear unaltered plagioclase grains of silt grade and an occasional larger quartz grain to 0.3 mm. diameter embedded in a very fine-grained indeterminable groundmass representing reconstituted clay.

Similar dark-coloured hornfels occur at the junction of quartz sandstones with dolerite at 806N., 450E. These sandstones are lithologically similar to the Triassic sandstones to the west of the Marlborough fault and because of this occurrence of hornfels associated with quartz sandstones the London Marsh hornfels are considered to be at the base of the Triassic or the extreme top of the Permian Ferntree Mudstone Formation.

White quartz sandstones outcrop to the south-east of the London Marsh hornfels area and are exposed along the Lyell Highway between 793N., 449½E., and 798½N., 450½E. This sandstone belt has a meridional trend with a concordant contact with the dolerite to the east. In addition, it contains several dolerite sills and the sequence of sandstones and dolerite sills is truncated along the western margin of this belt by dolerite.

This sandstone is a white even medium-grained rock consisting almost entirely of detrital quartz, which, on exposed surfaces has a sparkling appearance. Microscopic examination of similar "sparkling" sandstones from west of the Marlborough fault indicates that the original detrital quartz grains were rounded, but have suffered secondary enlargement, the secondary quartz being in crystalline continuity with the detrital quartz and developing actual crystal faces which are responsible for the "Sparkling" lustre of the rock surface. These sandstones are completely barren of fossils and are considered to be Triassic on lithology (similar sandstones overlie Triassic *Phyllothea*-bearing shales in the Triassic belt north of Bronte) and its position with respect to the undoubted Permian rocks near London Marsh farm.

(ii) *Duck Creek Belt.*—This is a narrow belt, 15 chains wide, of white unfossiliferous quartz sandstone, occurring along the Lake Echo road north of its junction with the Lyell Highway. This belt also trends north and south parallel to the strike of the sandstones which dip flatly (3° to 6°) to the east. This sandstone, which is lithologically similar to those of the Seven Mile Creek belt is overlain both to the east and west by dolerite so that its top only is exposed. South of

the Lake Echo turn-off the Tertiary basalts cover the sandstones and dolerite unconformably, but the older rocks re-appear from below the basalt at 2.4 miles due south of the road junction, and here again the sandstone is overlain by dolerite. The sandstone immediately below the basalt is contact metamorphosed to a dense greyish quartzite.

(iii) *Bronte (Upper Nive) Belt*.—There is a well-defined belt of Triassic sediments running due north from Bronte to the northern margin of the mapped area. The belt is very narrow at Bronte, but widens to one and a quarter miles near the junction of the Nive and Pine rivers. The general strike within the belt is again north-south with an easterly dip of 10° , but near the northern edge of the mapped area the Triassic forms an elongated synclinal basin, truncated along its eastern margin by the Marlborough fault—the westerly dip on the eastern limb of this fold probably being a drag effect, reversing the regional easterly dip, on the Marlborough fault.

There are two distinct facies of the Triassic represented in this belt, the stratigraphically lower part being a clayey facies, the stratigraphically higher part being arenaceous.

(a) The clayey facies:—consists of white to dark-grey and black shales with a minor development of pale greenish shales and light coloured sandy shales with fine-scale current bedding and ripple marking. The shales in places are very micaceous and occasionally carry remains of *Phyllothea*. Towards the top of this argillaceous formation the shales becomes very dark-coloured, with abundant very poorly preserved plant remains (not determined) and contain a thin coal seam. This coal is exposed in a small borrow pit on the west side of the road at 812.8N., 444.6E.

The Triassic shales of this belt are intruded by a number of thin dolerite sills and the alternation of soft shales and resistant dolerite has led to the development of dip-slope topography. This shale belt is overlain conformably by dolerite, the dolerite at the contact being fine-grained microporphyritic and, therefore, clearly the chilled base of a dolerite sill. This dolerite sill is approximately 400 feet thick and is overlain conformably by the arenaceous facies of the Triassic now to be described.

(b) The arenaceous facies:—the rocks of this group are very uniform lithologically, being white “sparkling” current-bedded quartz sandstones which in places show evidence of contemporaneous slumping. The sparkling lustre of these rocks is due to the secondary growth to euhedral crystals of the rounded detrital quartz grains as has been described above. These sandstones are estimated to have a stratigraphic thickness of approximately 500 feet. The contacts with the dolerite both above and below are concordant intrusive as evidenced by the occurrence of microporphyritic dolerite at the contacts. In addition, discordant dolerite dykes connecting the dolerite sills above and below the sandstones occur in this locality. These sandstones are truncated to the east by the Marlborough fault and, due west from Forest Dale Farm, are in direct contact with the Permian sediments (fig. 1).

In the bed of the Nive River from its confluence with Serpentine Creek for a distance of 30 chains to the north we find quartz sandstones associated with the shales. This is a very disturbed zone in which the sediments dip at angles up to 55° . In this zone the sandstones (on the west) which appear to overlie *Phyllothea*-bearing shales (on the east) are probably part of a downfaulted block from the

quartz sandstones higher in the succession. Nowhere else in the area examined has this arenaceous facies been seen associated with the *Phyllothea* shales. The sequence of rocks here is:—

‘Sparkling’ quartz sandstone.

?Fault — — — — —

Dark-gray *Phyllothea* shales.

Pale greenish sandy limestone (‘Fontainebleau’ sandstone).

Interbedded white and dark-grey *Phyllothea*-bearing shales and ripple-marked siltstones or sandy shales showing also fine-scale cross-bedded structure.

The occurrence of sandy limestone associated with the *Phyllothea* shales here is of interest because it is the only place in the area surveyed where calcareous rocks occur associated with the Triassic shales (except in the detrital materials underlying Big Marsh, which are described below). This sandy limestone is a light greyish colour, fine-grained and massive, and the Fontainebleau structure can be faintly distinguished on the freshly broken surfaces. The sand grains of this rock are angular and consist predominantly of quartz with a little fresh plagioclase and muscovite.

Discontinuous outcrops of Triassic sediments occur along the southerly extension of this belt. The country to the south of Bronte is flat-lying and in places marshy—the Bronte marshes, Brady’s Marsh, and Big Marsh are situated in this belt. There are a few sporadic outcrops of well-lithified sandstone along the eastern margin of the Bronte marshes between distances of two and two and a half miles south of Bronte. The sandstones occur only in the form of scattered boulders but in one place an outcrop of sandstone, overlain by dolerite, was found. These sandstones are coarse gritty consisting predominantly of quartz with minor amounts of turbid felspar and rare flakes of muscovite and biotite. Whether these sandstones are merely isolated xenoliths in the dolerite or form part of a stratum underlying the dolerite is not apparent from the occurrence examined.

The nature of the rock underlying Brady’s Marsh is unknown, but boulders of sandstone and dark-coloured hornfels found approximately half a mile south-east from the southern end of the marsh indicate that these rocks may underlie Brady’s Marsh. Big Marsh, situated to the south-west of Brady’s Marsh appears to be underlain by the Triassic sediments. The perimeter of Big Marsh is entirely of dolerite, but several shallow holes sunk with a post-hole digger in the floor of the marsh discloses well-lithified mudstone and clayey sand which may be of Triassic age. Since these bores are of some significance in connection with the origin of the marsh the results are given here—

Bore A. (near the southern end of the marsh):

From surface to 1’ 6”: Black peaty clay.

1’ 6” to 2’ 3”: White clay of uniform texture.

2’ 3” to 3’ 0”: Yellow clay with some iron-stained sandy material.

3’ 0” to 4’ 0”: Grey clay with uniform texture.

4’ 0” to 4’ 10”: Grey clay with shale (mudstone) fragments.

At 4’ 0” this hole entered the solid floor of the marsh as it was found very difficult to get the digger down the next 10 inches, the spoil from which was mainly grey mudstone fragments. This rock was a dense, grey, non-calcareous, non-sandy well-lithified mudstone containing muscovite flakes and a few obscure plant fossils which may possibly be *Phyllothea*. It is most probably Triassic, but in view of the obscurity of the fossils this is by no means certain.

Bore B. (centre of Big Marsh):

From surface to 1' 6": Black peaty clay.

1' 6" to 7' 6": Greyish clayey sand.

A laboratory examination of the material from the bottom of this hole indicates that it is a slightly calcareous sandy clay in which there is approximately 50 per cent of fine sand grade material. These sand grains are angular, but strongly frosted there being very few grains with unworn surfaces. Turbid felspar is the predominant mineral and quartz is next most abundant. Some contorted mica flakes are present. The heavy minerals were separated in order that they could be compared with those of an undoubted Tertiary sand interbedded with the basalts to the west of the River Nive. The heavy mineral index was low and contained a very small proportion of slightly magnetic ilmenite (as compared with the high ilmenite content of the Tertiary sand). In view of its low ilmenite content and absence of pyroxene it appears to be pre-dolerite and, therefore, not of Tertiary age. The other heavy minerals in the sample are:—

- (i) Opaque, non-magnetic, very turbid, unidentified.
- (ii) Zircon, perfect euhedral unworn crystals, slightly yellow in colour.
- (iii) Garnet, colourless isotropic, chunky, unworn.
- (iv) Biotite—rare worn flakes.

This examination of the materials from the floor of Big Marsh indicates that it is underlain by Triassic sediments rather than by dolerite (the only rocks exposed around its margin) or by Pleistocene till. More detailed work, however, is required to substantiate this conclusion.

The country to the south of Big Marsh is entirely of dolerite.

(iv) *Middle Nive Belt*.—A narrow belt of shaley Triassic sediments with some associated current-bedded sandstones is exposed in the Nive valley between Tarraleah and the mouth of the Clarence River. This belt, the eastern and western margins of which are, for the most part, concordant igneous contacts with the underlying and overlying dolerite, is cut across by discordant dolerite intrusions connecting the dolerites above and below the sediments. A result of the transgressive dolerite has been, therefore, to break the narrow belt of sediments up into three or four elongated blocks thus:—

(a) At the mouth of the Clarence River: Triassic sediments are exposed in the bed of the Nive for a distance of 30 chains upstream from the mouth of the Clarence where they end abruptly against a discordant east-west dolerite intrusion. These sediments strike 25° (magnetic) and have a uniform dip of 12° to the east. The eastern margin of the sedimentary band is a concordant intrusive contact with Triassic sediments below and dolerite above. The western margin exposed on the north bank of the Clarence at 10 chains from its junction with the Nive and 10 feet above river level appears to be a shelving discordant igneous contact dipping 20° to the N.W., whereas the bedding of the sediments here dips very flatly to the east. This contact is definitely intrusive, the dolerite being the chilled microporphyrritic variety.

The Triassic rocks exposed in this section of the Nive are greyish graphite-bearing clayey siltstones near the west edge of the belt (i.e., the lowest part of the sequence). At eight chains north of the mouth of the Clarence the mudstones and siltstones are overlain by hard current-bedded white quartz sandstones. These in turn are overlain at 16 chains north of the Clarence-Nive junction by white mudstones and siltstones, and still further upstream (i.e., higher in the Triassic succession) by greenish-grey well-jointed mudstones with layers to two feet

thick of sandstone. No fossils have been found in the rocks exposed near the mouth of the Clarence River, but because of lithology and the occurrence of flake graphite in the siltstones of the lower parts of the sequence here exposed they are considered to be of Triassic age. These sediments have not been followed to the south, but appear to pass under the basalt cover and may join up with the next section to be exposed downstream in Wentworth Creek.

(b) In Wentworth Creek and downstream along the River Nive: Triassic *Phyllothea*-bearing shales and associated current-bedded siltstones and sandy shales very similar to those exposed north of the Bronte Gorge have been traced from a point approximately three-quarters of a mile upstream along Wentworth Creek from the Nive for a distance of approximately three miles downstream along the Nive River. The Triassic here is a band approximately 100 feet thick which outcrops over a width averaging 10 chains between two intrusive dolerite sills. The best section exposed is in the Nive at 20 to 30 chains upstream from the mouth of Wentworth Creek, where the Nive has a south-westerly trend oblique to the strike of the sediments. The base of the section here, which is well-exposed on the west bank of the Nive, consists of thin interbedded light and dark grey shales in which *Phyllothea* is comparatively abundant. *Phyllothea* was also found in very micaceous shales in Wentworth Creek three-quarters of a mile upstream from its junction with the Nive.

The Triassic sediments of this belt dip to the east at 5° to 10° , but in the outcrops of Triassic sandy shales and siltstones in the bed of the Nive between half a mile and one mile south of the Nive-Wentworth junction the dips are very steep (up to 55° being noted). This is due probably to these rocks being in the immediate vicinity of the Nive fault. At one and three-quarters miles downstream from the Wentworth-Nive junction the sediments are cut off abruptly by a discordant dolerite intrusion approximately 10 chains wide, south of which the sediments continue for a short distance before becoming lost under the dolerite talus of the east bank. The sediments near this southern end of the belt being described are fine-scale current-bedded sandy shales best exposed on the east bank of the river, and are lithologically identical with the Triassic exposed to the north of Bronte Gorge. No further trace of these sandy shales has been found downstream, although a sandstone facies, presumed to be of Triassic age, has been found a short distance below Tarraleah Power Station.

(c) Tarraleah Power Station occurrence:—Coarse gritty sandstones are exposed on the west side of the Nive Valley a few chains south of the pipeline leading to the Tarraleah Power House and a fine-grained sandstone occurs on the east side of the Nive at approximately 20 chains downstream from the powerhouse—elsewhere in this locality the rocks are completely covered with talus.

The sandstone on the west bank of the Nive is a conglomeratic sandstone containing waterworn pebbles to 1 cm. diameter. It outcrops in a cliff 25 feet high immediately below the basalt (at an approximate elevation, 1500 feet) at approximately two chains south of the pipeline. No sandstone is exposed on the pipeline itself—dolerite is the only rock and it is very fine-grained and it appears that here again we have a discordant east-west contact of sediments and dolerite. The sandstone strikes 75° (magnetic) and dips 10° to the south. It is current-bedded, the attitude of the current bedding indicating that the source of the sediments was to the north-west. It is a much coarser facies than the sandstone of the east bank of the Nive below the powerhouse, but has thinner-bedded layers in which flake graphite can occasionally be seen and in this respect is similar to the sediments of the east bank. The sandstone is very quartzose, but carries a small proportion (less than five per cent) of clear microcline. That this sandstone is underlain by

mudstone is evidenced by the finding of a small fragment of yellow-brown mudstone approximately 50 feet above river level at 10 chains south of the powerhouse. The west bank of the Nive was traversed for approximately one and a half miles below the powerhouse, but no further sediments were noted beyond a distance of 25 chains—south of this point solid dolerite and dolerite talus was the only rock seen.

The Triassic sandstones of the east bank of the Nive below the powerhouse are fine even-grained micaceous quartz sandstones carrying a little flake graphite and are, therefore, referred to the Triassic. The strike is 330° (magnetic) and dip 22° N.E. All contacts with the dolerite here are covered with dolerite talus.

(v) *Lower Nive Belt*.—In the extreme south-east corner of the mapped area a series of easterly dipping unfossiliferous greenish to chocolate shales with irregular lenses and sills of dolerite occur outcropping in the road cuts on the Tarraleah-Ouse Highway to the east of the Nive bridge. These are tentatively correlated with the Hamilton Shale Facies of the Knocklofty Formation of the Triassic, the correlation being based on lithology and the irregular nature of the dolerite intrusions within the shale which is a rather characteristic feature of the Hamilton Shale Facies (S. W. Carey, personal communication). These shales strike obliquely to the dolerite-shale contact, they show no contact metamorphic effects, and the dolerite is medium-grained at the contact, so it is considered that the contact between the main dolerite mass to the north-west and the shales is a fault (Nive Bridge Fault), which strikes in an E.N.E. direction.

(vi) *Butler's Gorge Belt*.—A belt approximately one and a half miles wide of Triassic quartz sandstones occurs to the east of Butler's Gorge townsite. It has a general north-south trend, but nowhere do the sandstones form good outcrops except in the bed of the Derwent River in the vicinity of 796N., 428E., where the overlying soil cover has been completely scoured away and the rocks are wonderfully exposed—they show very clearly in the air photos. They dip at 10° to the north-east, but near the western margin of the belt the dip steepens to 20° or 30° . Outcrops of the more steeply dipping sandstones are exposed in the sand quarries to the north of the main road at approximately one mile N.E. from Butler's Gorge. The true dip here is 20° N.E., but some steeper dips of 35° were noted—these may be due to very large-scale current bedding, but they more probably represent local steepenings in the regional dip. Exposures along the transmission line are very poor, the presence of the sandstone being indicated only by boulders and pebbles.

Nowhere has the actual contact of the sandstones with the dolerite to east and west been seen. Because of the occurrence of fine-grained dolerites along the western margin it is possibly an igneous contact, but this is by no means certain. The eastern margin is probably a faulted contact (the Wentworth Fault). This belt of sandstones has been traced to the north to beyond the transmission line but no trace of these rocks could be found on the Lyell Highway to the east of Derwent Bridge. Traverses to several miles south of the Lyell Highway at points where the sandstones were expected to be found indicated that the entire area here is of dolerite—probably largely residual from glacial deposits which cover extensive areas hereabouts.

The sandstones of this belt are essentially quartz sandstones with subordinate felspar. In places they become very clayey as in the westernmost part of the sand quarries one mile N.E. of Butler's Gorge. These quartz sandstones commonly show current bedding, which dips fairly constantly in the direction of 140° (mag.) indicating that the source of the material was from the north-west. In certain layers they contain small flat clay (shale) pellets. A little flake graphite was noted in some specimens from the western margin of this belt on the transmission line.

The detrital grains in these sandstones are generally angular indicating quick accumulation. No fossils have been found in any of the rocks from this belt so that no certain determination of their age is possible. Lithologically, however, they resemble the Triassic sandstones and they have, therefore, been assigned to this group. The presence of a little flake graphite may indicate that it belongs to the Knocklofty Sandstone Formation, but the thickness is more indicative of the Ross Sandstone Formation. The thickness of the Triassic sandstones exposed in this belt is approximately 1500 feet, much greater than any other Triassic exposure elsewhere in the country near Tarraleah.

Minor Occurrences of Triassic Rocks.—As has been noted earlier there are small occurrences of presumably Triassic sediments irregularly scattered throughout the dolerite. It is probable that there are many such small occurrences that are obscured by the thick timber and soil cover. For example, if it were not for the exposure by a small borrow pit of the sandstones on the west side of the road running north from Tarraleah at 10 chains south of the transmission line, their occurrence here, where the soil is covered by detrital dolerite boulders, would never have been suspected. The sediments exposed in this quarry consist of very friable sandstone which is only slightly lithified, overlying a brownish grey mudstone containing a little flake graphite. These mudstones bear some similarity to the Hamilton Shale Facies of the Knocklofty Formation of the Middle Triassic. The brownish mudstones outcrop in a drain on the west side of the road near the quarry and were proved to extend under the sands in the quarry by a hole put down to three feet with the posthole digger. These sediments, which are very flat-lying, extend to the east of the road as proved by another hole put down at about four chains east of the quarry. The friable sandstones in the quarry are intruded by dolerite and have been contact metamorphosed. The microscopic examination of this sandstone indicates that it is a quartz-felspar sandstone with a considerable amount of clear unaltered microcline and in containing microcline it is similar to the sandstones exposed near Tarraleah powerhouse. The most probable origin for this small patch of Triassic rocks is that it is an inclusion which has been broken off the roof of the dolerite sill and sunk into the dolerite magma forming a xenolith.

C. Jurassic Dolerite.—Dolerite is the most widespread of the rocks developed in this area. The various contacts of the dolerite with the small inliers of Permian and Triassic sediments have been described above. With a few exceptions the contacts are concordant and the dolerite masses appear to be sills connected in places by dyke intrusions (as in the Nive Valley upstream from Tarraleah). Near Forest Dale Farm on the Marlborough Highway the dolerite has arisen in the form of a dyke along the Forest Dale Fault. The characteristic vertical columnar structure of the dolerite sills is rarely visible in this area because of the plateau nature of the topography and the absence of scarps in this region. The west face of the Wentworth Hills to the north-east of Butler's Gorge is, however, a high scarp, probably a fault scarp, and here the typical columnar structure of the dolerite is clearly visible. The east face of the Wentworth Hills is a dip slope of the top of the dolerite sill so that there can be little doubt that the extensive area of dolerite between the Wentworth Hills and the River Nive is part of a single sill of dolerite. The dolerite throughout the region is much jointed and flat, easterly dipping joints ("bedding joints") are common throughout the area, supporting the conclusion that the form of the dolerite is mainly concordant intrusions.

The petrology of the Tasmanian dolerites has been dealt with fully by Edwards (1942) and there is little to be added here except in connection with the significance of grain-size criteria for the determination of the nature, whether faulted or

intrusive, of the contacts between the dolerites and the associated sedimentary rocks. At the actual igneous contacts the dolerite is very fine-grained, dense, and microporphyritic, consisting of small phenocrysts of olivine, augite, and plagioclase in an aphanitic groundmass. Under the microscope the texture is glomeroporphyritic, the augite and plagioclase phenocrysts being clustered together. The olivine phenocrysts are euhedral and extensively altered to pale green serpentine. The groundmass is a microcrystalline intergranular aggregate of plagioclase laths and pyroxene granules. Such basaltic olivine dolerite is confined to a distance of several feet only from the intrusive contact—beyond this the dolerite is coarser and grain size is not significant in determining whether the contact is intrusive or faulted. There is a tendency even in dolerite remote from contacts with the sedimentary rocks to be comparatively fine-grained with irregular segregations of coarser material. Coarse and fine dolerite specimens can be collected from the same boulder and this indicates that the grain size criterion for determining the nature of a contact between the sediments and dolerite here must be applied with caution. The occurrence of the microporphyritic olivine dolerite at the actual contact is, however, indisputable evidence that it is an intrusive rather than a faulted contact.

D. Tertiary Rocks.

(i) *Basalts*.—A series of horizontal olivine basalt lava flows overlies the Pre-Tertiary rocks unconformably. In the area examined they are confined to two distinct belts, the main belt trending parallel to the River Nive and the other belt, exposed only on the eastern margin of the area, along Duck Creek. Since only the western fringe of the Duck Creek basalt belt lies within this area it will not be described in detail and the remarks given here deal entirely with the Nive belt.

West of the Marlborough Fault the basalts are confined to a more or less north-south trending belt of country up to five miles wide along the Nive valley. The most extensive basaltic area is in the vicinity of Bronte where the basalts cover a more or less circular area approximately three and a half miles in diameter. This area has been flooded with basalt and subsequently cut through by the River Nive, which exposes a vertical thickness of basalt of approximately 330 feet. This basalt-covered area is walled in by higher dolerite hills to the west, north and east, and in Plate II., fig. 1, these hills can be seen rising above the level of the basalts.

Within the area mapped there are sporadic occurrences only of basalt to the north of the Bronte plains, but still further north beyond the margin of the accompanying map there are more extensive occurrences of basalt. South from the Bronte basalt-covered plains there are several prolongations of the basalt. One of these runs almost due south from Bronte as far as Nive Marsh (two miles north-east of Tarraleah village). Near its junction with the main basalt basin at approximately one mile south of Bronte this basalt belt is narrow (about 25 chains wide), but it broadens to the south so that at two miles south of Bronte it is approximately 100 chains wide. At three and a half miles south of Bronte it again narrows to 30 chains being interrupted by a ridge of the underlying dolerite and south of this point it again broadens to a belt one and a half miles wide to the west of Brady's Marsh. It is here that the basalts are best exposed (in Brady's Creek). South of Brady's Marsh this basalt belt pinches out except for several small outliers near Nive Marsh. Within this belt the basalts are thicker on the eastern than on the western margin, having apparently flowed into an elongated depression with an asymmetrical profile.

The other main prolongation from the Bronte basaltic area is from the south-west segment along the west bank of the Nive. This belt follows the west bank of the Nive throughout the entire area mapped. In places where west bank tributaries enter the Nive they have cut down through the basalts and exposed the underlying dolerite or sediments—in this way the Clarence River, and Wentworth and Horne's Creek have exposed the underlying dolerite which interrupts the basaltic belt. Throughout the length of this belt the basalt is thick along its eastern margin and thin along the western margin (fig. 4)—in other words the depression that has been filled by the basalt outpourings was of asymmetrical profile. This increase in thickness of basalt from west to east in both the belts that have been mentioned allows of two interpretations:—

- (a) That these asymmetrical depressions are due to faults trending in a north-south direction with downthrow to the west and tilting of the fault blocks to the east.
- (b) That these asymmetrical depressions are due to dip slope-escarpment topography resulting from the differential erosion of hard dolerite and softer sediments which have a gentle easterly regional dip.

Of these two hypotheses the second is preferred because:—

1. The depressions now filled with basalt trend in a general northerly direction, transgressing the N.W. trending fracture pattern in the dolerite.
2. Basalts have flooded over the northerly extension of the Nive Fault.
3. The regional dip throughout the area covered with basalt is flat to the east so that any pre-basalt topography carved out of alternately hard and soft beds would be likely to have flat dip slopes on the western sides of north-south valleys with steep escarpments on the eastern sides of such valleys.

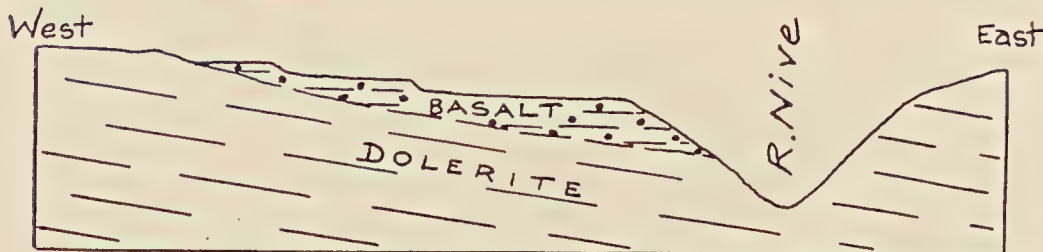


FIG. 4.—Diagrammatic cross-section of the Nive basalt belt to illustrate the structure of the basalt filled area which was in pre-basalt times an asymmetric valley with dip slope to west and escarpment to the east.

The basalt has a horizontal structure and is the result of a number of successive outflows of lava which yielded flows of the order of 50 feet thick, rather than a single basalt flood. In the course of the reconnaissance survey of this area it was impossible, because of time limitations, to map the separate flows and different basalt types which appear to be merely structural and textural variations due to the position of the basalt within a flow, i.e., scoria and scoria-breccia at the top and the more massive types lower in the flow. All of the basalts are olivine-bearing and the following textural types can be recognised:—

- (a) *Massive, non-vesicular, olivine basalts* characterised by well-developed columnar jointing. These are almost black in colour, very fine-grained, non-vesicular and characterised by abundant small olivine phenocrysts which can be distinguished megascopically.

- (b) *Micro-vesicular olivine basalts* of greyish colour, with minute reddish brown specks uniformly distributed throughout. These basalts have numerous very small irregular shaped vesicles. The noticeable reddish brown specks are due to slight alteration of the tiny olivine phenocrysts to iddingsite.
- (c) *Scoriaceous basalt* greyish in colour and characterised by numerous spherical vesicles to 5 mm. diameter. These, together with the scoria-breccias form the surface crust of the more massive flows.
- (d) *Scoria-breccia* similar to the scoriaceous basalts, but having a fragmental structure. They are deposits of scoria fragments which have been weakly cemented by clayey material which is probably finer volcanic debris.

The best section of the basalts exposed in the area mapped is that in Wilson's Creek below the Tarraleah Forebay pond. This stream exposes a vertical thickness of approximately 600 feet of basalt. At approximately halfway down this section a thin band of greenish Tertiary sandstone was found interbedded with the basalt and at the base of the basalt a small outcrop of richly fossiliferous mudstone containing fossil leaves of the *Fagus* flora was found. These sub-basaltic mudstones with the *Fagus* flora are probably the equivalent of Lewis' Geilston Stage of the Late Miocene in the Hobart District (Lewis, 1946, p. 45), and thus the basalts are of Pliocene or later age.

Basalt Dykes in Dolerite.—In several places (e.g., in Horne's Creek at (797·8N., 438E.), Wentworth Creek at (799N., 438E.), and the River Nive at (804N., 439·8E.)), basaltic material was found associated with the dolerite. Nowhere was the basalt seen in direct contact with the dolerite, but the occurrence of very large blocks of basalt to 20 feet or more in length against the solid dolerite appear to be dyke intrusions, although the possibility that they are collapsed blocks from the higher valley walls must not be overlooked. The occurrence of basaltic rock in the River Nive at (804N., 439·8E.), can be clearly traced as a dyke on the air-photos—unfortunately, a specimen was not obtained of this material in the course of the field survey so that it cannot be petrologically compared with the rock from Horne's Creek. The basaltic dyke rock of Horne's Creek is very dense, dark grey to black, with rare olivine grains 2 mm. diameter and white zeolite amygdales to 3 mm. diameter. Under the microscope the constituents are olivine and pyroxene in approximately equal proportions, plagioclase laths and opaque iron ore. The olivine is fresh unaltered and euhedral and occurs in larger grains than the pyroxene towards which it is idiomorphic. It contains more olivine than the chilled microporphyrritic selvages of the dolerite sills and appear to be more comparable to the olivine basalts than to the dolerites. These dykes, it is suggested, occupy the feeding channels through which the Tertiary basalts have been erupted.

(ii) *Sediments.*—There are two main types of occurrence of Tertiary sediments in the mapped area:—

(a) Interbedded with and lying below the Tertiary (? Pliocene) basalts. These comprise clays and sands which in one place (in Wilson's Creek at (790N., 441·5E.)), are richly fossiliferous, carrying abundant fossil leaves of the *Fagus* flora. Unfossiliferous inter-basalt clays and sands occur along the road running north from Tarraleah to the Lyell Highway, but the occurrences are too small to be indicated on the accompanying map. The main type of sediment is clay. Sands are very rare, but one interesting occurrence of sand interbedded with basalt occurs on the west side of the Tarraleah to Lyell Highway road at (808·6N., 438·3E.). The

sediments here are loose unconsolidated sands in a band four to five feet thick interbedded with the basalt. It is a fine sand with the following mechanical composition:—

Retained on Tyler Screen No.	Mesh opening (mm.)	Weight (gms.)	Weight %	Cumulative weight %
32	0.495	0.06	0.12	0.12
60	0.246	19.56	39.12	39.24
115	0.124	22.20	44.40	83.20
250	0.061	0.78	1.56	85.20
passed 250	....	7.40	14.80	100.00

The products of the grading analysis were examined microscopically, thus:—

On 60 mesh:—Grains mostly angular, equidimensional, some show slight wear and frosting. Many grains have original crystal faces present. Consist entirely of quartz.

On 115 mesh:—Similar to that on 60 mesh, but a few grains are perfectly rounded and frosted indicating wind transport. Many grains have original crystal faces. There are, therefore, two distinct crops of detrital grains present. Consists entirely of quartz.

On 250 mesh:—Consists predominantly of quartz, but carries a small proportion of "heavy" minerals. The quartz is mostly sharp and angular as in the coarser grades, but some are rounded and frosted, indicating wind action. The heavy black minerals can be separated with a small electro-magnet, but they are not sufficiently magnetic to be magnetite and since they yield positive tests for both Fe and Ti these grains are presumably ilmenite.

From these characteristics it is evident that this sand has not suffered much transport before deposition and that the grains have been derived from two sources, one crop having suffered no transport the other having been subjected to wind transport.

The Tertiary age of these sediments cannot be doubted because of their association with the Tertiary basalt and the occurrence of leaf fossils (*Fagus*) in the Wilson's Creek mudstone.

(b) Occurring in areas remote from the Tertiary basalts. The main occurrence of these Tertiary sediments is along the south side of the Derwent Valley east of Butler's Gorge. The sediments here include slump-folded and current-bedded sandstones and shales with interbedded conglomerates. These rocks outcrop for a distance of two miles along the south bank of the River Derwent and near the eastern margin of the occurrence they extend to the north bank of the river where there are several very good exposures. These sediments are well-lithified and at first glance appear to be Triassic, but they overlie the Triassic sandstones and dolerites unconformably and moreover occasionally contain dolerite pebbles in the conglomeratic layers. They are horizontally bedded, but show slump-folding and, especially in the conglomeratic layers, current bedding. The slump folding indicates a surface of deposition sloping down to the north-west and the current bedding indicates that the source of the detrital material was from the north-east. Because of the absence of fossils the age of these sediments cannot be fixed exactly, but the occurrence of dolerite pebbles in the conglomerates indicates that they are definitely post-Mesozoic and they are put down tentatively here as Tertiary. Their age with respect to the basalts is unknown. These sediments are overlain by a light yellowish sandy soil which extends over the flat-lying country to the south of the Derwent. This sandy soil is made up of fine sand with angular grains and has a comparatively high heavy mineral content (10.2 per cent by weight of

the total sample), which consists largely of angular pyroxene grains with a minor amount of opaque iron ore and a few odd grains of pinkish garnet. The heavy mineral crop, with the exception of the garnet, is undoubtedly almost entirely derived from the breaking down of dolerite. The light fraction consists largely of quartz with minor turbid felspar and, in the grades coarser than 115 Tyler Mesh, consists of approximately equal proportions of angular unworn grains and sub-rounded frosted grains. On the whole the light sand grains are poorly rounded and the detrital materials have suffered but little transport. These materials have resulted from the quick accumulation of sediments in a depression lying to the west of the Wentworth Fault, the development of which was probably due to the Wentworth Fault downthrowing to the west.

E. Pleistocene and Later Rocks.—The Pleistocene rocks in this area are glacial tills which have been recognised in the westernmost parts of the mapped area only. These tills occur as a thin veneer overlying the older rocks (Triassic sandstones and Jurassic dolerites) and cover extensive areas along the Derwent north of Butler's Gorge, along the north bank of the Derwent east of Butler's Gorge, and to the south of the Lyell Highway in the vicinity of Derwent Bridge. The country covered by these glacial deposits is characterised by a bouldery surface in which the dominant boulders are of dolerite. Quartz boulders, however, occur occasionally and their presence can always (in this area) be regarded as indicative of the glacial tills and they serve to indicate the origin of the dolerite-boulder strewn areas, i.e., whether they are glacial or due to the normal breakdown of an underlying dolerite (which is the predominant rock type of the area). The Pleistocene till is often overlain at the surface by Buttongrass swamp areas a number of which were sampled by the post-hole digger. The till consists of material varying in grade from large dolerite boulders down to the finest clay and a laboratory examination was made of the sand fractions of some of these tills. So far as the sand content of the tills is concerned all the samples are similar and the following description of a sample from depth 30 inches in the marsh at (796.3N., 429.8E), can be regarded as typical of this rock.

It is an iron-stained yellowish sandy clay with fragments of dolerite to two inches in diameter and quartz to a quarter of an inch diameter. After the clay fraction is removed there is a considerable sandy residue of poorly graded material varying from very fine up to an eighth of an inch diameter. The minerals of this sand fraction are predominantly quartz with subordinate felspar (including some microcline). The larger grains show very little abrasion and on the whole the grains are very angular, many having their original crystal faces present. A small proportion, however, are rounded and have a frosted surface. The heavy black minerals of smaller size are very angular and show no signs of abrasion. The occurrence of so much quartz sand in this specimen is not of marked significance since the Triassic quartz sandstones occur in their vicinity, but the presence of similar quartz sand fragments in a specimen from two and a quarter miles north of Butler's Gorge, remote from the sandstones becomes significant—the occurrence of these angular quartz grains, as with the larger quartz pebbles, is an important indicator of the glacial till.

The Derwent Valley upstream from the Clark Dam (at Butler's Gorge) appears to have been dammed with a terminal moraine in Pleistocene times—amongst the boulder accumulations which occur over a considerable area about half a mile north of the Clark Dam there are occasional large blocks (to 8 feet by 8 feet by 5 feet) of quartz schist which could have only been carried on glaciers from the older (Pre-Cambrian) formations to the west and north-west of this area.

The recent deposits in this area include river alluvium (mainly dolerite boulders) and talus deposits (mainly angular dolerite fragments accumulated along the steep valley walls of the main streams).

3. Geological Structure.

The geological structure of the mapped area is essentially a gentle easterly dipping series of sediments ranging from the Permian to the Triassic which has been intruded by thick dolerite sills, which form the predominant rocks now exposed at the surface. The dolerite for the most part appears to be in the form of easterly dipping concordant intrusions (judged by dip slopes, columnar joints, "bedding" joints in the dolerite, and conformable chilled contacts with the associated sediments), but in places the dolerites transgress the bedding of the associated sediments (e.g., in the Nive Valley north from Tarraleah) to form connecting dykes between the main sills. This easterly dipping structure, which extends over the entire mapped area is interrupted by N.-S. striking faults which have downthrows to the west. The main faults are:—

(a) *Marlborough Fault*.—This fault strikes in a N.-S. direction and has been traced from a point at co-ordinate position (808N., 447E.) in a northerly direction to the northern margin of the mapped area. South of the Lyell Highway the fault has dolerite both to the east and west and as a result it is very difficult to trace its exact course. This fault can be clearly seen on the air photos as it brings dolerites and Triassic sandstones on the west side into juxtaposition to the more readily eroded Permian sediments on the east. This fault is a normal one dipping steeply (approximately 60°) to the west and it throws down to the west, the estimated minimum throw being 3800 feet. It can be best seen on the south side of Serpentine Creek from a point on the Marlborough Highway at four miles from Bronte, because here the Permian is in faulted contact with dolerite. In spite of the enormous throw on this fault there is no apparent disturbance of the Permian strata in its vicinity, and the Permian *Fenestella* mudstones which outcrop in a horizontal layer about halfway up the valley wall can be seen to preserve their apparent horizontal attitude to the contact with the dolerite. On topographic evidence alone, one would be tempted to place the fault to the west of the west-facing escarpment, which is situated approximately five chains to the west of the contact between the dolerite and the Permian and to consider the dolerite to be a dyke. Tracing the fault to the north it will be seen, however, that due west from Forest Dale Farm, the dolerite has cut out and we have Triassic quartz sandstones against the Permian rocks and moreover at this point the fault line scarp faces east in spite of the fact that the west block is downthrown. This scarp is a fault line-scarp rather than a fault-scarp (fig. 1).

(b) *Forest Dale Fault*.—This fault can be traced from a short distance south of the Forest Dale homestead in a south-easterly direction for a distance of three and a half miles. This fault is pre-dolerite and has been intruded by a dolerite dyke. There is no evidence of the direction of dip of this fault nor of the amount of throw (because, as outlined above in the section dealing with Permian stratigraphy, the Permian strata on both sides of the fault have not yet been correlated).

(c) *Nive Fault*.—This fault is exposed on the south-east bank of the River Nive near its junction with Wentworth Creek at (797.3N., 438.8E.). This fault cannot be definitely seen elsewhere in the area, but the distortion of the bedding in the Triassic sandy shales in the bed of the Nive for a distance of one mile downstream from the outcrop of the fault indicates that going downstream the fault trends along the actual river bed. North from the outcrop of the fault the

Nive swings to the east and the fault is thought, because of deformation of the Triassic shales at three-quarters of a mile upstream along Wentworth Creek, to continue to the N.N.W. along the Wentworth. The entire belt of Triassic rocks exposed here appears to lie to the east of the Nive Fault. This fault is of interest because it can be seen clearly in spite of the fact that the wall rocks are entirely of dolerite. The fault zone (Plate VIII, fig. B), is approximately five chains wide with most of the shattering and shearing confined to a zone one chain wide. The fault is vertical and the actual fault surface is represented by a band three inches wide of slickensided green clayey gouge with dolerite breccia on the west side (Plate VIII, fig. B). The dolerite for half a chain on either side of the actual fault surface is very fractured and has many small seams of green clayey gouge and open joints which are partially filled with well-crystallised dog-tooth calcite. A petrological examination of the dolerites from this fault zone shows that the main mineralogical change in these rocks due to the faulting is in the development of greenish brown clayey material replacing the feldspars. There is no apparent change in the pyroxene and at one inch from one of the gouge zones the dolerite is unaffected mineralogically. Microscopic examination of the dolerites, therefore, yields no information regarding the proximity of a fault.

A distinct flexuring of the fracture systems in the dolerite can be seen adjacent to the actual fault surface (Plate VIII, fig. B), and this flexuring indicates that the west side has been downthrown with respect to the east side. The actual amount of movement cannot, owing to insufficient data, be calculated, but it must be considerable to produce the high degree of fracturing and shearing noted.

(d) *Wentworth Fault*.—The west face of the Wentworth Hills (802N., 428E.) appears to be a fault scarp which continues to the south along the eastern boundary of the Triassic sandstones and thence south along the long straight southerly course of the River Derwent. From the topography the west side is downthrown and this is supported by the occurrence of Tertiary sedimentary deposits in a depression lying to the west of this fault zone. The actual existence of this fault will only be proven by further work to the north and south of the area so far mapped.

(e) *Nive Bridge Fault*.—The contact between the Triassic sediments and main dolerite mass, exposed at (783N., 448E.) on the Tarraleah Highway at three-quarters of a mile east of the Nive Bridge, appears to be a fault as the shales strike obliquely to the contact, they are not contact metamorphosed by the dolerite and the dolerite is medium grained. This contact (the Nive Bridge Fault) strikes in an E.N.E. direction and so is markedly different from the other faults that have been described above. From the evidence so far available in this area it is impossible to give any estimate of its displacement nor of the relative directions of movement of the two walls of this fault.

(f) *Fracture Pattern in the Dolerite*.—In addition to the major faults which are described above, a well marked fracture pattern is present in the dolerite areas. These fracture systems in the dolerite can be clearly distinguished on the air-photos in spite of the dense timber cover. There are two sets of these fractures, one trending N.E. and the other trending N.N.W., and they maintain very constant direction over the whole of the mapped area. When seen on the ground they consist generally of a zone to several chains wide of closely-spaced steeply-dipping joints, but some of the dark lines seen on the air-photos are actual shatter zones and another proved to be a basaltic dyke in the dolerite. It will be evident, therefore, that any such evidences of "shear" structures on the air-photos must be individually examined on the ground before one can definitely state whether they are zones of closely spaced joints, or faults, or dykes. The north-east trending

closely spaced joints dip steeply (80°) to the north-west. To this group belongs the Clark Dam Fault (Plate VIII, fig. C) exposed in the excavations for the eastern abutment of the Clark Dam at Butler's Gorge. This small fault zone strikes 55° (mag.) and dips 85° N.W., and the main shatter zone is four feet wide, parallel to which is a strongly jointed zone about 30 feet wide. Calcite veinlets one inch wide are associated with the fractures. A well-defined shatter zone belonging to the N.W. trending set of fractures is exposed in the bed of the River Nive at ($803\frac{1}{2}$ N., 440 E.)—this shatter zone is approximately one and a half chains wide and in it the dolerite is brecciated and traversed by irregular white veinlets which strike in the general direction 150° (mag.) and dip 45° to the S.W. The white mineral of these veinlets is the zeolite laumontite and appears to be the result of zeolitisation along the fractures in the faulted dolerite produced by vapours associated with the vulcanism which gave rise to the Tertiary basalts.

All of these "shear" zones seen on the air-photos are indicated on the accompanying geological map. Not all of them have been visited so that their nature (except those actually examined in the field) is not known with certainty. They appear to be conjugate fracture systems associated with the development of the major faults which, as noted above, strike in a general north-south direction.

4. Geological History of the Area.

The geological history of the mapped area began in Permian times with the deposition of the fossiliferous marine sediments of the Marlborough Series. The detrital material of these sediments was deposited from floating ice and glacial conditions continued throughout the Permian at least until the deposition of the Risdon sandstone. The overlying Ferntree mudstones, which are free from ice-rafted boulders probably indicates a decrease in intensity of the Permian glaciation.

The Permian marine sedimentation was followed in Triassic times by the deposition, in widespread lakes, of freshwater sandstones, and shales which in places carry fossil plant (*Phyllothea*) remains. Owing to the impossibility of correlating the isolated inliers of Triassic sediments no detailed history of the Triassic Period can be attempted. The next main event was the intrusion, in the form of sills, of dolerite. This was perhaps preceded by some faulting (e.g., the Forest Dale fault was either pre-dolerite, or was developed during the intrusion of the dolerite, for it is now represented by a dolerite dyke). Subsequent to the intrusion of the dolerite there was further faulting along north-south lines resulting in the major fault structures of the area which appear to be step faults which throw down to the west. These movements may be associated with those which resulted in the general regional tilt of the rocks to the east and resulted in the well-defined fracture pattern seen in the doleritic areas.

The next major event was the extrusion of the Tertiary basalts which filled asymmetric erosion depressions on the plateau resulting from the long continued erosion of the block-faulted area. The basalts are not the result of a single eruption, but rather of a succession of fissure eruptions yielding flows of the order of 50 feet thick. The last phase in the geological history is the Pleistocene glaciation which has left its mark on the area examined in the form of a thin layer of glacial till in the westernmost section of the area.

IV. ACKNOWLEDGMENTS.

The field work in the Tarraleah area was carried out in connection with investigations on behalf of the Hydro-Electric Commission of Tasmania, and this summary account of the regional geology of this area is published through the courtesy of the

Commission. I am indebted to Professor S. W. Carey, who spent a considerable time prior to the commencement of the field work in showing me many of the type sections in the country between Hobart and Tarraleah, and who has throughout the course of the work contributed much in the course of discussion in the field. I am grateful to him also for having critically read my manuscript. My thanks are due also to Dr. A. H. Voisey for discussion in the field of the succession exposed in the Marlborough Permian inlier.

REFERENCES.

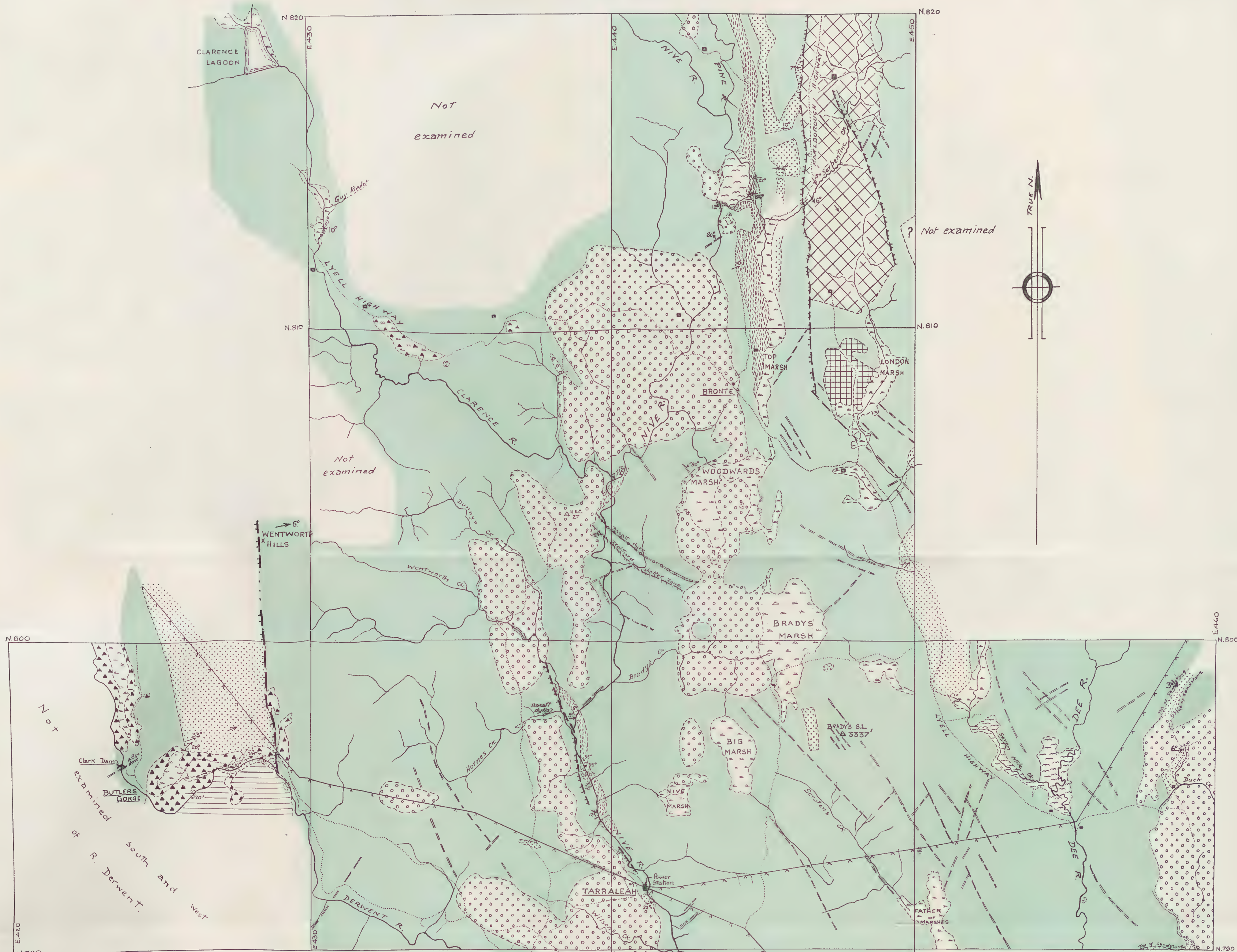
- CAREY, S. W., 1947.—"Geology of the Launceston District", *Rec. Queen Victoria Museum, Launceston*, vol. II., pp. 31-50.
- CAREY, S. W., and HENDERSON, Q. J., 1945.—"Report on the prospects of underground water supply in the Bellerive-Risdon District", *Geol. Surv. Tasm.* (Typed report.)
- JOHNSON, R. M., 1888.—"Systematic account of the geology of Tasmania". (Hobart.)
- EDWARDS, A. B., 1942.—"Differentiation of the dolerites of Tasmania", *Journ. Geol., L.*, pp. 451-480, 579-610.
- LEWIS, A. N., 1946.—"The Geology of the Hobart District," (Hobart).
- STRZELECKI, P. E. DE, 1845.—"Physical description of New South Wales and Van Dieman's Land" (London).
- VOISEY, A. H., 1938.—"The Upper Palaeozoic Rocks of Tasmania", *Proc. Linn. Soc., N.S.W.*, LXIII., pp. 309-333.

PLATE VII.

Geological map of the country in the vicinity of Tarraleah. The grid lines on this map are at 10 kilo-yard intervals and refer to the grid on the 4-mile State map of Tasmania published in 1944. The original maps from which this geological map has been made are on a scale of 20 chains to one inch and show considerably more detail than can be shown in this map. These 20-chain maps are the property of, and are filed by, the Hydro-Electric Commission, Hobart.

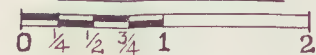
PLATE VIII.

- A. The Nive Valley looking upstream from the Nive Bridge on the Lyell Highway, showing the dolerite hills (in distance) rising above the basaltic areas (foreground and middle distance). The flat topography of the basaltic areas can be clearly seen in the middle distance.
- B. The Nive Fault exposed at the junction of Wentworth Creek and the River Nive. View looking south along the strike of the fault. Both walls are of dolerite. Note curvature of fractures on west side of fault and intense brecciation of the dolerite near the fault (in vicinity of hammer).
- C. Clark Dam fault exposed in excavation for the eastern abutment of the Clark Dam at Butler's Gorge. This fault zone is in dolerite and is typical of the north-easterly trending shear zones in the dolerite which are indicated on the accompanying geological map. (Plate VII.)



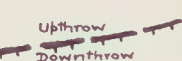
GEOLOGICAL MAP OF THE TARRALEAH AREA

Scale of Miles



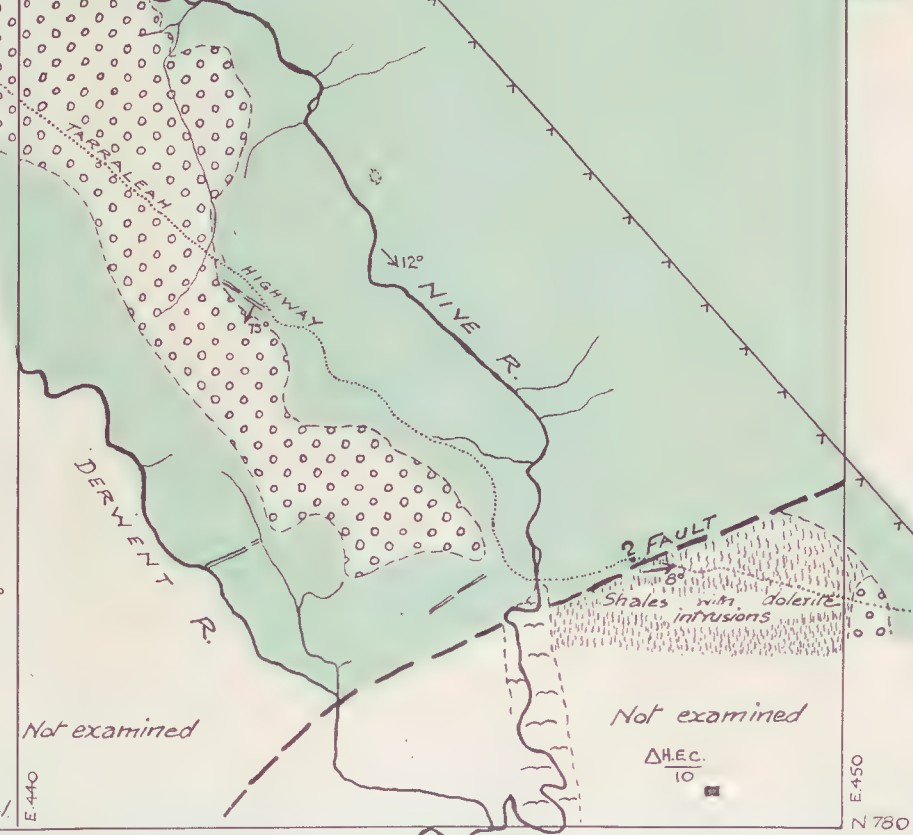
- RECENT (Alluvium)
- PLEISTOCENE (Glacial till)
- TERTIARY {Basalt
Sediments
- JURASSIC (Dolerite)
- TRIASSIC {Sandy facies
Clayey facies
- ? PERMIAN (Hornfels)
- PERMIAN (Marine glacial)

- Roads & tracks
- H.T. Transmission lines
- Faults
- Shear zones
- Dip of bedding or dip slope
- Farmsteads
- Villages
- Marshes



TARRALEAH

R.T.P. del.





A



B



C

Boomer Marsh—A Preliminary Botanical and Historical Survey.

By

W. M. CURTIS and J. SOMERVILLE.

During the year 1942, the Tercentenary of the Dutch landing in Tasmania, interest was again aroused in the question of the site of the landings which took place on December 2nd and 3rd, 1642 (old calendar). This question has led to considerable discussion by members of the Royal Society, during which no finality has been reached. Of the various views advanced, J. P. Gell (1845) considered the western shore of Forestier's Peninsula to have been the watering place selected by the Dutch discoverers on December 2nd, 1642. This suggestion was supported by J. B. Walker (1890). G. H. Halligan (1925) and Clive Lord (1926) gave reasons for believing the site to have been the small inlet just within 'The Narrows' on the western shore of Forestier's Peninsula (fig. 1). A. N. Lewis (manuscript in Library of Royal Society of Tasmania) considered Bream Creek to have been 'the spot at which water was obtained on this day'.

In December, 1942, a copy of the Gilseman chart (1642) was obtained by the Royal Society of Tasmania, and on the chart 'Water Plaats' is clearly marked on the western shore of Blackman's Bay, in a place corresponding to an unnamed opening shown on Tasman's chart. However, it has been argued that the charts do not provide definite evidence of the exact location of the site, for the following reasons:—

1. That Tasman's journal is too vague to serve for a firm basis of opinion.
2. That the name of a place on the chart does not always indicate its exact position.
3. That the charts are inaccurate when compared with present-day coastal topography.

Since, in Tasman's Journal, there is some record of the nature of the vegetation and of the herbs collected for food, the authors made a botanical survey of the localities under discussion. The results suggest the probable place of the landing to have been at Boomer Marsh. It is suggested that the botanical survey may help in the solution of the controversial problem of the site of the original Dutch landing and a preliminary account of the ecology of the area is given. The area is of botanical interest since, except for a description of sand-dunes given by Consett Davis (1940), no account of the coastal vegetation of Tasmania has been published.

The following quotations are taken from Tasman's Journal, 2nd December, 1642: 'About 3 hours before evening our Vessel returned and brought some strange Greens which they saw grow plentifully. Some of them are like to the greens which grow on the Cape of good hope and may be used in place of wormwood. The others are long and saltish and like to Sea Parsley . . . They found high but even land. Greens plentifully, growing naturally and not being planted'. (Woide's translation, Chief Secretary's Office.) 'About 3 hours before evening

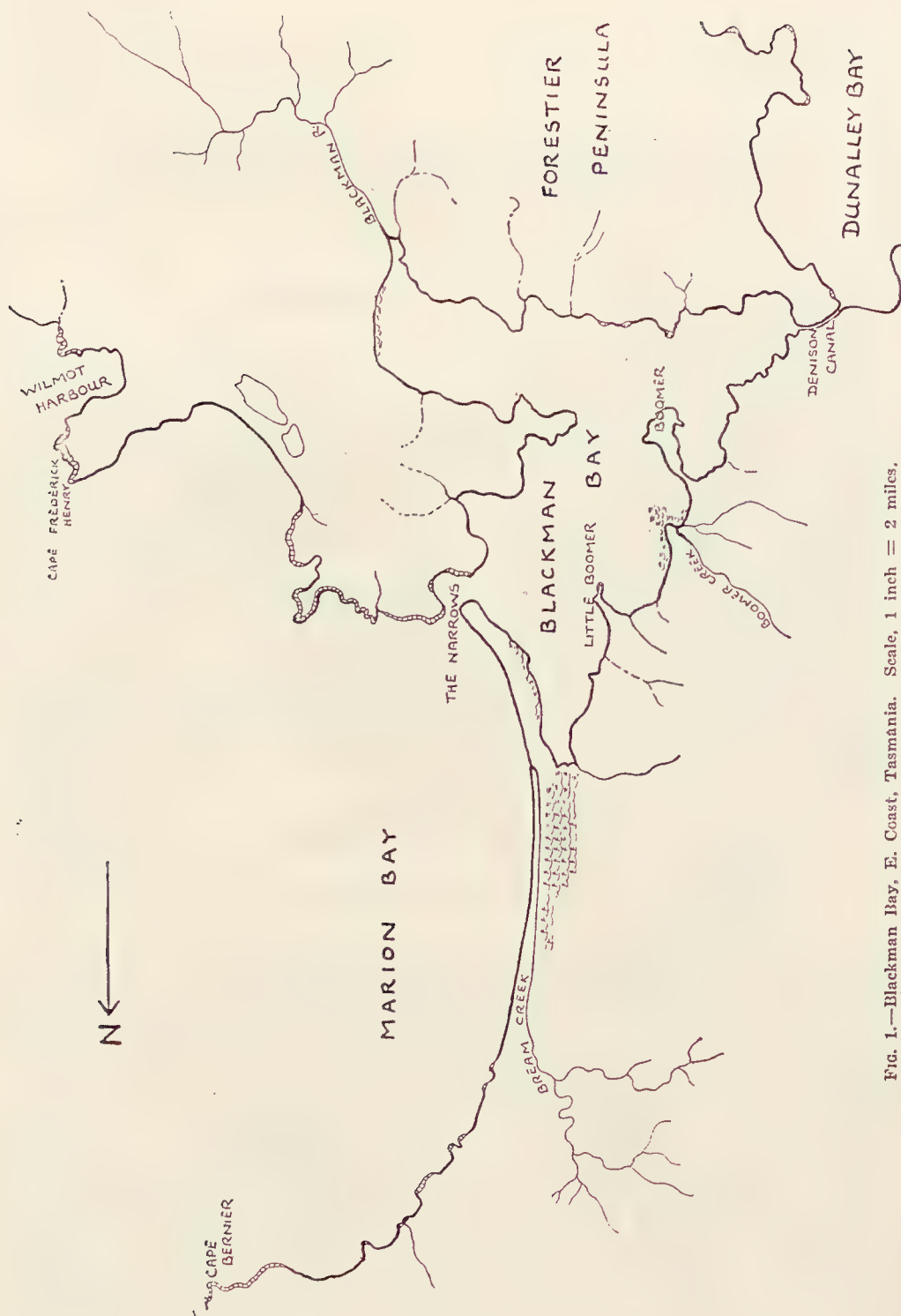


FIG. 1.—Blackman Bay, E. Coast, Tasmania. Scale, 1 inch = 2 miles.

our boats returned bringing various samples of vegetables which they had seen growing in abundance, some not unlike certain herbs which grow at Cabo de Bona Esperance and are fit for use as pot-herbs. Others were long and saltish which have no ill likeness to Sea parsley'. (Swart's edition.)

'About 3 hours before nightfall the boats came back, bringing various samples of vegetables which they had seen growing there in great abundance, some of them in appearance not unlike a certain plant growing at the Cabo de Bona Esperance and fit to be used as pot herbs and another species with long leaves and a brackish taste strongly resembling persil de mer or samphire . . . They had found high but level land covered with vegetation not cultivated but growing naturally by the will of God'. (Heere's Edition.)

In an attempt to locate an area in which 'greens suitable for pot herbs' grow in abundance or, alternatively, an area which showed evidence of having carried such vegetation in the Seventeenth Century, the coast from Wilmot Harbour to Cape Bernier was explored. Appropriate vegetation was found in only three areas, in marshes at the mouth of the Blackman River, at Bream Creek, and at Boomer Creek. The marsh at the Blackman River is young; the vegetation is an open community of *Salicornia*. Bream Creek marsh represents a fresh-water swamp which has become saline since the cutting of drainage channels to carry flood water from Bream Creek. The small saltmarsh at Boomer Creek is apparently in equilibrium with the factors of this habitat. Here, edible herbs are abundant and the topography of the area is in agreement with the description in Tasman's journal.

Boomer Marsh is a saltmarsh some four and a half acres in extent, which lies at the foot of the sandstone bluff about midway between Little Boomer and Boomer, the two prominent peninsulas on the western shore of Blackman's Bay (fig. 1). Boomer Creek (the putative watering place of Tasman) runs on the southern side of the headland known as the Bluff. The ground rises steeply above the marsh to a level area at the summit of the Bluff. A hundred yards to the south of Boomer Creek is another small stream not shown on the earlier maps. The land drained by this stream was originally part of the Hildyard Estate. Mr. C. D. Hildyard, a grandson of the original owner, states that when the grant was first occupied no stream existed and the present watercourse results from channels dug during the early part of this century to drain the swampy land. Extensive silting is exposed at low tide, extending from the mouth of each stream into the bay. While it is difficult to estimate the time involved in such silting, it is worth noting that streams such as the Piper River (N. Coast) which were navigable in the days of the early settlement of Tasmania, would no longer be practicable for the vessels then used.

An outline of the area occupied by the saltmarsh at Boomer was obtained by taking compass bearings and measurements between selected landmarks. A base-line from the creek bank, 65 metres above the mouth, was taken due east over the crest of the sandy spit forming the shore-line, a distance of 413 metres. Perpendiculars to the base-line were taken at intervals of approximately 80 metres: small channels and pans were mapped along the transects and by eye in the intervening regions. Six quadrats were laid down in selected areas along the base line and a census of the plants in each quadrat was made at intervals during the years 1942-1946. The vegetation was then mapped by making notes of the association in each metre along the transects (fig. 2).

This small area of saltmarsh shows a complicated pattern of erosion and deposition, due in part to the double tides which are a feature of Blackman's Bay since the cutting of the Denison Canal in 1902-1903. A sand-spit running in a north-west

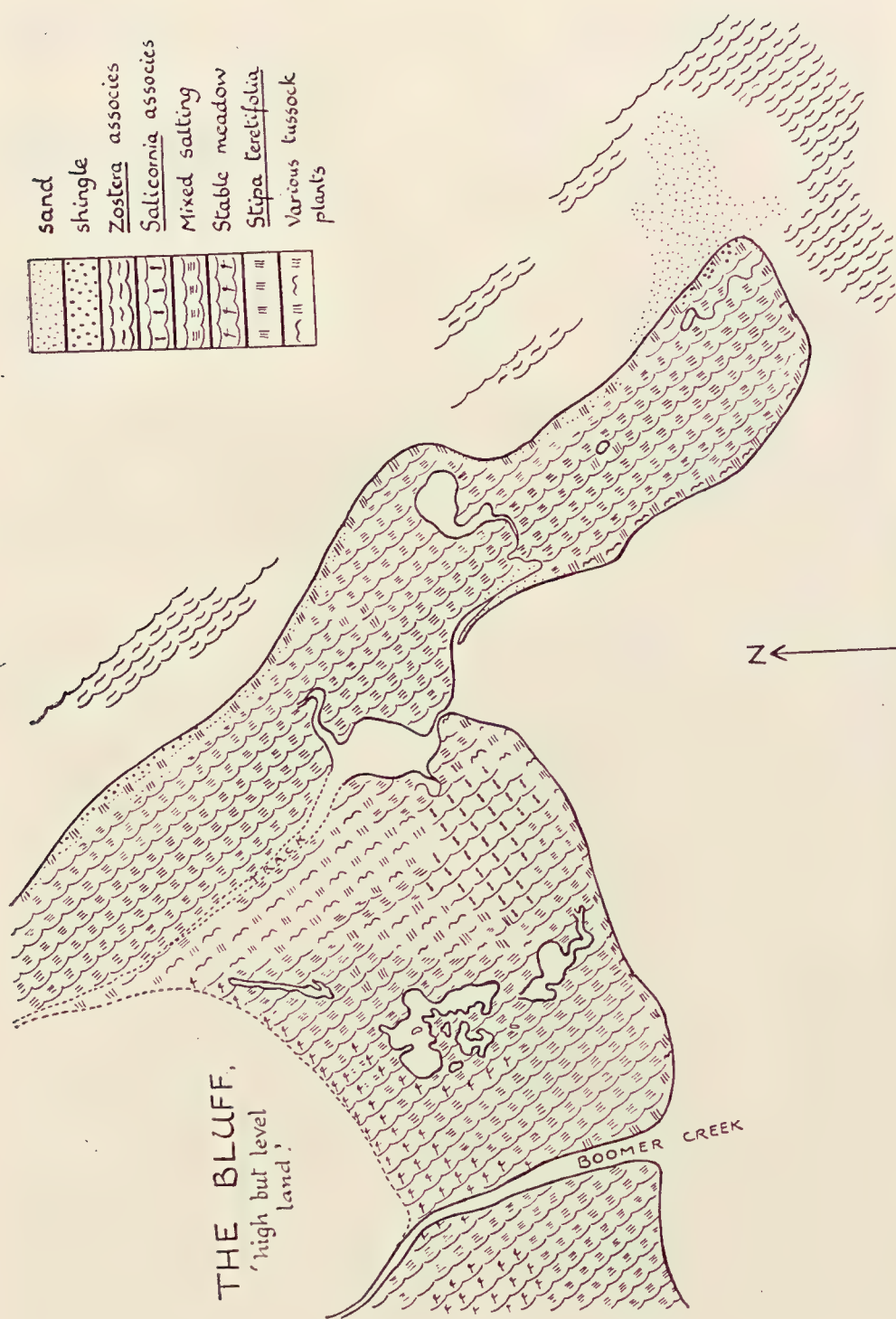


FIG. 2.—Saltmarsh at Boomer Creek. Scale, 1 cm. = 28 metres.

to south-east direction, forms the seaward boundary of the marsh. There is erosion on the south-west bank, but the distal end of the spit is being extended in an easterly direction. Similar erosion and deposition occur at Boomer, Little Boomer, and the Spit at The Narrows. At Boomer Marsh, between the present shore-line and the Bluff are several well-defined ridges of sand and shell representing old shore-lines, some of which can be assumed to have been in existence in 1642. Saltings are developed in the sheltered bays between the old shore-lines in the area between the sand-spit which forms the present shore-line, Boomer Creek, and the Bluff.

In general physiognomy, Boomer Marsh may be compared with the saltmarshes along the east coast of Great Britain, such as that described by Oliver (1913). Floristically, Boomer Marsh is comparable with the saltmarshes of the south-east coast of the Australian mainland, such as the marshes described by Pidgeon (1940) in New South Wales, and by Patton (1942) in Victoria, except that in Tasmania as in Great Britain, *Zostera* and *Salicornia* are pioneer plants on exposed mud and mangroves do not occur.

Boomer Marsh shows considerable variety in the terrain, areas of soft mud and silt, sandy mud, and sand with shell being found. The succession of plants appears to depend largely on the character of the substratum. The saltings, which are grazed by cattle, appear to be relatively stable, but the marsh must be recognised as an area on which, in appropriate conditions, a succession of plant associates could culminate in the development of open eucalyptus forest which is the climax formation.

The following zones may be distinguished:—

1. Algal communities.

On the seaward side of the sand-spit is an extensive area of sand exposed only during low spring tides. This is sparsely covered by *Hormosira*, there being approximately five plants per square metre. Each plant is attached to the shell of a mussel (*Mytilus*, sp.), which is buried several inches below the surface. It is of interest to note that in Tasman's Journal (Heere's Edition) there is a record of finding inside the Narrows, 'different kinds of muscles forming small clusters in several places.'

2. *Zostera* associates.

The areas occupied by *Zostera muelleri* are not invaded by other flowering plants, but in one region on the south-east side of the spit, *Zostera* is associated with *Lepilaena* sp.

3. The Saltings.

In the lowest parts of the area between the shore and the Bluff there is an open plant community of *Salicornia australis*. At a slightly higher level the *Salicornia* associates is invaded by *Wilsonia humilis*. The long runners of this plant are very conspicuous, as they spread out for several metres, rooting at the nodes. In a region of soft mud, *Salicornia* is associated with *Triglochin striata*. Where the period of immersion at each high tide is less, *Salicornia australis*, *Samolus repens*, *Hemichroa pentandra*, and *Suaeda maritima* form a closed community. Occasional bushes of *Arthrocnemum arbuscula* and tussocks of *Cladium flum* are scattered throughout the saltings, but the greater number of these plants occur in the higher parts of the marsh.

4. Stable meadow, beyond the limit reached by the high spring tides.

This is a narrow zone at the base of the Bluff, receiving drainage from the high ground. After heavy rain the vegetation may be submerged in brackish water. Plants in this zone include the grasses listed below, among which *Distichlis disticophylla* is particularly conspicuous. Other plants in this closed community are: *Spergularia rubra*, *Apium australe*, *Brachycome graminea*, *Selliera radicans*, *Lobelia anceps*, *Sebacia albidiflora*, *Plantago coronopus*, *Hemichroa pentandra*. *Salicornia australis*, is scattered throughout. The following species form tussocks: *Juncus maritimus*, *Scirpus nodosus*, *Cladium filum* and the grasses *Stipa teretifolia* and *Poa caespitosa*.

5. Ridges of sand and shell.

This stable ground, rarely covered by the highest tides, carries scattered bushes of *Arthrocnemon arbuscula* and tussocks of *Cladium filum* and *Stipa teretifolia*, also occasional clumps of *Gahnia trifida*. A few plants of *Plagianthus spicatus* occur, but they are heavily grazed. *Salicornia Blackiana* is scattered over these higher areas. The glaucous appearance of this plant distinguishes it from the more abundant *S. australis*. Plants which are found on the lower parts of the ridges, for example, *Selliera radicans*, *Wilsonia Backhousii* and *Apium australe* grow luxuriantly at the bases of the tussocks.

6. Pans and Creeks.

A number of pans have clearly originated by the blocking of drainage channels, some of those which are filling up carry a sparse cover of *Salicornia australis* as well as free-floating forms of green and red algae. A long deep pan in the higher part of the saltings contains the submerged phanerogams *Ruppia maritima* and *Lepilaena Preissii*. In Boomer Creek the floating leaves of *Zostera Muelleri* are conspicuous: luxuriant clumps of *Apium australe* occur along the banks.

Boomer Marsh corresponds in position to the 'Water Plaats' marked on the Gilseman chart. The saltings which exist in the bays between old shore-lines provide a variety and abundance of plants long familiar as pot herbs. *Salicornia* is still collected as 'samphire' from the salt marshes on the east coast of England. Gell (l.c.) writes of the Dutch discoveries: 'They collected a quantity of greens which were in all probability the Canagong (*Mesembryanthemum aequilaterale*) of the aborigines, long and of saltish taste'. At Boomer Marsh only one plant of *Mesembryanthemum* was found, but *Hemichroa pentandra*, which is plentiful is not dissimilar in the vegetative state. Species of *Mesembryanthemum* were familiar to sailors of the Seventeenth Century: of the many species in South Africa, *M. pomeridianum* L. from the coast at the Cape, was gathered for eating (for this information we are indebted to Miss E. Stephens of the Botany Dept., University of Cape Town). It is conceivable that at Boomer, *Mesembryanthemum* was previously more abundant, as it is now on the salt marshes at George's Bay (E. Coast), or that *Hemichroa* could be the plant 'not unlike a certain plant growing at the Cabo de Bona Esperance'. However, the description in Tasman's Journal (Swart's Edition) of plants 'which have no ill likeness to Sea parsley' suggests *Apium australe*, a plant abundant in this area.

CONCLUSION

The botanical evidence presented in this paper supports the contention that Boomer Creek was the site of the Dutch watering place on 2nd December, 1642.

Its position agrees with the unnamed opening on Tasman's chart and with the 'Water Plaats' marked on the Gilseman chart.

LIST OF THE FLOWERING PLANTS AT BOOMER MARSH.

Caryophyllaceae	<i>Spergularia rubra</i> Pers. var. <i>marina</i> .
Malvaceae	<i>Plagianthus spicatus</i> B.
Aizoaceae	<i>Mesembryanthemum australe</i> Sol.
Umbelliferae	<i>Apium australe</i> Hk.
Compositae	<i>Brachycome graminea</i> F.v.M.
Goodeniaceae	<i>Selliera radicans</i> Cav.
Campanulaceae	<i>Lobelia anceps</i> D.C.
Primulaceae	<i>Samolus repens</i> Pers.
Gentianaceae	<i>Sebaea albidiflora</i> F.v.M.
Convolvulaceae	<i>Wilsonia humilis</i> R.Br. <i>W. Backhousii</i> Hk.
Plantaginaceae	<i>Plantago coronopus</i> L.
Chenopodiaceae	<i>Chenopodium glaucum</i> L. var. <i>littorale</i> . <i>Suaeda maritima</i> Dumort. <i>Salicornia australis</i> Sol. <i>S. Blackiana</i> Ulb. <i>Arthrocnemon arbuscula</i> R.Br. (Moq.) <i>Hemichroa pentandra</i> R.Br.
Amarantaceae	<i>Juncus maritimus</i> Lam.
Juncaceae	<i>Triglochin striata</i> Ruiz. et Pav.
Juncaginaceae	<i>Ruppia maritima</i> L.
Potamogetonaceae	<i>Zostera Muelleri</i> Irm. <i>Lepilaena Preissii</i> F.v.M. <i>Lepilaena</i> sp.
Cyperaceae	<i>Scirpus nodosus</i> Rottb. <i>Cladium filum</i> R.Br. <i>Gahnia trifida</i> Lab.
Gramineae	<i>Stipa teretifolia</i> Steud. <i>Dichelachne crinita</i> Hk.f. <i>Agrostis stolonifera</i> L. <i>A. Billardieri</i> R.Br. <i>Distichlis disticophylla</i> (Labill) Fassett <i>Poa caespitosa</i> Forst. <i>Puccinellia stricta</i> (Hk.f.) Blom. <i>Vulpia megalura</i> (Nutt) Rydb. <i>Parapholis incurvis</i> (L) C. E. Hubbard.

We are indebted to Mr. C. E. Hubbard, of the Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, for the identification of the grasses.

REFERENCES.

- DAVIS, CONSETT, 1940.—Preliminary Survey of the Vegetation near New Harbour, S.W. Tasmania, *P.Proc., R.Soc., Tas.*, 1940; 1.
- GELL, J. P., 1845.—On the First Discovery of Tasmania, in the months of November and December, 1642. *Tas. Journ. Nat. Sci.*, II.; 325.
- HALLIGAN, G. H., 1925.—Tasman's Landing Place, *P.Proc., R.Soc., Tas.*, 1925; 198.
- LORD, CLIVE, 1926.—On the Planting of the Dutch Flag in Tasmania in 1642, *P.Proc., R.Soc., Tas.*, 1926; 25.
- OLIVER, F. W., 1913.—Some Remarks on Blakeney Point. Norfolk, *J.Ecol.*, I.; 4.
- PATTON, R. T., 1942.—Ecological Studies in Victoria—Part VI.—Saltmarsh. *Proc., R.Soc., Vic.*, 54, Pt. I.; 131.
- PIDGON, ILMA M., 1940.—The Ecology of the Central Coastal Area of N.S.W., *Proc. Linn. Soc. N.S.W.*, LXV.; 221.
- TASMAN'S JOURNAL.—(a) Woide's Edition, 1776; (b) Swart's Edition, 1860; (c) Heere's Edition, 1898.
- WALKER, J. B., 1890.—The Discovery of Van Diemen's Land in 1642; with Notes on the Localities mentioned in Tasman's Journal of the Voyage, *P.Proc., R.Soc., Tas.*, 1890; 269.

The Royal Society of Tasmania

1947

Patron:

His Majesty the King.

President:

His Excellency Admiral Sir Hugh Binney, K.C.B., D.S.O.

Vice-Presidents:

L. Cerutti, B.A., Dip.Ed., 1947.

W. H. Hudspeth, B.A., 1947, 1948.

Council:

S. W. Carey, D.Sc., 1947, 1948, 1949

W. L. Crowther, D.S.O., M.B., 1947.

V. V. Hickman, B.A., D.Sc., 1947, 1948.

L. W. Miller, M.Agr.Sc., F.R.E.S., 1947, 1948, 1949.

J. L. Somerville, M.Sc., F.A.C.I., 1947, 1948

J. W. C. Wyett, B.Sc., A.A.C.I., 1947.

Hon. Secretary and Librarian:

Joseph Pearson, D.Sc. (Manchester), D.Sc. (Liverpool), F.R.S.E., F.L.S.

Assistant Hon. Secretary:

D. C. Pearse, M.C.

Hon. Treasurer:

S. Angel.

Hon. Auditor:

H. J. Exley, M.A.

Hon. Editors of the Papers and Proceedings:

Joseph Pearson.

D. C. Pearse.

Standing Committee:

W. L. Crowther, V. V. Hickman, W. H. Hudspeth, J. Pearson.

Annual Report, 1947

The Annual Meeting was held in the Society's Room, Tasmanian Museum and Art Gallery, Hobart, on the 27th February, 1947.

His Excellency the Governor, President of the Society, presided.

The following Office-bearers were elected:—

Vice-President: Under the Society's Rules, Mr. Henry Allport retired from the office of Vice-President, and Mr. W. H. Hudspeth was appointed in his place (retiring 1949).

Hon. Secretary and Librarian: Dr. Joseph Pearson.

Hon. Assistant Secretary: Mr. D. C. Pearse.

Hon. Treasurer: Mr. S. Angel.

Hon. Auditor: Mr. H. J. Exley.

Council: Under the Rules Mr. A. L. Meston and Mr. R. G. Brett retired from the Council and the following members were elected to the Council in their places:—

Professor S. W. Carey (retiring 1950).

Mr. L. W. Miller (retiring 1950).

Also one member was required to take the place of Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, who was elected Vice-President, and Mr. J. L. Somerville was elected for two years. As Dr. Gordon was leaving Tasmania, Mr. J. W. C. Wyett was elected for the remaining one year of Dr. Gordon's period of office. The names of the full Council for 1947 are given on the previous page.

The Council made the following appointments at its first meeting:—

Assistant Librarian: Miss H. Taylor.

Standing Committee: Dr. W. L. Crowther, Professor V. V. Hickman, Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, and the Hon. Secretary.

The Council elected the following two members of the Society to serve on the Board of Trustees of the Tasmanian Museum and Botanical Gardens:—Professor V. V. Hickman and Mr. W. H. Hudspeth.

Nine ordinary meetings and one special meeting were held during the year (see Proceedings for abstracts of papers). In addition scientific papers were submitted for publication and have been printed in the present volume.

Library

During the year 780 volumes (this number includes the Clive Lord Memorial volumes which had not previously been entered in the accession book) were added to the Library in addition to a number of reports and pamphlets from British and foreign institutions and learned societies. The number of institutions on the Exchange List for the year was 291, and new exchanges were arranged with the following institutions:—The British Council, London; New England University College, Armidale, University of Sydney; New Zealand Department of Agriculture; Studia Botanica Cechoslovaca, Prague; University of New Mexico; Facultad de Agronomia y Veterinaria, Buenos Aires; Uniwersytet Marii Curie-Sktodowskiej, Poland. The Library now consists of 22,165 volumes.

Cataloguing the Library

During the year Miss M. Griffiths, B.A., Cataloguer from the University of Tasmania's Library, commenced work on cataloguing the Society's Library and classifying it under the Dewey System of Classification. This arrangement was made with the University on condition that in return for Miss Griffiths' services, a duplicate author catalogue should be made available to the University Library.

Membership

The Society consists of the following members:—

Honorary members	2
Corresponding members	2
Ordinary members—	
Class A.	176
Class B.	116
	292
Life members	16
Associate members	19
	331

During the year 15 names were removed from the list of Members owing to deaths, resignations, etc., and 27 new members were elected, one of these being a life member, 21 ordinary members, and five associate members. (Also one ordinary member became a life member.)

Deaths

The Council regrets having to record the deaths of the following members during the year:—Mr. H. Amos (1944), Mr. F. L. Brownell (1907), Mr. T. A. Gepp (1942), Mr. E. H. Kirby (1927), Mr. E. L. Piesse (1902), Dr. A. Jefferis Turner (1927), and Mr. E. H. Webster (1930).

Edmund Leolin Piesse, LL.B., B.Sc., will be remembered by senior members as Honorary Secretary to the Society during 1913-14, at a time when its fortunes were at a very low ebb.

Mr. Piesse, thorough and systematic in method, during his term of office prepared an authentic paper on 'The Foundation and Early Work of the Society, with some Account of other Institutions of Early Hobart' (Papers and Proceedings of the Royal Society of Tasmania, 1913), and commenced the cataloguing of the Library.

At the outbreak of the 1914-18 War he was in practice as a solicitor in Hobart, but in 1916 he left to serve in the Intelligence Branch of the Commonwealth Defence Department at Melbourne. Leaving the army, Mr. Piesse joined the Prime Minister's Department in which he became, eventually, Director of the Pacific Branch.

It was his custom to come to Tasmania occasionally for a summer vacation, but, as the Royal Society was not in session at those seasons, he made contact with only a few of his old friends. Nevertheless, he retained his membership until the end and his services to the Society will be gratefully remembered.

Alteration of Rules

A special meeting of the Society was called on 5th August, 1947, in order to consider certain alterations to the Rules. Details regarding these alterations are given in the Abstract of Proceedings (p. 169).

Financial Position of the Society

For some years the Council of the Society has been greatly concerned about the Society's financial standing. As time has passed expenses have increased and the income has remained more or less stationary. This problem was solved to some extent by the increase of the subscription of ordinary members which came into force in the year 1945. However, this relief proved to be only temporary and the time has come for the Society to take stock of its position. The Society's income from all sources is about £450 and the whole of this money is expended on essential services but there is no margin for paying an adequate salary to the Assistant Librarian or for making provision for a second assistant. It is necessary, too, that provision should be made for the purchase of an adequate number of text books and journals. The cost of publishing the Papers and Proceedings has increased considerably with the passing of years and although the Government has been good enough to increase their grant to £200 a year this sum has proved to be inadequate to meet the cost of printing the journal. During the year under review the financial position of the Society has been examined very carefully by the Council. It was felt that the time had come when the State Government should be asked for financial assistance and it was decided to seek the advice of the Chief Justice, the Hon. Sir John Morris. Accordingly the Hon. Secretary was instructed to arrange a meeting with the Chief Justice in order to discuss this question and a conference took place on the 11th July, 1947. The Hon. Secretary placed before Sir John Morris the financial problem and it was then pointed out that the Society and its Library had exerted a considerable influence on the life of Tasmania during the last one hundred years. As a result of this conference it was decided to approach the Government for a grant of £750 per annum in order to enable the Society to maintain services which it had given to the community. In return for such financial assistance the Society might be prepared to offer certain privileges and concessions to special groups of people who were not members of the Society but who were serious students of some branch of literature or science. The Chief Justice offered to accompany the Hon. Secretary to discuss this matter with the Premier. Accordingly a meeting took place on 13th September, 1947, in the Chief Justice's Chambers. Previously the Hon. Secretary had drawn up a memorandum which was presented both to the Chief Justice and the Premier and this memorandum formed the basis of the discussion which took place at that meeting. The Premier expressed sympathy with the desire of the Society to obtain adequate financial support in order to carry out its programme of work, but he stated that it was then too late to include any provision in the budget for the financial year 1947-48, but that consideration of the matter might be made during the next financial year. The Premier added, however, that he saw no reason why the Society should bear any part of the cost of producing the Papers and Proceedings and as a direct outcome of this discussion a letter was received from the Premier on 13th October, 1947, in which the State contribution to the cost of printing the Society's journal was increased from £200 to £300 per annum.

Meeting with the Northern Branch

On the 22nd August, 1947, a conference was held between the Council of the Royal Society of Tasmania and representatives of the Northern Branch of the Society. The meeting was held in the Society's room at the Tasmanian Museum.

Eight members of the Council and four representatives of the Northern Branch were present. Amongst the matters discussed at this meeting were the following:—

- (a) Definition of Northern Branch membership.
- (b) The proportion of Northern Branch subscriptions to be returned to the Branch.
- (c) The right of the Northern Branch to administer any property bequeathed to it.

Acting upon the feeling of this special meeting the Council had a meeting on the 3rd September, 1947, and decided upon the following definition of membership of the Northern Branch, namely:—

‘Any member nominated and elected by the Northern Branch shall be recognized as a member of that Branch irrespective of his place of residence.’

It was further agreed that in future the present number of members who were attached to the Northern Branch, namely 32, should be regarded as the basic number and that in respect of this number of members the Northern Branch should receive one-third of the subscriptions of such members as appear in this ‘Basic list’ and that in respect of all such members over and above this basic number (‘Subsidiary list’) the Northern Branch should receive the following proportions of subscriptions:—

£1 10s. members—17s. 6d.

£1 1s. members—15s.

It was to be understood, however, that the basic number should be maintained at 32 and that any vacancies which occurred in the basic list should be filled by transfers from the subsidiary list.

With regard to the responsibility of the Society's Council regarding any property bequeathed to the Northern Branch it was decided that—

- (1) The terms of any bequest made to the Northern Branch would be strictly observed by the Council.
- (2) Any property acquired by the branch should remain in its custody during the existence of the Branch.
- (3) In the event of the Branch ceasing to exist, the Council would hold all such property referred to under (1) and (2) in trust until such time as the Northern Branch would be re-established.
- (4) The rights of the Queen Victoria Museum in any property held jointly by the Museum and the Branch to be recognized.

Appointment of Government Archivist

During the year the Council appointed Dr. W. L. Crowther, Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, and Mr. A. L. Meston to meet the Chief Secretary in order to discuss with him the appointment of a fully qualified archivist. In due course the deputation met the Minister who promised that before an archivist was appointed the members of the deputation would be consulted regarding the suitability of candidates.

Dr. George Mackaness—Franklin Brochure

During the year Dr. Mackaness published his brochure on Lady Franklin based upon certain letters which are the property of the Society and, in accordance with an agreement already entered into, one hundred copies of the brochure were acquired by the Society at cost price and will be available to members who wish to purchase them.

Clive Lord Memorial Lecture

The Clive Lord Memorial Lecture was delivered by Dr. Harold Thompson on 'Fish Welfare', on 11th November, 1947, and he was presented with the Clive Lord Memorial Medal. After the lecture a conversazione was held. At that meeting Dr. J. C. Jaegar was presented with the Lyle Memorial Medal on behalf of the Australian National Research Council.

Knopwood Diaries

(a) During the year the Society acquired from the Mitchell Library microfilms of the Knopwood Diaries, 1814-1838, consisting of eight volumes (1600 pages).

(b) The last 90 pages of Knopwood's Diary made on board H.M.S. Resolution and H.M.S. Calcutta, 1801-1803, making a total of 1690 pages in all.

Enlarged photographic prints from these microfilms are being made by the Government Photographic Department and one complete set is being presented to the Society's Library by the State Government. The second complete set will be printed for the use of the State Government.

Nevin Hurst Papers

The Council has to report the acquisition of a valuable set of papers which had been brought together by the late Nevin Hurst, I.S.O., formerly Secretary for Lands. These papers throw light upon contemporary history of Tasmania and the gift was made possible through the generosity of Mr. Hurst's widow. During the year Mr. W. H. Hudspeth very kindly compiled a list of contents of these papers.

A. N. Lewis Memorial Fund

After the death of Dr. A. N. Lewis in 1943 a number of friends subscribed a sum of £414 2s. 8d. It was decided to utilize this money:—

(a) To publish Dr. Lewis' paper on 'The Geology of the Hobart District'.

(b) The residue to be handed to the Royal Society of Tasmania to establish a memorial in the Society's Library.

During the year under review a sum of £232 17s. 11d. was handed to the Council of the Royal Society by the A. N. Lewis Memorial Committee under the following conditions:—

'The net money remaining after having paid the charges and all incidental expenses incurred by the Committee, shall be used to establish a Fund which will be handed to the Council of the Royal Society of Tasmania to administer. This Fund shall be held in trust by the Council and the interest arising from the investment of the Fund shall be used by the Council to purchase geological and other scientific books for the Society's Library. Each book so purchased to have a special book plate showing that the book is part of the A. N. Lewis Memorial Library.'

It was agreed to accept this sum on the above stipulations and accordingly a sum of £200 has been invested in the new security loan and the balance of £32 17s. 11d. has been placed in the Hobart Savings Bank.

Additional Chairs

During the year twenty new chairs were acquired for the Society's room, half being presented by the Trustees of the Tasmanian Museum and the cost of the remainder was met from the Society's funds.

Gifts to the Society

The following is a list of gifts to the Society during the present year in addition to the numerous exchanges received from British and foreign institutions:—

Nevin Hurst papers (already recorded).

Professor L. F. Giblin—40 copies of Papers and Proceedings, several catalogues and reports of the Royal Society, and seven books.

Mrs. C. N. Atkins—Swanston and Derwent Bank Letter Books—

Three Swanston Letter Books, 1831-1847.

Three Derwent Bank Letter Books, 1829-1854.

Mr. J. A. V. Denny—Society of Chemical Industry Journal, 1946 numbers; Chemical Society Journal, 1946 numbers; and British Abstracts, 1946 numbers.

Dr. P. A. Maplestone—58 medical books.

Mr. E. Rodway—19 books (formerly the property of the late E. Rodway).

Miss V. Mace (through Mrs. W. H. Hudspeth)—The Colonial Magazine, 1840, and The Penny Magazine, 1832.

Hobart City Council—City of Hobart Plan.

Gifts were also received from Miss G. Adams, Miss M. G. Rouse, and Miss G. Mitchell.

Printing of Papers and Proceedings

Mention has been made of the State Government's very generous contribution towards the printing of the Papers and Proceedings. The Council wishes to record its appreciation of this assistance.

Abstracts of Proceedings

27TH FEBRUARY, 1947

Annual Meeting

The Annual Meeting was held in the Society's Room, Tasmanian Museum. His Excellency the Governor, President of the Society, presided.

The following Office-bearers were elected for 1947:—Mr. W. H. Hudspeth was elected Vice-President for two years in the place of Mr. Henry Allport, who retired under Rule 12; Honorary Secretary, Dr. J. Pearson; Assistant Honorary Secretary, Mr. D. C. Pearse; Honorary Treasurer, Mr. S. Angel; Honorary Auditor, Mr. H. J. Exley.

The following were elected members of the Council for 1947:—Professor S. W. Carey and Mr. L. W. Miller were elected for three years in place of Mr. A. L. Meston and Mr. R. G. Brett, who retired under Rule 21; Mr. J. L. Somerville was elected in place of Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, who had been elected Vice-President, for the remaining two years of his office and Mr. J. W. C. Wyett was elected to take the place of Dr. H. D. Gordon, who was leaving Tasmania, for the remaining one year of his office.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Mrs. Winifred P. H. Radford, Mr. Paul Radford, Mr. M. C. Russell.

Dr. R. W. Fairbridge delivered an illustrated lecture dealing with 'Some Aspects of Structural Geology', of which the following is an abstract:—

Geological thought and method have evolved during the last 100 years, gradually and without revolutionary jumps, beyond the initial stage of the simple geological survey, the recording of facts relating to the composition of the rocks of the countryside and the mapping of these components to show a real distribution. More advanced studies are now possible, relating not only to the evolution of life, by means of fossils, but also to the analysis of sediments and igneous rocks by means of the microscope and other instruments.

But in addition to all this, a new science has grown up, that of structural geology—the study of rock forms, the shapes into which these rocks may be deformed during earth movements. Transferred onto a world-wide scale this is known as 'Geotectonics'. Structural geology is now used to unravel the secrets of ore deposition and of petroleum development, while geotectonic methods are used for predicting new fields for search.

It may be demonstrated, for example, how the distribution of oil-fields follows certain geotectonic belts, which have undergone a highly complex palaeogeographic evolution. Australia's geotectonic position lies outside the major belts, but there are certain restricted areas (about 5 per cent of the total) which would be foolish to ignore. Hitherto, there has been very little systematic mapping or research in this direction, but the formation of the initial nucleus of a federal geological survey in Canberra is a step in the right direction.

Australia needs a central geological survey and research agency as much as any country, young or old. It is last in the field in this respect and has a great deal of leeway to make up. The personnel of such a body should number not a handful, but hundreds or even thousands, when one considers the great need for reliable information about the rocks of this country for all sorts of developmental purposes, such as new land settlement, soil survey, main roads planning, railway construction, aerodrome building, artesian water supply, dam construction, water power, irrigation, not to mention all sorts of mineral resources from coal to oil and uranium.

1ST APRIL, 1947

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, Vice-President, presided.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Mrs. G. R. Garner, Miss J. M. Turner, Miss J. Waterhouse, Mr. M. R. Banks, Mr. F. R. Dowse, Mr. T. D. Hughes.

Dr. H. E. Dadswell of the C.S.I.R. Division of Forest Products delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'Forest Products Research', of which the following is an abstract:—

The first Australian forest products laboratory was established in 1919 in Perth, by the Institute of Science and Industry, under Mr. I. H. Boas, but this did not last long owing to the lack of funds, although work on the pulping of Australian timbers was carried on, in Perth and later in Melbourne. This work formed the foundation of the Australian Pulp and Paper Industry of to-day.

In 1928 the newly constituted C.S.I.R. decided to form as one of its activities the Division of Forest Products with Mr. I. H. Boas as its first Chief. From that time the Division has grown and now has approximately 200 members on the staff.

During the war years the use of timber increased enormously and the need for knowledge of its properties, behaviour, etc., was urgent. To meet this demand the Laboratory had to be developed rapidly, and to-day there is a very great need for more fundamental research.

The organization of the Division is such that the various problems of forest products can be tackled in eight main fields:—Wood structure, wood chemistry, timber physics, timber mechanics, timber preservation, timber seasoning, veneer and gluing, and utilization dealing with applied aspects. As regards the work of the Section of Wood Structure, which is my own section, we endeavour to follow several main lines of investigation, including the structure of the cell, the study of wood anatomy in general, the influence of structure on properties, and the influence of growing conditions on structure.

The question of utilization of the material from the forest is of the greatest importance and new methods are constantly being investigated especially as regards the waste, sawdust and shavings, that are burnt every day.

The plastic industry is always on the lookout for wood-flour as a filler and up to the present that from softwoods is preferred. Sawdust can also be used in mixtures with cement with and without sand and the slabs or blocks so made have a definite value.

The Division in co-operation with the C.S.I.R. Building Materials Section is developing this line of work.

The University of Tasmania and certain other Australian universities have become interested in fields of forest products research and have trained workers in such fields. The goal is the complete utilization of the forest tree. One way of obtaining this close utilization is by co-operation of industries, the waste from one series of operations becomes the raw material for another. Tasmania seems ideally suited for forest products industries. It has available considerable hardwood forests and ample power with plenty of good water. Replanting of cut-over areas is necessary to maintain adequate supplies of raw material.

6TH MAY, 1947

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. L. Cerutti, Vice-President, presided.

Mr. W. Hudson was elected a member of the Society.

Mr. W. H. Hudspeth delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'Leaves from the Diary of a Van Diemen's Land Official' which was published in full in the Papers and Proceedings for 1946.

3RD JUNE, 1947

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, Vice-President, presided.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Mr. J. M. Boyes, Mr. G. R. Brettingham-Moore, Mr. L. K. Griffiths, Mr. G. C. Wade.

Mr. P. Radford delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'An Introduction to Coleoptera'.

1ST JULY, 1947

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. L. Cerutti, Vice-President, presided.

Miss M. Balchen was elected a member of the Society.

Dr. J. Pearson showed aerial photographs which were lent by Mr. C. E. Radcliff, who had received them from Group Captain Courtney, Commanding

Officer at Point Cook, R.A.A.F. Station. The photographs were taken by R.A.A.F. personnel during the recent visit which was paid to Macquarie Island by R.A.A.F. planes.

The Honorary Secretary announced that the Government had agreed to make two sets of photographic prints of the Knopwood Diaries in the possession of the Mitchell Library, Sydney, the Government to retain one copy for the Government archives and to present the other copy to the Royal Society of Tasmania for the use of research students.

Dr. E. K. Emmery delivered a lecture on 'Austrian Child Art', which was illustrated by drawings and paintings done by the children. The following is an abstract of the lecture:—

Most adults can't draw, i.e., they are completely unable of recording any visual impression on paper. What most adults call drawing is only a very primitive form of hieroglyphic writing: a circle represents a head, several straight lines indicate the relative positions of arms and legs.

Children begin to draw in exactly the same way but very soon their vivid imagination as well as their keen sense of observation urges them on to express what is going on in their minds. The Austrians Czizek, Thetter, Dworschak and others have proved, I think conclusively, by their results, that it is fatal for the teacher to interfere at this stage. The teacher as an adult has reached quite a different stage of development, and his advice, or worse still, his corrections have a disheartening, stifling effect on the child. It can only learn by trial and error.

The collection of Child Drawings and Paintings displayed in this room gives a true representation of the work done at an Austrian orphanage in the outskirts of Vienna. It is of special interest because the teacher, Herr Dworschak, has no opportunity of selecting his pupils. They come from the poorest strata of society, and—owing to the lack of funds—live under appallingly poor conditions.

Herr Dworschak maintains that he has never yet met a child that does not like to work. They all like to express their ideas if given the opportunity. Herr Dworschak provides them with paper, pencils, coloured chalks, paints, wood, clay, glass, copper, metal, and allows them to do anything they like. The first results are absolutely bewildering, and yet the teacher does not attempt to graft his own superior knowledge on to the child's mind, he only helps them by suggesting a few simple experiments. These must be as simple as possible to give every single child a chance.

In one lesson he told the children to cover a white sheet of paper with dots. Some children put all the dots into one corner, others spread them out evenly. He asked them: What figures do these dots suggest? Is not our sky covered with similar dots called stars? Immediately the children's imagination began to work.

Later on the same method was applied to the teaching of painting. The children took a damp sheet of paper, and then painted on it with a brush, first in one colour, then two or or three colours together. The colours spread into all possible shades of dark and light, they ran into each other and produced new interesting tints. Again each child was left to make its own discoveries.

Herr Dworschak once asked them to paint a landscape in blue only, and to look at it for a long time. They were asked what it would feel like to walk in such a landscape, and they all agreed that they would have to walk slowly, it was so peaceful and quiet. One child suggested that modest people would like it. Red, on the other hand, is the colour of blood, passion, anger, fire. It gives warmth and movement, it predominates wherever it appears. Yellow is the sunlight, it cannot be caught, has no strength and no limits. Herr Dworschak knows many experiments with complimentary colours, which interest and amuse the class, and also give them an insight into the 'moral' or 'emotional' value of the different colours.

Another experiment: The teacher draws a mountain or a figure in the left bottom corner of the blackboard. The the children are asked to draw a cloud in the opposite space. Some draw it quite small, some big, but they soon discover that there is a certain relationship between the two, they learn to find the right proportion. You will see from the display of children's paintings how quickly they acquire a perfect sense of harmony and balance. Later, when they are taught to paint letters with a brush, Herr Dworschak points out to them that in their scribbles there is 'a constant war on' between the black script and the white paper. Whenever there is a large black blot or a white 'hole', the peace is lost. But if black and white are nicely balanced the battle is won, and harmony is restored.

What makes these paintings interesting is their originality. You see children in poor homes wearing their shabby wintercoats indoors, because it is very cold without a fire, and worse still, the washing is hanging from the line inside their one little room. In another picture you can see the people go to church on a Sunday. The church is quite small, and the people very large, but alas, their characters are unmistakably portrayed in their faces: some are proud and selfrighteous, others humble and devout. In a third picture we see a house on fire, but somehow the house is alive, pale, trembling, and the fire is personified, it approaches the house barking at it like a fierce dog. There are many other pictures of 'fire', glorious symphonies of colour: red, orange, purple, crimson.

Colour implies feeling. Shape in wood or clay expresses will power and force. It is not surprising that different children prefer different materials. Clay helps the imagination. You can alter and modify it, it grows under your hands. Wood needs purpose, a definite preconceived idea. Only older children can attempt to deal with it successfully, often with astounding results. The same applies to metal and copper work.

In playing ball and other games the child performs feats of agility, which arouse in him a great joy at his own prowess; it is the same when he achieves something in colour, on wood, metal, or any other substance. He takes up something which attracts his attention. His curiosity is not satisfied until he can create something new, but only after long trying does he achieve something that pleases him, that stimulates him to further efforts. As in playing ball it is only by continual practice that the child becomes expert in throwing and catching, so it is with the use of the materials offered him.

Though the teacher observes closely what the children are doing he says no word during their performances. They see in him a comrade, and an appreciative one to boot. One effort leads to another till at last the children have such joy in doing things that their joy is infectious. For their work is really joy bringing, not only to themselves but also to those to whom they can show and give their work. There can be no question of discovering future artists at that early age. When they leave school their minds will turn to other matters but the pleasure will remain. It may be that some particular talent will be discovered, but much more important at that age is the fact that the children discover themselves, and all the hidden faculties of thought, feeling, and expression, of which the human mind is capable.

5TH AUGUST, 1947

A special meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, Vice-President, presided.

Rule 21 was amended to read as follows:—

Each member of the Council other than office-bearers shall be elected for a period of three years. Two members of the Council shall retire annually and shall not be eligible for re-election to the Council for at least one year, but shall be eligible for election as office-bearers of the Society. But a member who has been elected to fill a casual vacancy on the Council for a period of less than three years may be re-elected to the Council for a further term upon the expiry of his original appointment.

Rule 26 was amended to read as follows:—

The Standing Committee shall, subject to any direction given by the Council:—

- (i) Ensure that all papers and communications offered to the Society are examined and reported on by a competent authority; and decide whether they shall be printed.
- (ii) Arrange for the editing of the Society's Papers and Proceedings and for the printing and publication thereof.
- (iii) Arrange the programme of meetings, lectures, and other activities for the year.
- (iv) Purchase books for the Society's Library.
- (v) Prepare the annual and other reports to be submitted by the Council of the Society.
- (vi) Report to the Council on any other matter submitted by the Council to the Standing Committee.

5TH AUGUST, 1947

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, Vice-President, presided.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Mr. J. H. Buckley, Dr. J. L. Grove, Dr. W. V. Teniswood.

Professor V. V. Hickman delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'The Life of the Crayfish', of which the following is an abstract:—

The marine crayfish, *Jasus lalandii* (Milne Edwards) belongs to the family Palinuridae. It was originally named *Palinurus lalandii* by Lamarck and described by Milne Edwards from a South African specimen in 1837. Ortmann in 1891 transferred it to the genus *Jasus*. Members of this genus lack the stridulating apparatus which is possessed by members of the genus *Palinurus*.

Jasus lalandii occurs mainly in a zone between 30 degrees and 45 degrees south latitude and has been recorded from Juan Fernandez, New Zealand, Tasmania, parts of the south coast of the mainland of Australia, St. Paul Island, South Africa, and Tristan da Cunha. Other members of the Palinuridae occur round the Australian coast. For example *Jasus verreauxi* (Milne Edwards) is found off the coast of New South Wales and occasionally in Tasmanian waters; the Coral Crayfishes, *Panulirus ornatus* (Fabr.), *Panulirus penicillatus* (Olivier), and *Panulirus versicolor* (Latreille) occur in the warmer waters round the north of Australia, whilst *Panulirus longipes* (Milne Edwards) is taken in considerable numbers off the coast of Western Australia.

The natural food of *Jasus lalandii* consists of mussels, chitons, and other molluscs. Sometimes echinoids and sea weeds are also found in the gut. Like other Arthropoda the crayfish periodically undergoes ecdysis. This casting of the exoskeleton not only allows for the growth of the animal but also renews the chitinous parts of the various superficial sensory organs. Ecdysis in young crayfish takes place more frequently than in older crayfish. Specimens of market size usually cast their shells once each year. At Wedge Bay the males undergo ecdysis during October, while the females cast their shells in April.

Spawning takes place during April, May, and June. The female, according to size, lays from 60,000 to 400,000 eggs. These are attached to the plepods under the abdomen and are carried by the female until they hatch. This takes place in from three to four months after laying. At Wedge Bay hatching occurs during July, August, and September.

Dr. Von Bonde has shown that during development in the egg the embryo passes through a nauplius condition. It hatches as a larva known as the prenaupliosoma. After about eight hours the prenaupliosoma undergoes ecdysis and changes into the naupliosoma. This measures about 1.7 mm. long and lasts for little more than a week. The naupliosoma then undergoes metamorphosis and gives rise to a phyllosoma larva, which is followed by a number of other phyllosomata, the exact number being unknown. These larval forms swim freely near the surface of the sea. The final phyllosoma stage measures about 35 mm. in length. It eventually changes into the puerulus, which in all essentials resembles a small adult. At this stage the young crayfish leaves the surface of the sea and lives on the bottom.

2ND SEPTEMBER, 1947

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. The President, His Excellency the Governor, presided.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Ordinary Member: Mr. M. A. Rankin; Associate Member: Mr. G. R. A. Ellis.

Mr. M. A. Rankin delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'The Eucalyptus Regnans Forest'.

7TH OCTOBER, 1947

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. L. Cerutti, Vice-President, presided.

Professor G. E. Nicholls was elected a Corresponding Member of the Society.

Miss L. Monks and Mr. G. A. Triffett were elected Ordinary Members of the Society and Mr. J. B. Jennings was elected an Associate Member.

Miss J. Munro Ford and Professor A. L. McAulay delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'The Organization of Plant Tissues', of which the following is an abstract:—

Miss Ford dealt with what is known about the organisation of plant cells into tissues, and suggested that some recent research in Botany may be of use in helping to solve the problem of this organisation. A unit of living matter is the cell, and cells may be grown together for special functions and specialised for certain purposes. She went on to say that active cell division takes place in meristems and here the raw materials for future tissue are formed. By methods of serial sectioning Botanists have been able to piece together the story of the development of plant cells. Examples and diagrams of primary and secondary meristems were given. The order Maturation of the special cells of the conditional system, the zylem and phloem were shown. Miss Ford spoke on the importance of hormones in initiating cell division and in controlling growth.

All living cells are capable of dividing, but in the plant they are normally inhibited, checked by the existing tissue. If the existing tissue is cut or wounded some of the living cells not usually dividing may become meristematic and produce new cells partly to replace the old, e.g., the parenchyma cells are less differentiated than other specialised tissue and may act as a secondary meristem and divide repeatedly to endeavour to close up the wound.

Another important advance in recent years has been the development of the technique of *tissue culture*. Examples and photos of recent plant tissue culture experiments were given by Miss Form. The suggestion of such cultures first came from a Botanist, the German Haberlandt in 1902, but he and his co-workers had no success and it was the Zoologists, including Carrell, who first developed the technique for growing animal cells.

It is yet to be determined why two adjacent cells of common origin with presumably the same heredity pattern, should differentiate into elements that appear totally unlike each other in structure and function.

Professor McAulay pointed out that in many cases plant meristems of common origin differentiated differently according to the nature of their surroundings. He described experiments with artichokes and maize roots made in the Physics laboratory of the University, which were designed to throw light on the factors controlling organisation.

He discussed the recognition and investigation of electric patterns which accompanied organisation. He stated that it was proposed to investigate electric and thermal phenomena in connection with growth.

11TH NOVEMBER, 1947

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Dr. W. L. Crowther presided.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Ordinary Member: Professor C. D. Hardie; Associate Members: Mr. E. A. Jennings, Mr. M. N. Maddock, Mr. E. H. Norton.

The following papers which had been submitted for publication in the Society's Journal were tabled, and it was agreed to submit them to the Standing Committee:—

The Structure and Stratigraphy of the Nelson River District, Lyell Highway, Tasmania, by E. D. Gill, S. W. Carey, and M. R. Banks.
Review of the Geology and Glaciology of the Mt. Field, National Park, Tasmania, by S. W. Carey and M. R. Banks.

Geology of the Gunn's Plains District, by S. W. Carey and M. R. Banks.
Geology of the Country around Tarraleah, Tasmania, by R. T. Prider.
(See page 127.)

Tasmanian Araneae of the Family Hahniidae, by V. V. Hickman. (See page 21.)

A New Genus of Pseudogarypin pseudoscorpions possessing pleural plates, by J. C. H. Morris. (See page 48.)

The Taxonomic Position of *Idiogarypus hansenii* (With), by J. C. H. Morris. (See page 37.)

Neonatal Length as a Linear Function of Adult Length in Cetacea, by E. O. G. Scott.

Péron in Tasmania, by Professor L. A. Triebel. (See page 63.)

Note on the Occurrence of the Nematode *Mermis nigrescens* in the common European Earwig in Tasmania, by P. W. Crowcroft. (See page 59.)

A New Digenetic Trematode from the Gill-rakers of the Barracuda, by P. W. Crowcroft. (See page 49.)

At the request of the A.N.R.C. the Chairman presented the Ranken Lyle Memorial Medal to Dr. J. C. Jaegar, Senior Lecturer in Mathematics in the University of Tasmania. This medal was awarded to him for his researches in mathematics.

The Chairman presented the Clive Lord Memorial Medal to Dr. H. Thompson, Chief of the Fisheries Division, C.S.I.R., who afterwards delivered the Clive Lord Memorial Lecture, the title being 'Fish Welfare'. (See page 1.)

Northern Branch

Annual Report, 1947.

Of outstanding importance to the development of the Northern Branch was the agreement concluded with the parent Society in respect to membership, subscriptions, and property. The agreement may be summarised as follows:—

- (a) *Membership*: Members nominated by the Branch to retain their membership of the Branch so long as they remain members of the Society.
- (b) *Subscriptions*: The Society to pay to the Branch the following shares of the subscriptions of members of the Branch:—
 1. Members elected prior to September 3, 1947—one-third Annual Subscription.
 2. Members elected after September 3, 1947, and paying a subscription of £1 10s.—seventeen shillings and sixpence.
 3. Members elected after September 3, 1947, and paying a subscription of £1 1s.—fifteen shillings.

It was further agreed that when persons in Group 1 ceased to be members of the Society, the basic number in that group would be maintained by the transfer of names from Groups 2 and 3, in order of election.

(c) *Property*:

1. The terms of any bequest or gift made to the Northern Branch to be observed strictly by the Council of the Royal Society.
2. All property acquired by the Branch to remain in its custody during the existence of the Branch.
3. In the event of the Branch ceasing to exist, the Council of the Royal Society to hold in trust all such property referred to under (1) and (2) above, until such time as the Northern Branch would be re-established.
4. The rights of the Queen Victoria Museum in any property held jointly by the Museum and the Branch to be recognised.

Meetings.

APRIL 15TH, 1947.

Annual General Meeting.—The Annual General Meeting was held at the Museum, Mr. F. Smithies presiding.

The Annual Report and Balance-sheet for 1946 were adopted. The following office bearers were elected:—

Vice Chairman: Mr. J. E. Heritage in place of Mr. Gilbert C. McKinlay, who retired under the rules.

Members of Council: Dr. C. Craig and Mr. Gilbert C. McKinlay, in place of Mr. J. E. Heritage and Major R. E. Smith, who retired under the rules.

Hon. Secretary-Treasurer: Mr. N. J. B. Plomley.

Dr. Hugh D. Gordon, Senior Lecturer in Charge of Botany at the University of Tasmania, delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'Plant Pilgrims'. Dr. Gordon considered the means by which plants have become distributed over the earth's surface. After discussing the mechanics of seed dispersal and other mechanisms for plant distribution, he concluded that none of these mechanisms in themselves was sufficient to account for the wide distribution of many plants. While drawing attention to such agencies for distribution as the oceans, winds, and migratory birds, it was concluded that the principal factors involved were long periods of time and the production of large numbers of reproductive bodies.

SEPTEMBER 25, 1947.

A meeting was held at the Museum, Mr. F. Smithies presiding.

Mr. Otto R. Hellwig gave a talk, illustrated by lantern slides, entitled 'Architecture in Pre-War Europe'. Mr. Hellwig started with a general discussion of the principles of architecture, which he defined as the skill and art of organising given components with material and psycholological requirements into an harmonious entity. By such a definition architecture was a functional art in the widest sense and this emphasis was brought out in the illustrations. Mr. Hellwig drew attention particularly to the absence of a national architecture in Australia. Such an architecture should not express a political belief, but the character of our country. In this way it would focus the life and ideals of the people.

NOVEMBER 11, 1947.

A meeting was held at the Museum. The President of the Society, Admiral Sir Hugh Binney presided.

Professor S. Warren Carey gave an illustrated lecture entitled 'The Geology of the Launceston District'. He traced the geological history of the area from Permian times to the present, showing by means of block diagrams the more recent changes that have taken place; as a result the Oligocene penplain was converted by faulting and subsequent erosion to give the present configuration. The history of the Tamar Valley and of the North and South Esk Rivers were dealt with, and the use of the river system for the hydro-electric power discussed.

Office-bearers, 1947:

Chairman: F. Smithies, O.B.E. (1947).

Vice Chairman: J. E. Heritage, C.M.G., LL.B. (1947, 1948).

Council: C. Craig, M.D., M.S., F.R.A.C.S. (1947, 1948); T. Doe, B.Sc. (1947); J. R. Forward (1947); Gilbert C. McKinlay (1947, 1948).

Hon. Secretary-Treasurer: N. J. B. Plomley, M.Sc.

ROYAL SOCIETY OF TASMANIA—NORTHERN BRANCH.
Statement of Accounts at February 29th, 1948.

RECEIPTS.		EXPENDITURE.	
	£ s. d.		£ s. d.
Balance at March 4, 1947	44 3 11	Balance at February 29, 1948:	
Share subscriptions, Royal Society 1947	16 15 0	Cash in bank	24 17 4
Bank interest—		Petty cash in hand	3 0 0
August 31, 1947	£0 7 2	Expenditure—	
February 29, 1948	0 2 6	Books and periodicals	3 14 4
		Meetings	14 0 0
		Petty cash and miscellaneous	15 16 11
			33 11 3
			<u>£61 8 7</u>

PAPERS AND PROCEEDINGS
OF
THE ROYAL SOCIETY
OF TASMANIA



FOR THE YEAR

1948



Edited by

D. COLBRON PEARSE

PUBLISHED BY THE SOCIETY
The Tasmanian Museum and Art Gallery, Hobart

15.9.49

Price: Ten Shillings

The Royal Society of Tasmania

Papers and Proceedings, 1948

CONTENTS

	Page
The Rise and Fall of Charles Swanston. By W. A. Hudspeth	1
Some Scientific Factors of Linguistic Change. By L. A. Triebel	17
Tasmanian littoral Spiders with Notes on their Respiratory Systems, Habits and Taxonomy. By V. V. Hickman	31
New Species of Astacilla from Tasmanian Waters. By Eric R. Guiler	45
Notes on the Geographical Races of <i>Hesperilla chrysotricha</i> Neyrick and Lower (Lepidoptera-Hesperiidae). By L. E. Couchman	65
Neonatal Length as a Linear Function of Adult Length in Cetacea. By E. O. G. Scott	75
The Geology of the Country around the Great Lake, Tasmania. By Alan H. Voisey	95
The Geology of the Country between Arthur's Lakes and the Lake River. By Alan H. Voisey	105
The Geology of the Country around Waddamana, Central Tasmania	111
Annual Report	152
Abstract of Proceedings	157

The Rise and Fall of Charles Swanston

By

W. H. HUDSPETH

(Read 5th October, 1948)

One of the most outstanding figures in the commercial life of Tasmania during the thirties and forties of last century was Captain Charles Swanston, Member of the Legislative Council and Managing Director of the Derwent Bank. Indeed, in the latter capacity he is described by a contemporary as holding 'pecuniary dominion over a moiety of the island'.⁽¹⁾

His activities, moreover, were not confined to Tasmania, for, as we shall see, through his participation in the Port Phillip Association, of which he was one of the founders, he exercised a profound influence upon the colonisation of Victoria.

It is therefore a little surprising, as pointed out by a recent writer,⁽²⁾ that more attention has not been paid by biographers to his career—an omission which it is the purpose of this paper to rectify.

Of his pre-Tasmanian life we know little, except that he had been in the Army in India, where he held a Commission as Captain in a Regiment of Mounted Infantry in Madras, and for a time was Deputy Adjutant-General of the Indian Army. There he appears to have led the ordinary life of a young subaltern, hunting and shooting in his spare time, and enjoying the society of a wide circle of friends.⁽³⁾ During one of his furloughs, he is said to have visited Tasmania and to have been sufficiently impressed by its attractions to repeat his visit, with the possibility of settling there.⁽⁴⁾

In pursuance of this purpose he arrived at Hobart Town, on board H.M.S. 'Success' on 4th June, 1829, with his wife and family, and bringing with him a considerable amount of capital (some £10,000).

Although nominally on leave from military duties, he evidently decided to stay in this country, for soon after his arrival he purchased an estate on the River Styx, 'Fenton Forest' and also the fine property at New Town, known as 'New Town Park'.⁽⁵⁾ He also acquired land at Kingborough and some 4200 acres in the County of Westmorland.

But, unfortunately, as it turned out, for himself and many others, it was not Swanston's fate to become a country squire. He had probably brought letters of introduction to Lt.-Governor Arthur, to whom such a man, with military credentials and ability, was bound to appeal, and before long we find him dining at Government House and on intimate terms with the little military clique then in control of affairs at the capital. Captain John Montagu and Captain Matthew Forster, the Lt.-Governor's two nephews-in-law—who held respectively the important posts of Colonial Secretary and Chief Police Magistrate—were among his chief associates. Montagu was perhaps his closest friend, and the intimacy that sprang up between them continued until long after the latter had left Tasmania, leaving Swanston in charge of his affairs in Australia.

Swanston was a staunch supporter of Lt.-Governor Arthur, and during the Franklin regime he was regarded as the head and front of the so-called 'Arthur faction'.⁽⁶⁾ (See foot-note.)

It was probably due to Arthur's influence that in 1832 Swanston was nominated a Member of the Legislative Council, and in the same year was appointed Managing Director of the Derwent Bank, in which the supporters of the Government had a predominant interest. Soon after accepting this post he resigned from the Army, and thereafter devoted himself to his new duties.⁽⁷⁾

In addition to his political and banking activities he carried on an extensive business on his own account, as an import and export agent, in wool, tea, sugar, rum, and other commodities, in the course of which he formed connections with business houses in India, China, and elsewhere.⁽⁸⁾

THE DERWENT BANK

It is not my intention to enter upon a detailed account of the Derwent Bank. The subject has already been ably dealt with by Professor S. J. Butlin,⁽⁹⁾ and it would be superfluous to go over the ground again. But the operations of that ill-fated establishment are so closely interwoven with the career of its Managing Director that some references will have to be made to it from time to time in the course of this narrative.

The Bank was promoted in 1827 by a group of leading citizens in Hobart. It was, in reality, a partnership for 14 years, with the usual liabilities attached to that relationship. The Deed of Partnership, prepared by Robert Pitcairn, the Bank's solicitor and the chief conveyancer of his day, is a formidable document. Among its imposing array of signatures may be found those of many prominent officials of the Arthur regime—John Montagu, Colonial Secretary; Alfred Stephen, Solicitor-General; Douglas Fereday, Sheriff; Joseph Hone, Master of the Supreme Court; Jocelyn Thomas, Colonial Treasurer; Edward Dumaresq, Deputy Surveyor-General—and many other well-known men in the north and midlands, as well as in the south of the island.

The Bank's initial capital was £20,000 divided into shares of £100 each⁽¹⁰⁾, and the seven members of its first Board of Directors were Joseph Hone; John Dunn; John Kerr; Patrick Wood; William Barnes; Peter Archer Mulgrave; and James Haydock Reibey. Joseph Hone was the first Chairman of Directors.

Franklin, in his narrative, says that Montagu held, for himself and others, a large number of shares in the Derwent Bank, and that during his visit to England, in 1839 to 1841, he actively canvassed there on behalf of the Bank, and brought back many commissions for it. He also asserts that Montagu and Swanston were the chief representatives of the Bank, and that each relied on, and augmented the influence of, the other.

He cites an article in the 'Advertiser' of 20th June, 1843, in which it was alleged that Swanston's motives in attacking him were, firstly, his annoyance and chagrin at Montagu's dismissal, and secondly, his hope that Montagu might be reinstated, and the Bank thereby regain his official influence.

Franklin also alleges that a considerable portion of the press was 'completely under the feet' of the Bank—that the 'Hobart Town Courier' (of which Thomas Macdowell was editor), and its proprietor (Elliston) were deeply indebted to the Bank, and that when Thomas Macdowell became proprietor of the 'V.D.L. Chronicle' both he and his brother Edward Macdowell used its columns for bitter attacks upon his administration. Edward Macdowell was Swanston's son-in-law, and had been removed from his office of Attorney-General by Franklin. Either Swanston or, Montagu—Franklin says—could easily have checked, or stopped, the malicious criticisms of the Macdowells' if they had cared to do so.

(FRANKLIN—'Narrative of some passages in the history of V.D.L.', pp. 7, 8, 13, 17, 18, and 20. See also Montagu's 'Book').

The Bank staff consisted of two—the cashier, Stephen Adey, and the accountant, John Leake, of Rosedale, Campbell Town.

It opened for business on 1st January, 1828, in premises in Davey-street, formerly used as a public house, called 'The Barley Mow', which stood on what is now the garden at the back of the Tasmanian Club, close to the office of Mr. Pitcairn, which was in the building now known as 'Ventnor'. From the letters written at the time by young Leake to his wife, we gather that the business methods of the infant establishment were somewhat elementary. For instance he writes: 'We have been principally employed in writing out Bank Notes, and have since opened the Books'.⁽¹¹⁾; and later, after the first half-yearly meeting: 'We had a very favorable meeting. I got the books to balance exactly, which, as I am so much out of doors, was almost a miracle. The Governor, however, has some objections to the Government Officers being Manager and Directors, and we therefore expect some change.'⁽¹²⁾

This last remark is evidently an allusion to the criticism in the press of the day, inspired, no doubt, by the Bank's older rival, the Bank of Van Diemen's Land, criticism which resulted in the resignation of all the Government officials in the Bank and its reorganisation under the sole control of a full-time salaried Managing Director, William Henry Hamilton. Before this the Bank had opened a savings bank branch for the receipt from the Government of deposits on behalf of convicts.

From this humble beginning the Bank's business grew and expanded with some success. Within two years the premises in Davey-street had become inadequate, and it became necessary to find further accommodation. A block of land fronting on Macquarie-street was purchased, a new banking chamber erected, and in 1833 the establishment moved into its new quarters.

Meanwhile, in 1832, Hamilton had retired and gone to England to act as the Bank's representative in London, and Charles Swanston had been appointed Managing Director in his place.

From this point we can take up the story from the letter books of Swanston and of the Bank.

The period of the twenties and thirties of last century was one of great development in Australia. Emigration was in full swing, land settlement was going on apace, and the rapid growth of trade and of the pastoral industry was bringing with it an ever-increasing demand for capital. Interest rates were extremely high—from 12½ to 15 per cent being readily obtainable—and the passing in 1830 of the Usury Act (11 Geo. IV. No. 6), which declared that English law relating to usury did not extend to Tasmania, opened up a bright prospect for the money-lender. The supply of local capital was limited, and it did not take long for the Derwent Bank's new Managing Director to realise that the Royal road to success lay in obtaining money from abroad at a comparatively low rate of interest and lending it out at a very favourable profit.

Accordingly, in 1834 the capital of the Bank was increased to £100,000, and Swanston proceeded to embark upon the perilous path which was eventually to lead to his ruin and that of the institution over which he had control.

He had a wide circle of influential friends in India and Great Britain, and to them he proceeded to write glowing reports of conditions in Tasmania, with tempting offers of gilt-edged securities, either in bank shares or in mortgages over real estate. There are many such letters in his books, of which the following is a specimen: 'Money here is as much wanted as ever. I do not think you can do better than send your funds to this Colony. For many years to come you can calculate on an interest of at least 10 per cent, and for the next two or three years,

I have no doubt, on good mortgages 15 per cent will be had. Our banks continue to yield a most profitable interest for money invested. In the Derwent Bank, of which I have the management, a greater interest can be obtained than on mortgage'.⁽¹³⁾

After this attractive picture it is a little surprising to find him writing, seven months later, to his agent (Buchanan) in London: 'Our Colony is in the most depressed state. Treasury Bills are at a premium of 6 per cent, and from the great sales of land and the drafts daily made on our Treasury here by the Home Government, specie as a circulating medium has almost disappeared. We are, in consequence, in as sad a state as it is possible for a Colony to be . . . The Black Whale fisheries have been far from successful this year, and, from the severity of the late winter, wool will fall short of the usual quantity exported from the severe losses that have been experienced amongst the flocks.'⁽¹⁴⁾

Somehow or other he had established contact with a wealthy Scotsman named George Mercer (of whom we shall hear more anon), and to him he writes in 1834: 'I have purchased for you four shares in the Derwent Bank at £100 per share (£110 nominal value), and shall continue to buy more; bank shares being the best investment in the Colony.'⁽¹⁵⁾—and a few weeks later, after the increase of capital: 'I have increased your bank shares to seven, and am about to make you a partner to the extent of £5000 in twenty-six old shares, paid up, and eighty-five new shares, of which 25 per cent only is now called up. Mr. McKillop and Mr. Learmonth have each invested £2500 in shares, with the intention of doubling their interests when funds arrive.'⁽¹⁶⁾

In January, 1835, he enlists the interest of another wealthy client—this time in India—Sir George Best Robinson, to whom he writes through his agents in Canton, Messrs. Jardine Matheson & Co.: 'There are', he says, 'two modes of investment here—mortgages and bank shares. Bank stock affords equal security. The banks of this Colony are joint stock companies—banks of deposit, of issue and discount. Therefore they are not in any way engaged in trade, or in any speculations, beyond that of discounting bills; and so closely interwoven with the affairs of the Colony that one cannot fail without the other. The Derwent Bank is conducted on the principles of the Scotch banks, and has the principal part of its loans secured on deeds of lands and houses. Its stock is divided into shares of £100 each, which have a premium at present of £11 per share—the Bank possessing a sinking fund to that extent over and above the capital paid up. Dividends have hitherto been at the rate of 15 per cent payable half-yearly.'⁽¹⁷⁾

You will notice that he omits to state that the Bank was a partnership, involving unlimited liability for every partner in the event of its failure.

Three days after this letter he again addresses a gloomy report to Buchanan, in London: 'The affairs of our Colony are by no means in a wholesome state, owing to the large importations from London and the consequence of forcing the goods on to the market at extended credits, which has caused much speculation, and will, I fear, be attended with loss to the shippers.'⁽¹⁸⁾

It is difficult to reconcile these contradictory accounts of the conditions then prevailing in the Colony. Was the Managing Director deliberately showing one side of the picture to his personal agent in London, and another to the unwary investor, for the purpose of promoting the interests of the Bank, and, incidentally, of himself? Or was he suffering from an optimistic complex, and sincerely believed in the soundness of his advice? Perhaps an extract from a letter, written about this time, to George Mercer, will provide a clue to the answer. It was on the subject of the V.D.L. Coy., in which Mercer had taken shares, and towards which Swanston,

for some reason, always displayed an animosity which is elsewhere lacking in his correspondence. He may have had a row with Mr Curr, the Manager, when the latter was in the Legislative Council, or—more probably—he was embittered by the liberal treatment afforded to that Coy., compared with the scanty consideration given to his own pet scheme, the Port Phillip Association, about which I shall have something to say at a later stage.* At any rate, this is what he says: ‘I regret to learn that you have had anything to do with the V.D.L. Coy. I doubt whether you will ever now get back the price of your shares. The whole scheme has been a job from beginning to end, and is continued such by the present manager, Mr Curr, to suit his own views and plans. I do not know who is the deceiver, but this I will say for him, that there is the most gross deception practised, either by the manager in this Colony, or by the managers in England, as to the real state of the affairs of the Company ‘How easily,’ he goes on, ‘you folks in England are gulled! The Englishman will swallow any scheme, however absurd and monstrous it may be. This notable Company last year, like the quaking mountain that brought forth a mouse, exported half-a-dozen bales of wool—the returns of an expenditure of £150,000—and when this expenditure is doubled, an export of *beef* to the Mauritius may be, perhaps, as magnificent.’⁽¹⁹⁾

I wonder what the writer of that letter would say if, today—100 years later—he could see the wonderful progress of the V.D.L. Coy., and compare it with the ignominious end of the Derwent Bank, and of his will-o-the-wisp, the Port Phillip Association! . . .

It may be noted here that Swanston was at this time engaged in purchasing land in Tasmania for George Mercer. He had recently acquired for him the estate of ‘Lovely Banks’, at Spring Hill, and his correspondence on the subject contains much useful information as to the values of land and stock at that time in the Colony. The boom in the wool trade was on, and prices of land, stock and produce had risen to unprecedented heights. In October, 1835, he writes: ‘I am so puzzled with the change that I really am alarmed at laying out your money’⁽¹⁹⁾—and again: ‘Land has risen in the Colony to a price which I never believed it would. One pound per acre is the lowest price now asked, and £1 10s. and £2 per acre are freely given’.⁽²⁰⁾ Sheep and cattle had also risen in value.

This state of things was, to some extent, consequent upon the recent discovery of the hitherto unknown territory at Port Phillip by Messrs. Henty and others, and the growing attention being paid to that part of Australia.

THE PORT PHILLIP ASSOCIATION, 1835 TO 1838

The story of the Port Phillip Association has been often told,⁽²¹⁾ and it is only necessary here to give a brief outline of it, to enable us to understand the significance of the facts disclosed in the correspondence of Charles Swanston with George Mercer and other members of the Association.

It begins in 1825, when John Batman, who had come down from his birth-place at Parramatta in New South Wales to settle in Tasmania, was struggling to wrest a living for himself and his family on his farm, ‘Kingston’, near the

* Adey, who was Agent at Hobart for the V.D.L. Coy, as well as Cashier of the Bank, transferred £20,000 of the Coy’s money from the V.D.L. Bank to the Derwent Bank without the knowledge of Edward Curr. When Curr got to hear of it he ordered Adey to return the money to the V.D.L. Bank. This was probably one of the reasons for Swanston’s antagonism.

foothills of Ben Lomond. He was by that time beginning to tire of the unending toil and monotony of his lonely existence, and welcomed with joy the arrival, one day, of John Helder Wedge, the surveyor, who had called to mark out the boundaries of his property. He and Wedge had many tastes in common, including a love of adventure and exploration, and during the visit they discussed the plan of crossing to the mainland in search of land more suitable for settlement than the rugged district of Fingal. Nothing actually came of the talk at that time, but when Wedge departed the seed had been sown in the mind of John Batman—seed which was to germinate into vigorous growth later, when he heard reports of the wonderful discoveries in Victoria of Hovell and Hume.

In 1827 he found a fellow-enthusiast in Joseph Tice Gellibrand, ex-Attorney-General, and with his co-operation he applied to Sir Ralph Darling, Governor of New South Wales, under whose jurisdiction the region of Port Phillip then lay for a grant of land in the neighbourhood of Western Port. But their request was refused, and there for the next five or six years the matter rested.

But in the meantime the Henty brothers had crossed the strait from Launceston, and settled at Portland Bay, without active opposition from Sydney, and the news of this, coupled with the publication of the full account of Hume's and Hovell's discoveries, revived interest in the project, and Batman set to work in earnest to secure the support he needed.

It was not long in forthcoming. A number of leading citizens were approached, and in 1834 a syndicate was formed, with the object of fitting out an expedition to explore the shores of Port Phillip, with a view to establishing themselves there and developing the rich lands of which such glowing accounts had been heard.

This syndicate, which was called 'The Port Phillip Association', consisted of the following members:

Joseph Tice Gellibrand, ex-Attorney-General.
Charles Swanston, M.L.C., Managing Director of the Derwent Bank.
Henry Arthur, Collector of Customs.
William Bannister, Sheriff.
James Simpson, Police Magistrate.
John Robertson, Merchant.
William Robertson, Merchant.
John Helder Wedge, Surveyor.
John Thomas Collicott, Postmaster-General.
Anthony Cotterill, District Constable.
William Gardner Sams, Under-Sheriff.
Michael Conolly, Merchant.
John Sinclair, Superintendent of Convicts.
George Mercer, Investor.
John Batman, Settler.

Gellibrand and Swanston were the leading spirits of the speculation, and Batman, because of his experience as a bushman and his known ability in handling the natives, was unanimously selected as leader of the expedition. George Mercer, the only absentee member, was included in the enterprise by Swanston, without previous consultation, partly, no doubt, because of his wealth, and partly because it was felt that, in the event of trouble with the Home Government, it would be as well to have a representative of the syndicate on the spot, in London.

On 10th May, 1835, Batman sailed from Launceston in the 'Rebecca', a tiny schooner of 30 tons, accompanied by three white men and seven Sydney natives. The latter had been employed by him in his efforts to conciliate the Tasmanian tribes who had been causing so much trouble to the Tasmanian Government. Batman was armed with a supply of blankets, tomahawks, knives, beads and other trinkets, intended as presents for the Port Phillip natives. He took with him also two elaborate deeds of conveyance, duly engrossed on parchment, which had been prepared by Gellibrand, in anticipation of a deal being successfully negotiated with the primitive inhabitants of the area which they hoped to acquire.

The little party arrived safely on the shores of Port Phillip, and in due course met a number of so-called 'chiefs', with whom they parleyed and eventually came to terms. Fascinated by the gifts so liberally distributed by the white visitors, and dazzled by the promise of an annual tribute, or 'rent', the guileless savages set their marks to the deeds, and thus signed away 600,000 acres of land since proved to be the finest in the Colony of Victoria, if not in Australia, including the future sites of Melbourne and Geelong—an area which to-day would be worth many millions of pounds.

The two deeds which concluded this Gilbertian transaction are endorsed, respectively, 'Grant of the Territory called "Dutigalla"', and 'Grant of the Territory called "Geelong"'. They are both dated 6th June, 1835, and are preserved as curiosities in a glass case at the Public Library in Melbourne.

The conclusion of the ceremony was celebrated by a magnificent feast, and a corroboree performed by the dusky members.

So far, so good—the expedition had achieved its object, and nothing now remained but to consolidate their position and to obtain the sanction of the authorities to the purchase.

It would be tedious to relate in detail the subsequent operations of the Association and their protracted efforts to obtain, either in Sydney, or in London, recognition of their title to the magnificent territory thus acquired. I propose merely to cite such passages from the correspondence of Charles Swanston as may throw light upon the activities of the syndicate and upon the motives and methods of its members.

In July, 1835—one month after the signing of the deeds—we find Swanston writing to George Mercer with a copy of an indenture relating to the employment of persons at Port Phillip on the Dutigalla estate: 'This paper', he says, 'will be a further proof of our anxiety and desire to protect the natives, if further proof is wanting to convince the Home authorities of the sincerity of our intentions in that respect. The accompanying paper is a memorandum sent to me by Mr Bannister . . . it puts before you clearly Sir George Murray's sentiments regarding the proceedings of the British Government towards the aborigines of these Colonies, and at the same time gives you Col. Arthur's opinion, in the year 1830, of Mr Batman's treatment of the people. He has, I understand, within these (last) few days stated in the presence of Mr Learmonth that this very gentleman (of whom he had so high an opinion in the year 1830) had destroyed more natives than any other man, and that he was, consequently, an unfit person to place in charge and in communication with the natives of Port Phillip. On what grounds Col. Arthur has made this statement we are unable to discover. All I can say is this, that Col. Arthur up to this hour treats Mr

Batman with confidence, and assures him that he considers his former services with the natives of this Colony to have been such as to merit every consideration from the British Government.

That Mr Batman understands the management of these people is quite certain from the success which has attended his expedition to Port Phillip, but, more particularly so, from his being always accompanied by natives of Sydney, who would on any occasion lay down their lives for his. The gentlemen of the Association have, at all events, the most perfect confidence in Mr Batman, and they feel so satisfied of his discretion and of his power with these people as to have no fear of being interfered with by squatters . . .

I shall in all this month of next year look forward most anxiously for letters from you on the subject of our territory of Dutigalla and Geelong.

P.S. Mr Harrison, the Counsel for the Treasury, I understand, is of opinion that grants obtained similar to ours were binding. It would be desirable to obtain his opinion and co-operation, if possible, and it is also advisable to obtain the opinion of the lawyers, after a consultation had at the Chambers of the Senior Counsel. The better course will be to fix a consultation when the cases are left'.⁽²²⁾

It is evident from this letter that even at this early stage the members of the Association were by no means certain of the validity of their title. The reference to Arthur's attitude towards Batman is interesting, because he is reputed to have supported the Association for two reasons—one that his nephew, Henry Arthur, was a member, and the other, because it had been suggested that the new settlement might well be taken out of the jurisdiction of New South Wales and placed under his control.

The following month Swanston writes: 'If you find that we shall have any chance of obtaining the concession of the territory at Port Phillip you must write me as to what share your son is to have of it . . . I intend to invest in the new speculation £4000 on our joint account (subject to your approval)'. He then goes on to paint a rosy picture of the future: 'I look upon this speculation as a fortune for my children, even if we should only be allowed to keep quiet possession of the country. You will perceive by the report of Mr Wedge, who is now at Port Phillip, who was for a long period of years a surveyor in this Colony, and who resigned his situation to go there, that the country is everything Mr Batman reported it to be. The account of Buckley is most curious. To him Col. Arthur has sent a free pardon, so that now, with his aid, we shall have most complete control over all the natives, and will, through his information, be enabled to take possession of the finest tracts. He is chief of a tribe and possesses the most complete control over his people. We have engaged a medical man (Mr Thomson) who is to act also as a Catechist. We at present feed all the tribes daily, but on Mr Batman's return they are only to be fed every full moon. Clothes and presents of all kinds have been sent over to be distributed to them. No means will be left untried to conciliate and keep them on good terms. Buckley will be our mainspring'.⁽²³⁾

William Buckley, the escaped convict, after thirty years or so spent among the natives of Port Phillip, had appeared on the scene in June, and joined Batman's party as a kind of liaison officer between them and the natives.

Up to this time the Port Phillip Association had been a very unorthodox body, with no deed or other document defining the terms of the partnership. But now that its members had acquired such a princely heritage, it became necessary to put matters on a proper footing. A deed was prepared vesting the property in

Swanston, Gellibrand and Simpson, in trust for the Association, and the whole 600,000 acres were divided into seventeen parts or shares. Of these, two were allotted to Batman, one to each of the other members, and the remaining two were put into the name of George Mercer 'in trust'. Batman was allowed to select his shares, and the rest were parcelled out by lot.⁽²⁴⁾

The destination of the two shares held in trust by Mercer has never been disclosed, but we shall get a hint of it presently.

Meantime, while these self-deluded optimists were indulging in day-dreams of the shape of things to come, events were moving in other directions, and they soon received a nasty shock.

Sir Richard Bourke, who had succeeded Darling as Governor of New South Wales, had, of course, been informed of the invasion of his territory, and took prompt steps in retaliation. On 26th August, 1835, he issued a proclamation, declaring that the bargain made with the natives by the Port Phillip Association was an infringement of the rights of the Crown, and therefore null and void, and that all persons found in possession of the lands included therein were trespassers, and liable to be dealt with in like manner as other intruders upon the vacant lands of the Crown within the Colony of New South Wales.

This was a bombshell, though not altogether unexpected, as appears from Swanston's next letter to Mercer, in which he says: 'General Bourke's proclamation is in all the papers. We expected this . . . , but it has not deterred us in our operations, as we consider it a mere matter of course.'

He then proceeds to tell of the arrangements made for further purchases of stock, and for their transport to the mainland, including the chartering of one vessel and the buying of another. He also speaks, rather slightly, of certain 'squatters' who had gone over from Tasmania—(this would be the party led by John Pascoe Fawkner, who had occupied land on the Yarra). 'We will,' he says, 'no doubt, easily get rid of them—there is abundance of land without interfering with our domain,' and he concludes with this remark: 'I have no hesitation in saying that, if our claim is sanctioned by the Home Government, the Port Phillip establishment will be the first in Australia.'⁽²⁵⁾

As a matter of fact, the fulminations of the affronted Governor in Sydney—so airily dismissed by Swanston as 'a mere matter of course'—were not really so regarded, as is apparent from the letter which followed soon after: 'Col. Arthur,' he writes, 'seeing our preparations to take possession of Port Phillip, had several interviews with Mr Batman and the other gentlemen concerned, when he approved of the letter (Batman's) being addressed to him for the purpose of being forwarded to General Bourke, which he is to follow up with a recommendation that a military or civil officer should be sent there by him; that if General Bourke did not do so, Col. Arthur will then take upon himself to do so from this Colony. If this measure is adopted it will be a recognition of our claims by this Government at all events, and will prevent our being interfered with by other parties until the pleasure of the Home Government is known'.

He then assures Mercer that he is free to withdraw if he does not approve of being included in the enterprise, and promises, in that event, to repay all monies expended on Mercer's behalf: 'Should you not personally wish', he says, 'to engage in it, I have to hope that you will, notwithstanding, give to us the full weight of your influence, and if you cannot take the management of the trust we have forced upon you that you will have placed it into the hands of someone who will act for you in our behalf, and carry through with the Home Government our claims and proposals. We are most anxious and desirous that the Home

Government should accept our offer of a yearly tribute, rather than of a purchase money. It would be in every sense the most advantageous bargain for us to make.'⁽²⁶⁾

In March, 1836, he writes again: 'Our anxiety to hear from you and to learn the determination of Ministers is very great, more particularly since we have ascertained beyond a doubt that the country we have taken possession of at Port Phillip is the finest yet discovered . . . I forward you a map of the country as it has been divided mutually among the Association . . . You will perceive that our (divisions) fall together with the two shares *laid aside to be given away by you in England* . . .

You may therefore easily form some idea of our anxiety to learn the result of your application to the Home Government, and to know what hopes there are of keeping this fine country.

So fine a country as Dutigalla is worth a great deal more than we recommend you to offer to the Home Government—we are willing to give almost any sum of money for it'.

Then follow instructions to offer 2s. 6d. per. acre, and if this is accepted to come to an immediate settlement. If, however, the Government refused to confirm the Grants, or to accept any offer, and decided to put up the land for sale by the Colonial Government, then he suggests certain alternatives which need not concern us here, and he ends the letter with these words: 'Therefore, my dear sir, do not lessen your exertions in our favour. But, should it so happen that the Government will not acknowledge the Association, nor give us any reward for our enterprise, then I hope you will, if possible, afford the means that we individually may be enabled to keep for ourselves out two lots, and avail ourselves of the splendid opportunity of forming for our children the noblest landed estates.'⁽²⁷⁾

Further light is thrown upon the two shares so mysteriously entrusted to Mercer by a later letter from Swanston to James Simpson: 'The two shares which were first placed in Mercer's hands, to be at his sole disposal, and to be appropriated in whatever way he might consider most judicious, were appropriated, for, as you may suppose, it would have been impossible to have carried on the correspondence and done what he has done, although unsuccessfully, without very great aid in London and the only way to obtain this assistance was with the means placed in his hands. To have remunerated the parties so employed with money would have cost us more than we could have stood.

Mr Mercer did hint in one of his letters to whom he thought it necessary to give the shares, but most properly never, even in his private letters, has he ever mentioned their names, and to ask him the question I never will, knowing too well how delicately these matters must be managed in London'.⁽²⁸⁾

And there, I think, we may leave this unsavoury item in the promoters' negotiations in London.

The rest of the story is soon told. As might be expected, the British Government turned a deaf ear to all the arguments and proposals put before them. A despatch was sent by Lord Glenelg to Sir Richard Bourke, and on 9th September, 1836, the latter issued a second proclamation, notifying that His Majesty's Government had authorised settlement at Port Phillip under the same Crown lands regulations as were in force in other parts of New South Wales. The land was to be put up for sale by auction in Sydney.

But, although their bubble had burst, the syndicate felt that all was not lost. Swanston, Gellibrand and Simpson went up to Sydney and laid their claims before the Executive. After much discussion they were allowed, as an act of

grace, a remission to the amount of expenses they had incurred on any purchases they might choose to make at the forthcoming sale. This remission was fixed at the sum of £7000, and, at the sale, which was held in Sydney on 13th February, 1838, an agent for the Association bought about 9500 acres near Geelong for £7919 7s. 7d., from which the sum of £7000 was remitted. We can imagine the disappointment of the members of the Association at this end of all their dreams. But they seem to have taken it philosophically, at any rate on the surface.

In a letter to a friend, written shortly after the sale, Swanston remarks: 'My own affairs go on perhaps not quite as well as I could wish, but satisfactorily. But had Government acted towards us with a little more liberality I should perhaps have been too successful'.⁽²⁹⁾

These were brave words from a man who had seen a princely fortune vanish into thin air!

In another letter, however, written a few weeks afterwards, he shows us how bitter he really felt: 'The shareholders, who have in no way moved hand or foot in the question beyond paying their share of expenses, which one or two have not even done to this day, consider that the honour which has been conferred upon the acting members, who have had all the trouble and anxiety on the subject, have been sufficiently well paid for their exertions by such honour conferred.'³⁰

All I can say to them (is) that, had it not been for the exertions of my own friends and Mr Mercer's exertions, the £7000 would not have been confirmed by Lord Glenelg—so Col. Arthur and my friends write me.'⁽³⁰⁾

We need not follow further the fortunes of this little band of adventurers. One by one, its members fell by the wayside, and their shares were taken over by the survivors.

After years of worry and bitterness, of reproaches and recriminations—years during which we find Swanston declaring that he was overloaded with liabilities and worn out with anxiety,⁽³¹⁾ he and George Mercer appear to have emerged as the sole Proprietors.⁽³²⁾

It is not clear what ultimately became of Mercer's share, but in the end Swanston himself did not do so badly, and in the final winding up of his affairs his assets at Port Phillip were estimated to be worth upwards of £50,000.⁽³³⁾

YEARS OF DECLINE, 1835 TO 1849

The next ten years were to witness a gradual decline in the affairs of Charles Swanston, and of his pet creation, the Derwent Bank.

Who could have foreseen that the financial magnate of the middle thirties, that 'arrogant, proud, conceited and officious man'—as he is described by one who knew him,⁽³⁴⁾—the man who, at the pinnacle of his power, could write to a client of the Bank these words: 'As your style of address is not such as I can submit to, I have to request that you will, on receipt of this letter, nominate some other person as your agent to take charge of your affairs here, for I will have nothing more to say to them'.⁽³⁵⁾—Who could have foreseen that the same man would, ten years later, broken in mind and body, and crushed by an overwhelming weight of liabilities—himself be reduced to penury, and a fugitive from the wrath to come?

* This letter has evidently been miscopied by a clerk. The obvious meaning is that the shareholders referred to thought that the active members had been sufficiently rewarded 'by the honour conferred upon them' (whatever that was).

As so often happens, the process of such declension was gradual, and almost imperceptible, and, to do him justice, was set in motion by forces beyond Swanston's control.

John Dunn had opened his Commercial Bank of Tasmania in 1829, but as yet its competition had not seriously affected the other banks. But the advent in 1834 of the Bank of Australasia, with its vast resources of foreign capital, was another matter. This caused indignation and apprehension among the local bankers, though at first Swanston professed to treat it lightly. In a letter to George Mercer he writes: 'Mr Kinnear and the *great Banking establishment* have arrived. As there is a difficulty in obtaining gentlemen of respectability to join them as directors they cannot mature their schemes in Hobart Town. We cannot tell what effect their measures will have upon us. Should they begin by discounting at a low rate we must do the same; the consideration then will be whether it will be for our interest to continue our capital in banking at a rate of profit lower than can be obtained if employed in other ways, of which this Colony offers so many openings'.⁽³⁶⁾

As anticipated, the first thing the new bank did was to reduce the rate of discount from 10 per cent to 8 per cent. But this, apparently, did not worry Swanston, for in September 1836 he writes: 'Our dividend was 6½ per cent for the half year ending in July. The V.D.L. Bank gave 5 per cent. What the Bank of Australasia will give it is impossible to tell. Whatever it is, it must be very small. The reduction of the rate of discount . . . will, of course, materially reduce our profits, but I should hope, notwithstanding this reduction and additional competition in the banking here, that our dividends will never fall below 12 or 13 per cent. The Bank of Australasia has cut their own throats by reducing the rate. Mr Kinnear regrets his error—but too late'.⁽³⁷⁾

As soon as the Derwent Bank's astute managing director had got wind of the impending arrival of its formidable competitor, he had taken measures to meet its opposition. As already mentioned, in 1834 the bank's capital was increased to £100,000 and he embarked upon a vigorous campaign to sell the new shares. Letter after letter was written—all in the same strain—calling the attention of investors to the wonderful returns they could obtain by investing their money, either in the purchase of shares, or upon mortgages secured through the medium of the Bank. Dividends were promised of 14 to 15 per cent upon the bank shares and interest on mortgages from 10 to 15 per cent.

Attracted by these glittering prospects, money flowed in from all quarters in an ever-increasing tide, which not even the arrival of another 'foreign' competitor in the shape of the Union Bank of Australia—which opened its doors in 1838—could stem.

Writing in 1839 to Stephen Adey, who was then in England, he says: 'The applications for shares are now so great that I could easily increase our capital beyond £100,000'.⁽³⁸⁾

The boom in pastoral properties, caused by the demand for wool and other products, was then rising to its height, and 'gild-edged' securities were readily obtainable at rates of interest scarcely credible at the present day.

And so, for a time, the Bank floated on the crest of the wave, and Swanston, elated by his success, began to put into effect a plan which had been simmering in his mind, under which the Bank should cease to be a bank of issue and become chiefly a mortgage bank, fed by funds from overseas.

With this end in view, the issue of notes was suspended, and in 1841 the Bank's capital was raised to £250,000.

It may be observed here, that not all the money thus obtained was invested on mortgages. Quite a large amount of the funds received from abroad was sunk in the purchase of shares in the Port Phillip Bank, which had been founded in the infant City of Melbourne by Swanston and his associates, under a board of directors of which the chairman was Major G. D. Mercer, a son of his Scottish friend George Mercer. These shares were issued in Swanston's name, and gave him considerable voting power and influence in the operations of that Bank. Other overseas moneys went into Swanston's private ventures at Port Phillip, which, as we have seen, were at that time causing him some embarrassment, and in the final reckoning it turned out that many so-called 'securities' were either valueless or had no existence at all. In a letter written in 1850 by Mr John Walker, the liquidator of the Derwent Bank, he says: 'Your are aware that many parties have entrusted Captain Swanston with money under the impression that they have good security, and that the money had been laid out at Port Phillip and other places, and that they hold no such security, and that many of the transactions are of such a nature that they will not bear investigation'.⁽³⁹⁾

There is also evidence that some of the money entrusted to the Bank had been used in the purchase of wool.

But, in the meanwhile, for a year or two, the Rake's Progress went merrily on, with Swanston sitting in his chair, chanting his refrain of 13, 14 and 15 per cent—with an occasional bonus of 10 per cent thrown in,⁽⁴⁰⁾—and raking in the shekels from the eager crowd, who fought and jostled to secure a seat on the financial round-about.

In Swanston's letter book for 1841 we find him writing to Hamilton (the Bank's agent in London), urging him to persuade capitalists to take up shares in the Bank, and, wherever possible, to convert their mortgages into bank stock, where, he urged, the security would be better, and the returns more punctual. At the same time he himself writes to prospective clients (many of them women), telling them that he was putting their money into bank shares 'as the best investment' he could make for absentees.

But soon there was a rude awakening. The cloud of depression, which had been looming on the horizon—no bigger than a man's hand—gathered, and then, suddenly, descended. The boom had burst.

The price of wool fell to 1s. per lb., and values of land and stock dropped 50 per cent. The unhappy pastoralists were no longer able to pay the fantastic interest on their mortgages, and found themselves faced with ruin. They were even forced to boil down the carcasses of their sheep for tallow, and there was a flood of insolvencies.

This state of affairs, of course, had a disastrous effect upon the Bank. Its dividends fell lower and lower, and the angry and frightened overseas clients began to clamour for the sale of their shares, and the immediate return of the money they had entrusted to the managing director for investment.

In a private letter—one of the very few of that nature in the books—written by Swanston to his friend Captain Montagu, then at the Cape—he reveals clearly the state of his mind at that time, and his apprehensions for the future:

'My dear Montagu

... Things have taken since your departure such a sad turn that I begin seriously to be afraid of a general bankruptcy. All kinds of property, whether stock, land or shares in companies, are unsaleable, except at ruinous prices. Land and stock are not worth half what they were three years ago. Daily failures are the consequence.

In Melbourne the Port Phillip Bank has closed, and it is said will not repay to the shareholders 10s. in the pound.

In Launceston the failures are becoming daily more serious. I begin, consequently, to tremble for the banks—as yet we have sustained no loss, but we cannot expect to escape. We have thought it advisable for the present not to increase our capital or to borrow any more money . . .

(41)

In another letter—this time to Hamilton—he paints an even more gloomy picture: ‘So great distress and depression perhaps never overtook so rapidly any country as have overtaken this Colony in the last few months. I had foreseen that insolvencies would take place also, to a greater extent than in any former period, but the extent to which they have gone has far exceeded anything I could have believed would have been the case. We can expect no further capital from abroad, and it is not to the interest of the Derwent Bank to accept any or, increase its capital at present rates of interest. Therefore no more money for investment or shares must be accepted’.(42)

And through all the later pages of his letter book of this period we find the same *leit motif* of sadness and disillusionment, which finally culminates in an outburst of regret that he had ever come to Tasmania.(43)

And there was, indeed, good reason for his disquietude.

The Port Phillip Bank had been grossly mismanaged by its directors, who, with the exception of the managing director, had been lending the Bank's money to each other and to their friends for their private speculations, on security of bills which turned out to be worthless. In 1842 the Bank closed its doors and the shareholders were left with a loss of nearly 60 per cent of their capital.(44)

The Derwent Company, which had been formed out of the wreckage of the Port Phillip Association, had got into difficulties and was wound up in the same year.

The contract made by Swanston with the Government for the construction of water works for Hobart Town had been cancelled for lack of funds.

The Kapunda Mine in South Australia, in which he had sunk a considerable amount of money, had turned out a failure.

And—to cap all—he now saw his beloved Derwent Bank drifting slowly, but surely, on to the rocks of bankruptcy.

And it was not only his own misfortunes that preyed upon his mind and kept him constantly ‘both in body and mind in a state of fever’.(45) He was consumed with remorse for the troubles he had brought upon his friends. In one of the last letters of those dark days he writes: ‘I have suffered so much in consequence of the losses you and some of my other friends have sustained in these Colonies as almost to have broken me down. My own losses have been very heavy, but my own misfortunes do not bear upon me, nor do they give me so much concern, as what you and others have suffered’.(46)

Although, as early as 1844, Swanston could read well enough the writing on the wall, he was determined to delay as long as possible the final day of reckoning, and for the next five years he strove to keep the tottering fabric on its feet. He made frantic attempts to realise his own assets, and those of the Bank, and his last letter book is full of efforts to enforce payment of overdue bills and mortgages, accompanied by threats of foreclosure or legal proceedings, if his demands were not complied with. The crowning humiliation came when he had to go to the Bank of Australasia and the Union Bank for financial help. This must have been particularly galling to a man of his temperament.

In 1846 the Bank's premises in Macquarie Street, were sold to the Union Bank, and the Derwent Bank moved into the building adjoining (now part of the Tasmanian Club).⁽⁴⁷⁾ It was essential, of course, that no hint of the Bank's precarious position should get out to the public. This is probably the reason for the mysterious letter which he writes to Edward Dumaresq, saying: 'There is not a word of truth in the reports you have heard.'⁽⁴⁸⁾ and for his request to the Colonial secretary that the Bank's quarterly return should not be published.⁽⁴⁹⁾

But the tide was now flowing too swiftly to be stemmed.

In July, 1848, the Bank's half-yearly dividend fell to 3½ per cent, and in the following January no dividend at all was paid.⁽⁵⁰⁾ In April a circular was issued, calling up all overdrafts and refusing all further accommodation.⁽⁵¹⁾

Then came the *coup de grace*—the Bank of Australasia and the Union Bank declined to grant further assistance.

After this, events moved fast. On 27th September, 1849, Swanston resigned, and at a meeting of the shareholders it was resolved to wind up the Bank, and Mr John Walker was appointed managing director, with power to carry out the liquidation.

On 26th October a circular was sent out notifying debtors of the Bank that all amounts owing must be paid within six months.⁽⁵²⁾

Shortly afterwards Swanston assigned the whole of his estate in trust for his creditors, and set sail for America, leaving behind him debts aggregating £106,000 (£50,000 of which were owing to the Bank), and assets valued at less than half that amount.⁽⁵³⁾

He did not survive his downfall for long. After a brief stay in California he started back for Australia, and a few days afterwards—on 5th September, 1850—he died on board the vessel, and was buried at sea.⁽⁵⁴⁾

Victoria perpetuates his memory by the street in Melbourne which bears his name. In Tasmania the only memorial is Swanston-street at New Town.

We may say of him, as was said by Samuel Johnson of a greater man:

"He left the name, at which the world grew pale,
To point a moral, or adorn a tale."

(Vanity of Human Wishes)

REFERENCES⁽¹⁾

1. G. T. W. B. Boyes' Diary.
2. S. J. Butlin, *Historical Studies New Zealand and Australia*, 1943, Vol. 2, Nos. 6 and 7.
3. Swanston to Henderson: 5th May, 1837.
4. *Historical Studies*: op. cit.
5. Swanston to Mercer: 23rd September, 1833.
6. Swanston to Montagu: 17th February, 1843.
7. Swanston to Buchanan: 14th February, 1834.
8. Swanston to Mercer: 1st February, 1834.
9. *Historical Studies*: op. cit.
10. Deed of Settlement: 22nd December, 1827.
11. Leake Letters: 10th January, 1828.
12. Leake Letters: 11th July, 1828.
13. Swanston to (addressee not named): 4th March, 1832.
14. Swanston to Buchanan: 18th September, 1832.
15. Swanston to Mercer: 27th September, 1834.
16. Swanston to Mercer: 23rd October, 1834.
17. Swanston to Jardine Matheson & Co.: 1st June, 1835.
18. Swanston to Buchanan: 3rd June, 1835.
19. Swanston to Mercer: 1st October, 1835.
20. Swanston to Mercer: 29th October, 1835.
21. H. G. Turner, *History of the Colony of Victoria*, Vol. 1, pp. 102, *et seq.*
22. Swanston to Mercer: 30th July, 1835.
23. Swanston to Mercer: 27th August, 1835.
24. H. G. Turner: op. cit., pp. 131, 132.
25. Swanston to Mercer: 1st October, 1835.
26. Swanston to Mercer: 30th October, 1835.
27. Swanston to Mercer: 7th March, 1836.
28. Swanston to Simpson: 9th May, 1838.
29. Swanston to Henson (?): 26th March, 1838.
30. Swanston to Simpson: 9th May, 1838.

⁽¹⁾ With the exception of Nos. 2, 4, 9, 10, 21, 24, 44, 51 and 52 these references are in manuscript.

31. Swanston to G. D. Mercer: 16th January, 1845.
32. Swanston to Donaldson: 2nd October, 1844.
33. Walker to Dumaresq: 19th November, 1849.
34. G. T. W. B. Boyes' Diary: 28th October, 1846.
35. Swanston to Capt. Alex. Davidson: 20th September, 1838.
36. Swanston to Mercer: 29th October, 1835.
37. Swanston to Mercer: 4th September, 1836.
38. Swanston to Adey: 24th January, 1839.
39. Walker to Willis: 26th February, 1850.
40. Swanston to Robinson (undated): c. July, 1838.
41. Swanston to Montagu: 17th February, 1843.
42. Swanston to Hamilton: 13th July, 1843.
43. Swanston to Hamilton: 10th May, 1844.
44. Circular to Shareholders of Port Phillip Bank: 29th May, 1843.
45. Swanston to Hamilton: 10th May, 1844.
46. Swanston to Briggs: 27th January, 1845.
47. Swanston to Clark: 27th April, 1846.
48. Swanston to Dumaresq: 27th January, 1846.
49. Swanston to Col. Sec.: 24th April, 1846.
50. Swanston to Dumaresq: 9th January, 1849.
51. Circular to Shareholders of Derwent Bank: 27th April, 1849.
52. Circular to Debtors of Bank: 26th October, 1849.
53. Walker to Dumaresq: 17th June, 1851.
54. Walker to Robinson: 5th December, 1850.

Some Scientific Factors of Linguistic Change

By

L. A. TRIEBEL

(Read 2nd November, 1948)

One of our Vice-Chancellors recently said that the first proud duty of a university is to be the trustee of the intellectual and cultural heritage of mankind and to strive for cultural continuity in a world of rapid change.

It falls to linguists to consider the most important means by which our human heritage is shared and communicated—speech. In any study of man as a social being, speech is a central point from which radiate many forces and problems.

In the development of speech there are two basic factors—physiological equipment and the beginnings of social organisation. Sounds are perceived by a rapid rhythmical series of pressures on the ear-drum and speech sounds are produced by the vocal apparatus, flexible membranes in the larynx being capable of vibrating in a column of air whilst other organs form variable resonating cavities.

The origin of sound symbols has been seen in primitive speech symbols used in emotional situations—*O* for fear; *Ah!* for joy; *EE* for pain, and others. Paget, however, with a tongue-gesture theory, violated the time-scale when he identified the *i* (*ee*) sound with the idea of smallness and the *a*, *o* and *u* sounds with largeness or distance.

Our subject holds a challenge—are languages as clearly the product of evolution as is man himself?

At the outset it is necessary to distinguish sound from phoneme and both from their graphic representations. The sound is absolute, the fixed quantity of a physiological and acoustic nature; the phoneme is relative, the result of historical evolution, and may have shadings dependent on the nature of neighbouring sounds (*cf.*, the *k* of *key* and *cool* or the *l* in French *lac* and *peuple*). Again, the vowel element in *bone* is a phoneme probably once sounded *a*; the present pronunciation varying between *o* and *u*.

The story of the Tower of Babel is moral allegory. Many languages are as clearly the product of evolution as is man or any other organism. For about 3000 years, evolution can be seen as the central fact in some recorded languages—wonderful to observe. There are, however, still hundreds of unwritten languages on the globe and even within a comparatively small area there are scores of entirely unrelated languages.

Languages do evolve and change continuously; *e.g.*, Latin lives on in Italian, in essentials just spoken Latin grown older, although, of course, many new words have been borrowed from neighbours. Spanish, Portuguese, French and Roumanian are other sub-divisions of Vulgar Latin. By going farther back, we see that Latin, Greek, Celtic, Germanic and Slavic were all, in say 1500 B.C., blood-brothers with a common parent-language, the Indo-European, which itself soon divided into two main groups, the *centum*- and *satem*-languages, according as the Proto-Indo-European guttural K is represented by a guttural or by a sibilant. Indo-European sub-groups are Indo-Aryan, Armenian, Hellenic, Illyrian, Italian, Celtic, Germanic and Letto-Slavonic.

There are more families of languages, those to which, *e.g.*, belong Chinese, Turkish and Eskimo. Four main types of linguistic families are known. First, there are the isolating (tone) languages, mainly monosyllabic, with no inflections or parts of speech. Colloquial Chinese has only about 500 different root words, monosyllables; but by intoning each syllable differently, the Chinese achieve a vocabulary of over 2000 words.

A second family is composed of agglutinative languages; among them are Turkish, Finnish and Magyar. Their basic principle is the use of affixes, before and behind, in themselves not meaningless and incapable of standing alone as, *e.g.*, in *be-fog(g)-ed*, but themselves individual words capable of being glued together into larger ones as in our *longshoreman*.

A third major group consists of inflectional or amalgamating languages, in which words are constructed by the addition (to the root) of one or more prefixes and/or of one or more suffixes, such additions not being themselves recognisable words, *e.g.*, *re-cooked*. Moreover, prefix, root or suffix, one or more may be internally modified, *e.g.*, French *apporter*, with assimilation of the prefix *ad-*.

The largest of all language families, the Indo-European, is inflectional and its speakers embrace about one-third of mankind. Latin, English and Hebrew are examples of widely differing sub-types; thus Latin is more inflectional and less analytical than modern English which expresses many syntactical relations by independent words. Apart from the Indo-European, the other chief families of this type are the Semitic, like Hebrew and Arabic, and the Hamitic, *e.g.*, Egyptian.

The fourth type of language family is polysynthetic or holophrastic (= phrase-as-a-whole) in which sentence or connected thought becomes one complex word and the most significant sounds of each ingredient are welded into a compact mass. This technique is evident in native American languages, *e.g.*, in Cherokee, where *nadholinin* (bring us the boat) is made up from the basic *naten* (bring); *amokhol* (boat) and *nin* (us).

Few languages, however, belong exclusively to one type, and some partake of the salient features of two or more types. Australian aboriginal tongues are all complex. Basque is a mixture of agglutination and polysynthesis. But European languages, with the major exceptions of Basque, Finnish and Hungarian, are descended from Indo-European, perhaps first spoken along the Danube. Its dialectal forms spread over Europe and much of Asia. Change may have operated swiftly and offshoots of the mother-tongue rapidly become mutually unintelligible.

The original Indo-Europeans left no written records; but by deduction from observed facts of present-day and older recorded languages, philologists have re-created Indo-European. Students of Sanskrit (= 'perfectly written') a very old Indian language, discovered close correspondences in vocabulary and grammar between Sanskrit on the one hand and Greek and Latin on the other. When the Germanic and Slavonic tongues were also compared, the resemblances were found to be too consistent to be accidental and the farther back one went the closer became the resemblances. So sure were the lines of convergence, that from examining a word or structure in one language, a corresponding word, form or construction could often be predicted and found in another language of the family. The small differences in one Indo-European language from another are apparent from the following equivalents and resulted from discovered spontaneous changes or 'laws' which often have practical value in determining the meaning of words:—

GREEK	LATIN	ENGLISH	FRENCH	GERMAN
frater	frater	brother	frère	Bruder
treis	tres	three	trois	drei
pod	ped	foot	piéd	Fuss

The difference between, say, *pod* and *foot* ($p > f$) is only apparently great and was subject to the consonantal change known as Grimm's Law. Such laws are statements of accredited changes classified on the basis of time and spatial relationships and admit of no exceptions.

The story of the original Indo-Europeans, who probably called themselves *Wiros* (Lat. *vires*) may be deduced with reasonable certainty. Their language was highly inflectional and their nature urged them to expansion. In each of the languages descended from Indo-European there occur words obviously identical for certain objects and actions—hence it is deduced that the parent language knew those things, animals or actions, *e.g.*, wolves. The horse, ox, sheep, pig, hound, wheeled wagons, yokes, mead, copper and barley are other examples. They had words for water-borne vessels, the sea or a lake, and for the normal family relationships. Their religion was polytheistic and they migrated in waves. After leaving the mother-nation, each group gradually developed dialectal peculiarities like Celtic, Teutonic and Italic, which in time again sub-divided.

Divergence was accelerated by lack of intercourse, absorption in foreign tribes and the absence of records to act as brakes on unrestricted changes. Recently in Turkestan, a dead city of a long-forgotten people was unearthed. Tablets with writings were found and read easily; the language of this former Asiatic race was in essentials almost identical with the present-day Irish language. The linguistic effects of invasion can of course be illustrated from the history of England. Now the spread of literacy, like wireless, does restrain the growth of dialects. English itself has during the last 300 years split only into a few main new forms, like Standard English, Pidgin and American.

There is no necessary correlation of race and language. Many European languages are fast disappearing through the competition of stronger neighbours. Cornish has gone; Gaelic, Breton and Welsh are dwindling; the German Wends (Slavs) have, I think, lost their language. In Ireland, Erse has been artificially revived; in the U.S.S.R., encouragement is given to languages like Ukrainian and the Caucasian tongues. The ups-and-downs of a language do not always reflect changes in racial groupings; thus the racially identical negroes of the United States and of Haiti speak English and French as their respective native tongues. The ancient Iberian race survives in the stock of English, French and Spanish peoples; but only Basque remains as an Iberian language.

As a rule, national unity of fusing races has been most fully achieved where linguistic minorities have *not* persisted. In Great Britain the price of unity has been the surrender of private idiom; we may perhaps note a contrast with India. In the sphere of government and in *esprit de corps*, a language barrier is an obstacle to fraternisation and to cultural activities, as in literature which, in a broad sense, is the vehicle of tradition. Henry Ford expressed the opinion that Europe needs about fifty more dead languages.

Linguistic and cultural fusion has often been an easy process. Caesar conquered Gaul and the country was romanised within a few centuries; a civilisation which absorbed the Frankish invaders. Celtic and Frankish contributions to Romance speech were small; but the racial mixture of the French remained with later Northman additions. Celts and Franks were intelligent mixers.

Chinese is an isolating language; Japanese, mainly agglutinative, is more complex. Such a linguistic gulf made Japan's 'Co-prosperity Policy' rather unreal.

There are linguistic oddities and antagonisms. In Norway, educated people prefer a form of Danish to Norwegian. The Prussians were Slavonic invaders speaking Old Prussian, having affinities with Russian; a heavy blow to Nazi pride. There is Afrikaans in South Africa as a rival to English; but speakers of both

languages are outnumbered by natives having Bantu dialects. Franco in Spain suppressed linguistic minorities. The Roman rule in many countries was, however, tolerant of indigenous cultures; Rome was prepared to adapt the native material to the peaceful, prosperous ends of government: especially in France, Italy, Roumania and Spain. Latin became the international language of churchmen, scientists and scholars. Switzerland is nationally fused, with four languages; external pressure has operated here in solving minority problems. But in spite of Palestine's central position on the old trade routes, the Jews preserved their language by internal cohesion.

So far, it has been implied that culture and language are casually related. By culture we mean the set of ideas, and the activities based on ideas, shared by a given group of human beings and transmitted. Thus the culture of Australia is in essentials British.—Now does culture reflect a language or does language reflect a culture, or is there no casual connection between them?

Those taking the third view point out that great civilisations have been developed by the Chinese, speaking an isolating tongue, by the Aztecs of Mexico (holophrastic), the Arabs of the great age of Islam (part-inflectional), and by the ancient Greeks (highly inflectional). Yet all these cultures differ and there is no evidence to show that Greek culture could have developed in Mexico or Mexican culture in Greece.

It is difficult to say to what extent a culture depends on a language; but a culture that makes much of abstract ideas must have a language in which these are adequately voiced. This is possible in all four language types, *e.g.*, Chinese renders the idea 'Man's nature is fundamentally noble' as 'man root good'. Yet some people may feel that an inflectional language is the best vehicle for debating subjects like metaphysics or mathematics; however, analytical languages like English and Chinese do permit a high level of abstraction.

What appears less controversial is that a culture is expressed in perfect naturalness only in the language of those who have that culture. The Romans, *e.g.*, were never quite at home with Greek philosophical ideas; their genius was more practical.

Again, there is a difference in the expression in three idioms of the same basic idea: Liberté, égalité, fraternité; Government of the people, by the people, for the people; Democracy. They are translations, each of the other; but are there no differences?

The culture of Australians is easily expressed in English; but the native tongues of Australia have often no possible means of translating many of our ideas. It would be almost impossible for the Old School Tie to be in the least real to some tribes. Such phrases (and all languages have many similar emotional examples) cannot be translated without adding to or subtracting from the meaning. The culture of another group is acquired only with difficulty by those to whom that language remains foreign.

It was once held that primitive peoples had a very small vocabulary. Facts do not allow such a generalisation. Max Müller stated that an illiterate farm-labourer of the last century used scarcely more than 300 words for all purposes; but observers disagreed about what constitutes a separate word. Now the *Oxford English Dictionary*, as my colleague, Mr. Harwood, pointed out, has about 240,000 main entries; but the normal adult speaker probably knows about 30,000 words and uses only some 10,000. A child of 3 to 4 commonly has a vocabulary of 600-700 words. Shakespeare used 24,000 words; the Authorised Version only 7200. Zulu has 1700 words; Dakota (American Indian) 19,000 and Navaho 11,000. Hence size of vocabulary cannot be considered to be a reliable index of cultural potentiality. Moreover, from a comparative examination of literatures, it is not always possible

to say that one language is, as a linguistic instrument, more adaptable to literature than is another.—Regarding form, there is no mechanical reason why any speech adequate for human intercourse cannot also be adequate to the recording of that intercourse. Literature is often based on a small vocabulary and the judgment of the form of expression is dependent on fashions in taste. In any case, poetry exists prior to writing.

Language, culture and literature seem to depend on a similar set of human faculties and on biological environment. The main instrument for the transmission of a culture is language, man's exclusive property.

By natural, gradual changes Indo-European has produced languages so far apart as English and Irish. Very few people in that time were aware of change. Each of us, however unconscious of the fact, shares in the process. We do not usually look back to our early years when we spoke differently from now. Phoneticians detect minute variations which in a short time produce a varying pronunciation. Change in speech is most rapid in the youngest of co-existing generations and most new fashions in words remain unnoticed by elders. Shakespeare's grammar was much like ours; but his pronunciation would be somewhat unintelligible to modern ears, unless, as my colleague, Mr. Harwood, reminded me, the diphthongisation of the Old English long vowels had been completed in Shakespeare's day and dialect.

One offshoot of the Indo-European race spoke Germanic which itself split into the West and East Germanic dialects. The chief sub-groups of West Germanic were Old English and Old High German. The relationship is still apparent.

Differences and resemblances can be traced, defined and to some extent explained. The words *heart* and *Herz* will serve in illustration. The initial *h* in both is known to come from Indo-European *kh*, an aspirated stop, which early changed to the spirant *x* (chi) later simplified to the aspirate *h*. Latin and its descendant French preserved the palatal stop *k*, as in L. *charta* and Fr. *carte*, from which we get *card*, a late borrowing with changed meaning. But the direct offspring, resulting from the first sound-shift, of *charta* in the two Germanic languages is *heart* and *Herz*, as are *hound* and *Hund* from L. *canis*. Other early sound-shifts were I.-E. *bh*, *dh*, *gh* > Germanic *b*, *d*, *g*; *p* (*h*) > *f*; *th* > *t*; and *b* > *p*, *d* > *t*, *g* > *k*. Hence we expect the *p* of L. *pater* to become the *f* of *father*, and the *d* of Greek *deka* and L. *decem* to be the *t* of *ten*. Even the apparent exceptions of the I.-E. sound-shifts have been codified as Verner's Law and shown to depend on 'accent protection'; or to be later borrowings from Latin and Greek. Close linguistic relationship is again shown by *brother*, once identical with I.-E. *bhrátar* (L. *frater*); but early Germanic in certain circumstances changed original *t* to *th*, and original *bh* to *b*, whilst Latin preserved *t*, and changed the 'graphy' *bh* to *f*.—The difference in accentuation between *posséss* and *póssible*, e.g., is explicable only in the light of the shifting I.-E. system of stress.

Some apparent violations of phonetic correspondences have been found to depend on secondary factors like dissimilation, the time element and, above all, as Verner discovered, stress. Thus we would expect for I.-E. *t* as A.S. *θ* and Ge. *d* (cf., the ancestry of *three*); but contrast the cognates of Sanskrit *bhrátar* with those of *pitár*; in the latter case, only E. *father* is regular. When the chief accent immediately preceded the unvoiced stop, it changed to a spirant; when the main stress followed, a voiced sound resulted; cf., *póssible* and *posséss*. Verner's law helps us to determine the position of the accent in I.-E. words, as variable as in Greek. Germanic stressed the root syllable. Variations of stress and pitch are factors of national speech melodies and have, as in the work of Armstrong and

Constenoble for French, revealed a wide range of significant patterns. Free accentuation for emphasis, or for emotional and oratorical purposes, is a recognised factor in speech.

In the early centuries of our era, further consonantal changes, grouped as the second sound-shift, occurred. These coincided with the expansion South and South-East of the Germanic peoples who split into Low and High German. English and Dutch remained on the older stage and successfully resisted, *e.g.*, the High German shifts of the stops, *p, t, k* to the affricates (stop + spirant) *pf, ts* (*z*), *k x* (*ch*); or, after a short vowel, to the aspirants *f, z* (*s*), *h* (*ch*) (O.E. *ic* > *ich*). Later often *d* > *t* and *ρ* (*th*) > *d*. Thus the German shifts of *p* to *f* (*f*) and of *t* to *z* in *ship, Schiff* and *heart, Herz* are regular second sound-shifts.

Linguistics aims at defining universal categories of speech phenomena and the factors on which these depend. But there are also non-universal categories and somewhat unsystematic diachronic (+ synchronistic) speech phenomena which are in danger of being overlooked by tabulators of sound-shifts, *e.g.*, some in Armenian and in modern Danish (*cf.*, 'Lingua', I, 1). Yet the general principle is clear—'La linguistique aboutit à des formules du type "si . . . toujours et partout", énonçant entre les faits des rapports conditionnellement nécessaires, donc à des lois semblables à celles des sciences exactes + la tâche prochaine . . . sera d'établir un aussi grand nombre de ces lois'.—And these 'laws' are often laws of 'passage', *e.g.*, the Fr. change between the 5th and 8th centuries of *c* (*k*) + *a* > *tch*, which later > *ch*. The mark of consonantal change is the reversal of the positive and negative terms of the original opposition, a reversal due to an enlargement or diminution of the regions where they are in use. Danish *b, d, g* have recently lost their voice and, after *s* especially, *p, t, k* are softened (*skrive* > *sgrive*), a reversal of two series of stops which sheds light on some earlier changes. Further, physiological and social factors are insufficient to account for such changes, but other sound-shifts are illuminating. In French, the tendency to approximate *brun* to *brin* and to make *joli* > *jaeli* might be noted here.

From the Roman invasion to the Norman conquest, Celts, Romans, Angles, Saxons, Jutes, Danes and Norman-French left linguistic traces in Britain. English has changed greatly; its vocabulary has been enriched by borrowings. A language meets changing conditions and varying needs. The wear and tear to which as an instrument it is subject implies change and addition in vocabulary, together with shifting meanings and functions. By the 13th century, however, our language begins to look modern:—

Sumer is i-cumen in;
Lhude sing, cucu . . .

On passing to Chaucer, we notice that many new foreign, chiefly Latin and French, words have crept in, like April, March, pierce, virtue, engender, flower, pilgrimage and strange. Most end-syllables and cumbersome inflexions have dropped off since; but foreign borrowing has increased. Grammar has simplified, yet the old basic vocabulary has remained and we are speakers or writers of good English in our sincerest moments when we say—'I love you dearly' rather than 'I entertain for you a profound affection'.

Languages do change without interference from outside, yet external factors periodically play their part. The coming of the Danes helped to fret away the cumbersome Old English endings and many Danish names were adopted. The Normans in England used their Northern French as the official tongue for about two centuries. The bulk of the English people used only such French words as became needful in their dealings with the master-class. The opening chapter of

Scott's *Ivanhoe* sheds light on that linguistic position until in the end the Normans, like the Danes, adopted English. Sometimes the native word was excluded by the newcomer, e.g., *despair* ousted the *wanhope*; or else the French established itself beside the English in such pairs as *royal* and *kingly*; or the Danish *hale* by the side of whole. Such neologisms built up an astoundingly large vocabulary of near-synonyms making possible delicate shades of meaning. Once the path was blazed the word-invasion grew and it has never ceased. The scientist, needing a new term, has had recourse to dog-Latin or Greek or French forms: instead of *far-talker*, he chose *telephone*.

In addition to such broad movements as growth in vocabulary and simplification of grammar, common to many languages, it is clear that everywhere there persists a movement towards standard speech, arising from the medley of dialects. In France *le Francien*, the speech of Paris and its environment, gradually prevailed; standard English emerged in the fifteenth century. In centres of government and trade or learning, such as Paris, London and Oxford, the mixing of speakers of various dialects produced a blend which continues to spread; printing, popular education, the press and broadcasting are forces acting in the direction of making standard speech less and less a class dialect. By 1660, both English and French *grammar* were practically standardised: it was the century of the Authorised Version and of the French Academy, as well as an age of political centralisation. Many once purely dialectal forms went over into the standard language: French, e.g., absorbed the Provençal *amour*, the Eastern dialectal *oie*, for *oue*, the Picard *caboche* ('nut'); the Norman *benêt*, and Breton *crevette*; English absorbed some Norman-Picard-French forms with the initial unshifted *ka* (*ca*) and *ga*, like *carpenter* and *garden*, as distinct from Central *charpentier* and *jardin*. Both English and French took *dupe* from argot (thieves' slang). To *poll*, go to the *poll* and *poll*-(tax) came from twelfth-century Picard-French *pules* (folk, people). Contrariwise, the Devon and Cornish *youm* (you am = you're) has gone into nautical French in the sense of a British sailor or any Briton.

Often the treatment of borrowed words is a challenge, for one must take into account pronunciation at the time of borrowing, manner of transmission and the peregrinations of the newcomer. Sounds foreign to a language are rendered by near equivalents; thus French importations like *bifteck*, *rosbif*, *paquebot*, *redingote* (< riding-coat), *beaucuit* (< buckwheat), *contredanse* (< country-dance) and *le fifocloque* are phonetically naturalised and to some extent associated with known words. Modern French with its tense 'dégagé' final vowels, reduced diphthongs. Popular etymology is ever active, cf., E. *grog* (< the *gros grain* clothing worn by Admiral Vernon); Fr. *le jeu de l'âne sale* (game of Aunt Sally); Ge. *Maulwurf* (< *moltwerfe* = earth-thrower; (cf., *mole* and *mould*).

One-word histories often reveal startling changes in meaning. Latin *caput* (head) became Italian *capo*, later extended to *cappochia* which gives French *caboche* (slang = 'nut') and this was borrowed in Middle English and became *cabbage*. A *milliner* was a *Milan-er* when Milan was the centre of fashion.

Some words are based on personal names perpetuating the fame of men and women who never expected to be immortalised. The simple *derrick* (type of crane) is so named after Alan Derrick, a flourishing hangman of Queen Elizabeth's time who plied his trade on Tyburn. The fourth Earl of Sandwich solved the problem of solid refreshment during his long hours at Brook's gaming tables by ordering slices of meat to be served between rounds of toast; so he christened the sandwich. In 1880, Parnell advocated social ex-communication for those who dealt in Irish estate; his first victim was a Captain Boycott; he gave a word to many languages.

Bloomers are a tribute to an American lady, Mrs. Bloomer, who introduced a trouser-like garment, designed to reach below the ankles, in the interest of modesty. The word *doily* commemorates the business acumen of Edward Doyley, a mercer in the Strand. His speciality was 'dainty and cunning table-mats', chiefly imported from France, and the public honoured them with his name. The term *martinet* resulted from the stern discipline of a General Martinet of Louis XVI's reign.

In 1759, France was finding difficulty in balancing her budget. Following the reckless Scot, John Law, a new Controller-General, Etienne de Silhouette, instead of attacking the extravagance of Court and nobles, indulged merely in a few petty economies. Among other measures, he decided that portraits in oils were too expensive, and he invented a new, cheap method of portraiture. The fashion was a passing-craze; but a word was added to many languages—the *silhouette*.

Such linguistic additions are obvious; but what further factors cause changes in pronunciation? These can usually be traced and explained; but a knowledge of phonetics and of the vocal organs is necessary. First, the chances of repeating or imitating at will *exactly* any sound are small indeed; there is Imperfect Auditional Imitation.—The tongue and lips alone are fairly bulky and their movement cannot be governed to a hair's breath. We can, however, aim at a given position of the organs, but the phonetician is sure of the exact target; its area is easily misplaced. In individuals and communities, many misses gradually alter our vague notion of the target and in a generation or two this cumulative displacement produces marked changes. Yet it is likely that laziness, economy of effort in speech, is the greatest factor of such changes. An example; how do many people tend to say *git* for *get*? Because *i* is made further forward in the mouth than *e*, and in passing from the back position for palatal *g* to the front one for the dental *t*, the tongue tends to over-run the *e* position in anticipation of the *t*. So the back *l* in Old French *chevals* was vocalised by the back vowel *a* to form the *o* sound of (*chev*) *aux*. There is much assimilation in spoken languages. Sometimes, however, dissimilation operates; the desire to avoid too close repetition of a sound, as in French *orphelin* (< Vulgar Latin *orfaninu*).

The results of imperfect auditional imitation and of economy of effort are familiar. These and other factors, like new contacts or geographical isolation, are vital in the attempt to rationalise speech changes.

It is therefore pertinent to analyse some recognised phonological features in the light of such factors.—Can we, *e.g.*, apply the *lex inertiae* to the common processes of monophthongisation and diphthongisation, vowel mutation and gradation, glide sounds, assimilation and dissimilation, palatalisation and metathesis?

Such changes are due mainly to a speaker's normal use of the minimum of energy needed to convey meaning; they are facilitating devices.—What of diphthongisation from this point of view?—In English, both it and monophthongisation are active tendencies, if unconscious operations (*cf.*, the pronunciations of *game*). Acoustically, vowel qualities depend on varying combinations of overtones with the fundamental note, modified by the shape of the resonant cavity which itself may be influenced by a neighbouring sound. So the change to a 'darkened' vowel in *was* is due to the bilabial consonant, whilst 'open' French vowels may result from the nature of the following consonant, just as *Jaël* for *joli* exemplifies mutation or palatalisation under the influence of the final *i*.

A diphthong is two vowels of differing sonority, one merging into a closer one. The diphthongisation of long vowels (*mīn* > *mine*) in which stress may be a factor, has physical and psychological causes. It is difficult to keep our speech organs

in one position for a long sound without our thoughts running ahead to the next and we are apt to introduce qualitative variations in order to produce an easy rhythmical curve.

Again, a new vowel may result from the vocalisation of a consonant, or a glide may develop between vowel and consonant (dial. *miulk*). Vulgar Latin reduced old diphthongs while it developed new ones (*audire* > *odire* > *oire* > *oyer ouir*). Whereas English had passed through cycles of diphthongisation and monophthongisation, French is now stable in this respect (*aqua* > *ewe* > *ε a U* > *ε U* > *ε o* > *o*). Reduction seems to be gaining ground in English (cf., *game* > *gam*; *tower* > *t a*). These are economies of speech. Dialect geography has delimited many variations.

Assimilation and dissimilation are also speech facilitations or adjustments. Regressive assimilation is heard in *blaegb* ∅ :d and Fr. *chambre* (< *camera* > *tchāmbr* > *shā:br*) > *tfāmbr* > *fā:br* where the velum was lowered for *m* and rose to *r* before the lips left the *m* position and the release of the lips produced the *b* glide. Dissimilation avoids monotony (Fr. *marbre*, E. *marble*; L. *flebilis*, Fr. *faible*). In V.L., the prosthetic *e* (*i*) evolved as a glide before *s* + consonant whenever the preceding word ended in a consonant (*scolā* > *iscola* > *escole* > *école*). A somewhat sporadic speech facilitation is termed metathesis, the interchange of phonemes within a word (L. *parabola* > Spanish *palabra*).

Palatalisation is an assimilative change caused by a neighbouring front sound like *yod*. The articulation is modified by pressing the tongue upward against the hard palate (Fr. *fille*, *enseigne*). French evolved a palatalised *Kj* all the way to an *s* (V.L. **cjelo* > *ciel*). Norman and Picard dialects, however, resisted the palatalisation of *Ka* and *ga* to *ch f* and *ʒ*, and those dialects gave English forms like *castle*, *garden*. A front vowel can palatalise various neighbouring sounds (*rubēus* > *rouge*). Vocalisation of a consonant between vowels is another type of assimilation (L. *vita* > *vida* > *vitha* > *vie*).

—What of the vowel mutation termed *Umlaut*, and *Ablaut* or vowel gradation?

English, as distinct from German, has few surviving *Umlaut* forms (*mouse*, *mice*). These are vowel assimilations (Ge. *Haus*, *Häuser* < *hūsir*) by which a back vowel is approximated to a following front vowel by an anticipatory tongue movement, another speech facilitation.

The Indo-European vowel change known as gradation is preserved, e.g., in the root forms of 66 English strong verbs and in other Germanic languages. The desire for uniformity is apparent in the increased weak conjugation and in a child's analogical formation like *telled* for strong-weak *told*.

Gray showed that qualitative vowel gradations first concerned the alternation of *e* and *o* (Greek *légo*, *lógos*) the former originally unaccented (L. *tego*, *toga*). Such qualitative alternation was most likely due to stress or its absence and soon acquired useful differences of aspect, the *e* grade being imperfective and that with *o* perfective. I know of no other explanation, although in some languages, like O. Persian, *Ablaut* was perhaps due to the same cause as *Umlaut*. The origin of the weak verbal dental endings is seen in early forms like O.E. *andswerian* + *dyde* > *answerede*. In Romance languages, stress and rhythm gave vowel variations of the *viens*, *venons* type.

In preserving speech forms and syntactical usage, the written language is of course a powerful stabilising factor. I can say little here of grammatical change or of the vital rôle of analogy in speech and writing, so well treated by Bloomfield. But it is indubitable that the ear, rather than the eye, is most concerned in speech changes.

In semantic development, the fertilising factor of metaphor and other figures of speech is apparent. Secondary meanings grow out of primary significant forms and vastly increase their range (*cf.*, the extensive idiomatic uses of *foot* and *hand*).

Sound-change is sometimes more easily traced than change in meaning. Various factors, including aural or visual analogy, and sometimes pure chance, may be involved in semantic change. One element may predominate in a name which is then restricted to that element, *e.g.*, *deer* once meant any animal (= German *Tier*). Or a secondary meaning displaces a primary; *villain* originally meant *serf*. Euphemism also brings changes, as when *stomach* substitutes for *belly*. Lack of understanding and the desire for emphasis produce other semantic developments, *e.g.*, '*awfully pretty*'.

Word-shortening accounts for *mob* (< Latin *vulgus mobile*, fickle crowd); *cab* (riolet); *miss* (tress); (hi) *story*; French *un vapeur* (< *bateau à vapeur*), etc. Moreover, in rapid speech, words are run together to form sense breath groups; a telescopic process. Yet it seems likely that changes in meaning, sound and grammatical form, will be slowed down by universal education and radio; such factors tend to set up widespread standards gradually ousting dialects, at any rate in the regional sense; yet with modern transport and population-changes, occupational and group idioms persist.

One source of dialect is the influence of migrants, as in the Northern dialects of England which owed much to Danish infusion; but dialects may develop in communities free from foreign intermixture. Phonetic aberrations of an individual due to a speech defect, may spread, as may the vocabulary of a regional, social or occupational group with wide internal intercourse in countries having no physical barriers. There is, however, the tendency for the norm to assert itself continually.

All things flow. This then holds true of grammar. Like the French Academy in its dictionary, the linguist records and analyses observed, heard facts; *on dit* . . . He states the changes determining fashion; he does not legislate for the future. Grammatical rules are relative; once *him* was only a dative case which regularly gave the dialectal or slang '*un*'. Fetishes like the rule that a preposition should never be used to end a sentence with and the ban on *all* split infinitives imply a worship of dead ghosts. In spite of the pedants, '*he dared not go*' has ousted *durst* and there seems no good reason why the gardener should not cut his *gladioluses* and catch his *buses*.

Commonsense gives us little leave to legislate: our function is to record observed facts. Perhaps a safe rule is found in the tag:—

'Be not the first by whom the new is tried,
Nor yet the last to cast the old aside'.

Spelling is in some languages outrageous. Reformers are aghast to see that *fish* could, if we adopt the spelling of the *f*, *i*, and *sh* sounds in *enough*, *women* and *nation* respectively, be written *ghoti*. One letter may stand for more than one sound; one sound may be differently represented; there are silent letters; one sound is represented by two letters, and two or more sounds are rendered by one letter.—But would spelling reform on a phonetic basis result in economy of effort in reading? American practice has moved slightly in this direction and the International Phonetic Association invented an alphabet having an unvarying single sign for each sound and it is used by scientific linguists everywhere for recording. Only by such an alphabet can the differing pronunciations of identical words be accurately transcribed (*cf.*, D. Jones's *English Pronouncing Dictionary*). New evolving sounds are given new symbols. Admittedly, phonetic spelling would involve a break with sentimental traditions and the practical difficulties of its

full adoption appear almost insurmountable. But any alphabet is more or less an invention. Modern language teaching begins with sounds and transcribes them in the symbols of the International Phonetic Association, *e.g.*, the French pure vowel *o* is so written and only later are its orthodox 'graphies' *o*, *au*, *eau*, *ot*, etc., discovered by the learner. This is an easy process.

Speech is a motor activity of tongue, mouth and throat; our speech-movements are controlled from the appropriate motor centres of the cortex, although these are not as clearly defined as the visual, auditory, motor and olfactory centres on the brain. Language is not, like eating and walking, an inherited biological activity; it is acquired. Eliminate society and there is no speech; change the society and you change a child's speech. Instinctive groans and cries are not speech.

To the psychologist, speech is primarily an auditory function. Communication by gesture or writing is a substitute for the direct communication of sound-groups to the auditory receiving apparatus. Only seldom does writing or spelling affect speech, as, *e.g.*, when the *h* sound came back into *hotel*, or when Americans say *schedule* (? on the analogy of *scheme*).

The nervous system is normally adequate to produce changes in speech: the neurones of the cortex make possible almost unlimited patternings and combinations or association paths. The act of talking involves at least five brain tracts; but the product of this process and ever-shifting adjusting network must be mentally associated with some element of experience. This is the meaning, agreeing with an identical association in other minds. Words become symbols of concepts.

The problem as to whether thought is dependent on speech has often been raised. Some investigators hold that thought is impossible except on the substratum of words. Yet words, although not consciously framed or spoken, may exist as mental processes without vocal expression. Another school holds that thought deals in images—remnants of sensations—and *may* then be translated into language. Pillsbury compromised: thought might be of both origins. Thus thought in images is probable in musical composition; but thought is based on words when the subject-matter is abstract. Language is an instrument put to use on both the lower and the conceptual planes—the instrument makes possible the product and this in turn refines the instrument. The growth of speech is, however, generally dependent on the development of thought. Experiment and introspection may solve the problem of 'inner speech'.

In our discussion on linguistic changes, the vitalistic theory of evolution has been implied; a theory holding that evolution is a process whereby the life-force of the universe, immanent in all matter, fulfils itself purposefully in new patternings. Whilst the vitalist does not suggest that there are no scientific laws, such a vital principle is opposed to the mechanistic theory that evolution is due to unchanging scientific laws which are *all* physical. Even on the plane of plant life, a degree of individuality and freedom appears. In animal life there emerges a greater power of self-locomotion, as well as the phenomena of mind and purposive if inarticulate language, but with not much conventional meaning. Yet an African Bushman's child can by education reach a standard of understanding for abstractions and time and space relations impossible to the higher apes. Man can by word-symbols differentiate the facts of the physical world.

—How shall we then conceive the emergence of language and what were its original features? These are questions under consideration, involving the monogenesis or the polygenesis of languages. Investigation is busy here.

The *bow-wow* theory of animal imitation cannot account for most verbs, the prepositions and nouns symbolising noiseless objects; moreover, it assumes that language originally had our word-units. These objections are valid also against the interjectional (*pooh-pooh*) theory that all speech arose from emotional cries of pain, pleasure and wonder. But we have outgrown the *wacko!* stage. Nor did the *ding-dong* ('ringing sound') theory hold; the sounds of external nature are too limited to serve as a basis. On the other hand, the *ye-he-ho!* theory argues that bodily activities call muscular tensions into play, some of which affect chest, throat and mouth, and produce, by intake and expulsion of breath, a sound characterising the particular bodily activity—say *heave*, *haul* and *yum yum*. Yet only a very small fraction of speech can thus be accounted for. There is also a kernel of truth in Paget's *tongue-gesture* theory relying on our habit of moving the tongue or lips in sympathy with movements or ideas to which attention is directed. In the mute gesture-language of the Amerindians the tongue is used for positional and spatial reference. Such tongue-and-lip movements during the expulsion of breath produce sounds typical of each movement. Thus the raising of the tongue-tip to the roof of the mouth produces *al*, *oll*, or *ull* sounds, in some languages associated with height, *e.g.*, Latin *alt-*; *Alps*, *Atlas*, *Urals*, *Nepal*, etc. Many of Paget's examples are over-fanciful, and his theory cannot be held to reveal the whole truth.

Scientific investigation has here followed three main lines: animal 'speech'; child-speech; and the study of extant linguistic records going back nearly 4000 years, together with the examination of the speech of existing primitive peoples. In spite of the ability of 'talking' birds, nothing of a helpful nature has been elicited. The gap between primitive human speech and the sounds of the higher animals defeats rational analysis.

An Indian prince once isolated some infants for several years and kept them from contact with outside speech, his aim being to discover the natural language of man. On examining the children he found that they made uncouth random noises. Our own children are, however, not allowed to repeat the slow processes of linguistic evolution; from the outset a highly evolved language is forced on the infant. By repetition and association, adults form the babe's scarcely determinable inarticulations in conformity with current speech. Later the child struggles to associate concept with verbal symbol and to differentiate the functions of words.

A fruitful enquiry is the historical investigation into the development of recorded languages and those of primitive peoples, far as even these have moved from their origins. It has been found, *e.g.*, that the original forms of many languages had 'speech-units' or words much longer than those in general use to-day. Musical tone or pitch probably once played a great part in most languages, although pitch-differences are still all-important in a minority of tongues, like Chinese, Swedish and Russian. It is likely that originally language and song were, if not identical, at least only vaguely distinguished. Inflexions and other grammatical devices have generally been whittled down with the years; *e.g.*, the synthetic Latin process in *ad-am-av-is-se-m* ('begin', 'love', perfect tense sign, subjunctive mood sign, first person singular sign) compared with English analytical 'I would have fallen in love'; but a complex word-structure predominated in some of the oldest languages of the Indo-European group. Some outside this group, *e.g.*, Malay and Chinese, are not so complex; on the other hand, there are highly complex non Indo-European languages for which there is no evidence that they were ever more complex.

The results of investigations lead to the belief that early language was a sing-song, *i.e.*, with varying pitch and stress, often complex, difficult of utterance

and inadequate to the expression of conceptual processes, but marking reactions to emotional stimuli in vaguely strung-together word-sentences. Broadly, for all languages, the evidence is as yet not very conclusive, but more specific findings may result from the comparison of Indo-European with other early languages.

What of future linguistic changes?—Is a universal single language possible or likely? There has been little disagreement on this desirability in removing obstacles to intercourse among peoples. In trade relations, at international conferences, as in the world of scientific research, the conflict of tongues is a disadvantage and one or more international auxiliary languages are called for. Basic English, Pidgin and Esperanto have been formulated. Whereas Esperanto has declined, Pidgin English is the trade vehicle of millions of diverse speakers. Among other auxiliary 'blended' languages in vigorous use at present are Urdu in India, based on a dialect of Hindu; Mandarin Chinese as spoken in most parts of China; Lingua Franca in the Levant; and Sabir (Pidgin French) in West Africa. These have a natural origin. Among the disadvantages of Esperanto are its preponderating Latin vocabulary, the use of many affixes glued on to root words, the accent marks and the monotonously recurring stress on the second-last syllable; as well as many primitive grammatical declensions, agreements and superfluous endings.

Basic English uses certain standard English words, a rigid selection of grammar and the normal spelling. It grew from Ogden's search into the real meaning underlying our frequent woolly use of words. In clarifying meaning; he was led to simplify words and to specify, as Malherbe had done for French. Ogden believed that our necessary communications could be effected with a much smaller vocabulary than that now in common use: such a pruned English of say 850 fundamental words (more than half of them the most frequently occurring words in the language) is far more readily learnt by foreigners than normal English would be and is an admirable auxiliary. Affixes are used in Basic; words already international (telephone, zinc, alcohol, etc.) are retained; and minimum technical vocabularies allowed. It is alive and at times has the noble simplicity of much great literature. This argument does not impair the truth that it is necessary to know more than one language in order to avoid the error of thinking that ideas are expressed by only one set of symbols.

The following is an example of Basic:—'In these days, when the need and the desire for international agreement are equally great, a common tongue is more necessary than ever. It is getting to be more and more clear that this common tongue will have to be English, which is now the language of the governments of many millions and part of the education of every great country'. The step from Basic, admittedly not always the more simple, to standard and universal English is often a short one.

Finally, we must admit that fashions in ethics and conduct often effect changes and contribute, *e.g.*, to the use of 'swear' words, slang, jargon and of inexact, misleading language. Fashion has banned most swear words; some of them are or were intrinsically 'good' words, like 'bloody'. The derivation from 'by-our-Lady' has given way to that from *bloedic* (silly) used as an intensifying adverb, an early Flemish word introduced by English soldiers.

It is, however, not always easy to say what is slang: a word may enter standard speech by to-morrow or it may die a sudden death. Words rise in the scale of respectability, *e.g.*, German *Knecht* (serving man, serf) and *Knight*; or they may acquire a depreciatory meaning, *e.g.*, German *Knabe* (boy) and *knave*. Abbreviations like *phone*, *plane*, *bus* and *zoo* are good in polite speech. Some slang terms are of reputable origin; thus the Australian *deener* (shilling) is Latin *denarius*.

Slang springs mainly from the desire to be vivid and intimate; hence *bloke*, of Romany origin; or it comes from the individual's wish to distinguish himself. Terms like *beaut* and *stunning* reveal the schoolboy's honourable discontent with battered and bleached phrasing and show his contempt for words worn threadbare. Much Australian slang has come from Cockney English and from American, the latter being now on the increase. *Bonzer* is giving way to *swell*. Intelligent philological guesswork can usually trace the origin of slang terms, e.g., *plonk* is probably First-World-War (*vin*) *blanc*. In establishing an etymology, the evolution of both sound and meaning must be rationalised in conjunction, e.g., *un youm*; jackass; crayfish (Fr. *écrivisse*); scallop; and 'a second Royais' (<*aller à Rueil*) can thus be 'based'.

Any given trade or occupation has its technical jargon, not to be confused with slang; but the term 'jargon' is now also applied to verbal obscurities. Such jargon may reach the horror stage in English of the type, the 'receipt of your esteemed favour of the 10th inst.'—a jungle of *clichés* in which basic meaning is concealed by a high-sounding layer. Linguistic change of this kind shows the possible debasing, through the tyranny of words, of man's high faculty of true communication. In the end, a nation's or an individual's thoughts cannot be more accurate than the language in which they are spoken.

Dante said, 'Since man is a most unstable and changeable animal, no human speech can be permanent and continuous.'—But the miracle of language is enhanced by instantaneous speech-radiation, a social force from which unity may yet evolve from diversity. Linguistic science finds its joy in striving to discover how contacts may be made among men and why they succeed in a particular way. Thus linguistics may help in removing misunderstanding among the peoples of the earth.

Tasmanian littoral Spiders with Notes on their Respiratory Systems, Habits and Taxonomy

By

V. V. HICKMAN

Ralston Professor of Biology, University of Tasmania

(Read 2nd November, 1948)

FIGS 1-15

In certain localities on the coast of Tasmania it is not uncommon to find spiders which have succeeded in adapting themselves to an aquatic or semi-aquatic mode of life. Two species are frequently met with, namely *Amaurobioides litoralis* sp. nov. and *Desis kenyonae* Pocock. The present paper gives an account of these two species, including a description of the hitherto unknown male of *Desis kenyonae*.

Family AMAUROBIOIDIDAE nov.

Cribellum and calamistrum wanting. Colulus present. Six spinnerets. Eight eyes in two rows. Chelicerae with condyle and scopula. Both margins toothed. Lip free. Maxillae parallel, with scopula well delimited. Legs with spines. Tarsi and metatarsi scopulated. Two tarsal claws pectinate in a single row. Claw-tufts present. Trichobothria in two rows on tarsi, a single row on metatarsi and two rows on tibiae. Thoracic groove longitudinal. Tracheal spiracle single and median, a short distance in front of colulus. Tracheal system extending into the cephalothorax. Heart with three pairs of ostia.

Genus *Amaurobioides* O. P. Cambridge

Only two species have been recorded as belonging to this genus, namely *Amaurobioides maritima* Cambridge and *Amaurobioides piscator* Hogg. Both species occur in New Zealand. *A. maritima* is found on rocks in the sea at Allday Bay, Otago, and *A. piscator* occurs on rocks between tide marks on Campbell Island. To these is now added a third species taken at Eaglehawk Neck, Tasmania. The name *Amaurobioides litoralis* is proposed for the species.

Amaurobioides litoralis sp. nov.

Male							mm.
Total length (excluding chelicerae)							7.420
Length of carapace							3.480
Width of carapace							2.320
Length of abdomen							4.234
Width of abdomen							2.204
Leg	Femur	Patella	Tibia	Metatarsus	Tarsus	Total	
1	2.610	1.334	2.668	2.610	1.508	10.730	
2	2.494	1.334	2.610	2.610	1.392	10.440	
3	2.146	1.160	1.856	2.262	0.928	8.352	
4	2.494	1.334	2.262	2.378	0.928	9.396	
Palp	1.218	0.580	0.464	....	1.450	3.712	

Colour. Carapace, legs and palpi brown. Front of head region and chelicerae very dark brown, nearly black. Maxillae, labium and sternum light brown. Coxae fawn. Dorsal surface of abdomen dark brown marked with a fawn pattern as shown in fig. 1. Sides dark brown, ventral surface fawn. Spinnerets fawn.

Carapace. Elongate, somewhat narrowed in head region, widest between the second coxae. Front margin recurved. Posterior margin rounded. Cervical and radial grooves faintly marked. Thoracic groove longitudinal; its front end being about 2/3 of the length of the carapace from the anterior margin. Surface densely clothed with short fine recumbent silky hairs which point forwards.

Eyes. Eight, arranged in two rows. Viewed from above the front row is distinctly recurved and shorter than the hinder row, which is but slightly recurved. The eye-group occupies about half the width of the head. The eye space is black and the AME are mounted on a small tubercle that projects forward over the clypeus. Ratio of eyes AME : ALE : PME : PLE = 6 : 9 : 8 : 9. The AME are separated from each other by half their diameter and from ALE by one-third of their diameter. PME are separated from each other by 9/8 of their diameter and from PLE by once their diameter. The median ocular quadrangle is wider behind than in front in ratio 25 : 14. Its posterior width is greater than its length in ratio 25 : 23. The height of the clypeus is slightly less than the diameter of AME.

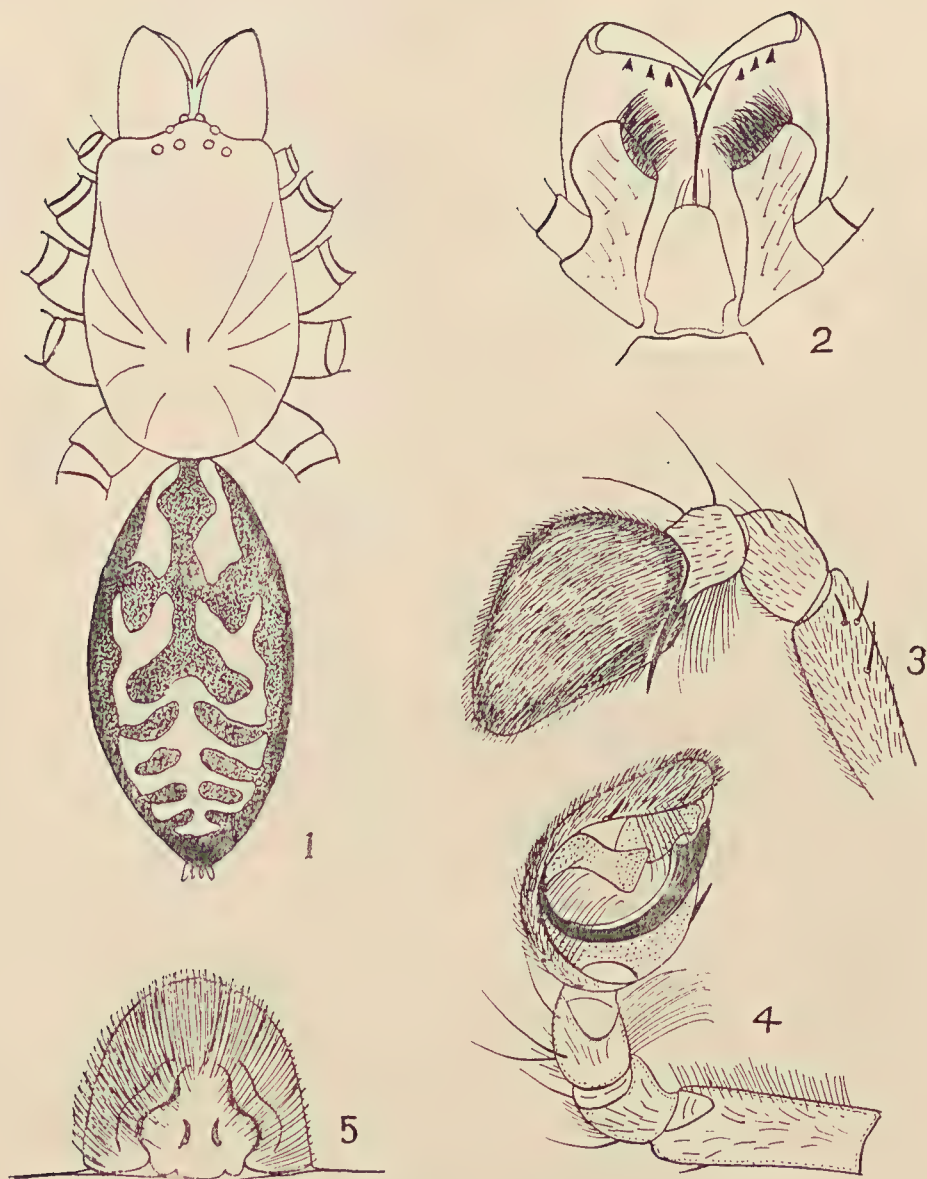
Chelicerae. Strong, geniculate, projecting forward and clothed with hairs in front. Furrow oblique; retromargin with three teeth of equal size; promargin with two large teeth and a small basal tooth.

Maxillae. Long, parallel, obliquely truncate on the inner side near the apex, rounded on the outer side and constricted near the middle. A dense scopula is present on the obliquely truncated part of the apex and a well-developed serrula on the rounded outer margin (fig. 2).

Labium. Longer than wide in ratio 14 : 9 and extending beyond the middle of the maxillae. Rounded at the apex and slightly emarginate on each side near the base (fig. 2).

Sternum. Long, ovoid and convex. Longer than wide in ratio 32 : 21. Widest between second coxae. Front margin slightly recurved. Lateral margins sinuous with slight projections opposite the coxae. Posteriorly the sternum ends in a point between the fourth coxae, which are separated by about half their diameter. Clothed with short fine hairs.

Legs. 1.2.4.3. A moderately dense scopula on the tarsi and metatarsi of the first and second pairs of legs. A thick clothing of ordinary hairs on the third and fourth pairs. Claw-tufts present on all legs. Two tarsal claws, each with a row of seven teeth. Trichobothria in two rows on tarsi, a single row on metatarsi and two rows on tibiae. Spines are present on all legs and are arranged as follows: *First leg*—Femur: dorsal 1-1-1, prolateral 0-0-1, retrolateral 0-1-0, ventral 0. Patella 0. Tibia: dorsal 0, prolateral 1-1-1-1, retrolateral 1-1-1-1-2, ventral 2-2-2-2-2-2. Metatarsus: dorsal 0-1-0, prolateral 1-1-1, retrolateral 1-1-1, ventral 0. Tarsus 0. *Second leg*—Femur: dorsal 1-1-1, prolateral 0-1-1, retrolateral 0-1-1, ventral 0. Patella 0. Tibia: dorsal 0, prolateral 1-1-1, retrolateral 1-1-1, ventral 2-2-2. Metatarsus: dorsal 0-1-0, prolateral 1-1-1, retrolateral 1-1-1, ventral 0. Tarsus 0. *Third leg*—Femur: dorsal 1-1-1, prolateral 0-1-1, retrolateral 0-1-1, ventral 0. Patella 0. Tibia: dorsal 0, prolateral 1-1-1, retrolateral 1-1-1, ventral 2-2-2. Metatarsus: dorsal 0-1-0, prolateral 1-1-1, retrolateral 1-1-1, ventral 2-2-2. Tarsus 0. *Fourth leg*—Femur: dorsal 1-1-1, prolateral 0-1-1, retrolateral 0-0-1, ventral 0. Patella 0. Tibia: dorsal 0, prolateral 1-1-1, retrolateral 1-1-1, ventral 2-2-2. Metatarsus: dorsal 0-1-0, prolateral 1-1-1, retrolateral 1-1-1, ventral 2-2-2. Tarsus 0.



Amaurobioides litoralis, sp. nov.

- FIG. 1.—Dorsal view of male showing pattern on abdomen.
 FIG. 2.—Chelicerae, maxillae and labium of male.
 FIG. 3.—Retrolateral view of left palp of male.
 FIG. 4.—Ventral view of left palp of male.
 FIG. 5.—Epigynum.

Palpi. Tibial segment short and produced into a long sharp apophysis at the apex on the retrolateral side. Tarsus large and ovoid. Femur has 1-1-1 spines on dorsal side and 0-0-1 on both prolateral and retrolateral sides. Elsewhere spines are absent. The form of the palp and genital bulb is shown in figs 3 and 4.

Abdomen. Oblong, nearly twice as long as wide. Clothed with short fine hairs. Anterior spinnerets stout and conical with a very short apical segment. Middle and posterior spinnerets cylindrical and arranged in a transverse row above the anterior spinnerets. Apical segment of hind spinnerets minute. A short colulus is present. Pulmonary spiracles in the usual position. Tracheal spiracle single and median, situated about the length of the anterior spinnerets in front of the colulus.

Female

							mm.
Total length (excluding chelicerae)							12.00
Length of carapace							4.35
Width of carapace							3.31
Length of abdomen							7.83
Width of abdomen							4.06
Leg	Femur	Patella	Tibia	Metatarsus	Tarsus	Total	
1	3.48	1.80	2.78	2.55	1.62	12.23	
2	3.36	1.74	2.78	2.49	1.51	11.88	
3	2.90	1.51	2.09	2.32	1.16	9.98	
4	3.19	1.80	2.73	2.61	1.16	11.49	
Palp	1.74	0.70	0.81	....	1.45	4.70	

Colour. Carapace and chelicerae very dark brown, almost black. Legs reddish brown above merging into yellow on the sides and ventral surface of the femora and on the apex of each patella. Maxillae and labium dark reddish brown, the apex of the labium and the inner side of the apex of each maxilla being yellow. Coxae yellowish. Sternum yellowish in the middle, brown round the margin. Abdomen dark brown above ornamented with paired yellowish areas and chevrons as in the male. Sides of abdomen dark brown merging into yellow on the ventral surface. Epigynum yellowish brown.

Carapace. Oblong, its width in front being only slightly less than its greatest width. Cervical and radial grooves not distinct. Thoracic groove longitudinal and situated about $\frac{2}{3}$ of the length of the carapace from the front. Surface clothed with short fine recumbent hairs which point forwards.

Eyes. Eight, arranged in two rows. Front row shorter than posterior row in ratio 13 : 22. Viewed from above the front row is slightly recurved and the posterior row is straight. Ratio of eyes AME : ALE : PME : PLE = 6 : 12 : 11 : 14. The AME are separated from each other by $\frac{7}{6}$ of their diameter and from ALE by half their diameter. The PME are separated from each other by $\frac{13}{11}$ of their diameter and from PLE by $\frac{9}{11}$ of their diameter. The lateral eyes are separated by a distance equal to the diameter of AME. The median ocular quadrangle is wider behind than in front in ratio 35 : 19 and its length is shorter than its posterior width in ratio 26 : 35. The front row of eyes is very close to the margin of the clypeus, the height of the clypeus below AME being equal to the diameter of AME.

Chelicerae. Stout, conical and geniculate. Provided with large yellowish lateral condyles. In front the surface is rough and furnished with coarse black

hairs. Margins of furrow oblique. Promargin with three teeth, the basal tooth being smaller than the others. Retromargin with three teeth of equal size. Fang strong and moderately curved.

Maxillae. Parallel. Rounded in front with an oblique truncation and dense scopula on the inner side near apex. Constricted in middle as in the male.

Labium. Longer than wide in ratio 7 : 5. Exceeding half the length of the maxillae. Excavated on each side at the base. Apex rounded and fringed with long black hairs.

Sternum. Long shield-shaped, its length being greater than its width in ratio 50 : 28. Pointed posteriorly between the fourth coxae, which are separated by about half their diameter. The surface is slightly convex and shows indistinct elevations opposite the bases of the coxae. The margin is produced into a point opposite each coxa.

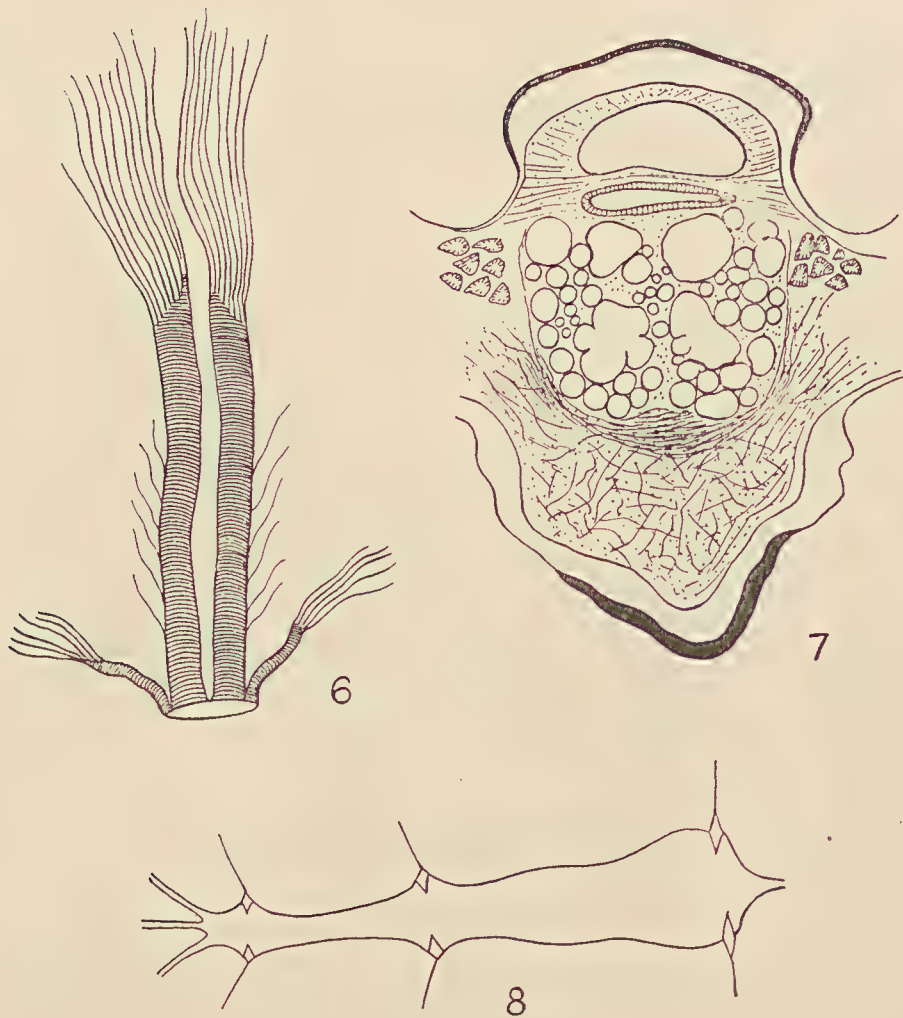
Legs. 1.2.4.3. Clothed with hairs and long bristles. The tarsi and metatarsi of the two front pairs of legs are scopulate to base, those of the two hind pairs of legs have a thick clothing of ordinary hairs on the ventral side. Trichobothria in two rows on tibiae, a single row on the metatarsi and a double row on the tarsi. Two tarsal claws are present and furnished with about seven long teeth. Claw-tufts of spatulate hairs are present on all the legs. Spines are arranged as follows: *First leg*—Femur: dorsal 1-1-1, prolateral 1 at apex, elsewhere 0. Patella 0. Tibia: ventral 2-2-2, elsewhere 0. Metatarsus: ventral 2 near base, elsewhere 0. *Second leg*—Femur: dorsal 1-1-1, prolateral 1 at apex, elsewhere 0. Patella 0. Tibia: dorsal 0, prolateral 1, retrolateral 0, ventral 1-1-2. Metatarsus: dorsal 0, prolateral 1 near middle, retrolateral 0, ventral 2 near base. *Third leg*—Femur: dorsal 1-1-1, prolateral 1 at apex, elsewhere 0. Patella 0. Tibia: dorsal 0, prolateral 1-1-1, retrolateral 1-0-1, ventral 2 at apex. Metatarsus: dorsal 2 near apex, prolateral 1 at apex, retrolateral 1 at apex, ventral 2-0-2. *Fourth leg*—Femur: dorsal 1-1-1, prolateral 0, retrolateral 1 at apex, ventral 0. Patella 0. Tibia: dorsal 0, prolateral 0, retrolateral 1 near apex, ventral 1-1-2. Metatarsus: dorsal 2 near apex, prolateral 1 near apex, retrolateral 1 near apex, ventral 1-0-2. No spines are present on any of the tarsi.

Palpi. Clothed with long hairs and slender bristles. Spines are present on the dorsal side of the femur and on the prolateral side of the tibia and tarsus. The tarsal claw is slightly curved and provided with three very small teeth in the basal half.

Abdomen. Long ovoid. Clothed with fine short recumbent hairs intermingled with longer erect hairs. The pulmonary spiracles are in the normal position. The tracheal spiracle is single and median. It is situated in front of the spinnerets and at a distance from them equal to the length of the anterior pair. The spinnerets form a compact group. The front pair are stout and conical. The posterior pair are about equal in length to the front pair but much more slender. The middle pair are small and partly concealed by the others. A small colulus is present. The epigynum has the form shown in the fig. 5.

Locality. The male and female type specimens, together with a number of others of the same species, were collected at Eaglehawk Neck, Tasmania, during February, 1948.

Amaurobioides litoralis closely resembles *A. maritima* Cambridge. However, according to Cambridge (1883, p. 356) the cephalothorax of *A. maritima* is twice as long as it is broad. Moreover the figure (Cambridge, 1883, Plate XXXVI, fig. 3e) depicting the maxillae and labium of *A. maritima* shows the maxillae curved on



Amaurobioides litoralis, sp. nov.

FIG. 6.—Tracheal tubes.

FIG. 7.—Transverse section through petiolus showing main tracheal trunks dividing into tubules which lie below the gut.

FIG. 8.—Dorsal view of heart showing position of the ostia.

the inner side and the labium without lateral excavations at the base. If the figures are correct the structures differ from those of *A. litoralis*.

The species *A. piscator* Hogg (1909, p. 164) described from the Campbell Islands differs from *A. litoralis* in the leg formula, in having spines on the under side of the femora and in the form of the epigynum.

Respiratory System and Heart. The respiratory system consists of a pair of book-lungs in the usual position and tracheal tubes which supply both cephalothorax and abdomen. As mentioned previously the tracheal spiracle is single and median and is situated a short distance in front of the spinnerets. It leads into two stout median trunks and two much smaller lateral trunks (fig. 6). The two large median trunks pass straight forward and enter the petiolus. Here they divide into a number of smaller tubules (fig. 7), which enter the cephalothorax and extend into the appendages. The abdomen is supplied mainly by the two small lateral trunks. These also divide to form a number of fine tubules. In addition to these the abdomen also receives a few small tubes from the sides of the large median trunks as they pass towards the petiolus.

The heart is in the usual position close beneath the dorsal surface of the abdomen. It has three pairs of ostia arranged as shown in fig. 8.

Habits. *A. litoralis* makes a small nest of tough white silk in crevices and holes in rocks near high-tide mark. The nest is about 3 or 4 cms. long and more or less oval in shape. It has a small tubular exit on one side. In some cases the nests are made among shell-grit that has accumulated between rocks just below the high-tide mark. In most cases, however, the nests are situated above high-tide level, although the rocks on which they occur may be surrounded by water and splashed by the waves. The crevices in which the nests are made are often frequented by Isopods of the genus *Ligia* and remnants of these crustacea sometimes occur in the nests of the spider.

The egg-sac of *A. litoralis* is lenticular, about 8 mm. in diameter and made of white silk. It is attached to the inner surface of the wall of the nest. One egg-sac in which the eggs were counted contained 60 eggs. These are yellow in colour and measure 1.05 mm. in diameter. Not more than one egg-sac is found in the nest. During the first fortnight in February when the specimens were collected some nests contained eggs in process of development and others young spiders newly emerged from the egg-sac.

Most of the males apparently reach maturity later in the year, probably in the autumn, since the 75 specimens collected included only one mature male. The remaining 74 specimens were composed of 33 mature females, 24 immature females and 17 immature males. Two of the immature males were kept in vivaria in the laboratory until they reached maturity.

Taxonomy. The genus *Amaurobioides* Cambridge is considered by Simon (1903, p. 1034) as synonymous with *Uliodon* L. Koch. Hogg (1909, p. 162), however, states that *Amaurobioides piscator* differs materially from *Uliodon* and places it in the Clubionidae. Dalmas (1917, p. 394) follows the classification proposed by Hogg. Petrunkevitch (1908, p. 210) agrees with Simon in regarding the genus *Amaurobioides* as a synonym of *Uliodon*, and places the genus *Uliodon* in the family Ctenidae. Bristowe (1930, p. 344) agrees with Petrunkevitch.

These different views are largely due to the fact that the descriptions of *A. maritima* Cambridge and *A. piscator* Hogg omit to mention such important characters as the colulus, the position of the tracheal spiracle, the distribution of the tracheal tubes, etc. In the Tasmanian species *A. litoralis* a colulus is present, the tracheal spiracle is a short distance in front of the spinnerets and the

tracheal system enters the cephalothorax and its appendages. In all these features *A. litoralis* differs from members of the Clubionidae and Ctenidae. Moreover, members of the Ctenidae are usually wandering spiders, which do not make a permanent silken nest, whereas *A. litoralis* makes a tubular retreat in which it lives. For these reasons it seems necessary to establish a new family, Amaurobioididae, for the three species of *Amaurobioides*. The family is most closely related to the Clubionidae.

Whether the genus *Uliodon* should be included in the family cannot be determined until more detailed descriptions of the species are available.

Family AGELENIDAE

Genus *Desis* Walckenaer, 1837

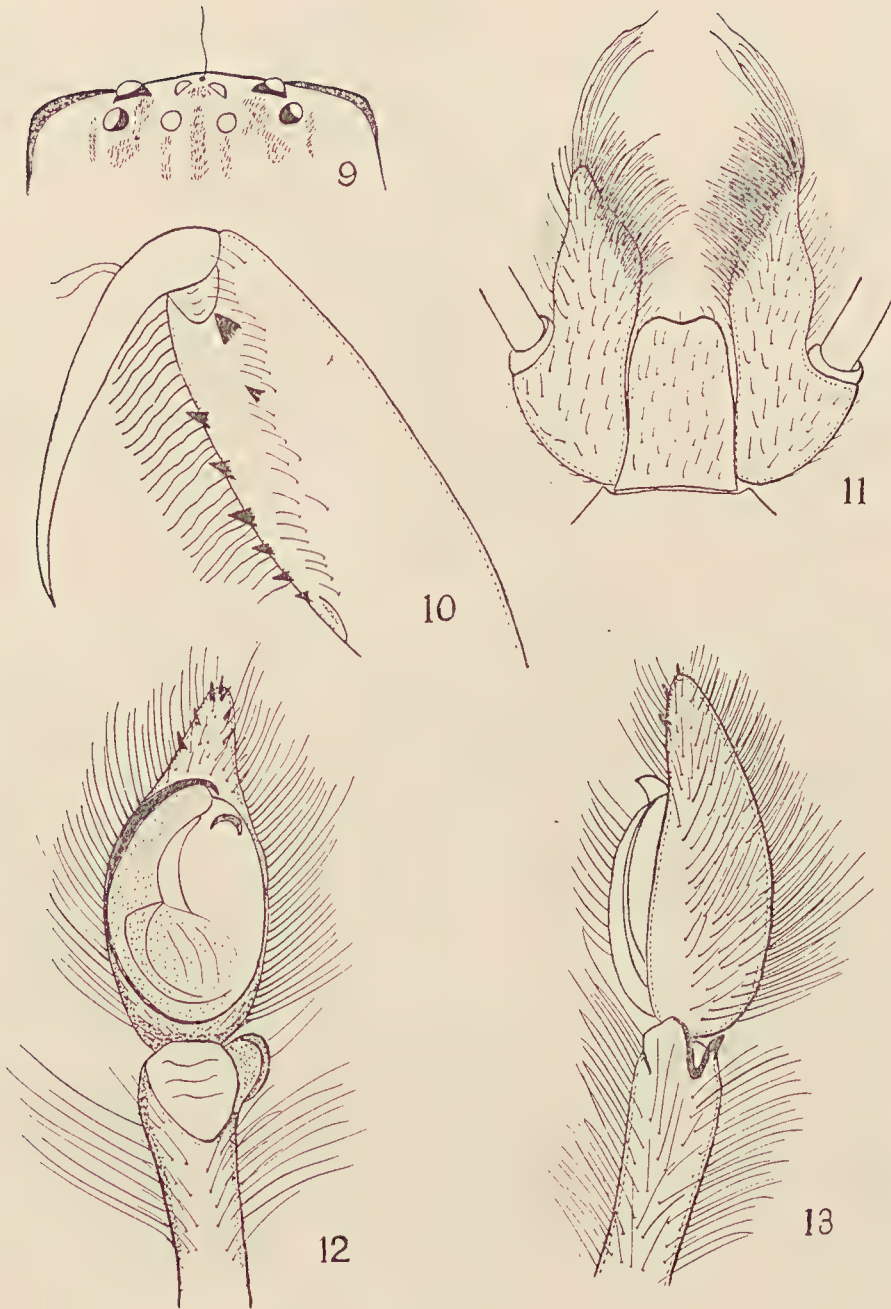
Desis kenyonae Pocock

Male						mm.
Total length (excluding chelicerae)						9.280
Length of carapace						4.350
Width of carapace						2.900
Length of abdomen						4.930
Width of abdomen						2.668
Leg	Femur	Patella	Tibia	Metatarsus	Tarsus	Total
1	3.770	1.914	4.234	4.524	2.494	16.936
2	2.900	1.624	2.668	2.900	1.624	11.716
3	2.436	1.218	1.914	2.436	1.160	9.164
4	2.900	1.508	2.726	2.900	1.508	11.542
Palp	1.972	0.812	1.450		1.392	5.626

Colour. Carapace, legs, palpi, maxillae, labium and sternum yellowish brown. Basal segment of chelicerae golden brown, fang dark reddish brown. Upper surface and sides of abdomen greyish brown, ventral surface and spinnerets somewhat lighter in colour.

Carapace. Oblong, truncate in front. Head region almost as wide as thoracic region. Sides gently rounded. Posterior end slightly emarginate. Thoracic groove longitudinal, situated about 2/3 of the length of the carapace from the front. Radial striations distinct but not deep. The head region is clothed with short recumbent hairs which point forward. Thoracic region has few hairs.

Eyes. The eight eyes are arranged in two rows (fig. 9). Viewed from above both rows appear almost straight. Viewed from in front the anterior row is slightly procurved, the lateral eyes being nearer the edge of the clypeus than are the median eyes. The width of the eye-group is slightly more than half the anterior width of the carapace. The front row of eyes is shorter than the posterior row in ratio 68 : 78. Ratio of eyes AME : ALE : PME : PLE = 7 : 10 : 8 : 8. The AME are separated from each other by 5/7 of their diameter and from ALE by 10/7 of their diameter. The PME are separated from each other by 15/8 of their diameter and from PLE by 18/8 of their diameter. The lateral eyes are separated by 5/7 of the diameter of AME. The median ocular quadrangle is wider behind than in front in ratio 30 : 19. Its length is slightly greater than its anterior width. The AME are dark coloured; all the other eyes have a white pearly appearance. The lateral eyes of each side and the AME are mounted on slight elevations. A long slender hair projects in front of AME. On each side above the condyle of the chelicera the margin of the clypeus is dark reddish brown. The distance from the AME to the front margin is equal to 6/7 of the diameter of AME.

*Desis kenyonae* Pocock

- FIG. 9.—Eyes of male.
 FIG. 10.—Ventral view of left cheliterum of male.
 FIG. 11.—Maxillae and labium of male.
 FIG. 12.—Ventral view of left palp of male.
 FIG. 13.—Retrolateral view of left palp of male.

Chelicerae. Very large, powerful and projecting forwards. The length of the basal segment is equal to $4/5$ of the length of the carapace. Promargin provided with a row of six teeth, which are evenly spaced and decrease slightly in size towards the base. Retromargin is furnished with two teeth, one of which is large and situated near to the base of the fang, while the other is much smaller and almost opposite the apical tooth of the promargin (fig. 10). The fang is dark reddish brown, very long and slightly curved. When closed its tip rests in a small depression on the basal segment. There is a thick scopula of long hairs on the promargin and a somewhat lighter scopula on the retromargin. The dorsal surface is provided with a few very small scattered hairs.

Maxillae. Parallel, sharply pointed in front, with curved outer margin and oblique inner margin (fig. 11). A serrula is absent. A scopula of long hairs is situated at the apex and on the inner margin. Surface is lightly clothed with long hairs.

Labium. Longer than wide in ratio 4 : 3. The length is equal to about $4/7$ that of the maxillae. The apex is truncate and slightly emarginate (fig. 11).

Sternum. Long shield-shape, ending in a point between the fourth coxae. Front margin with a projection on each side. Lateral margins with small projections opposite the coxae and also opposite the spaces between the coxae. Surface clothed with long hairs.

Legs. 1.2.4.3. The front pair much longer than the others. All the legs are clothed with long outstanding hairs. The last three pairs of legs, but not the first pair, have a much thicker clothing of hairs at the apex of the metatarsus than elsewhere. Trichobothria in two rows on the tarsi, a single row on the metatarsi and two rows on the tibiae. Scopulae and claw-tufts absent. Three tarsal claws are present. Upper claws similar with about 11 teeth on those of the front legs and 8 on those of the hind legs. Lower claw is strongly curved and without teeth. Spines are arranged as follows: *First leg* has no spines. *Second leg*—Femur 0. Patella 0. Tibia: ventral 1 at apex on prolateral side, elsewhere 0. Metatarsus: ventral 1 near middle and 3 at apex, elsewhere 0. *Third leg*—Femur 0, Patella 0. Tibia: ventral 1 at apex on retrolateral side, elsewhere 0. Metatarsus: ventral 2 near middle and 3 at apex, elsewhere 0. Tarsus: ventral 4 small spines close together in apical quarter. *Fourth leg*—Femur 0. Patella 0. Tibia: ventral 1 at apex on retrolateral side, elsewhere 0. Metatarsus: ventral 1 near middle on retrolateral side, 3 at apex, elsewhere 0. Tarsus: ventral 5 small spines in the apical quarter. All the spines are small and easily overlooked owing to the dense clothing of long hairs. The number of spines varies slightly in different specimens and sometimes on the corresponding left and right legs of the one specimen.

Palpi. Long and slender. Femur slightly curved. The length of the trochanter is almost $2/3$ that of the femur. The tibia has a short cleft apophysis on the retrolateral side at the apex (fig. 13). The tarsus is spoon-shaped and produced into a somewhat pointed apex. All segments are clothed with long hairs and the tarsus is provided with a few small spines at the apex. The genital bulb forms a rather flat oval disc. The embolus curves round the prolateral margin of the disc (fig. 12). Trichobothria are arranged in a row on each side of the tibia.

Abdomen. Ovoid. The dorsal surface and sides clothed with long erect hairs, which are curved forwards. The anterior pair of spinnerets are short, stout and conical. The posterior pair cylindrical and slightly longer than the front pair. The middle spinnerets are short and somewhat triangular in section. A colulus is absent. The tracheal spiracle is single and median. It opens close in front of the spinnerets.

Female

	mm.					
Total length (excluding chelicerae)	10.730					
Length of carapace	4.756					
Width of carapace	3.364					
Length of abdomen	5.800					
Width of abdomen	3.826					
Leg	Femur	Patella	Tibia	Metatarsus	Tarsus	Total
1	3.774	2.030	4.118	4.234	2.320	16.476
2	2.958	1.682	2.668	2.900	1.566	11.774
3	2.726	1.392	2.030	2.552	1.160	9.860
4	3.248	1.682	2.900	3.074	1.334	12.238
Palp	2.204	0.870	1.624	.....	1.740	6.438

The female resembles the male in colouration and general appearance. The description given by Pocock (1902, p. 102) is correct as far as it goes. However, he does not describe the following features:

Labium. Somewhat rectangular, slightly emarginate at the apex. Longer than wide in ratio 23 : 14, and more than half the length of the maxillae.

Maxillae. Parallel, broad at the base, pointed at the apex, rounded on the outer margin and obliquely truncate on the inner margin. Scopula as in the male. Serrula absent.

Sternum. Long shield-shape. Longer than wide in ratio 45 : 31. Widest between the second coxae. Surface slightly convex, almost flat, clothed with long hairs. Margin slightly rebordered and furnished with projections as in the male.

Legs. 1.4.2.3. Clothed with long hairs. Trichobothria arranged as in male. Upper tarsal claws similar with about 12 teeth in those of the front legs and 10 in those of the hind legs. Lower claw without teeth. The spines on the legs are arranged as follows: *First leg* has no spines. *Second leg*—Tibia: ventral 1 in the middle, 3 at apex. *Third leg*—Tibia: ventral 2 at apex. Metatarsus: dorsal 2 at apex, prolateral 1 near middle, ventral 1 near middle, 3 at apex. Tarsus: ventral several small spines near apex. *Fourth leg*—Tibia: ventral 2 at apex. Metatarsus: ventral 1 near middle, 3 at apex. Tarsus: ventral several small spines near apex. Elsewhere on the legs spines are absent.

Palpi. Clothed with long hairs. A few small spines are present on the ventral side of the tarsus near the apex. Claw slightly curved and furnished with five small teeth. Two rows of trichobothria on dorsal surface of tibia and tarsus. Trochanter very long, slightly more than half the length of the femur.

Abdomen. Ovoid. Densely clothed with long erect curved hairs interspersed with somewhat shorter recumbent hairs. In surface view the epigynum has the form described and figured by Pocock (1902, p. 102). In transparent preparations it has the form shown in fig. 14. Spinnerets as in the male. Tracheal spiracle single and median, situated in front of the spinnerets at a distance about equal to the length of the anterior pair.

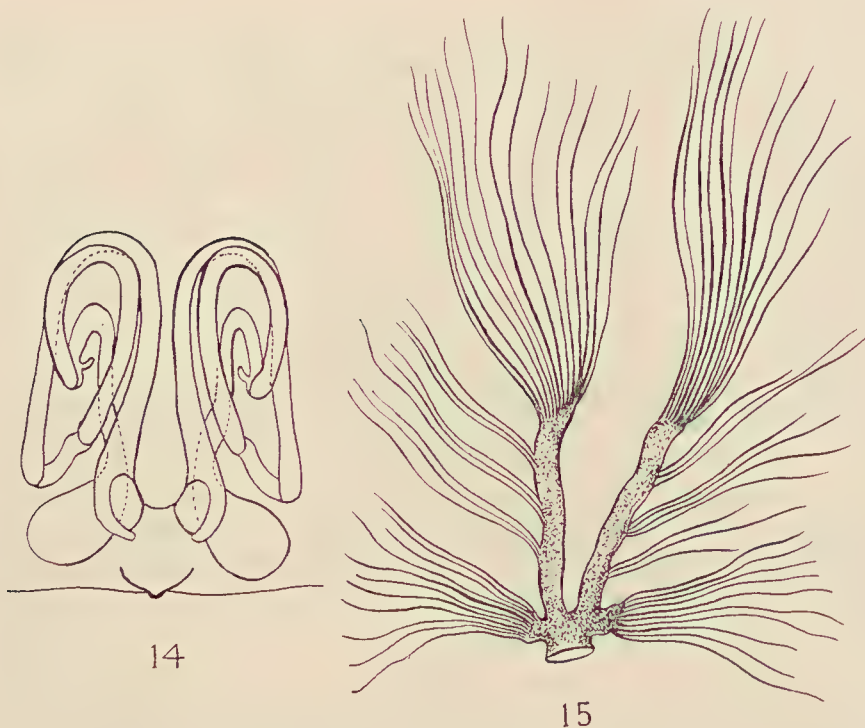
Locality. The allotype male together with a number of other males and females was collected at Eaglehawk Neck, February, 1948. The spider has also been found at Adventure Bay on Bruni Island, at the Gardens on the East Coast of Tasmania and at Gravelly Beach on the River Tamar. The holotype female, on which Pocock based his description of the species, was found at San Remo, Westernport Bay, Victoria.

Respiratory System and Heart. The respiratory system consists of a pair of book-lungs in the normal position and tracheal tubes confined to the abdomen. The book-lung of a male specimen was examined in serial sections and found to have about 50 leaves.

The tracheal spiracle, which opens a short distance in front of the spinnerets, leads into two stout median trunks, which extend forward for about one-quarter the length of the abdomen. Lateral trunks, which are present in many spiders, are reduced to a pair of short stump-like branches, one on each side near the base of the median trunks. Both the median trunks and the short lateral branches divide and give rise to numerous fine tubules, all of which supply the abdomen. No tubules pass into the cephalothorax (fig. 15).

The heart of *Desis kenyonae* has three pairs of ostia and resembles that of *Desis formidabilis* Cambridge, which has been described by Petrunkevitch (1933, p. 371).

Habits. With the exception of those collected at Gravelly Beach, which is about 20 miles up the Tamar estuary from the mouth, all the specimens of *Desis kenyonae* were found on the sea coast. The spider lives between high-tide and low-tide levels, where it may be found occupying empty mollusc shells, cavities on the under side of rocks or crevices among *Galeolaria* tubes. The spider lines the cavity with a layer of silk and closes the opening with a sheet of web.



Desis kenyonae Pocock

FIG. 14.—Epigynum as seen in a transparent preparation.

FIG. 15.—Tracheal tubes.

At other times a cocoon-like nest is made in the narrow space between two rocks. Unlike *Amaurobioides litoralis*, *Desis kenyonae* never makes its nest above high-tide level.

During December, 1947, and February, 1948, 9 mature males, 5 mature females and a number of immature forms were collected at Eaglehawk Neck. Two egg-sacs were found on 4th December. One sac contained 30 eggs, the other 30 spiderlings almost ready to emerge. The egg-sac is lenticular in shape and measures about 17 mm. in diameter. It is made of white silk. The outermost layer is tough and parchment-like and has a shiny lustre. The egg-sac is placed on the side of the cavity occupied by the spider, and the mouth of the cavity is closed over by a sheet of silk. Such sealed up nests containing the egg-sac and the female spider are sometimes placed in cavities on the under side of rocks almost at the low-tide level, so that for the greater part of the day the nest is completely submerged. However, the cavity which is used for the nest is generally in such a position, that when the tide comes in the air contained in the cavity is not displaced. Moreover, the strong sheet of web, which covers the opening, helps to retain the air and exclude the water.

Desis kenyonae will live for several weeks in specimen tubes, if filter paper or cotton wool soaked in sea-water is placed in the tube with the spider. Specimens kept in this manner in the laboratory fed eagerly on ordinary house-flies. A female made an egg-sac in one of the tubes. It was firmly fixed in the angle between the bottom of the tube and the side. By placing a strong light behind the egg-sac the eggs could be observed. They hatched in 47 days from the time the egg-sac was made. The newly hatched spiderlings remained in the sac and after 14 days from the time of hatching they underwent their first post-embryonic ecdysis. The egg-sac was then opened in order to examine the young spiders more closely. Hence the normal mode of escape from the sac could not be observed.

REFERENCES

- BRISTOWE, W. S., 1930.—Notes on the Biology of Spiders,—II Aquatic Spiders. *Ann. Mag. Nat. Hist.*, Ser. 10, Vol. VI, 1930, pp. 343-347.
- CAMBRIDGE, O. P., 1883.—On some new Genera and Species of Spiders. *Proc. Zool. Soc.*, London, 1883, pp. 352-364, Plates XXXVI and XXXVII.
- DALMAS, COMTE DE, 1917.—Araignées de Nouvelle-Zélande. *Ann. Soc. Ent. de France*, Vol. LXXXVI, 1917, pp. 317-430.
- HOGG, H. R., 1909.—Spiders and Opiliones from the Subantarctic Islands of New Zealand. Article IX. Subantarctic Islands of New Zealand, Wellington, N.Z., 1909, pp. 155-181, Plates VII and VIII.
- KOCH, L., 1875.—Die Arachniden Australiens, Nürnberg.
- PETRUNKEVITCH, A., 1928.—Systema Aranearum. *Trans. Conn. Acad.*, Vol. 29, 1928, pp. 1-270.
- , 1933.—An Inquiry into the Natural Classification of Spiders, based on a Study of their Internal Anatomy. *Trans. Conn. Acad.*, Vol. 31, 1933, pp. 299-389, Plates I-XIII.
- POCOCK, R. I., 1902.—On the Marine Spiders of the Genus *Desis*, with Description of a new Species. *Proc. Zool. Soc.*, London, Vol. II, 1902, pp. 98-106.
- SIMON, E., 1903.—Histoire Naturelle des Araignées. Tome 2. Paris.

New Species of *Astacilla* from Tasmanian Waters.

By

ERIC R. GUILER

(Read 2nd November, 1948)

FIGS 1-8

The only reference to any members of this family Arcturidae being encountered in Tasmanian waters is contained in Haswell's work on the Australian Crustacea (Haswell, 1882, p. 303). This reference is of a doubtful nature, the specimen being found in the Australian Museum collection pinned on a sheet of cork with several specimens from Tasmania, and was deduced to have come from Tasmania.

This specimen was described as *Arcturus longicornis* (Haswell cit.). More recently Hale describes it as being a synonym of *Arcturus baffini*, Sabine, found in the Davis Straits (Hale, 1946, p. 171).

The specimens which I describe below were all taken in a very restricted area, the northern end of the D'Entrecasteaux Channel.

The genus *Astacilla* was established by Cordiner (1795). Tattersall raised the genus *Neastacilla* (Tattersall, 1921, p. 243), defining the genus as ' . . . agreeing with *Astacilla* Cordiner, except that (1) the 2nd thoracic segment is fused to the head and the lateral parts are not expanded downwards and forwards to partially cover the mouth organs; (2) the abdomen is unsegmented, all being fused into one piece'. As a type he designated *Neastacilla* (*Astacilla*) *falelandica*, Ohlin.

Nordenstam modified the genus *Neastacilla*, his diagnosis reading 'The first pereion segment coalesced with the head, but separated from the head by a groove which is absent dorsally. The lateral parts of the first pereion segment are not expanded downwards and forwards. Abdomen with three segments indicated by shallow grooves anterior from the pleotelson. Dactylus of first pereopod not expanded, tapering towards the end and claw missing. "Secondary" ramus of uropod furnished with a long apical seta.' (Nordenstam, 1933, p. 118).

Nordenstam points out doubts as to the validity of the genus *Neastacilla*. In particular, doubts are expressed as to whether the grooves separating the head from the first pereion segment and the abdominal grooves are sufficiently characteristic to be called generic characters.

Hale places in *Astacilla* two species previously described as *Neastacilla* (Hale, 1924, p. 209, and Hale, 1946, p. 171), the evidence for this being the presence of two setae on the secondary ramus of the uropod and the doubtful nature of the characters expressed by Nordenstam.

Stebbing noted that the secondary ramus of the uropod bears an additional minute seta on its upper margin (Stebbing, 1905), in the species *Astacilla amblyura*.

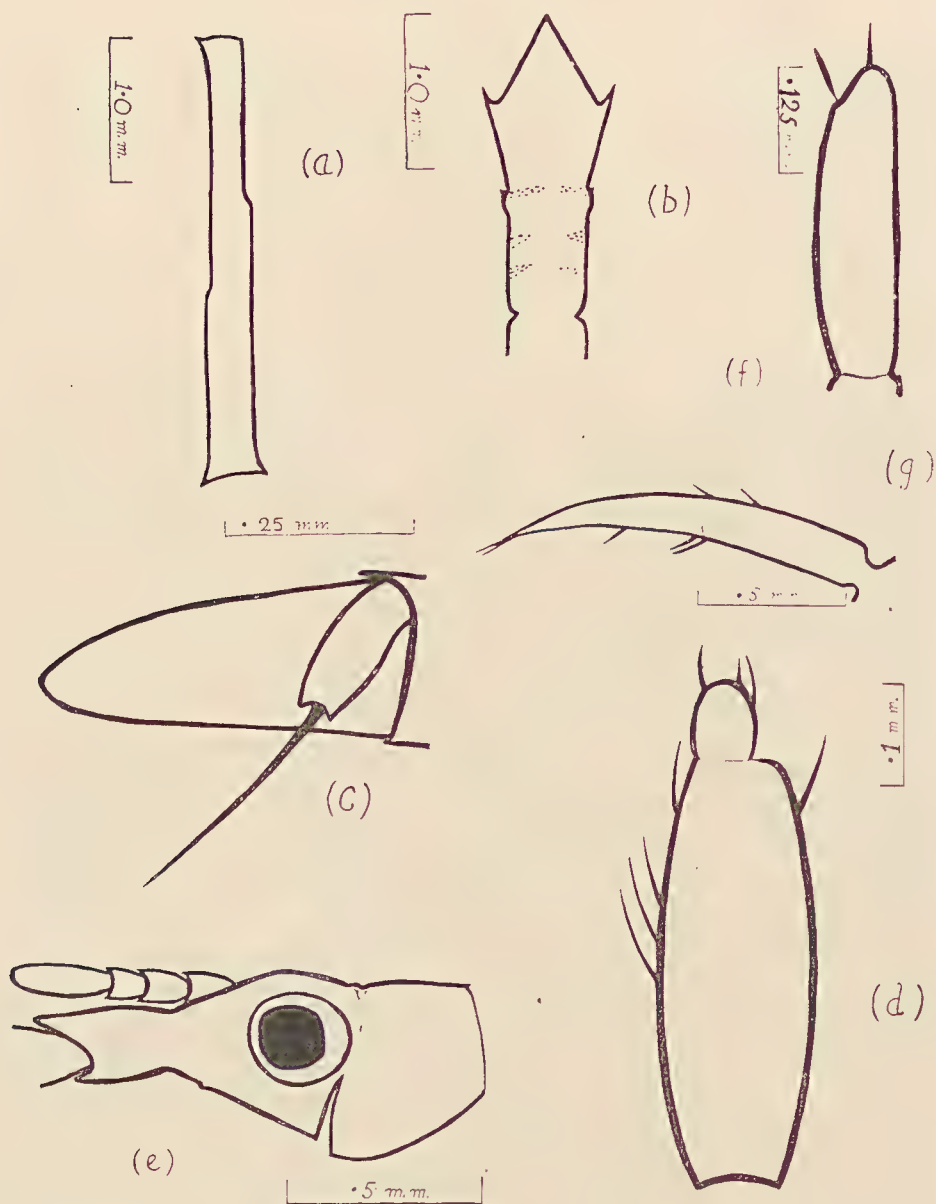


FIG. 1.—*Astacilla monoseta*, male. (a) Lateral view of IVth pereion segment. (b) Dorsal view of pleon. (c) Inner surface of right uropod. (d) Inner surface of dactylus of first pereionod. (e) Lateral view of cephalon and first pereion segment. (f) Lateral view of flagellum of first antenna. (g) 'Claw' of second antenna.

From the evidence of the above authorities and from the evidence of the condition to be seen in my own specimens described below, especially in *Astacilla monoseta*, I consider the genus *Neastacilla* to be superfluous.

Astacilla monoseta, sp. nov.

(Figs 1 and 2)

Male

Body smooth. Two pairs of lateral spines on the pleon. From above the anterior pair of these spines appear as round tubercles. The whole animal is covered with brown pigment. The body is slender and of total length, including second antennae, of 14.5 mms.

Cephalon fig. 1 (e) has a slight median dorsal process projecting between the basal segments of the first antennae. The cephalon is separated from the first pereion segment by a faint dorsal groove. The first pereion segment is produced downwards to cover the mouth parts. The second and third pereion segments are short, the sum of their lengths being less than that of the cephalon and the first pereion segment.

The fourth pereion segment is nearly three times as long as the cephalon and the first to third pereion segments combined. It is nearly one third of the total length of the animal. The segment is slightly broader posteriorly than anteriorly, fig. 1 (a).

The fifth pereion segment is longer than either the sixth or seventh.

In all of the pereion segments the coxal plates are not visible from above.

The pleon, fig. 1 (b), is slightly longer than pereion segments five to seven and terminates in a median apex. There are two pairs of lateral spines. Three faint dorsal grooves indicate the abdominal segments.

The first antenna is short. The peduncle of the first antenna not reaching beyond the middle of the first peduncular joint of the second antenna. The flagellum of the first antenna does not extend beyond one-quarter of the length of the second peduncular joint of the second antenna. The flagellum, fig. 1 (f), bears one terminal and one sub-terminal sensory appendage.

The second antenna is long and almost one-third of the total length of the animal. Reading inwards from and including the 'claw' the ratios of the principal segments are 1 : 4 : 4 : 2. The 'claw' of the second antenna is of three segments and bears two terminal sensory setae. There are two dorsal and three ventral spines also on the claw, fig. 1 (g).

The dactylus of the first pereopod has few setae, fig. 1 (d). None of these setae are sufficiently enlarged to form a claw. The remaining limbs of the first four pereion segments are typical of those of the group as a whole, varying only in minor detail.

The limbs of the fifth to seventh pereion segments are clawed.

The secondary ramus of the uropod is approximately a quarter of the length of the other ramus and bears a long, slender spine which is over twice as long as the ramus, fig. 1 (c).

The specimen was dredged in ten fathoms in the northern end of D'Entrecasteaux Channel and was found among red algae, January 1948.

Female

Very different in outward appearance from the male. Body smooth with lateral ridges running down each side of the fourth pereion segment. The whole animal is covered with pigment, especially the lateral surfaces of the pleon. Two pairs of lateral spines are on the pleon. Pleon is sharply pointed posteriorly. The body is stout and of a total length of 31.75 mms.

The cephalon differs from the male in that the eye is sub-triangular, whereas in the male it is sub-circular. The lateral downgrowth of the first pereion segment is of different form than in the male, fig. 2 (a). The groove separating the cephalon and the first pereion segment is much better developed than in the male. The second and third pereion segments are short, the sum of their lengths being less than that of the cephalon and first pereion segment combined. Round the anterior and posterior edges of each pereion segment are a series of tubercles. These tubercles are arranged in a single row in each instance. There are tubercles scattered irregularly over the cephalon and also an anterior and a posterior row of them. The tubercles are very small and are difficult to see in the male, but quite prominent in the female.

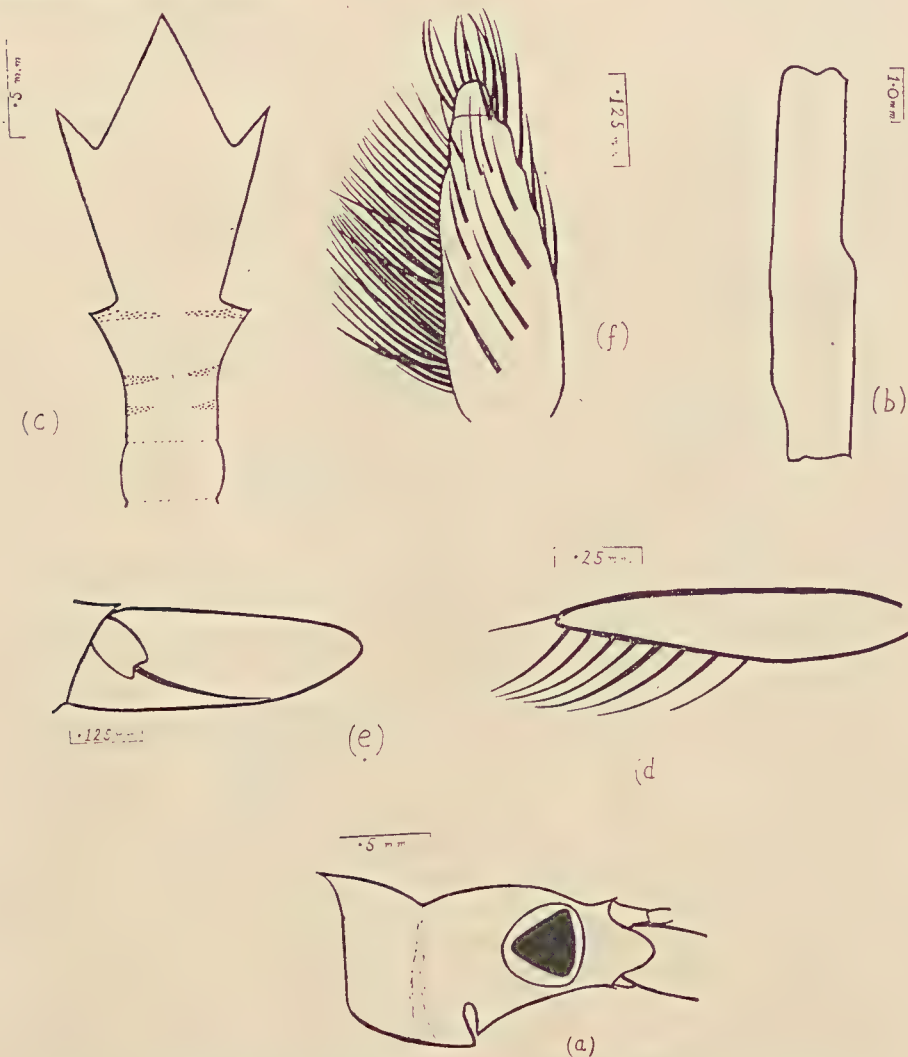


FIG. 2.—*Astacilla monoseta*, female. (a) Lateral view of cephalon and first pereion segment. (b) Lateral view of 14th pereion segment. (c) Pleon, dorsal view. (d) First antenna, lateral view. (e) Inner surface of the left uropod. (f) Dactylus of first pereopod.

The fourth pereion segment is over twice the length of the cephalon and pereion segments one to three inclusive. It is only one-quarter of the total length of the animal. It is much broader than in the male. It is broader posteriorly than anteriorly.

The fifth pereion segment bears on its dorsal surface a small sharp median spine. In the male this spine is represented by a small tubercle.

The abdominal segments are indicated by grooves on the dorsal surface of the pleon. The anterior pair of lateral spines does not appear rounded from above. The pleon is more sharply pointed than in the male. It is greater in length than pereion segments five to seven.

The relationship between the segments of the first antenna and those of the second antenna are the same in the female as in the male. The flagellum of the first antenna in the female bears one terminal and eight ventral and sub-terminal sensory appendages.

The ratios of the lengths of the segments of the second antenna are the same as in the male.

The dactylus of the first pereopod bears seven setae which are distributed evenly over the surface of the limb, fig. 2 (*f*). The propodite bears a great many setae on the exterior surface, while the lateral surface bears many strong, spine-like setae. The inner surface of the propodite only has six setae. None of the setae of the dactylus could be called a 'claw'.

The limbs of pereion segments two, three and four are all similar to those of the male. The fifth, sixth and seventh pereion segments are clawed.

The 'secondary' ramus of the uropod bears a single spine, fig. 2 (*e*). The form of the secondary ramus is different from that of the same structure in the male.

Dredged in ten fathoms in D'Entrecasteaux Channel, January, 1948. Among red algae.

This species possesses both Astacillid characters and also several characters of the genus Neastacilla. Comparing the features of the specimen with the diagnosis of the genus Neastacilla as modified by Nordenstam (1933), we find that the lateral part of the first thoracic segment is expanded down and forwards and that the groove separating the cephalon from the first pereion segment is not missing dorsally. These are not Neastacillid features as defined but are Astacillid. The dactylus of the first pereopod is not expanded and there is no claw is a Neastacillid feature, as is the single apical seta on the 'secondary' ramus of the uropod. The abdomen having three shallow grooves is a Neastacillid feature.

Astacilla inaequispinosa, sp. nov.

(Figs 3 and 4)

Male

Body smooth, stout. Total length 14.25 mms. One very large median conical projection on the cephalon between the eyes.

The cephalon is shorter than in any other species encountered, being only one-twelfth of the total length. The eye is sub-oval. The large projection on the dorsal cephalic surface between the eyes is slightly convex anteriorly and straight posteriorly. It is simple at the apex, not faintly bifid as in *Astacilla sheardi*, Hale. The only indication of the fusion of the cephalon and the first pereion segment is a slight dorsal depression visible in lateral view, fig. 3 (*i*). There is no anterior and downward projection of the first pereion segment. The second and third pereion segments are of moderate length, being about three-quarters of the length

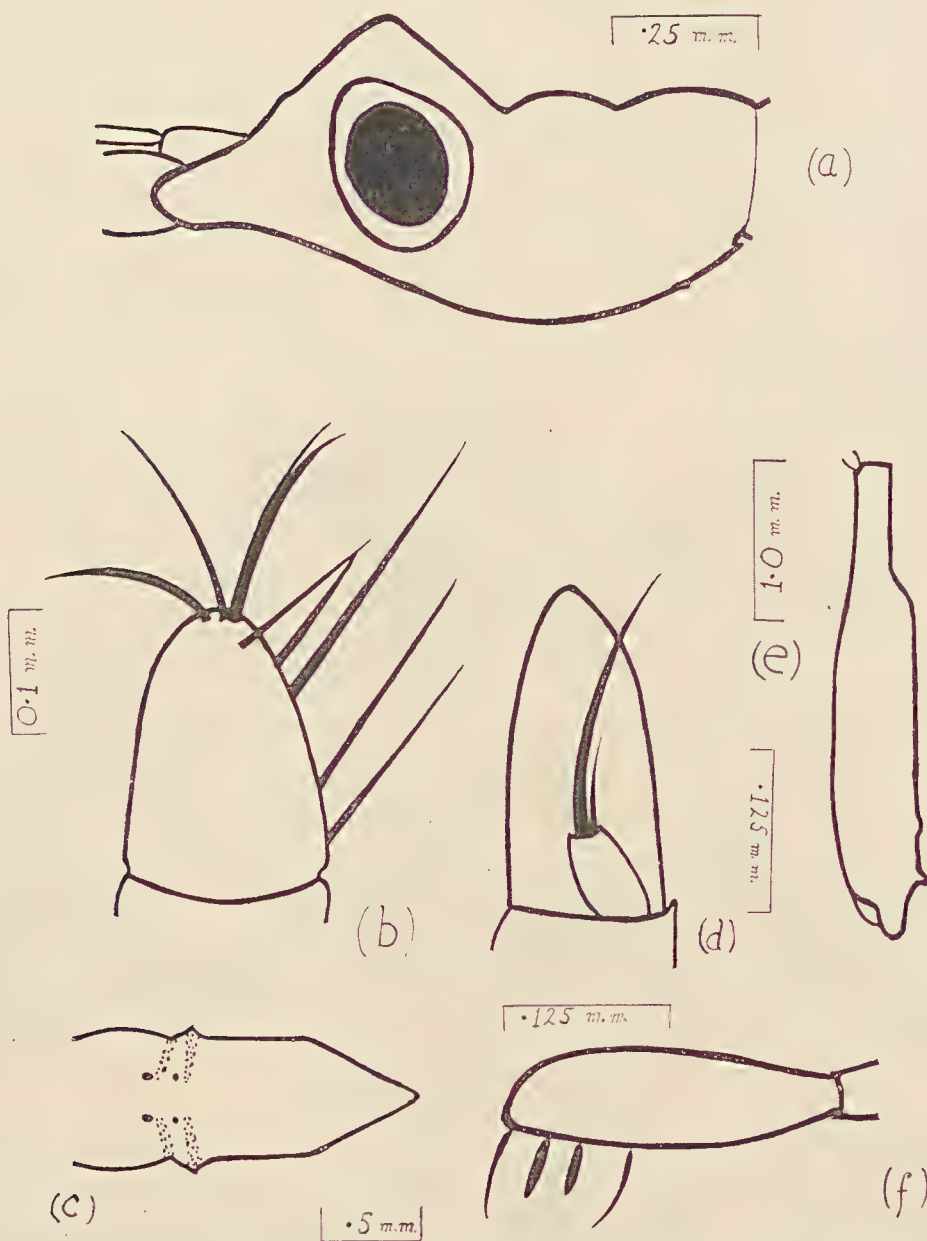


FIG. 3.—*Astacilla inaequispinosa*, male. (a) Cephalon and first pereion segment, lateral view. (b) Inner surface of dactylus of left first pereopod. (c) Dorsal surface of the pleon. (d) Inner surface of right uropod. (e) Lateral view of IVth pereion segment. (f) Lateral view of first antenna.

of the cephalon and first pereion segment. The fourth pereion segment is much deeper posteriorly than anteriorly. It is longer than the length of the cephalon and the first three pereion segments and is nearly one-fifth of the overall length of the animal, fig. 3 (e). Postero-dorsally this segment bears a large, median slightly hooked spine. Just anterior to this spine is a low median elevation, also on the dorsal surface. Laterally and posteriorly are a pair of lobes which serve as articulation with the fifth pereion segment, there being an equivalent 'socket' on the anterior surface of the latter segment.

The fifth to seventh pereion segments are of relatively long nature, being almost one-half of the length of the fourth pereion segment.

The pleon is a quarter as long again as the length of pereion segments five to seven. The first and second abdominal segments do not show any sutures or grooves, but form a slight dorsal elevation. On the posterior dorsal surface of this elevation there is a pair of small tubercles. The third abdominal segment shows grooves on the dorsal surface demarkating it anteriorly from the second abdominal segment and posteriorly from the pleo-telson. A pair of tubercles occur on the dorsal surface of the third abdominal segment. They are smaller than those on the preceding segments, fig. 3 (c). The pleon tapers to a slightly pointed end.

The first antenna is short, the flagellum not reaching beyond the distal end of the first peduncular segment of the second antenna. The flagellum bears one sub-terminal and three ventral sensory appendages, fig. 3 (f).

The second antenna is very long, being almost one-third of the total length of the animal. The ratios of the lengths of the segments of the second antenna, reading inwards from and including the 'claw', are 1 : 1.25 : 1.75 : 1.5. The 'claw' on its inner margin bears a single row of minute sharp teeth of a simple conical pattern. These teeth extend from the proximal end of the segment to a short distance from the distal end of the segment. This distance from the distal end is approximately one-twentieth of the length of the segment. These teeth number 110.

The dactylus of the first pereopod bears nine strong setae, all of which are concentrated on the outer surface, fig. 3 (b). Two of the setae are close together and might be regarded as a 'claw'. One seta is longer than the others and might likewise be regarded as a 'claw'. In my opinion none of the setae are sufficiently differentiated to be regarded as a 'claw'.

The fifth, sixth and seventh pereopods do not bear claws, and the coxal plates of these segments are visible from the dorsal surface.

The secondary ramus of the uropod bears two setae. One of these setae is very large and extends beyond the end of the other ramus while the second seta is less than one-half of the length of the former. In this feature the species resembles *Astacilla fusiformis*, Hale.

Dredged in ten fathoms. D'Entrecasteaux Channel, January, 1948. Among red weeds.

Female

Body broader than the male. Total length 27.5 mms.

The cephalon is similar to that of the male but the eyes are sub-triangular. The groove separating the first pereion segment from the cephalon is much more developed than in the male.

The second and third cephalon segments are only one-half of the length of the cephalon and the first pereion segment. The fourth pereion segment is broader than in the male but is long in proportion to the total length of the animal, being slightly greater than one-third of the total length of the animal. The slight ridge, which in the male is anterior to the dorsal hook-like spine, is absent in the female. The spine is present and of the same form.

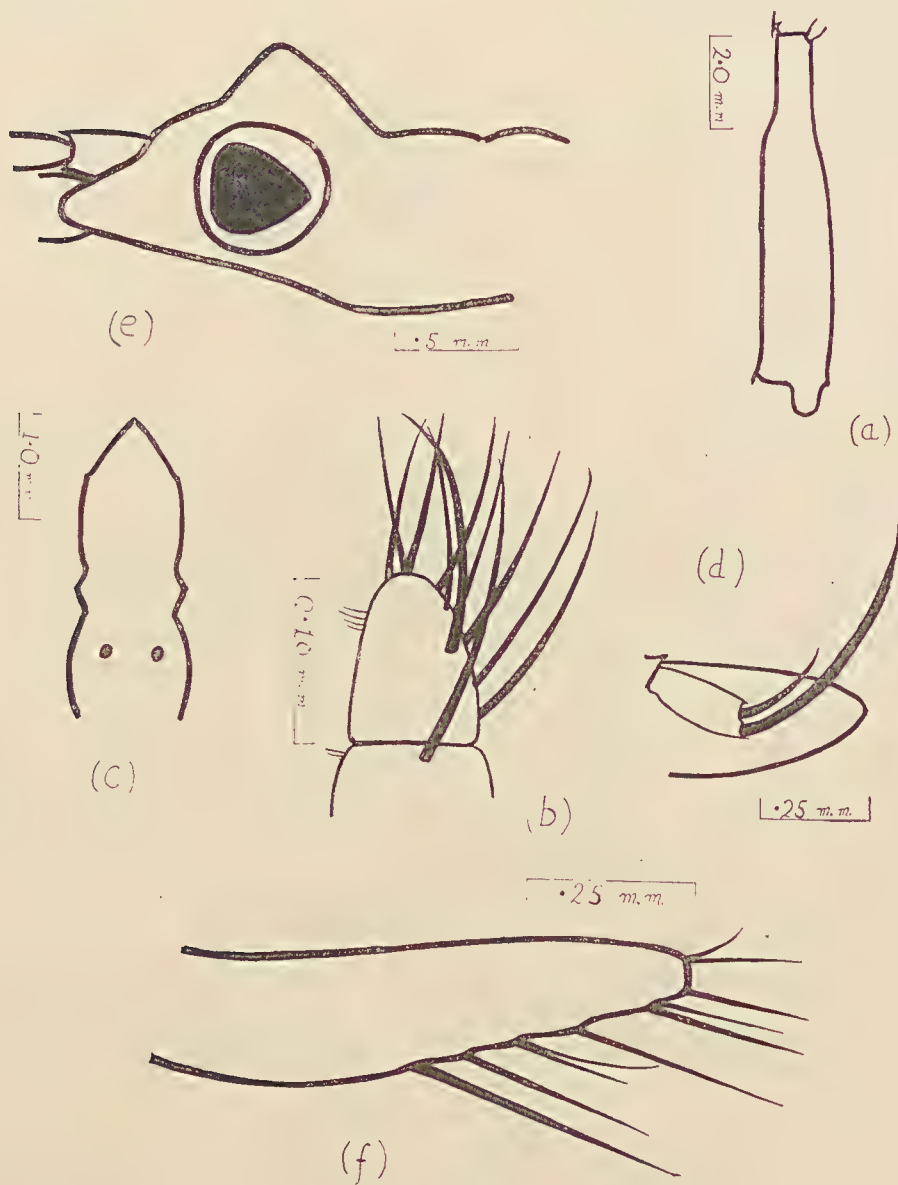


FIG. 4.—*Astacilla inaequispinosa*, female. (a) Lateral view of IVth pereion segment. (b) Inner surface of dactylus of left first pereionod. (c) Pleon, dorsal view. (d) Inner surface of left uropod. (e) Lateral view of cephalon and first pereion segment. (f) Lateral view of flagellum of first antenna.

The fifth pereion segment bears a single median dorsal spine of similar form to that borne on the posterior end of the fourth segment. The spine on the fifth pereion segment is smaller than that on the fourth.

The pleon is similar to that of the male but is not as long in relation to the total length of the animal. In the male the pleon is one seventh of the total length while in the female it is only one-eighth of the total length.

The first antenna is short and bears the same relationship to the segments of the second antenna as in the male. The flagellum bears two terminal sensory appendages and eight ventral and sub-terminal sensory appendages fig. 4 (f).

The second antenna is slightly more than one-third of the total length of the animal. The ratios of the segments are the same as in the male with the exception that the 'claw' is slightly longer. The 'claw' is composed of three segments as in the male. It also bears a single row of simple conical teeth, 110 in number. In the female some of the teeth had been broken and the number of teeth must only be considered as approximate.

The dactylus of the first pereopod bears ten setae on the outer side. None of these setae are smaller than the dactylus. On the inner side four small thin hair-like setae project vertically from the surface of the limb. There are three similar setae on the outer distal end of the propodite. None of the setae are sufficiently enlarged to be described as a claw. The distal end of the propodite bears a long seta which might be regarded as a claw. Fig. 4 (b).

The setae borne by the 'secondary' ramus of the uropod are much longer and stronger than in the male. They are so strong as to be described as spines. They are more curved than in the male, but the proportion of their lengths is the same as for the former sex.

The distribution of the pigment is the same in both sexes. In the cephalic region an area below the eye and on the lateral surfaces of the dorsal projection are pigmented. The anterior region of the fourth pereion segment and two spots in the mid-lateral region of the fourth pereion segment are also pigmented. The posterior end of the fourth pereion segment and the anterior of the fifth pereion segment are covered by a large area of pigment. The lower lateral surfaces of the sixth and seventh pereion segments are pigmented as in the lower lateral surface of the second abdominal segment and the lateral region of the posterior end of the animal.

This colour system is in no sense a characteristic of the species. *Astacilla derwenti*, described below, has the same system of pigmentation.

On comparison with the features of *Neastacilla*, *Astacilla inaequispinosa* furnishes several interesting observations. Firstly, the cephalic groove is not missing dorsally. In Nordenstam's diagnosis of the genus *Neastacilla* the groove is missing dorsally. The lack of an expanded part of the first pereion segment is a *Neastacillid* feature, as is the absence of a 'claw' on the dactylus of the first pereopod. The possession of two setae on the secondary ramus of the uropod is *Astacillid* in nature, while the abdomen only shows two external grooves.

Dredged in ten fathoms, D'Entrecasteaux Channel, January, 1948.

Astacilla unicornis, sp. nov.

(Fig. 5)

This species is described as a new species with some doubt as I have only the female on which to base a description. The specimen cannot be assigned to any described species, and in view of the great sexual dimorphism exhibited by other species of this genus it is only a tentative description here attempted.

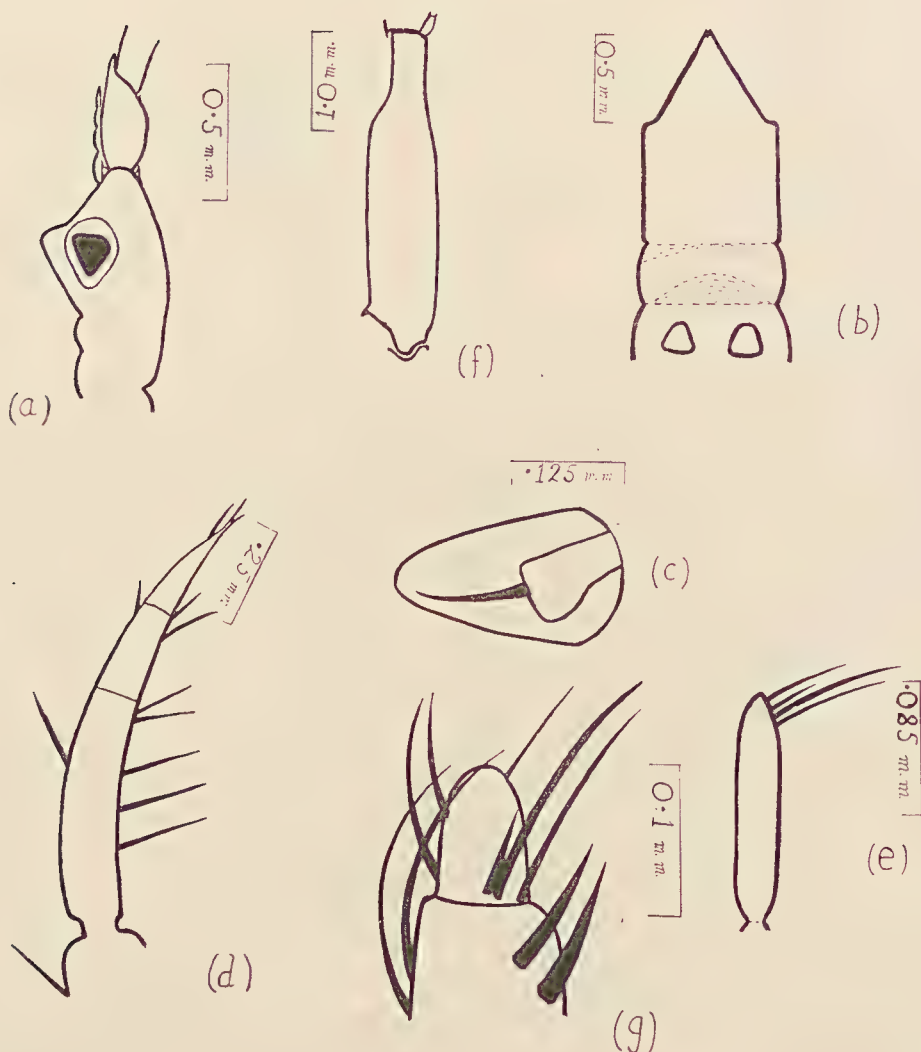


FIG. 5.—*Astacilla unicornis*, female. (a) Lateral view of cephalon and first pereion segment. (b) Pleon, dorsal view. (c) Inner surface of left uropod. (d) Lateral view of 'claw' of second antenna. (e) Dorsal view of first antenna. (f) Lateral view of IVth pereion segment. (g) Dactylus of left first pereopod.

Female

Body broad, surface smooth. Total length 14.00 mms.

The dorsal cephalic surface bears a large median process similar to that of *A. inaequispinosa*. There is a very small median anterior projection of the cephalon. The eyes are smaller than in any preceding species and are sub-triangular in shape. The cephalon is separated from the first pereion segment by a fairly sharply defined dorsal groove. There is slight lateral expansion of the first pereion segment to cover the mouth parts.

The second and third pereion segments are short, being only one-half the length of the cephalon and the first pereion segment.

The fourth pereion segment is narrow anteriorly but becomes deeper about one-quarter of its length, fig. 5 (*j*). Postero-dorsally it has a hooked, median spine, as in *Astacilla inaequispinosa*. A median lobe of the fourth pereion segment articulates with a socket on the anterior surface of the fifth segment.

The fifth to seventh pereion segments are long in relation to the total length of the animal, being one-eighth of that length. This is different from most other species described in this paper in which the length of the segments is about one-ninth of the total length.

The first two abdominal segments are fused as in *A. inaequispinosa* but in this species the fused segments bear a pair of blunt tubercles. The third abdominal segment is indicated by grooves on the dorsal surface. The posterior extremity of the pleon is faintly incised.

The first antenna is short, the flagellum not reaching beyond the first peduncular joint of the second antenna. The flagellum bears four long sub-terminal sensory appendages.

The second antenna is long, being nearly one-third of the total length of the animal. The ratios of the segments reading inwards from and including the 'claw' are 1.5 : 1.75 : 1.25 : 1.00. The 'claw' on its inner surface bears a single series of minute teeth. The teeth are of a recurved conical pattern. The row of teeth commences at the distal end of the 'claw' and ends three-quarters of the length along the 'claw'. The 'claw' is composed of three segments, fig. 5 (*d*). There are 60 teeth.

The dactylus of the first pereopod has six setae. Two of these are on the outside of the limb and are the same size as the dactylus. The other four are of varying sizes and all on the inside of the dactylus, i.e., point towards the mouth. Of these four one is of sufficiently large size to be called a claw. The propodite bears on its inner surface many strong, spinous setae, fig. 5 (*g*).

The coxal plates of the pereopods are not visible from the dorsal surface. Pereopods five to seven are not clawed. The secondary ramus of the uropod bears one strong spine, which reaches almost to the end of the lateral ramus.

Dredge, D'Entrecasteaux Channel in ten fathoms, January, 1948.

This species, from the appearance of the female, again gives interesting results if compared with Nordenstam's diagnosis of the genus *Neastacilla*. The features of the latter genus to be seen are lack of expansion of the first pereion segment and the possession of the long apical seta on the secondary ramus of the uropod. Features of the genus which are absent or exist in modified form are . . . the groove separating the cephalon from the first pereion segment is present dorsally, the abdomen has only two shallow grooves and one of the setae on the dactylus of the first pereopod is enlarged and could be described as a 'claw'.

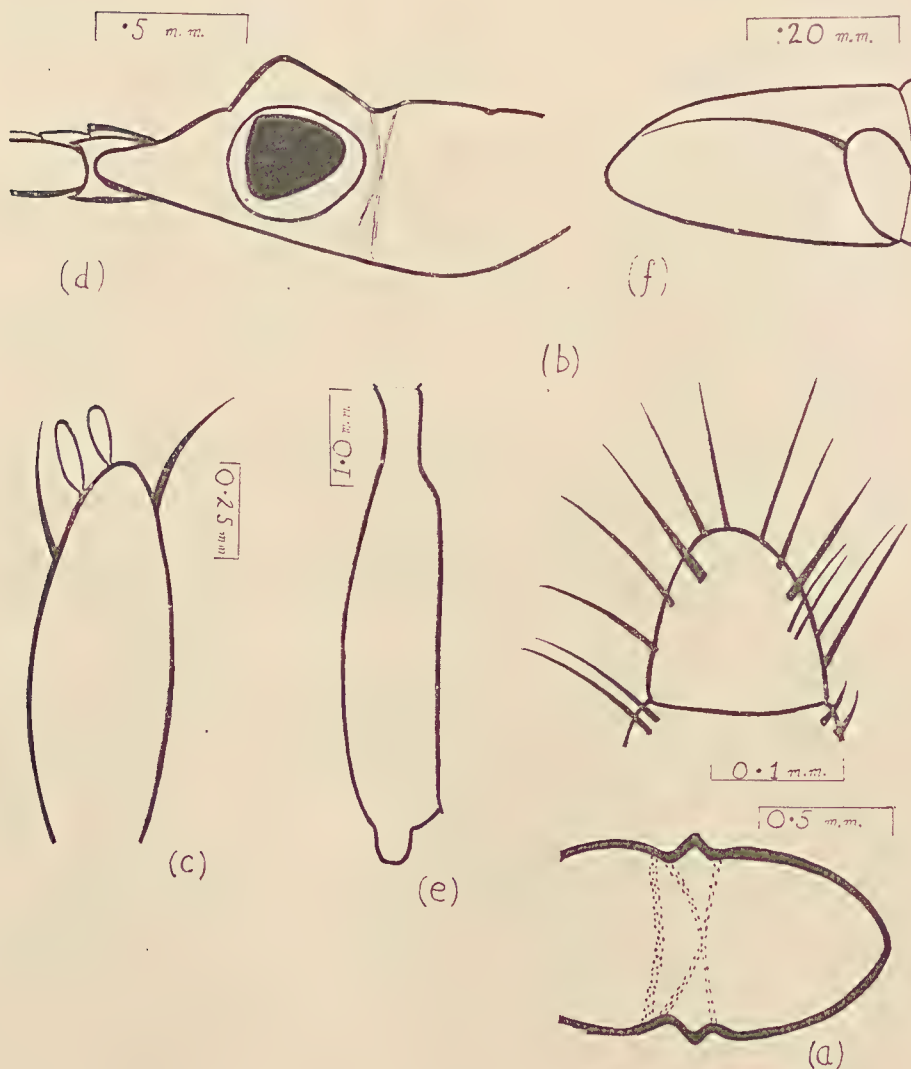


FIG. 6.—*Astacilla derwenti*, female. (a). Dorsal view of pleon. (b) Outer surface of dactylus of left first pereopod. (c) Lateral view of first antenna. (d) Lateral view of cephalon and first pereion segment. (e) Lateral view of IVth pereion segment. (f) Inner surface of left uropod.

Astacilla derwenti, sp. nov.

(Fig. 6)

The same remarks as to the description of the species applies to this species as to *A. unicornis*. This species is known only from the female.

Female

Body smooth, form similar to *Astacilla inaequispinosa*. Total length 18.25 mms.

Large median projection on the dorsal cephalic surface between the eyes. Small antero-median projection of the cephalon. Eyes are large and sub-triangular.

The cephalon is separated from the first pereion segment by a groove which is present dorsally and absent laterally and ventrally. There are slight lateral extensions of the first pereion segment.

The second and third pereion segments are of moderate length being three-quarters of the length of the cephalon and the first pereion segment (as in *A. inaequispinosa*).

The fourth segment of the pereion is long and deep posteriorly and it is nearly one-third of the total length of the animal. Posteriorly and dorsally this segment has a short blunt spine. This spine is of a different form from that of the preceding species. A postero-lateral lobe of the segment articulates with a socket of the fifth pereion segment. The lobe resembles that of the male *Astacilla inaequispinosa*.

The fifth to seventh pereion segments are more than one eighth of the total length of the specimen. In none of these segments can the coxal plates be seen from a dorsal position.

The pleon is slightly longer than the fifth to seventh pereion segments. It has a pair of lateral processes. It is rounded posteriorly. The abdominal segments are distinguished by dorsal grooves. The first abdominal segment is larger than the second or third. There are no tubercles on the abdominal segments.

The first antenna is short, the flagellum just reaching to the end of the first peduncular segment of the second antenna. The flagellum bears one dorsal and one ventral process and two sub-terminal processes, fig. 6 (c).

The second antenna is long being over one-third of the total length of the animal. The ratios of the segments reading inwards from and including the 'claw' are 1 : 1.75 : 2.25 : 1.5. There are no teeth on the 'claw'.

The dactylus of the first pereopod, fig. 6 (b), bears five setae on the outer surface and seven setae on the inner or oral surface. The setae, with the exception of two, are all sub-equal. The two exceptions are smaller than the rest. The propodite bears on its inner surface a row of strong short spines similar to those on the same segment in *Astacilla unicornis*. The spines are shorter than in the latter species.

The fifth to seventh pereopods are not clawed.

The secondary ramus of the uropod is of oval form and bears one long slender apical seta.

Dredged in ten fathoms, D'Entrecasteaux Channel, January, 1948.

This specimen bears a number of resemblances to the female described above and tentatively assigned to *Astacilla unicornis*, but agrees more fully with the diagnosis of *Neastacilla*. The only feature of *Neastacilla* which the specimen does not possess is that the groove separating the cephalon from the first pereion segment is present dorsally. Were the genus *Neastacilla* valid this specimen would have been assigned to that genus.

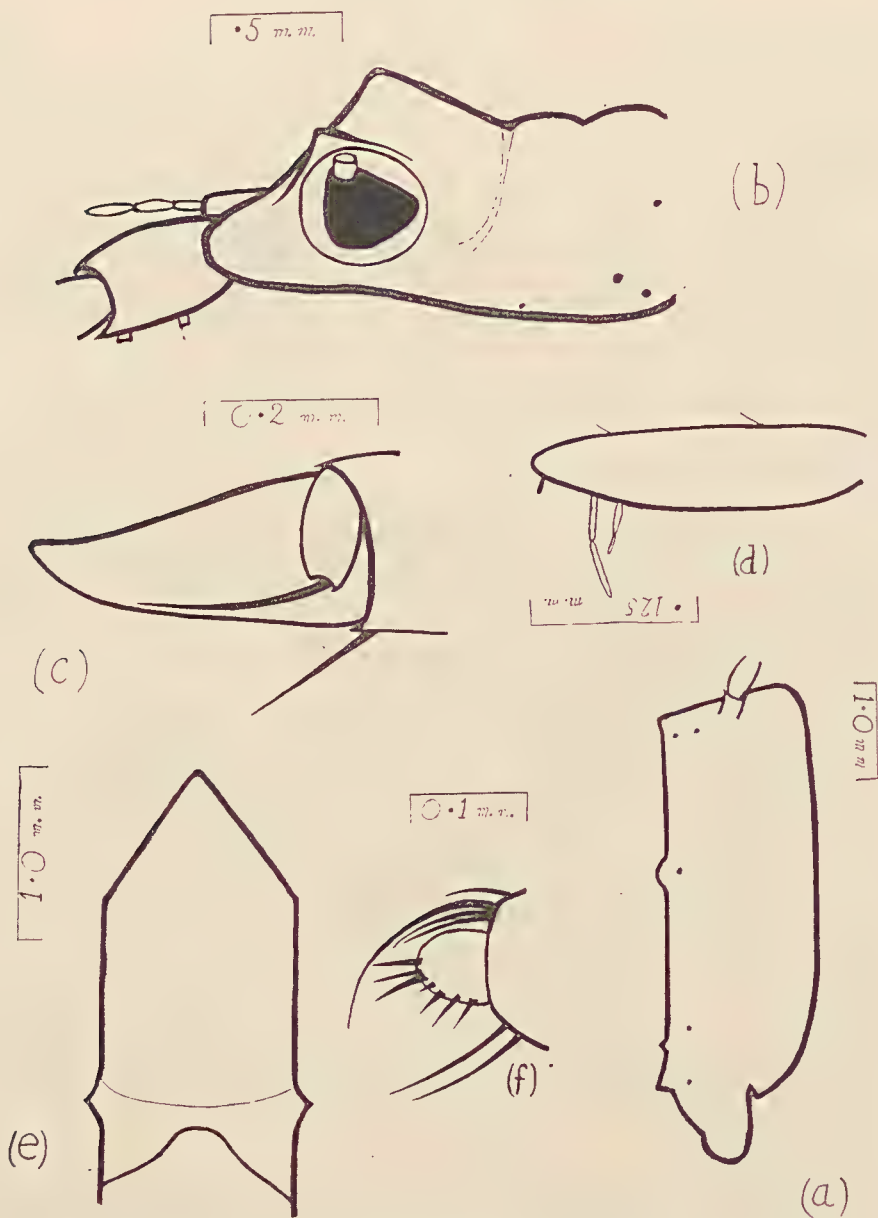


FIG. 7.—*Astacilla oculata*, female. (a) Lateral view of IVth pereion segment. (b) Lateral view of cephalon and first pereion segment. (c) Inner surface of right uropod. (d) Lateral view of flagellum of first antenna. (e) Pleon, dorsal view. (f) Dactylus of right first pereiopod.

Astacilla oculata, sp. nov.

(Fig. 7)

Known only from the female.

Body sparsely tuberculated, stout. Total length 19.5 mms. Large median dorsal cephalic projection. On either side of this are two smaller projections situated above the eyes. Several small tubercles are scattered over the general surface. There is a very slight median anterior projection of the cephalon. The eyes are large. The pigmented area is sub-triangular while the non-pigmented area is sub-circular. The pigmented area bears on the dorsal side a large tubercle.

The cephalon is separated from the first pereion segment by a dorsal groove. The segment bears three lateral tubercles. There is slight lateral downgrowth of the segment.

The second and third pereion segments are short, being less than one-half of the length of the cephalon and first pereion segment.

The fourth pereion segment is broad, bearing several small tubercles on the dorsal surface. In general form it resembles that of *Astacilla sheardi*, Hale, but is much deeper. At an approximate mid-dorsal position there is a low ridge. There is a postero-dorsal process. This process is not sufficiently sharp to be described as a spine. Immediately anterior to this process is a low sharp spine. Paired lateral lobes of the fourth pereion segment articulate with sockets in the anterior face of the fifth pereion segment. The fourth pereion segment is nearly one-quarter of the total length of the animal, fig. 7 (a).

The fifth to seventh pereion segments are broad in appearance and measure four-fifths of the length of the pleon.

The first two abdominal segments do not show any external evidence of segmentation. The segmentation of the third segment is only faintly visible on the dorsal surface. The pleon tapers to a point, fig. 7 (e).

The first antenna is short the flagellum not reaching the end of the first peduncular segment of the second antenna. The flagellum bears two fine dorsal setae and one sub-terminal and two ventral sensory appendages, fig. 7 (d).

The second antenna is not quite one-third of the total length of the specimen. The ratios of the segments reading in from and including the 'claw' are 1.25 : 2.0 : 2.25 : 1.5. The 'claw' on its inner surface bears a single row of minute teeth. They are of a recurved conical nature. The teeth number 120. The first peduncular segment of the second antenna bears on its ventral surface two rectangular processes. One of these has two very fine sensory hairs protruding from it. The other lacks these hairs, but it is possible that they were damaged either in life or in preservation.

The dactylus of pereopod of the first pereion segment bears on its outer surface seven short, strong spinous setae. The inner surface is devoid of setae. One of the setae on the propodite is very long and curves over the dactylus, fig. 7 (f).

Pereopods five to seven are not clawed. The coxal plates of all the thoracic limbs are not visible dorsally.

The 'secondary' ramus of the uropod bears one curved spine which is three-quarters of the length of the lateral ramus.

Dredge, D'Entrecasteaux Channel, January, 1948. Ten fathoms on scallop grounds on shelly bottom.

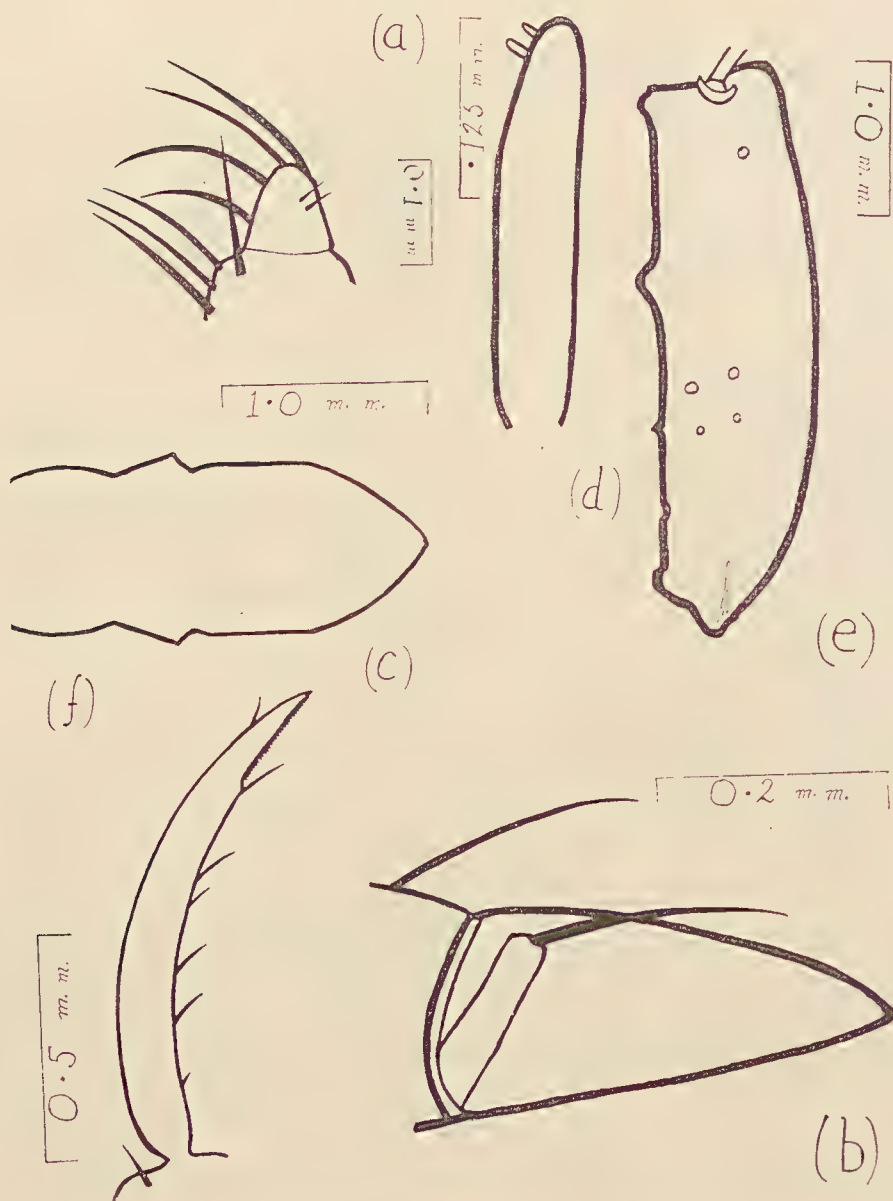


FIG. 8.—*Astacilla oculata*, young female. (a) Dactylus of the left first pereopod. (b) Inner surface of right uropod. (c) Dorsal surface of pleon. (d) Lateral view of flagellum of first antenna. (e) Lateral view of IVth pereion segment. (f) Lateral view of 'claw' of second antenna.

On the condition of the dorsal groove separating the cephalon and the first pereion segment and the condition of the abdominal grooves this specimen differs from the diagnosis of *Neastacilla*. The dactylus of the first pereopod shows an interesting condition in which the setae are modified to form a number of spines. None of the setae are sufficiently modified to be regarded as a claw, unless the setae may be considered as claws.

Young female, fig. 8.

This specimen closely resembles the above that I believe it to be a young female of the species. If it is another species it must be very close to *Astacilla oculata*.

Total lengths of specimen 16.75 mms. General form very much as described above.

The tubercle on the dorsal surface of the eye is much smaller than in the female described above. There is a pair of small lateral tubercles on the second pereion segment. The relation of the length of the cephalon and first pereion segment to the length of the second and third segment are the same as above.

The fourth segment is of similar form but varies in the position of the tubercles, spines and ridges. The posterior process is blunt and flat on the dorsal surface. Anterior to the posterior process on the dorsal surface is a median groove, while approximately half-way along the dorsal surface of the segment is a sharp spine.

The sixth pereion segment has a pair of sharp dorsal spines.

The ratios of the segments of all the limbs are identical to those noted in the adult female. The first antenna has two sub-terminal sensory appendages, fig. 8 (d). The second antenna is of the same proportions as in the adult female and also bears teeth of the same form and number as the adult. In the diagram (fig. 8 (f)) only the teeth at the end of the 'claw' are shown.

The dactylus of the first pereopod has four long setae on the outer surface and on the inner surface two short spinous setae. The propodite bears a long spine.

The 'secondary' ramus of the uropod bears one long seta but the ramus is of different form than in the adult female.

The only difference in the measurements of the body is that the fourth pereion segment is one-fifth of the total length of the specimen.

Dredge in ten fathoms, D'Entrecasteaux Channel, January, 1948.

Discussion

A comparison of the known species of *Astacilla* and *Neastacilla* with the restricted diagnosis of the genus *Neastacilla* as given by Nordenstam yields many interesting points.

Doubts as to the validity of *Neastacilla* were cast by Nordenstam (1933) and later by Hale (1946) who remarked that he could see no valid reason for the genus, but as yet no critical work has appeared considering each point of the generic diagnosis in relation to present species. The lack of this criticism was probably due to the absence of intermediate species connecting the two genera, but the recent discovery last January of new species enable this work to be undertaken now with a greater degree of accuracy.

The genus *Neastacilla* was defined by Tattersall (1921) as follows: 'II Thoracic somite fused with the head and its lateral parts are not expanded downwards and forwards to cover partially the mouth organs. The abdomen is unsegmented, all the segments being fused into one piece'. Only two species were assigned to the genus, *falclandica* and *magellanica*, Ohlin, whose specific names give their localities.

This diagnosis was modified by Nordenstam 1833, to read 'first pereion segment coalesced with the head but separated from the head by a mere groove which is sometimes missing dorsally. Lateral parts of the 1st. pereion segment not expanded downwards and forwards. Abdomen with three segments indicated by shallow grooves, anteriorly from the pleotelson. Dactylus of first pereopod not expanded tapering towards end; "claw" missing. "Secondary" ramus of uropod furnished with a very long apical seta'. To this modified genus was added *amblyura* Stebbing (1905).

Astacilla was defined by Cordiner (1795) Singular Subjects of Natural History, and I shall point out salient features of this diagnosis later.

Nordenstam pointed out that, 'most species referred to *Astacilla* are imperfectly known as regards characteristics which are distinctive of *Neastacilla*'. It may therefore be asked whether there may not be some species intermediate between *Astacilla* and *Neastacilla*, thus perhaps rendering the genus *Neastacilla* superfluous.

Before proceeding to discuss the criticisms of recent workers levelled at the diagnosis of *Neastacilla*, it will be of assistance in clarifying the arguments if the salient features of each species be set out in tabular form.

	<i>Neastacilla.</i>	<i>Astacilla.</i>
a. Cephalic-thoracic Relationships.	Grooved.	f. Sutured.
b. First thoracic segment.	No lateral downward expansion.	g. Lateral & downward expansion.
c. Dactylus of first Thoracic Limb.	Tapering, clawless.	h. Blunt, clawed.
d. Three Anterior Abdominal segments.	Indicated by grooves.	i. Separate.
e. Secondary ramus of uropod.	1 long apical seta.	j. 2 seta.

The species mentioned previously as being recently discovered were dredged in eight fathoms in the D'Entrecasteaux Channel, living on red weeds. They were described under the names of *A. monoseta*, male and female; *inaequispinosa*, male and female; *unicornis*, female; *derventi*, female; and *oculata*, female.

Considering the table point by point in light of previous criticisms based on the then known species and these described lately, we note the following—

a. Cephalic-thoracic Relationships

Nordenstam states that this is only minute difference and may vary in different species; and he considered it to be of little diagnostic importance. In *A. Monoseta*, the groove separating these parts of the body exhibits a certain sexual difference being more strongly developed in the female than in the male. As we shall see later, this species exhibits features a, g, c, i and e. This sexual dimorphism can be seen in *A. inaequispinosa*, which shows a, slightly, b; c or h; d;

j. a, slightly, in the latter species refers to fact that the groove is only very faintly present. In *A. algensis*, Hale, the groove appears to be absent dorsally yet this species shows j.

At the other extremes in *A. longicornis*, Sowerby, we see that the suture described in the diagnosis of the genus *Astacilla*.

This feature is very unstable as it can exist very well defined through stages to more or less absence at the same time the various species bearing mixed generic features.

b. First Thoracic Segment

Quoting Nordenstam 'in some species of *Astacilla* these expansions—judging by the literature on the subject—appear to be indistinct or quite absent'. This can be seen in such species as *A. mediterranea*, Kochler, and *A. deshaiesii*, Stephenson, which were nevertheless, assigned to the genus *Astacilla*.

This expansion can exist side-by-side with Neastacillid conditions, as is seen in *A. monoseta*, where we find a, g, c, d, and e.

From the above therefore, I conclude that this feature must only rank after specific and not generic diagnosis.

c. Dactylus of First Pereiopod

I cannot agree with Nordenstam on this feature being diagnostic. My principal reason for this is that the feature as defined after *Astacilla* exists beside Neastacillid features. *A. unicornis* possess features a; b; h; d; and e. One seta in this species is of sufficient size to be called a 'claw'.

Study of the illustrations of various authors shows that a certain amount of difference of opinion exists as to what may be called a 'claw'.

d. Condition of the Three Anterior Abdominal Segments

This feature was discarded by Nordenstam on the conflicting evidence shown by *A. longicornis*, Sowerby, and Tattersall's type figures for Neastacilla. In the specimens I examined there was a uniformity of this feature, that there is not sufficient data of the species to decide if a genus might be erected on this feature. I doubt if it might as, I believe it to be more in the nature of a feature common to the genus *Astacilla* but, similar to the sephatic thoracic relationships, in varying states of development.

e. Setae on Secondary Ramus of Uropod

The Astacillid feature of two setae in the secondary ramus of the uropod exists beside Neastacillid features in *A. inaequispinosa*, though the converse condition is not to be seen in any described species. This may be altered as the uropod has not been described in *A. marionensis*, Beddome and Kerguelensis, Vanhöffen. *A. monoseta* shows the single seta and other Neastacillid features and at the same time shows Astacillid feature in lateral and downward expansion of the first thoracic segment. It might seem that further Astacillid features may be found in some as yet undiscovered species.

There exists a series in the relative sizes of the setae on this ramus of the uropod. Starting with equal sized setae, as in *A. vicaria*, Hale, through the subequal condition seen in several species, to next stage where one seta is half of the length of the other as in *inaequispinosa* and *fusiformis*, Hale, followed by that seen in *amblyura*, Stebbing, where a rudimentary seta exists beside the large single seta to the end point of one single seta.

From the above comparisons it seems certain that Nordenstam's cautious remark that the genus *Neastacilla* might be rendered superfluous, has been verified not only by the recently discovered species from the channel but also by the longer known and described species from other localities.

Sexual dimorphism exists in other Isopods—notably—*Naesa bidentata* Bate and Westwood where the male and female were described as different species. In *A. monoseta* and *inaequispinosa* I have described what I consider to be the male and female of both species. In *monoseta*, I have used limb proportions as a guide as external appearances are very different. In *inaequispinosa* there is little dimorphism.

I must acknowledge the helpful advice and assistance of Professor V. V. Hickman during the preparation of this paper.

REFERENCES

- BARNARD.—*Ann. S. African Mus.*, Vol. VI, Pt. IV, 1910.
Ann. S. African Mus., Vol. XVII, Pt. V, 1920.
Ann. S. African Mus., Vol. XXXII, Pt. V, 1940.
- CORDINER, 1795.—Singular Subjects of Natural History.
- HALE, 1924.—Notes on Aust. Crust. III. *Trans. & Proc. R. Soc. of S. Aust.*, Vol. XLVIII, 1924.
 —, 1946.—Isopoda-Valvifera. *B.A.N.Z. Antarct. Res. Exped.*, 1929-31, Vol. V, Pt. 3, 1946.
- HASWELL, 1882.—Australian Stalk and Sessile-eyed Crustacea, 1882.
- NORDENSTAM, 1933.—Marine Isopoda in Further Results of Swedish Nat. Ant. Exped., 1901-03, Vol. III, No. 1, 1933.
- NJORSTRASZ and STAKHOVEN.—Isopoda genuina in *Die Tierwelt der Nord- und Ostsee* Lief. xviii. Leipzig, 1930.
- RICHARDSON.—Crustacea Isopodes in *Deuxieme Exped. Ant. Francaise*, 1908-10, Published 1913.
- STEBBING, 1905—Report on Isopoda . . . in Ceylon. *Ceylon Peel Oyster Fisheries*. Supp. Rep. XXIII, 1905.
- TATTERSALL, 1921.—Tanaidacea and Isopoda. *Brit. Nat. Ant. Exped.* ('Terra Nova'), 1910, Pt. VI, 1921.

Notes on the Geographical Races of *Hesperilla Chrysotricha* Meyrick and Lower (Lepidoptera-Hesperiidae)

By

L. E. COUCHMAN

PLATE I

A previous note (Couchman, 1947) reported the capture of specimens of both sexes of a race of *Hesperilla chrysotricha* M. and L., 1902, from Lunawanna, South Bruny Island, which I ascribed to ssp. *plebeia* Waterhouse. Twelve months later, A. M. Hewer presented to the Tasmanian Museum several worn specimens of a form of *chrysotricha* taken on 25th January, 1948, at Lutana, a riverside suburb of Hobart. In company with S. Angel a search was made of the western shores of the Derwent near Lutana, and a colony of this butterfly was found, of all places, on a City Council rubbish tip. A number of pupae were collected from clumps of *Cladium filum*, R.Br., from which ten females and two males emerged.

The differences in colour, markings and food plant when compared with the South Bruny specimens pointed to the existence in Tasmania of more than one race of *chrysotricha*. With the realisation that we had two distinct forms existing in Tasmania it became necessary to compare our material with the holotype male of ssp. *plebeia* in the Australian Museum, this comparison showed that Waterhouse's type was similar to the form discovered on the western banks of the Derwent, not to the specimens from Lunawanna, so that a correction is necessary to my earlier notes. As a result of the investigations of ourselves and others whose help has been enlisted in the search for further material, it has been possible for me to study specimens from several Tasmanian localities in some numbers, and thanks to the field work of F. M. Angel and N. B. Tindale I have seen more material from South Australia than was available to earlier writers, which has enabled me to separate as distinct a race from South Australia and another race from South Bruny.

As I noted in 1947, Waterhouse (1932b) used G. H. Hardy's Latrobe record for ssp. *plebeia* while apparently overlooking the fact that Hardy had recorded the capture of a female, so although it seems certain that Waterhouse actually had this specimen of the female, taken by Hardy, in his own collection, the published notes (1927, 1932b) refer to males as the only sex then known.

Curiously enough, while working through the *Hesperilla* material in the Waterhouse collection, my wife discovered the actual female taken by Hardy in 1915, which is recorded (1918) in these Papers and Proceedings for 1917, p. 67. The specimen carried three labels, the original, 'G. H. Hardy, Latrobe 1-1-15'; a second, 'Presented by G. H. Hardy C1055'; the third, 'Belongs to Hobart Museum'. G. H. Hardy (*in litt.*) informs me that this specimen, the only lepidopteron taken during one day's collecting at Latrobe, was donated to the Tasmanian Museum under the name of '*H. cyclospila*', and that Waterhouse must

have secured it after he (Hardy) left Tasmania in 1918. Thus it seems reasonably certain that Waterhouse had this female in his collection, under the name of the Port Phillip race, at a time when according to his published notes only the male of the race from Tasmania was known. This specimen has been returned to the Tasmanian Museum, and I describe it as the neallotype female of ssp. *plebeia* Waterhouse (1927), since it agrees with the race which we have now proved extends from south of Hobart along the western shores of the Derwent and the eastern and northern coasts of Tasmania.

The South Bruny specimens discovered in 1947 are recognisable as a distinct geographical race, much closer in appearance to the race here described from Port Lincoln, and to the typical ssp. *chrysotricha* from Albany, West Australia.

Hesperilla chrysotricha plebeia Waterhouse, 1927

H. chrysotricha cyclopsila Waterhouse and Lyell, 1914 (nec Meyrick and Lower, 1902) Butt. Australia: 188 (part); 34, f. 632. *Hesperilla cyclopsila* Hardy, 1918, Pap. Proc. Roy. Soc. Tasmania, 1917: 67. Turner, 1926, op. cit., 1925: 123. (nec *H. chrysotricha plebeia* Waterhouse, Couchman, 1947).

This race was described from two males, now in the Waterhouse coll., bearing labels 'Bridport, Tas. 27th Dec. 1902 H. L. Latta'.

Female. Forewing above, mummy-brown (Ridgway 15); cell spot and discal spots in areas 1a, 2 and 3 of equal size, a minute dot in upper half of 1a, light orange-yellow (Ridgway 3); three subapical spots of equal length, white, hyaline; cilia pale ochraceous-buff (Ridgway 15). Hindwing, as forewing; a central patch 4.5 mm. long, 2 mm. wide, deep chrome (Ridgway 3); cilia as forewing.

Beneath; apex of forewing and the hindwing warm buff (Ridgway 15); inner margin of hindwing broadly cream-buff (Ridgway 30); cell spot silver centred; a discal row of silver centred spots, that in area 6 twice as large as those in 2, 3 and 7; a faint elongate black dot in disc of area 5. Cilia as above.

Forewing length 17.5 mm.

Neallotype female labelled 'G. H. Hardy, Latrobe 1.1-15'; now in the Tasmanian Museum.

I have records of this race, mostly bred from pupae, from the western shores of the Derwent (Margate, Kingston, Lutana, Elwick to Granton, Bridgewater turn-off to the 19-mile post near New Norfolk); Carlton (N. B. Tindale); several spots near Swansea (S. Angel); as well as the earlier records from Bridport and Latrobe.

Whereas the Lunawanna race of the butterfly, as noted in 1947, was attached to *Gahnia trifida* Lab., the only food plant at Lutana proved to be *Cladium filum* R.Br. In company with my friend A. Meston, my wife and I made an intensive search of the western shores of the Derwent during December, 1948, in an effort to check the range of the foodplant, and, it was hoped, of the butterfly. From Kingston to the 10½-mile post at Granton, the only plant to be found was *Cladium filum* R.Br., always within a few yards of the shore line, often rooted below the tidal level of the river, and usually consisting of a single line of plants fringing the river edge. We found the early stages of the butterfly in every locality throughout this reach of the river, and although owing to its position at Lutana it faces extermination there within a few years, there are a number of other spots near Hobart in which ssp. *plebeia* should be able to survive.

From Granton westwards there is a complete break in the food plant, no *Cladium* was found; but from the 13-mile post at least to the 19-mile post near New Norfolk *Gahnia trifida* Lab. alone is to be found, usually well back from the river edge,

bordering the swamps that are to be found along this stretch of the Derwent. It would seem that the salinity of the river must govern the extent of the two species of swordgrass, since no *G. trifida* was found from Lutana to Granton, and no *C. filum* between the Bridgewater turn-off and New Norfolk.

Because the correct determination of these foodplants seemed important, specimens were submitted to Miss W. M. Curtis, and on her advice to S. T. Blake, of the Botanic Museum, Brisbane, to whom I am indebted for help in the final determination of Tasmanian and South Australian plant material. *In litt.* my friend notes that '*G. trifida* and *C. filum* have been much confused. Kükenthal . . . has recently treated *Cladium filum* as a species of *Gahnia*, and I think this is the best disposition of the species. It is closely similar to *Gahnia trifida* and does not closely resemble any undisputed species of *Cladium*'.

Nevertheless, ssp. *plebeia* was found wherever we searched on either foodplant along the Derwent, and the specimens subsequently bred from pupae taken from *G. trifida* and *C. filum* are indistinguishable from the specimen taken by Hardy at Latrobe.

This race has been noted, from captured and bred examples, as emerging from 27th December, Bridport (H. L. Latta); 1st January, Latrobe (G. H. Hardy); 7th January, Lutana (L. E. Couchman); to 23rd February, Lutana (S. Angel).

Until the third instar the larva lives in a slender straight shelter, about three inches in length, formed from the tips of two or at most three leaves of its foodplant; after this it spins a spiral shelter lower down in the plant four inches or more in length, in which three, four or even five leaves may be incorporated, one leaf being looped over and woven into the shelter in a quite distinctive manner. The larva feeds at night on the tips of the leaves it has spun together, eating its way back towards the shelter.

The third instar larva from *G. filum* at Margate on September 4th was noted as being light yellowish-green in colour, lightening to yellowish at the joints of the segments, a darker green dorsal line, the body and anal plate covered with thinly scattered short black hairs. Head 3 mm. long, 2 mm. wide, buff, shading to greenish-buff towards the collar, central cleft black, thoracic legs brown, prolegs flesh coloured. Of the five larvae examined, two were 20 mm. in length, the other three, one of which had just shed its skin, 17 mm. in length. The full fed larva differs only in size, a specimen from Swansea taken on September 18th (an unusually early date, even for the East Coast) was 40 mm. in length, the head 4.5 mm. long, 3.5 mm. wide, in colour and marking agreeing with specimens from the Derwent estuary.

Although the larva usually lives, and later pupates, head upwards, this is by no means always true. My wife and I examined 68 larvae at Prince of Wales Bay, Hobart, on September 20th, 1948, of which seven were head down in their shelters, the rest head upwards as usual. Our count showed roughly every tenth larva head downwards, and this proportion has been noted on other occasions.

The larva lines the shelter with silk, and spins a pad to close the shelter above itself when ready to pupate, but there is a rather remarkable difference in the amount and quality of the silk lining the shelters found on the two foodplants in the Hobart district. On *G. filum* the shelter is thinly lined with silk, and the pupa rests with an appreciable amount of freedom within the shelter, but larvae on *G. trifida* spin a thick lining of tough silk, which enfolds the pupa so closely as to make movement difficult, and the removal of the pupa from its shelter without damage a somewhat delicate operation.

Hesperilla chrysotricha lunawanna n.ssp.

H. chrysotricha plebeia Waterhouse, Couchman, 1947 (nec Waterhouse, 1927), Pap. Proc. Roy. Soc. Tasmania, 1946: 29-30, I, f. 1-4.

Male and female are as described and figured in 1947, for comparison I now give a more detailed description.

Male. Forewing above mummy-brown (Ridgway 15), subapical spots white, hyaline; cell, and discal spots in areas 3 and 2, the latter half the size of the former, light orange-yellow (Ridgway 3); the sex brand composed of a series of crescents from vein 4 to below 1a. Hindwing as forewing, slightly darker in tone, the central patch extending towards the outer margin, 4 mm. long, 1.5 mm. wide, deep chrome (Ridgway 3). Cilia of forewing and hindwing pale pinkish-buff (Ridgway 29).

Beneath; apex of forewing and the hindwing snuff-brown (Ridgway 29), fold of hindwing cream-buff (Ridgway 30), cell spot silver centred, a discal row of brown spots, that in 6 silver centred.

Forewing length 15 mm.

Female. Forewing and hindwing above as in the male, three subapical spots of equal size, white, hyaline; cell and discal spots as in male, but the spots in areas 2 and 3 of equal size, and in addition a smaller spot in the lower half of 1a, light orange-yellow; cilia as in male.

Beneath; the apex of forewing and the hindwing tawny-olive (Ridgway 29), hindwing fold cream-buff; cell and discal spots of hindwing as in male, that in area 2 faintly, those in 3, 6 and in the cell clearly silver centred.

Forewing length 17 mm.

Holotype male and allotype female labelled 'Lunawanna, Tas. 12-Jan.-47 L. E. Couchman', in the Tasmanian Museum, paratypes in the Australian Museum, the South Australian Museum, and in my own collection. The name of this race forms part of the former aboriginal tribal name for the island.

I have captured and bred examples dated 12th January to 28th January, all from one locality on South Bruny Island; here, unlike ssp. *plebeia* in the Hobart district which is confined to an extremely narrow strip of the shore line, ssp. *lunawanna* ranges from the actual sea shore inland for several hundred yards.

Larvae and pupae have been taken only on *G. trifida* Lab. as previously noted, they are similar in every way to those of ssp. *plebeia* feeding on both *G. trifida* and *G. filum* in the Derwent estuary. At Lunawanna, as perhaps elsewhere, this butterfly survives despite very heavy losses in the early stages. During the first week in January, 1948, we examined 63 pupal shelters, of which 29 contained dipterous parasites, 30 pupae had been killed by a fungus disease, one pupa had emerged, and one shelter only was found to contain a live pupa.

Hesperilla chrysotricha naua n.ssp.

Telesto cyclospila Meyrick and Lower, 1902, Trans. Proc. Roy. Soc. South Australia, 26 (2): 63-64 (part); *Hesperilla cyclospila* Lower, 1911, *ibid.* 35: 121 (part); *Hesperilla chrysotricha cyclospila* Waterhouse and Lyell, 1914, Butt. Australia: 188-189 (part); Waterhouse, 1932, What Butt. is that?: 242 (part).

Waterhouse (1932a, 1933) discusses the Port Lincoln and Melbourne specimens first recorded by Meyrick and Lower in 1902, and restricts the name *cyclospila* to specimens from the eastern shores of Port Phillip. However, although he noted the differences between the Port Lincoln race and that from Port Phillip, Waterhouse did not name Lower's specimens from the former locality, and when describing the South Australian race (1938) attached the name *leucosia* to specimens from Mount Compass, leaving the race from Port Lincoln, which Meyrick and Lower in 1902, and later Lower (1911) had indicated as being distinct, still without a name. Actually the Port Lincoln specimens can be separated from the races taken elsewhere in South Australia and Victoria, as Lower believed; they are in fact much closer to ssp. *chrysotricha* from Albany, West Australia, than to specimens from the Mount Compass locality. Examples from the latter district and in particular those from Robe, South Australia, come very close indeed to the Victorian race, and I think will be hard to separate when we have specimens from intermediate localities along the Victorian shoreline.

Thanks to my friends F. M. Angel and N. B. Tindale I have been able to examine twelve males and three females taken near Port Lincoln.

Male. Forewing and hindwing above mummy-brown, forewing with a few basal hairs, yellow; cell spot 1.25 mm. square, a smaller spot in disc of area 3 and a trace of a spot below it in 2, maize-yellow (Ridgway 4); three minute subapical spots, white; a narrow black sex band from before vein 1 to vein 4. Hindwing, as forewing, a basal suffusion of yellow hairs, a central rectangular patch, 2.5 mm. long, 1.5 mm. wide, cadmium yellow (Ridgway 3). Cilia fore and hindwing, pale ochraceous-salmon (Ridgway 15).

Beneath; apex of forewing and the hindwing Saccardo's umber (Ridgway 29), lightening in tone towards the apex of the forewing. Hindwing with brown ringed cell and discal spots, that in area 1a, half the size of those in 2, 3, 6 and cell, all silver centred; those in areas 4 and 5 only faintly centred with silver.

Forewing length 15 mm.

Female. Forewing and hindwing above as in male, the three subapical spots larger and of equal size; an additional spot in area 2, of the same size as that in 3, and a small spot in the lower half of 1a, maize-yellow.

Beneath; apex of forewing and the hindwing as in male, though as in other races tending to be a tone lighter in colour. Cell and discal spots as in male, that in area 1 of hindwing one-third the size of those in 2, 3, 6 and the cell, all silver centred; in area 4 a brown dot, in 5 a brown elongate spot. Cilia as above.

Forewing length 16.5 mm.

Holotype male and allotype female labelled 'Wanilla Fount, Pt. Loncoln dist. 16 Oct. 1948 N. B. Tindale', in the collection of the South Australian Museum, with male and female paratypes in the S.A. Museum, the F. M. Angel and in my own collection.

Several males and one female were taken by F. M. Angel and N. B. Tindale flying on the morning of October 16th, 1948, and pupae were found in shelters on *Gahnia trifida* Lab., from which a number of males, but only two more females emerged on 19th and 22nd October. The shelters were of the usual *chrysotricha* type, similar to those from Mount Compass, Hobart, and from South Bruny.

Wanilla Fount, or Fountain, about twelve miles west of Port Lincoln, is a permanent freshwater spring discharging from the Uley Basin, flowing down to

the sea, distant some three miles at Kellidie Bay. The fountain is no more than 25 feet above sea level, and is surrounded by a luxuriant growth of *Gahnia trifida*, which becomes less vigorous away from the spring itself.

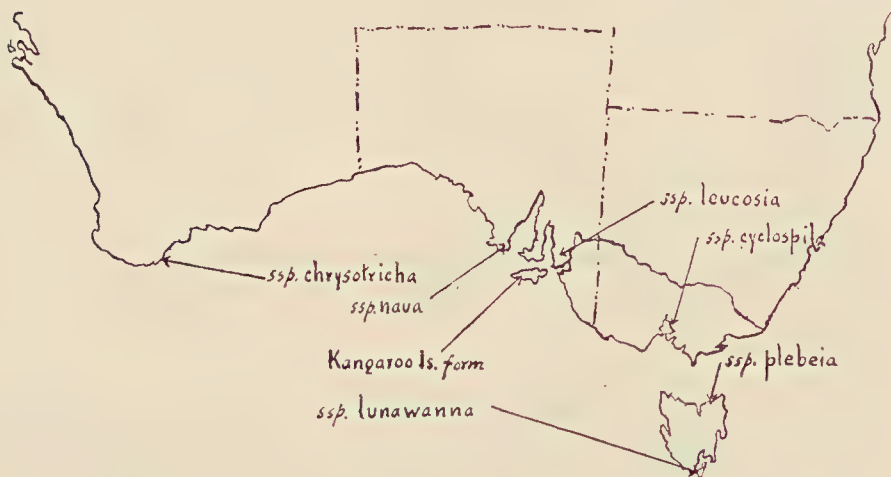
The area south and west of Port Lincoln where the butterfly is found was known as Nauo or Naua, the name of the aboriginal tribe formerly living there. The name of the subspecies from Port Lincoln perpetuates the name of this native tribe.

Thanks to F. M. Angel I have been able to examine a male and female of a possible additional race from Rocky River, Kangaroo Island. This locality is in the western part of the island, an area with a much higher rainfall. The pair, unfortunately not in the best condition, are noticeably darker than specimens from Mt. Compass, in this respect they are close to ssp. *naua* from Port Lincoln, especially on the underside of the hindwing. The discal silver centred spots on the hindwing beneath are small, as in typical *c. chrysotricha*, and particularly in the male they are very faintly tinged with silver.

The close resemblance between these western Kangaroo Island specimens and *c. chrysotricha* from Albany points to an association which is reminiscent of the strong relationship between the plants from Kangaroo Island and those from south-western West Australia (noted by J. G. Wood, 1930, Trans. Proc. Roy. Soc. South Australia 54: 105-139), a relationship which does not extend to the mainland areas of South Australia.

Specimens from Robe, South Australia, are as noted by Waterhouse (1938) intermediate between those from Mt. Compass and Melbourne, in fact the male and female kindly lent me by F. M. Angel, labelled 'Robe 6-11-37', are almost indistinguishable from a Frankston pair in my possession.

The accompanying map indicates the areas from which *Hesperilla chrysotricha* and its races have been described.



The following table sets out the distinguishing characters of the races of *chrysotricha*.

Male. Above.	ssp. <i>chrysotricha</i>	ssp. <i>naua</i>	ssp. <i>leucosia</i>	ssp. <i>cyclopsila</i>	ssp. <i>plebeia</i>	ssp. <i>lanauanna</i>
Hindwing central patch.	2.5 mm. long 2 mm. wide	2.5 mm. long 1.5 mm. wide In appearance a distinct rectangle.	3 mm. long 1.5 mm. wide Frequently extended as a suffusion towards inner margin.	3.5 mm. long 1.5 mm. wide Frequently extended as a suffusion towards inner margin.	4 mm. long 1.5 mm. wide Usually extended towards inner and outer margin.	4 mm. long 1.5 mm. wide Usually extended towards inner and outer margin.
Male. Beneath. Apex of forewing and the hindwing.	'Reddish' (v. Meyrick and Lower)	Saccardi's umber (Ridgway 29)	Tawny-olive (Ridgway 29)	Buffy-brown (Ridgway 40)	Savay-brown (Ridgway 29)	Snuff-brown (Ridgway 29)
Hindwing markings. Discal and cell spots.	Spot in 1a is half the size of 2, 3, 6 and cell spots, all silver centred.	Spot in 1a is half the size of 2, 3, 6 and cell spots, which are 1 mm. square, all clearly silver centred. Spots in 4 and 5 the size of that in 1a, but only faintly silver centred.	Spot in 1a is one-third the size of 2, 3 and 6, which are slightly elongated 1.5 mm. diameter, silver centred. Cell spot 1 mm. square, silver centred. In 4 a minute brown dot, in 5 an elongate brown ring.	Spot in 1a one-third the size of 2, 3 and 6, which are elongate, 2 mm. x 1 mm. centred. In 4 and 5 brown rings. Cell spot 1 mm. diameter, silver centred.	Spots in 1a and 4 brown dots, in 2 and 3 faintly silver centred, in 6, 1 mm. diameter, clearly silver centred. In 5 a 5 a brown dot, Spot in 6 is 1 mm. diameter, silver centred. Cell spot half the size of 6, silver centred.	Spots in 1a and 4 absent or just discernible as brown dots. Brown rings in 2 and 3, in 5 a 5 a brown dot, Spot in 6 is 1 mm. diameter, silver centred. Cell spot half the size of 6, silver centred.
Female. Above. Forewing.		Usually a minute discal dot in upper half of 1a.	Usually a minute discal dot in upper half of 1a.	Usually a small discal dot in upper half of 1a.	Usually a minute discal dot in upper half of 1a.	
Beneath. Hindwing markings. Discal and cell spots.	Spot in 1a is one-third the size of 2, 3, 6 and cell spots, which are 1 mm. diameter, silver centred. In 4 a brown dot, in 5 a brown elongate ring.	Spot in 1a is half the size of 2 and 3, which are narrowly elongate (2 mm. long), clearly silver centred. In area 6 a rectangular spot (2 mm. x 1 mm.), in cell the spot 1 mm. diameter, both clearly silver centred. In area 7 a spot of the size of 2 and 3, but only faintly silver centred.	Spot in 1a is half the size of 2 and 3, which are elongate (2 mm. x 1 mm.), all silver-white centred. In 4 a brown ring, in 5 an elongate brown ring (2.5 mm. x 1.5 mm.), silver-white centred. Cell spot 1.5 mm. diameter, silver-white centred. In area 7 a spot of the size of 2 and 3, clearly silver-white centred.	Spot in 1a half the size of 2, 3 and 6, which are 1 mm. diameter, those in 2 and 3 slightly elongate, all silver centred. In 4 a minute brown dot, in 6 an elongate brown diameter, slightly elongate, silver centred. Spot in 6 is elongate, silver similar to that in 2 and 3, but only faintly silver centred.	Spot in 1a half the size of 2, 3 and 6, which are 1 mm. diameter, those in 2 and 3 slightly elongate, all silver centred. In 4 a minute brown dot, in 6 an elongate brown diameter, slightly elongate, silver centred. Spot in 6 is elongate, silver similar to that in 2 and 3, but only faintly silver centred.	A minute brown dot in 1a, in 2 a small brown ring, faintly silver centred. Spot in 3 is 1 mm. diameter, silver centred. In 4 a minute brown dot, in 6 the spot is 1.5 mm. diameter, silver centred. Cell spot 1.5 mm. diameter, silver centred. Cell spot similar to that in 2 and 3, silver centred.

The resemblance between the races found at Albany, Port Lincoln, western Kangaroo Island and South Bruny Island is remarkable, and is difficult to interpret when the isolation and the great distances between these races is considered. All of these races are noticeably darker in colour, especially the ground colour of the hindwing beneath, and the discal silver spots particularly in the males are very restricted and faintly marked.

It is to be noted that with the exception of *c. naua* from Port Lincoln, the other races, *c. chrysotricha* from Albany, the western Kangaroo Island form and the isolated *c. lunawanna* from South Bruny all inhabit areas of comparable rainfall, e.g., Albany 30-40 inches, western Kangaroo Island 'more than 25 inches' (v. Wood, 1930), and Lunawanna 34-38 inches per annum. Port Lincoln comes directly under the 20 inches isohyet.

Gahnia trifida Lab. is known to be the foodplant at Lunawanna and Port Lincoln, since although Wood (1930) omits it from his local list, recording *Cladium filum* only, it is certainly found at Wanilla Fountain, some twelve miles from Port Lincoln. Both plants are given by Wood as from western Kangaroo Island, and *G. trifida* is recorded from West Australia, so that it may be the choice of the butterfly in that locality also.

The races from Mount Compass, *c. leucosia*; the Port Philip area; *c. cyclospila*; and northern, eastern and south-eastern Tasmania, *c. plebeia* are very close to each other, they form a compact group not easy to separate. In general they are larger and lighter in colour, particularly on the underside of the hindwing, and especially in the female the silver spots of the hindwing beneath are notably increased in size and number.

The rainfall throughout this range, 25 inches at Mt. Compass, 23 inches at Hobart, 20 inches at Swansea is smaller than in the areas inhabited by the darker, outlying races, and at least in Tasmania the larvae feed on either *G. trifida* or *G. filum*.

The Mt. Compass locality is noteworthy. Distant some 10 miles from the shores of St. Vincent Gulf, it is a plateau c. 1000 feet in altitude, with low hills running several hundred feet higher. The highest locality at which *c. leucosia* has been collected is the small hanging swamps on Mt. Moon at c. 1200 feet. The habitat of this race differs completely from that of the other races of *chrysotricha*, elsewhere this species is usually found in small areas on or quite close to the sea and river shoreline.

SUMMARY

The acquisition by the Tasmanian Museum of specimens of *Hesperilla chrysotricha* Meyrick and Lower, 1902, from near Hobart led me to undertake further investigations into the distribution and variation of this butterfly, with the result that an additional race, *c. lunawanna* is described from Tasmania, together with the true female of *c. plebeia* Waterhouse, 1927.

Lower considered the specimens from Port Lincoln, S.A., to be a distinct sub-species, we are now able to confirm this as we have caught and bred material in some quantity, and the name *naua* is now given to this sub-species.

The early stages, the foodplant and the distribution of the Tasmanian and South Australian races are described and discussed.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I wish to thank the Director of the South Australian Museum for allowing me to examine South Australian Museum material, F. M. Angel and N. B. Tindale for specimens from Port Lincoln and other South Australian localities, the Director of the Tasmanian Museum and S. Angel for material from Tasmanian localities.

REFERENCES

- COUCHMAN, L. E., 1947.—*Pap. Proc. Roy. Soc. Tasmania*, 1946: 29-30. I, f. 1-4.
 HARDY, G. H., 1918.—*Op. cit.*, 1917: 67.
 LOWER, O., 1911.—*Trans. Proc. Roy. Soc. South Australia*, 35: 121-122.
 MEYRICK, E., and LOWER, O., 1902.—*Op. cit.*, 26: 59-60, 63-64.
 RIDGWAY, R., 1912.—*Color Standards and Color Nomenclature*.
 TURNER, A. J., 1926.—*Pap. Proc. Roy. Soc. Tasmania*, 1925: 123.
 WATERHOUSE, G. A., 1927.—*Proc. Linn. Soc. N.S.W.*, 52 (3): 280-281. 26, f. 23-28.
 ———, 1932a.—*Op. cit.*, 57 (3/4): 225-226.
 ———, 1932b.—*What Butterfly is That?*: 242. 32, f. 5, 5A, 6.
 ———, 1933.—*Records South Australian Museum*, 5 (1): 56.
 ———, 1937.—*Proc. Linn. Soc. N.S.W.*, 62 (3/4): 118.
 ———, 1938.—*Op. cit.*, 63 (5/6): 452.
 ———, and LYELL, G., 1914.—*Butt. Australia*: 188. 34, f. 631, 632. 37, f. 777.

PLATE I

- FIG. 1.—*Hesperilla chrysotricha naua* n.ssp. Holotype male, upperside. Wanilla Fount., Pt. Lincoln Dist., 16th October, 1948. x 1½.
 FIG. 2.—Male, underside of same specimen. x 1½.
 FIG. 3.—Allotype female, upperside. Wanilla Fount., Pt. Lincoln Dist., 16th October, 1948. x 1½.
 FIG. 4.—Female, underside of same specimen. x 1½.
 FIG. 5.—*Hesperilla chrysotricha plebeia* Waterhouse. Female, upperside. Hobart, Tas., 7th February, 1948. x 1½.
 FIG. 6.—Female, underside of same specimen. x 1½.



Neonatal Length as a Linear Function of Adult Length in Cetacea

By

E. O. G. SCOTT

(Read 2nd November, 1948)

FIGS 1-3

In the course of a study of body-form in the False Killer Whale, *Pseudorca crassidens* (Owen, 1846), it appeared expedient to attempt to estimate the length of the neonatus by the indirect method of comparison with the neonatal-adult ratio of length in other Cetacea. A cursory survey of the literature shows the length of the newly born young is said to vary in different species from about twenty to about fifty per cent of that of the adult animal. Among the Mystacoceti, at any rate in the case of the larger, commercially more important species, the mean lengths of calf and adult are known with a fair measure of precision; and it is usually stated (*e.g.*, Pearson, 1936) that in this suborder length at birth is 25-30 per cent of the maximum length. Among a number of the Odontoceti, our knowledge of which in this respect is less extensive and less reliable, these percentages are known at times to be considerably exceeded. There does not appear to be, however, at least in literature available to the writer, any account of a systematic attempt to seek a generalised expression of a possible correlation between the two magnitudes in a group of species. Investigations made in connexion with the special problem noted above soon disclosed the probable existence, among a small series of delphinids, of a significant linear regression of natal length upon adult length; and further consideration has led to the interesting suggestion that the relation may well have a broad (quite possibly an order-wide) applicability.

The purposes of the present paper are, first, to determine, on the basis of what appear to be the best available data for ten species of whales, the regression equation of length of neonatus on length of adult, and, secondly, to examine some of the biological implications of the relationship so formulated. Species dealt with are the Common Porpoise, *Phocaena phocaena* Linné, 1758; Common Dolphin, *Delphinus delphis* (Linné, 1758); White-beaked Dolphin, *Lagenorhynchus albirostris* (Gray, 1846); Bottle-nosed Dolphin, *Tursiops truncatus* (Montagu, 1815); Sperm Whale, *Physeter catodon* Linné, 1758; Humpback Whale, *Megaptera nodosa* (Bonnaterre, 1789); Piked Whale or Lesser Rorqual, *Balaenoptera acutorostrata* Lacépède, 1804; Sei Whale or Rudolphi's Rorqual, *Balaenoptera borealis* (Lesson, 1828); Fin Whale or Common Rorqual, *Balaenoptera physalus* (Linné, 1758); Blue Whale or Sibbald's Rorqual, *Balaenoptera musculus* (Linné, 1758).

1. Equation of Regression of Neonatal Length, $L_{p t}$, on Adult Length, $L_{a t}$

(a) *Sources of Data.* An eclectic survey of accessible information on length at birth, $L_{p t}$, and adult length, $L_{a t}$, in the ten selected species yields the entries in the first two numerical columns of Table I. For the first four species listed the values adopted are those given by conjectural growth curves (unpublished), arrived at by an analysis of the valuable records of British strandings by Harmer (1927): estimates for the remaining six species are based chiefly on dimensions recorded by Matthews (1937, 1938a, 1938b), Laurie (1937), Pearson (1936), Wheeler (1930, 1934), Mackintosh and Wheeler (1929), Harmer (1927, 1929), Lillie (1915), Beddard (1900), Gray (1866).

(b) *Regression Equation.* On being graphed the ten variates fall approximately along a straight line (Fig. 1); for which, with dimensions in centimetres, the best fit is

$$L_{p t} = 0.2441 L_{a t} + 44.3 \quad (1)$$

Values of natal length computed from this equation are entered in the third numerical column of the table. It will be seen the fit is very close, divergences ranging from 0.3 to 20.0 (mean 8.8) cm., or from 0.2 to 8.9 (mean 3.2) per cent. A test of the significance of the regression coefficient gives $t = 55.13$: the correlation coefficient is $r = +0.999$, or $z = +3.60$.

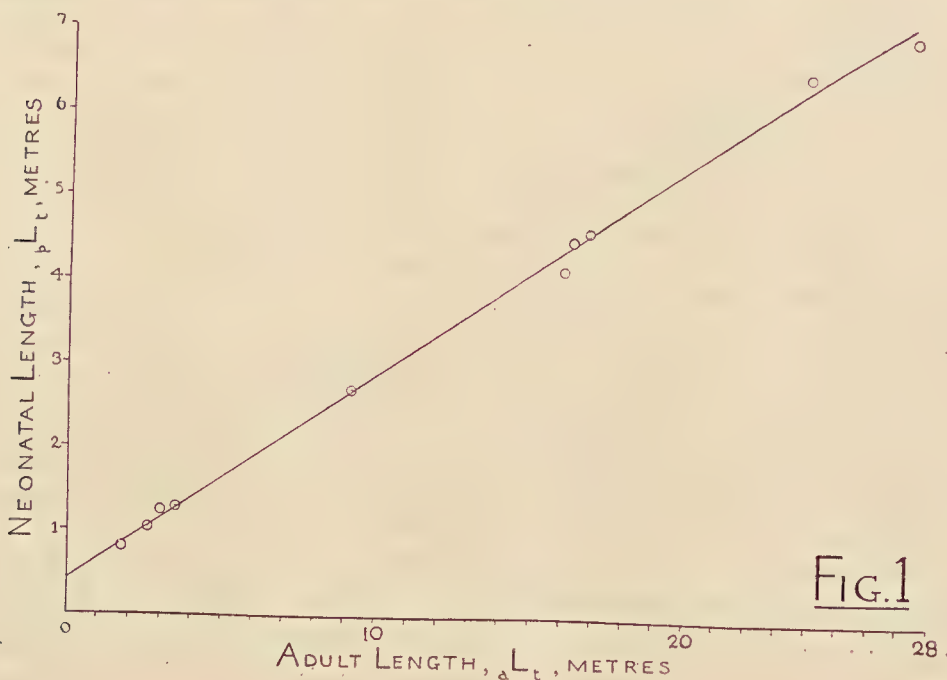


FIG. 1.—Regression of neonatal length on adult length in ten species of whales.

(c) *Degree of Reliability, and Statistical Nature, of Equation.* In the present imperfect state of our knowledge, the selection of the data for analysis necessarily involves a subjective element; and the high value of t obtained would seem to suggest the danger of bias towards the choice of estimates of a 'favourable' size may perhaps not have been wholly avoided. Even with all necessary allowances

made, however, there can be little doubt there subsists, at least among the species examined, a good measure of correlation: further, it seems highly probable the constants of the function as determined are of the right order of magnitude.

An indication of the extent of the swinging effect exerted by the maximum variate, whose extreme position lends it much weight, is afforded by the fact that, with adult length for the Blue Whale set at 2700 (all other variates remaining unchanged), the equation of the best straight line becomes

$$L_{p\ t} = 0.2467 \frac{L}{a\ t} + 42.3 \quad (2)$$

With this equation the discrepancies between assigned and calculated values of natal length are 1.3-22.1, mean 7.5, cm., or 0.7-6.9, mean 2.8, per cent; $t = 85.36$.

With adult Blue Whale length at 2600 (which seems low), but other variates unchanged, the equation becomes

$$L_{p\ t} = 0.2512 \frac{L}{a\ t} + 39.9 \quad (3)$$

Discrepancies here are 0.2-26.9, mean 6.0, cm., or 0.1-7.8, mean 2.3, per cent.

For purposes of discussion equation (1) is throughout accepted as definitive.

The relationship as formulated in the regression has, of course, purely a statistical validity. Notable differences in adult size between male and female are familiar in many species: to what extent, if any, sexual size-differences characterise neonatal animals is uncertain (the onset of linear differentiation is set between weaning and sexual maturity in Blue and Fin Whales by Mackintosh and Wheeler (1929), and in the Humpback Whale and the Sei Whale by Matthews (1937, 1938b); and at sexual maturity in the Sperm Whale by Matthews (1938a): there is, however, some evidence to suggest that some at least of these estimates, which involve a period of from 8 to 15 months after birth, postdate the event). The convention has here been followed of taking as the definitive adult length an estimate of the maximum length generally (not uniquely, or exceptionally) attained, regardless of sex (males are characteristically larger in toothed, females in whalebone, whales). As an indication of the known or estimated extent of individual variation in foetal or young animals, four sets of data may be cited: (i) for 3, 2, 2, sets of twin foetuses of Humpback, Sperm, Sei Whales, respectively, included in the British Museum statistics quoted by Matthews, the coefficient of variability, V , is 2.89, 2.81, 39.88; 3.50, 13.29; 0.00, 0.00: (ii) records exist for most species of foetal lengths in excess of calf lengths, an extreme case occurring in the Common Porpoise (modal neonatal length c. 800 mm.; calves of 711, 500 mm. known): (iii) the specimens that appear to constitute the youngest year-class (estimated age 0.4 months) of Harmer's material of the Common Porpoise have $V = 5.79$: (iv) the extensive *Discovery* data on Blue and Fin Whales, as here interpreted, give for animals of an estimated age of 4-17 months: Blue Whale, male (33 specimens), $V = 5.45$, female (38), $V = 6.75$, sexes pooled, $V = 6.12$; Fin Whale, male (83), $V = 7.48$, female (61), $V = 6.63$, sexes pooled, $V = 7.10$. Examples of estimates of variability in conjectural year-classes in older animals are: Common Porpoise, Common Dolphin, Bottle-nosed Dolphin, oldest (unsexed) year-classes (other than those consisting of a single individual), according to the present interpretation of Harmer's records, $V = 2.45, 3.07, 1.36$, respectively; Pilot Whale, assumed age about 5 years, male (6 specimens), $V = 2.75$, female (5), $V = 3.72$ (Scott, 1942).

It is not improbable that in a given species the length of the calf is, statistically, a function of the length of the individual mother—i.e., the present regression probably possesses (as is known to be the case with certain size-relationships in other forms) an intraspecific, as well as an interspecific, validity.

A point of some interest is the manner in which the regression cuts so decisively across taxonomic boundaries, even that of subordinal rank. Work by Thompson (1942) and by the authors whose researches he reviews has shown, indeed, that, in various groups of animals, quite a number of characters generally considered to represent qualitative and 'inherent' specific or generic differences, and hence, at least by tacit assumption, to be the visible manifestations of phylogenetic diversity, are actually simple functions of absolute magnitude. Morphological specificity is thus seen, in these cases, to reside, less in the individual specificity of the members of a constellation of form-genes, than in a single size-gene or an integrated polygenic magnitude-system. Preliminary investigations suggest that, among whales, such standard taxonomic characters as length of flipper and length to dorsal fin are, to a first approximation at least (due allowance being made for occasional wide divergences apparently interpretable as instances of marked specialisation) simple functions of length of animal.

(d) *Minimum Length of Calf and of Adult.* It will be observed that the relationship, as formulated, states that, as a limiting case, an adult length of 0 cm. is associated with a calf length of 44.3 cm., or a calf length of 0 cm. is associated with an adult length of -182 cm.; or, again, that for an adult length of 59 cm., or less, the length of the calf exceeds the length of the adult—propositions that are clearly biological fictions. The general paradox that thus arises is pragmatically disposed of by the denial of biological validity to the relation outside those limits of size that are actually encountered in nature: the matter is, however, worthy of being a subject of inquiry, and some aspects of it are discussed in the second section of the paper. At the moment, we need concern ourselves only with the lower limit of actual size. The biological zero on the abscissa is then represented, not by the mathematical zero, but by the minimum adult length that occurs (or, perhaps, could occur) among the Cetacea. Lesson (1826) speaks of a dolphin about 2 feet long, his *Delphinus minimus*, one of the species that 'have been named and figured by the sight caught of them when swimming!'⁽¹⁾ Present-day opinion puts the minimum length in the neighbourhood of 4.5 feet, or, say, 120-150 cm. Such an adult minimum would be associated, according to equation (1), with an initial minimum of 74.81 cm.: that neonatal whales of lesser length than this do, however, occur, even if only as occasional specimens of exceptionally small size, is shown by the record of Van Deinse (*cf.* Harmer, 1919), already cited, of an example of *Phocaena phocaena* Linné only 50 cm. long.

In the right-hand column of Table I the predicted length of the newly born calf is shown as a percentage of the assumed adult length: for the species considered (and the range in size is virtually that of the whole order) it varies from 26.0 to 49.7. Hence natal length ranges from about one-quarter to about one-half of full adult length; and as sexual maturity commonly considerably antedates full physical maturity, it may be expected that, in some of the smaller forms, the neonatal animal may at times be more than half as long as its parent. Among the shorter species the ratio of initial to final length will increase rapidly in value with decreasing size of parent: with adult length, in cm., of 180, 160, 140, 120, for instance, the percentage length of calf, as given by the formula, is 49, 52, 56, 61, respectively.

⁽¹⁾ The remark of Gray (1866, p. 267) here quoted, together with his exclamation mark, provides, incidentally, an oblique comment on the history of a species, *Lagenorhynchus wilsoni* Lillie, named as recently as 1915: *cf.* Lillie (1915, p. 123), Wilson (1907, p. 9, fig. 7).

2. Some Possible Biological Implications of Equation (1)

(a) *General Observations.* In the last section it has been noted that the relationship between neonatal length and adult length formulated in equation (1) involves, as a limiting case, an association of a calf length of 44.3 cm. with an adult length of 0 cm., or an association of an adult length of -182 cm. with a calf length of 0 cm., or, again, at an adult length of 59 cm., and below, an excess of natal over adult length. In cases of this kind it is conventional to observe that a formal extrapolation beyond the 'domain of definition', that is to say, beyond, in the present instance, the limiting values of the relevant variables as biologically valid and objective magnitudes, must result, not unnaturally, in quantitative statements that are, by biological criteria, meaningless, anomalous, or erroneous; and to let the matter rest there. It may not prove wholly unprofitable, however, to step for a few moments into, or at least to stand at the frontier of, the realm of free speculation, and to inquire briefly into the possible significance of the constants of the equation. While the relevant mathematical specifications and corollaries are, indeed, evident on inspection, certain biological implications that may tend to be overlooked will repay investigation. Our formal analysis leads us, we find, in the event, first, into the field Haecker (1925) has termed phenogenetics, the study of ontogenesis to determine the stage of development at which the difference between types first becomes manifest; secondly, to aetiology in the Thompsonian sense of a sub-science of the causes operative in both ontogeny and phylogeny; thirdly, at least by implication, to the borders of a region, apparently as yet unnamed, that may be descriptively termed 'extra-somatic morphology'.

(b) *Composite Lengths: Mathematical and Conceptual Bracketing.* With, as before, L signifying length, the presuffixes a and p denoting adult and prenatal, and the postsuffix t meaning total, we rewrite equation (1) with two significant figures

$$L_{p\ t} = 0.24 \frac{L}{a\ t} + 44 \quad (4)$$

Let 0.24 (gradient of the regression line) = m ; let 44 (intercept on the x -axis) = c ; let 182 (intercept on the y -axis) = d (Fig. 2A). Then

$$\frac{L}{p\ t} = m \frac{L}{a\ t} + c \quad (5)$$

and, rearranging terms,

$$\frac{L}{p\ t} - c = m \frac{L}{a\ t} \quad (6)$$

and

$$\frac{L}{p\ t} = m \left(\frac{L}{a\ t} + d \right) \quad (7)$$

Since the quantities are finite, and the appropriate conventions are observed, this routine algebraic manipulation is, in itself, unobjectionable. Let us now, however, take an additional step, and assume, for the moment, the legitimacy of bracketing, not only the numerical values, but also the biological concepts with which the dimensions may be associated. Thus, the dimension length of calf at birth, $L_{p\ t}$, can be divided into the two components c and $(\frac{L}{p\ t} - c)$: it is postulated that the concept of length of calf at birth is susceptible of being regarded, for biological purposes, as a composite concept, divisible into two elements, first, a concept of some recognisable kind of calf length (as yet biologically unspecified) legitimately associated with the length-component c , and, secondly, a comparable concept, the correlate of the length-component $(\frac{L}{p\ t} - c)$. Similarly, the sum of $\frac{L}{a\ t}$, the ordinary adult length, and d , the abscissal intercept, is treated, both numerically and conceptually, as a composite length.

It is desirable to have some sematic convention for indicating in which of two senses a reference to a dimension is to be taken. In the notation adopted the symbol of a dimension considered *per se* includes a literal postsubscript written without a dash: to the postsubscript letter of a dimension that is to be thought of in the context primarily as a composite length, or as a component of a composite length, a dash is added. A dashed postsubscript will often point to a concept, an undashed usually to a numerical value. The several lengths, original and composite, with their subdivisions and components are defined ostensibly in Fig. 2. In view, however, of the lack of parallelism in structure between adult and neonatal composite lengths, it may perhaps be expedient to set out the specifications formally, as in the next paragraph.

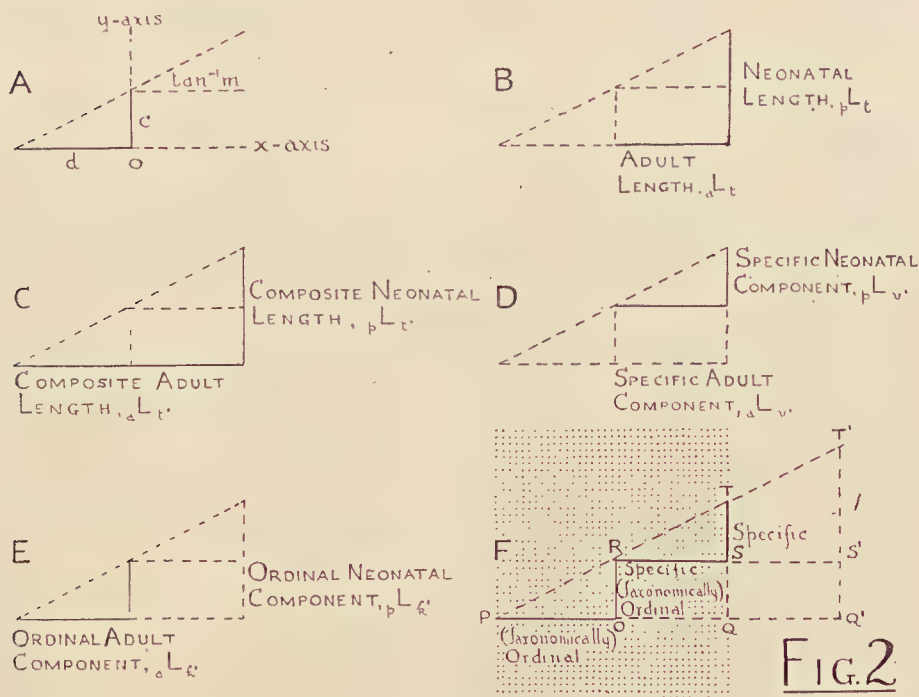


FIG. 2.—A: The constants of the regression equation.

B-E: Ostentive definitions of ordinary lengths, composite lengths, components of composite lengths. The magnitudes defined are shown as continuous lines, set in a reference framework of dashed lines.

F: Relation between specific and (taxonomically) ordinal components of composite calf and adult lengths. The extra-(calf-adult) universe is shaded. The vertical scale is throughout twice the horizontal scale.

To the existing notation add: postsuffixes v , a variable quantity, and k , a constant quantity, such that $v + k = t$ (total). Further add that when a dimension-symbol including t is to be read as a composite length, t becomes t' : when v and k are to be regarded as components of a composite length, they become v' and k' , being then termed (for reasons noticed below) specific and (taxonomically) ordinal components, respectively. Then we have:

(i) Ordinary Lengths (Fig. 2B)

$$\text{Neonatal length} = \underset{p}{L}_t. \quad \text{Adult length} = \underset{a}{L}_t$$

(ii) Composite Lengths (Fig. 2C)

$$\text{Composite neonatal length} = L_{p\ t^1} = L_{p\ v^1} + L_{p\ k^1} = L_{p\ t}$$

$$\text{Composite adult length} = L_{a\ t^1} = L_{a\ v^1} + L_{a\ k^1} = L_{a\ t} + d$$

(iii) Variable (Specific) Components of Composite Length (Fig. 2D)

$$\text{Specific neonatal component} = L_{p\ v^1} = L_{p\ t^1} - L_{p\ k^1} = L_{p\ t} - c$$

$$\text{Specific adult component} = L_{a\ v^1} = L_{a\ t^1} - L_{a\ k^1} = L_{a\ t} - d = L_{a\ t}$$

(iv) Constant (Taxonomically Ordinal) Components of Composite Length (Fig. 2E)

$$\text{(Taxonomically) Ordinal neonatal component} = L_{p\ k^1} = L_{p\ t^1} - L_{p\ v^1} = c$$

$$\text{(Taxonomically) Ordinal adult component} = L_{a\ k^1} = L_{a\ t^1} - L_{a\ v^1} = d$$

Equation (6) can now be rewritten in the form

$$L_{p\ v^1} = m \frac{L_{a\ v^1}}{a\ v^1} \quad (8),$$

that is, the specific neonatal component is directly proportional to the adult specific component. Equation (7) can be written

$$L_{p\ t^1} = m \frac{L_{a\ t^1}}{a\ t^1} \quad (9),$$

that is, composite neonatal length is directly proportional to composite adult length. These two relationships are evident at sight from Figs 2C, 2D.

Both $L_{p\ t}$ and $L_{a\ t}$ are, of course, theoretically divisible into an indefinite number of systems of components: the justification for the division here of each dimension into two components, and, further, into the particular two components selected, is simply the pragmatic one that the algebraic, or geometrical, situation suggests this as an obvious procedure. The question of whether there is equivalence, or adequate formal correspondence, between the operations and products of algebraic bracketing and those of conceptual bracketing is one of some difficulty: we assume the validity of the procedure provisionally with a view to ascertaining where we are thereby led.

It will be convenient to divide the rest of the inquiry into three sections, the first dealing with the possible biological significance of the concept of composite calf length, the second with possible biological significances of the concept of composite adult length, and the third with a possible interpretation involving a comparison of composite calf and adult lengths below the morphologically valid minima.

A. Biological Interpretation of Composite Calf Length

(a) *Ordinal and Specific Components.* The problem is to find a more or less evident and 'real' biological meaning for composite calf length, $L_{p\ t^1}$, the sum of the fission products of the measured length at birth of any species, $L_{p\ t}$, in the shape of a component, $L_{p\ k^1}$, of fixed magnitude, and a component, $L_{p\ v^1}$, intra-specifically of (statistically) constant, but interspecifically of variable, magnitude. Now, it is not difficult to conceive of the possible existence of a biologically necessary, or optimal, minimum foetal magnitude of an interspecific validity, a lowest common measure, as it were, of cetaceaness. The composite concept of composite calf length could thus be the sum of a concept of a constant dimension of specifiable embryonicity and a concept of a variable dimension of specifiable embryonicity.

It would seem natural next to equate the two concepts to the two numerical components of calf length, constant to constant and variable to variable. The ordinary measured length of the neonatus is then seen as the simple arithmetic sum of the linear dimensions of a phase of intra-uterine development, the length of which (44 cm.) is an interspecific constant, and a phase the length of which is directly proportional to (being 0.24 of) the adult length of the relevant species. The constant L_{pk^1} it is proposed to call the (taxonomically) ordinal component, the variable L_{pv^1} the specific component, of composite calf length, L_{at^1} . (Consideration of the context should always resolve any possible confusion between ordinal in the taxonomic sense and—what does, indeed, enter into the present discussion—ordinal in its geometrical sense.) It may here be noted, in passing, that the constant and variable fractions, L_{ak^1} and L_{av^1} , of composite adult length, L_{at^1} , are likewise termed the ordinal component and the specific component, respectively.

Clearly, it is impossible to differentiate observationally in the neonatus itself between the ordinal and specific fractions of its length. And L_{pv^1} and L_{pk^1} remain biological abstractions unless we can interpret them in terms of morphological development; that is, unless we can regard them, for example, as—to select the simplest possibility—associated with, and representative of, two recognisably distinct embryological phases.

(b) *Temporal Relations of Components.* If two such phases do exist, a question that immediately presents itself is that of their temporal character, extent, and relation. Are they (i) continuous and strictly successive; (ii) continuous and partly successive (i.e., with some overlap); (iii) continuous, contemporaneous, and of equal duration; (iv) continuous, contemporaneous, but of unequal duration; or (v) otherwise characterised and related (e.g., exhibiting discontinuity, periodic or aperiodic, manifested wholly contemporaneously, or partly contemporaneously, or successively; and so on)?

(c) *Components Continuous and Strictly Successive.* If the relation is that of (i) above, a moment's consideration of the normal course of ontogeny as one of increasing differentiation leads to the selection of what has been designated the ordinal phase as much more likely to be the prior one. This is so even when the differentiation is regarded solely in its individual ontogenetic context: the likelihood of ordinal phase priority is enhanced when the embryo's history is regarded also as being an approximate correlate of phylogeny, at any rate to the extent of manifesting the same broad temporal sequence of aromorphs or other major landmarks. There is thus tentatively pictured, then, an intra-uterine history whose first epoch, from fertilisation to the achievement of a fixed length of round about 0.4 metre, results in the establishment of a degree of morphological differentiation (associated with an appropriate measure of overall embryonic integration) that is perhaps in some sense constant throughout the order, and whose second, immediately succeeding epoch, culminating at birth, involves an increment in length that varies with the species, but is in all forms equal to about a quarter of adult length. Evidently the constancy of degree of morphological development thus suggested as characterising the first epoch could be a constancy in respect of one or other of various criteria; of which two call for special notice.

Is such a definite morphological status to be interpreted in terms of interspecific or of intraspecific heredity: that is to say, are all cetacean foetuses of length c cm., of whatsoever species, indistinguishable from one another; or, alternatively, have all foetuses, no matter of what species, that have attained a length c cm. thereby

climbed to the same relative rung on their own specific ladders of morphogenesis? That whale foetuses of a length of the order of half a metre should exhibit no sign of specific differentiation would seem to be, on the face of it, a somewhat remote contingency. If a constant measure of bodily organisation is characteristically associated with the ordinal component, it is hence probably definable in terms of the traversing of some fixed fraction of the ontogenetic norm of the species. Since the length-increment L of the second epoch is directly proportional to specific $p \ v^1$

length—equation (8)—a morphological end-point of the period of growth from zero length to a length c that at once suggests itself as probable is that of the acquisition of the characteristic features of the relevant species.

(d) *Components Otherwise Related.* Considerations such as those just outlined could be valid only if the nature and the position in time of the two presumed developmental epochs were those of (i) in par. (b), above, namely, continuous and strictly successive. This will be accepted as the definitive specification of the two phases: accordingly, it will be necessary to do little more than glance at some of the other possibilities. If the situation were that of (ii), the location and extent of the temporal overrun could be determined from a complete time-length graph of foetal growth if the rates of growth were constant, or subject to constant acceleration, but scarcely otherwise. If the situation were that of (iii) or (iv), the phases would be unrecognisable by external, visually determinable criteria; but might conceivably be interpretable, more or less directly, in terms of some such element of growth as, for instance, the deposition of a certain amount of non-crescive framework. Situations of the types suggested by (v) would almost certainly be of too complex a nature to admit of analysis.

(e) *Has the Hypothetical Two-Phase Pattern a Real Existence?* It may now be inquired whether the hypothetical two-phase pattern that we have been led from an examination of equation (1) by a process of purely formal reasoning to postulate has any factual existence.⁽¹⁾

Mackintosh and Wheeler (1929, p. 426) observe regarding the Blue Whale and the Fin Whale. 'It is a characteristic feature of the development of these whales that the form of the body is practically perfected at a stage when the foetus is still very small. A 0.5 m. foetus, for instance, differs very little in appearance and bodily proportions from the adult and so far as the internal structures are concerned the organs are probably all laid down by the time the foetus has reached 0.1 m.'. Matthews (1938b, p. 36) notes that pigmentation has begun in Sei foetuses of 0.64, 0.51, 0.4 m., and, again (1938a, p. 119), that in the Sperm Whale pigmentation starts before a length of 0.5 m. is reached. Harmer (1927, p. 24) states that Guldberg and Nansen (1894, p. 22), to whose paper I have not at present access, observe of the White-sided Dolphin, *Lagenorhynchus acutus* (Gray, 1828), that the generic characters are acquired when the foetus reaches one-fifth of its full length, which is given as about 950 mm., and the specific characters at about half that length.

⁽¹⁾ In the paper as originally written there appeared, in place of the paragraph to which this footnote is attached, the following sentence. 'Whether or no' a succession of two phases 'of the nature and magnitude here envisaged actually occurs, is a question that should be readily enough determined by an appropriate investigation: the requisite data may, indeed, already be contained in the literature, but the writer is at present without means of access to likely sources of information'. The striking corroborative evidence in the cases of the Blue Whale and Fin Whale given by Mackintosh and Wheeler, and now quoted, was then not at hand.

It has been thought permissible, in the circumstances, to record here this act of philosophic faith.

(f) *Similar General Conclusions Already Reached on Different Grounds.*

It is of interest to observe that the general conclusions here reached by an inquiry into the formal significance of an extrapolation of the equation of regression of neonatal on adult length beyond the strict calf-adult domain of definition have in large part already been arrived at (with particular reference to two species) by Mackintosh and Wheeler on quite different grounds. At the conclusion of a fairly detailed investigation of the sexual cycle and the growth of the calf in southern Blue and Fin Whales, they remark that the difference in size between the two species is apparent quite early in the development of the foetus. 'This specific difference in size is attained simply by more rapid growth on the part of the larger species and not by growth spread over a longer period. Blue whales are apparently ready for birth at a greater length in, if anything, an actually shorter time than Fin whales. It is probable that in the early stages of the development of the foetus, when the organs are being formed and the limbs completed, the actual increase in length would be approximately the same in both species, and it may be suggested that development up to this point does not differ in any special way from the development of other mammals, and that the foundations for the whale's great subsequent size have not yet been laid down. After this, however, instead of development being quietly finished off and birth taking place, the rest of gestation is devoted to a great burst of growth, the rapidity of which in the different species appears to be proportional to the size of the whale when fully adult. As it is practically certain that the great size of whales is, from the evolutionary point of view, a recently acquired character, it would naturally be expected to make its appearance in the later part of gestation. Thus the great size of a whale does not necessarily imply the need for a long period to attain that size. The capacity for rapid growth is to be regarded rather as one of a number of characters distinguishing certain whales from other mammals.'

(g) *Location in Time of the Ordinal-Specific Ontogenetic Crisis.* Conjectural curves of foetal growth have been formulated in the *Discovery* Reports for five species: for the Blue Whale and Fin Whale by Mackintosh and Wheeler (1929)—Laurie (1937) reproduces these authors' curve for the Blue Whale, which he finds closely fits the additional data obtained by the *Southern Princess* and the *Southern Empress* in 1932-3—and for the Humpback, Sperm, and Sei Whales by Matthews (1937; 1938a, b). Direct readings from the graphs give the approximate age at which a length of 44 cm. is attained as 2.9, 3.0, 4.0, 4.5, 3.4 months, respectively; or about 28, 26, 37, 36, 36 per cent of the estimated period of gestation. (In an unpublished analysis, in which it is shown that three of the five *Discovery* curves are allometric, and, further, that the data for *Balaenoptera borealis* (Linné) and *Physeter catodon* Linné, the published curves for which species are combinations of an earlier curvilinear and a later linear segment, can, by suitable technique, also be fitted by a curve of the form $y = bx^a$, the equations found for foetal growth give an estimated mean age, in these five species, at a length of c cm., of 3.5 ± 0.27 months, equivalent to 27.7 ± 1.5 per cent of the gestation period, or, in the four balaenopterids, 3.3 ± 0.27 months, or 27.4 ± 1.9 per cent.)

A period of three-four months would seem, on the face of it, one of sufficient duration to permit of the achievement of the advanced stage of morphological differentiation that the present theory postulates: along another line of approach, there is the evidence of Mackintosh and Wheeler that at a length of the order of that here associated with the presumed ordinal-specific ontogenetic crisis foetuses of the Blue Whale and Fin Whale differ little, except in point of size, from the adult animal.

(h) *Mean Ratios of Growth in Ordinal and Specific Phases.* On the basis of the allometric curves of foetal growth noted above, and the definitive neonatal and adult lengths of Table I, the estimated mean rates of growth, in cm. per month, of Blue, Fin, Humpback, Sei, Sperm Whales during the ordinal phase are 15.1, 15.3, 10.9, 13.0, 10.6, respectively; while those during the specific phase are 89.5, 73.3, 44.3, 46.7, 30.4.

For the four balaenopterids the regression of mean specific phase growth rate on adult length is linear, with a significance of better than $P = 0.01$: the inclusion of the physeterid reduces P to about 0.1. Thus while it is possible the mean rate of growth during the foetal phase given over primarily to increase in bulk is a linear function of adult length in all whales, there may, on the other hand, perhaps exist a series of (probably not greatly dissimilar) family, or other, norms.

In the ten species of whales, representative of three families, here considered it has been established that the actual increment in length of the foetus from a length of 44 cm. to birth, i.e., in the course of the specific phase, is directly proportional to adult length. By the use of the concept of composite lengths this relation assumes the symmetrical and elegant form—equation (8)—of a constancy of ratio of specific components.

B. Biological Interpretation of Composite Adult Length

(a) *Contrast between Neonatal and Adult Ordinal Components.* Some tentative conclusions having been reached regarding the significance of composite calf length, attention may next be turned to the investigation of composite adult length. In its general sense (with an interspecific application) composite adult length is the sum of an ordinal component, L_{ak} , which is a length, d , of 182 cm., and a specific component, L_{av} , equivalent to the actual measurable length in cm. of the relevant species. As is shown by equation (9), it is directly proportional to composite, and hence to ordinary, neonatal length.

A marked difference in nature characterises the ordinal fraction of calf length and the ordinal fraction of adult length. The former is a real quantity in the sense that, by hypothesis, it represents the measurable length—if only, in the limit, the instantaneous length—of a foetal organism. In the neonatus it continues to make a contribution, numerically specifiable, to the total length of the animal; though, it is true, it no longer constitutes a similarly specifiable morphological fraction—extension, *per se*, is still there, but the matter whose linear distribution was formerly determined by measurement is now (in the form of itself or of metabolic replacement of equivalent mass), by protoplasmic intususception, redistributed, with loss of its original diagnostic spatial and anatomical quiddity. The latter, on the other hand, is unreal in the sense that it is, so far as can be seen, at all times a purely abstract magnitude, being in no known circumstances directly interpretable as so much ‘length of solid whale’, and even appearing, in an extrapolation in the neonatal-adult graph, as a negative dimension.

(b) *Four Selected Aspects of Problem of Significance of L_{ak} .* Of the various aspects of the general problem of the significance of the ordinal adult component that present themselves for inquiry, four only will be noticed here. These centre on the following suggestions: first, that the magnitude of L_{ak} is determined by the factors of the mathematical situation already examined, and is hence without

recognisable or necessary biological significance; secondly, that $L_{a\ k^1}$ represents a value more logically associated with a correlation surface than with a regression line; thirdly, that the observed regression of $L_{p\ t}$ on $L_{a\ t}$ involves an intelligible geometrical specification of adult form in terms of extra-somatic magnitudes; fourthly, that $L_{a\ k^1}$ and $L_{p\ k^1}$ represent phylogenetic norms of adult and foetal size. Some of the points raised present some novelty and difficulty; and it will be feasible to state, but scarcely to discuss, them.

(c) *Ordinal Component as Mathematically Determined.* The existence and magnitude of $L_{a\ k^1}$ are, in a purely mathematical sense, necessary consequences of the magnitude of the numerical coefficient of $L_{a\ t}$ and of the constant term c in equation

(1): in graphical terms, d , the abscissal intercept of the extrapolated regression line, is determined jointly by m , the gradient, and c , the intercept on the y -axis. If, then, c and m are accepted as the values of two definitive biological quantities of whose relationship the regression equation is a complete specification d , or $L_{a\ k^1}$,

may be a mere logical corollary of them and without any necessary, or recognisable, biological significance.

(d) *Biological Situation Better Regarded as a Correlation than as a Regression.* With the term correlation used, in a common sense, simply to denote a tendency for two variables to vary in magnitude *pari passu*, and the term regression in a strict sense of a measure of magnitude of mutual change in two quantities standing in a more or less obvious relation of cause and effect, the distinction between correlation and regression is clearly enough marked at the extremes. Borderline cases are, however, not infrequent in practice: and in such instances the regression technique is often adopted as a matter of expediency, with a view to the convenience of having the relationship so formulated as readily to yield estimates of individual variates. Needless to say, there is no difference of formal validity of the results of the two procedures, and the matter at issue is not a mathematical one: the point here to be made is that the mere employment of the regression method of approach may, in itself, be taken to derive from an implicit assumption of a recognisable causal relation between the two sets of variates, and such an assumption may, upon occasion, by estoppel of inquiry, lead to failure to recognise the existence of a less proximate principle. This may be the case here. Of the three quantities c , m , d , the first has, indeed, been provisionally interpreted as length at the close of an earlier, so-called ordinal phase, and the second is the ratio of the increment in length during a second, so-called specific phase to the total adult length; while the third so far remains uninterpreted. We have, however, at the moment, no adequate grounds for selecting m and c , or, indeed, any particular pair of factors, as the unique data of the general problem of significance that arises with extrapolation beyond the confines of the original calf-adult universe; nor, indeed, any logical warrant even for assuming all three to be other than principal and coördinate factors of an esemplastic vital situation in which such an element as, for instance, duration is of comparable significance with extension. It may therefore be suggested it is not unlikely that the two magnitudes for which modal descriptions have been found are, in effect, indices of biological optima themselves as yet unrecognised, though not improbably susceptible of formulation, on further investigation, in terms of measurable quantities (such as—to take instances involving length only, and neither time nor mass—area-volume relations, coelome-foetus size-ratio). In such circumstances the meaning of d is still open to search.

(e) *Significance of Extra-Somatic Spatial Frameworks of Reference.* Now, a biological length of an extra-somatic or, in one sense, 'imaginary' character, or including an extra-somatic or 'imaginary' segment, may well appear, on the face of it, a somewhat surprising datum. That the concept of a composite length, in the sense of a length made up of a segment, or segments, measured along an axis of the body of an animal and a segment extending freely into space beyond the physical boundaries of the animal can represent a simple and convenient specification of morphological pattern is well exemplified in an admirable study of the body-forms of fishes by Gregory (1928). In the fish figured in illustration of his terminology (Fig. 117A) the opisthion-pygidion interval is—and in most teleosts and elasmobranchs it will be—a composite length, comprising a somatic pygidion-uranion segment and an extra-somatic uranion-opisthion segment. Now, as Gregory points out (p. 337), the distance of the opisthion behind the pygidion is evidently (*cf.* his Fig. 118D) a function of his dorso-posterior angle, which is the upper half of the angle of the run. Here, then, the magnitude of a segment of the produced anteroposterior body-axis that—in those fishes with posturanic opisthion; and they constitute the modal group (Gregory, p. 349)—lies wholly in space outside the body becomes, by a simple geometrical transformation, a direct specification of body-form. Again, the following remarkable relation has been found, on analysis of data collected by the writer, to obtain in the False Killer Whale (there is reason to believe that, with some possible modification, it holds good in various other species also). Let a series of important anatomical landmarks be numbered in sequence of their occurrence, proceeding caudad along the main antero-posterior axis, from 2 to 9 (no landmark has yet been associated with 1). Then the logarithms of the lengths from the tip of the snout (prosthion) to the several points constitute a linear function of the logarithms of the relevant natural numbers. That is, if λ = length from tip of snout to given anatomical landmark; $n = 2, 3 \dots 9$, then

$$\lambda_n = A n^k \quad (10)$$

The last term, $n = 9$, is the caudal notch, or the morphological end-point of the body. In a world perhaps not wholly devoid of grain of quinary idiosyncrasy it is not unnatural to inquire, what is $n = 10$, and where is it located? As to its location, it clearly lies somewhere on the produced main body-axis in postcaudal extra-somatic space: as to its nature, it has been found to be a point of intersection in a circum-somatic system of axes of reference such that if y is the distance, measured from it as origin, to any point on the anteroposterior axis caudad of the dorsal fin, and if x is the girth at the level of that point, $y = cx^k$.

While in the first of these examples the composite length is, from the point of view of morphological specification, an *à priori* geometrical construction, a subject for prognosis, in the second it is *à posteriori*, a subject for diagnosis, the observed situation (formulated, in this instance, empirically) being interpretable anatomically only by further inquiry (in this instance, the conclusion was reached by *ad hoc* methods). It is possible the position in regard to the present composite length L_a , of which L_a , or d , is the extra-corporeal segment, is analogous to that in the second example cited.

(f) *Interpretation of L_a and L_p as Adult and Foetal Phylogenetic Norms.*

It is found—equation (8); Fig. 2D, Fig. 2F triangle RST—that the specific component of calf length ($L_p - c$) is directly proportional to the specific component

$L_{a\ t}$, the former divided by the latter being $\tan m$. Again, the taxonomically ordinal calf component divided by the taxonomically ordinal adult component d is $\tan m$. Now, in Part A reasons have been advanced for regarding the prenatal specific-ordinal ratio $(L_{p\ t} - c) / c$ as the numerical counterpart of a genuine and significant specific-ordinal concept ratio, $L_{p\ v^1} / L_{p\ k^1}$, in the embryonic history. Does it follow, by symmetry, that the adult specific-ordinal ratio $L_{a\ t} / d$ is the numerical counterpart of a genuine specific-ordinal concept ratio, $L_{a\ v^1} / L_{a\ k^1}$, in adult history?

Expressed geometrically, the argument is as follows. The triangles RTS, PRO, in Fig. 2F, are similar, and $TS/RS = RO/PO (= \tan m)$, and $TS/RO = RS/PO$; but TS/RO is, if our earlier conclusions are valid, the numerical correlate of the biologically interpretable prenatal ratio $L_{p\ v^1} / L_{p\ k^1}$: is it to be expected, by the logic of symmetry, that RS/PO is in similar manner the numerical correlate of a biologically interpretable adult ratio?

It will be realized, of course, that by interpreting the situation in a purely geometrical sense the original Cartesian formulation has been departed from, and attention is no longer paid to sign. In view of the fact that, taking OQ in Fig. 2E as the measured adult length of the smallest species, everything to the left of the line TQ lies outside the domain of definition of the original variables, it is not altogether surprising, but perhaps rather to be expected, that an anomaly in sign should be encountered. The calf length on adult length regression graph, extrapolated beyond its biologically valid minimal values, is now being asked to bear a heavy weight of extra-limital significance, and is being examined as a potential source of clues to the nature of an evolutionary situation, into which duration, not in itself inherent in the graph, enters as an essential element.

Since $L_{p\ k^1}$, our analysis leads us to conclude, represents a minimum length to which all fetuses, of whatsoever species, must attain before they begin to exist as species-differentiated fetuses, the logical parallel for $L_{a\ k^1}$ would appear to be that of the minimum length to which all adults, of whatsoever species, must attain before they begin to exist as species-differentiated adults. But d is a negative quantity, and does not appear in the ordinary adult length as a measurable quantity. It would seem, accordingly, on this interpretation, to precede the ordinary adult length in time, and apparently to represent the length of a generalised, phylogenetic norm of cetacean adult esse, in short, an archetype. Its non-contemporaneity with the length of the individual specimen of whale would then be symbolically indicated both by its location outside the formal, observable domain of definition and by its negative sign. As specified by equation (1) its value is 182 cm.: the use of equations (2) and (3) give alternative values of 172, 159 cm. In a similar way $L_{p\ k^1}$ could be interpreted as a phylogenetic foetus norm; its length being approximately one-fourth of the length of the phylogenetic adult norm. It should be observed that acceptance of this interpretation of $L_{a\ k^1}$ does not of necessity invalidate the suggestions considered above under (d) and (e) of subsection B, since it represents an apparent justification of (d), and may be an example of, or be exemplified by, (e): again, the present meaning attached to $L_{p\ k^1}$ is not antagonistic to, but is an extension or restatement of, conclusions reached in subsection A.

The formal parallelism that on development of the position here reached is seen to characterise the two original variables of calf length and adult length beyond the original domain of definition is briefly discussed in the next subsection.

C. Formal Correspondence of the Disarticulated Variables beyond the Calf-Adult Domain of Definition

The suggested interpretation of L_{p/k^1} and L_{a/k^1} as size-norms of integrated biological units leads, when further developed, to the recognition of a noteworthy correspondence between the original variables of calf length and adult length when these are disarticulated at the level of biologically minimum size, subjected to separate analysis, and then suitably equated. A detailed discussion of the problem lies beyond the scope of the present paper; but the following brief account, taken in conjunction with Figs 3A, 3B, will serve to make clear the more immediately relevant aspects of the general situation.

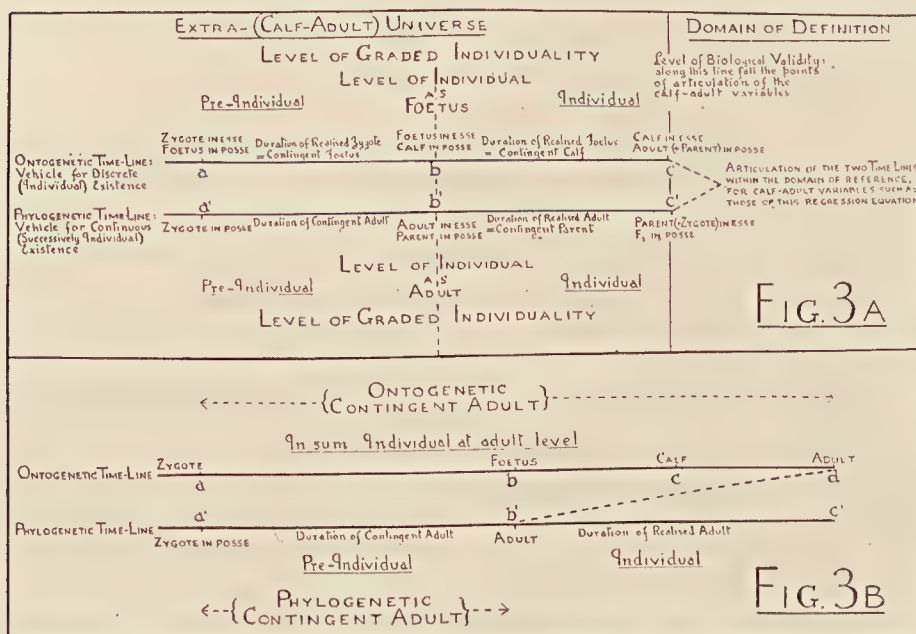


FIG. 3A.—Formal correspondence between the disarticulated variables beyond the calf-adult domain of reference.

FIG. 3B.—Contingent adult in the ontogenetic time-line equated with contingent adult in the phylogenetic time-line. In this diagram *a*, *b*, *c*, *a*¹, *b*¹, *c*¹, have the same connotations as in diagram A.

'Foetus' is here used in a special sense: unqualified, it means a whale foetus of length L_p (see Fig. 2E); as a 'realised foetus', it means a whale foetus of any length between $\frac{L_p}{k^1}$ and $\frac{L_p}{p^1}$ (see Fig. 2C).

If $L_{p\ k^1}$ and $L_{a\ k^1}$ are, as suggested, phylogenetic norms, they are also, insofar as they persist, ontogenetic norms. Now, the problem of equating the disarticulated variables is found to involve the equating, in some fashion, of ontogenetic history with phylogenetic history. Hence it seems convenient to choose out of $L_{p\ k^1}$ and $L_{a\ k^1}$ one component to be treated (along with its associated variable component for minimum length) from its individual aspect, while the other invariable component, with its associated variable component for minimum length, is treated from its racial aspect. On several obvious grounds, it would seem natural to select the adult disarticulated extra-universe moiety as the phylogenetic time-line, functioning essentially as vehicle for continuous existence, and the calf moiety as the ontogenetic time-line, functioning essentially as vehicle for discrete existence.

The results of the analysis of the time-lines, and the bringing of them into formal correspondence on the basis of the subsistence, recognised earlier, of ordinal equivalence between $L_{p\ k^1}$ and $L_{a\ k^1}$ are shown in Fig. 3A. The disarticulated variables, regarded as time-lines, are marked abc and $a^1b^1c^1$, the correspondence between a and a^1 being mathematically one of zeros, biologically one of zygotes *in esse* and *in posse*, the correspondence between b and b^1 being that of the ordinal equivalence between $L_{p\ k^1}$ and $L_{a\ k^1}$ just noted, the correspondence between c and c^1 being that of extra-universe origins: everything to the left of cc^1 lies outside the domain of definition, while to the right of cc^1 the variables, elsewhere disengaged, are articulated as the variates on which the regression equation is based. The figure is otherwise self-explanatory.

In Fig. 3B, in which a, b, c, a^1, b^1, c^1 have the same connotation as in Fig. 3A, attention is called to the fact that the whole ontogenetic time-line ad (that is, the duration of $L_{a\ k^1}$, or $L_{a\ t}$) is that of contingent adulthood, and is hence the formal correlate of a^1b^1 (that is, the duration of $L_{a\ k^1}$, or d) the phylogenetic time-line of contingent adulthood. It is assumed the equivalence may be extended to cover the linear dimensions characteristic of these durations. Hence, if ad is, for a whale of biological minimum, or of otherwise typical, size, say, 150 ± 30 cm., this would be the expected value also for a^1b^1 : the difference in sign between a^1b^1 and ad when these are transferred to an algebraic context (the former then becoming $L_{a\ k^1}$, and the latter, in the absence of an available symbol in $L_{p\ k^1}$, becoming $L_{a\ t}$) would presumably symbolise the difference between them in respect of individuation, ad being, in sum, individual at adult level (for meaning of individual at adult level, see Fig. 3A), while a^1b^1 is pre-individual, a result that is, in effect, a restatement of that obtained above in subsection B (f).

In this treatment the problem has been subjected to some artificial simplification in two ways: first, by the assumption of the subsistence of identity of meaning between 'adult', which as used in connexion with the original data refers to animals of modal maximum size (i.e., at full physical maturity), and 'sexually mature'; secondly, by the adoption of a convention in accordance with which parenthood is taken to follow adulthood (in the sense of physical maturity), whereas it characteristically precedes it. These are, it will be found, however, merely formal simplifications, the adoption of which does not invalidate the main conclusions, but serves to facilitate their exposition.

Summary

1. Eclectic estimates of length of calf at birth, $L_{p\ t}$, and modal maximum length of adult, $L_{a\ t}$, in ten species of whales (ranging in size from the Common Porpoise to the Blue Whale) yield a highly significant linear regression of neonatal on adult length, the equation of the best fit for the ten pairs of variates being (dimensions in cm.)

$$L_{p\ t} = 0.2441 L_{a\ t} + 44.3$$

2. The intercept, c , of the graph on the x -axis (44 cm.) formally denotes the length of the calf of a whale of zero length, and the intercept, d , of the graph on the y -axis (-182 cm.) formally denotes the length of a whale characterised by giving birth to a calf of zero length. These dimensions clearly transgress the limits of the domain of definition of the calf-adult size-ratio problem; and appear to be, on the face of it, merely biological fictions. An attempt is made, however, to find biological meanings for them.

3. The general technique of investigation may be described as 'conceptual bracketing'. Lengths are dissected to give 'composite lengths', each the sum of a constant and a variable. A comparable bracketing of the biological concepts associated with the component dimensions is then carried out. The validity of the procedure is provisionally accepted with a view to ascertaining the results that flow from the assumptions made; and it appears that biologically intelligible meanings can be found for the apparently biologically non-significant extrapolations noted in paragraph 2 above. The introduction of temporal sequence and duration, not formally inherent in the variates, into the region external to the original domain of definition is involved as a necessary feature in the interpretation proposed for c , and it also enters into one or more of the possible interpretations of d .

4. Of the two components of composite calf length, the constant c , or its conceptual correlate $L_{p\ k^1}$, is interpreted as an ordinal character, having a common and invariable manifestation in foetuses of all species, and the variable ($L_{p\ t} - c$), or its conceptual correlate $L_{p\ v^1}$, is interpreted as a specific character, directly proportional to adult length. On $L_{p\ k^1}$ being set earlier in time than $L_{p\ v^1}$, there emerges a picture of cetacean embryonic history as a two-phase pattern, one phase beginning at birth and culminating, at a length of about 44 cm., in the achievement of morphological specificity, the other phase continuing till birth, and being largely given over to increase in mere bulk. In four balaenopterids the approximate age at which the ordinal-specific crisis occurs would appear to be 3-4 months. For the actual existence of such a hypothetical pattern, here formulated by a train of purely formal reasoning from an examination of the neonatal-adult length regression, some direct evidence is available in the case of two or three species.

5. The variable component of composite adult length is ordinary adult length $L_{a\ t}$, with conceptual equivalent $L_{a\ t^1}$. The constant component d , or its conceptual correlate $L_{a\ k^1}$, may be without necessary or recognisable biological significance.

If biologically significant, it is perhaps most likely to be interpretable as (a) an index, coördinate with the (geometrically) ordinal intercept and the gradient of the regression line, of an esemplastic biological optimum not yet diagnosed (possibly

an area-volume relation); or (b) an extra-somatic segment of a body-axis, constituting part of an external framework of reference, and susceptible, on appropriate geometrical transformation, of direct interpretation in terms of ordinary somatic landmarks and dimensions; or (c) a dimension, presumably total length, of a cetacean archetype.

6. A development of (c) in paragraph 5 above leads to the primary variables being disarticulated at the level of biologically minimum size, treated as ontogenetic and phylogenetic time-lines, and brought into correspondence. It is found the duration of $L_{a\ k^1}$, now identified as phylogenetic contingent adult length, is equated with the duration of $L_{a\ v^1}$, or $L_{a\ t}$, now identified as ontogenetic adult length. Hence, if $L_{a\ t}$ is associated with a linear dimension of, say, 150 ± 30 cm., this will be the expected value also for $L_{a\ k^1}$; the difference in sign, in an algebraic context, being symbolic of a difference in individuation, the former being, in sum, individual, the latter pre-individual.

REFERENCES

- BEDDARD, F. E., 1900.—*A Book of Whales*. London.
- GRAY, J. E., 1866.—*Catalogue of Seals and Whales in the British Museum*. London.
- GREGORY, W. K., 1928.—Studies on the Body-Form of Fishes. *Zoologica*, VIII, No. 6, pp. 325-421, figs 117-155.
- GULDBERG, G., and NANSEN, F., 1894.—On the Development and Structure of the Whale; Part I. On the Development of the Dolphin. *Bergens Mus. Skr.*, V, p. 1.
- HAECKER, V., 1925.—Aufgaben und Ergebnisse der Phänogenetik. *Bibl. Genet.* I, p. 93.
- HARMER, S. F., 1927.—Report on Cetacea stranded on the British Coasts from 1913 to 1926. *Brit. Mus. Report on Cetacea*, No. 10.
- , 1929.—Cetacea. *Encycl. Brit.*, 14th ed., vol. 5, pp. 166-174.
- LAURIE, A. H., 1937.—The Age of Female Blue Whales and the effect of Whaling on the Stock. *Discovery Reports*, XV, pp. 223-84.
- LESSON, R. P., 1826.—In Férussac, *Bull. Sci.*, VII, p. 373.
- LILLIE, D. G., 1915.—Cetacea. *Brit. Antarctic (Terra Nova) Exped.*, 1910, *Zool.*, I, 3, pp. 85-124, pl. I-VIII.
- MACKINTOSH, N. A., and WHEELER, J. F. G., 1929.—Southern Blue and Fin Whales. *Discovery Reports*, I, pp. 257-540, pl. XXV-XLIV.
- MATTHEWS, L. H., 1937.—The Humpback Whale, *Megaptera nodosa*. *Discovery Reports*, XVII, pp. 7-92, pl. II.
- , 1938a.—The Sperm Whale, *Physeter catodon*. *Discovery Reports*, XVII, pp. 93-168, pl. III-XI.
- , 1938b.—The Sei Whale, *Balaenoptera borealis*. *Discovery Reports*, XVII, pp. 183-290, pl. XVIII, XIX.
- PEARSON, J., 1936.—The Whales and Dolphins of Tasmania. Part I: External Characters and Habits. *Pap. Proc. Roy. Soc. Tasm.* 1935 (1936), pp. 163-192, figs 1-15.
- SCOTT, E. O. G., 1942.—Records of Tasmanian Cetacea: No. II. A Large School of the Pilot Whale, *Globicephalus melas* (Traill, 1809), Stranded at Stanley, North-Western Tasmania, in October, 1935. *Rec. Queen Vict. Mus., Launceston*, I, 2, pp. 5-34, pl. I-XI.
- THOMPSON, D. W., 1942.—*Growth and Form*. Second edition, Cambridge.
- WHEELER, J. F. G., 1930.—The Age of Fin Whales at Physical Maturity. *Discovery Reports*, II, pp. 403-34.
- , 1934.—On the Stock of Whales at South Georgia. *Discovery Reports*, IX, pp. 351-72.
- WILSON, E. A., 1907.—An undescribed Dolphin. *Nat. Antarctic Exped.*, 1901-04, II, *Mammalia*, p. 9, fig. 7.

TABLE I
REGRESSION OF NEONATAL LENGTH, $L_{p\ t}$, ON ADULT LENGTH, $L_{a\ t}$:

TEN SPECIES OF WHALES

Data from various sources (see Text)

Species	Assumed Adult Length, $L_{a\ t}$ cm.	Neonatal Length, $L_{p\ t}$, cm.		$\frac{L_{p\ t}}{L_{a\ t}}$ (predicted) as Per- centage of $\frac{L_{p\ t}}{L_{a\ t}}$ (assumed)
		Assumed	Predicted	
<i>Phocaena phocaena</i> Linné	175	80	87	49.7
<i>Delphinus delphis</i> (Linné)	260	105	108	41.4
<i>Lagenorhynchus albirostris</i> (Gray)	300	125	118	39.2
<i>Tursiops truncatus</i> (Montagu)	350	130	130	37.1
<i>Balaenoptera acutorostrata</i> Lacépède	910	270	266	29.3
<i>Physeter catodon</i> Linné	1600	415	435	27.2
<i>Balaenoptera borealis</i> (Lesson)	1630	450	442	27.1
<i>Megaptera nodosa</i> (Bonnaterre)	1680	460	454	27.0
<i>Balaenoptera physalus</i> (Linné)	2400	650	630	26.2
<i>Balaenoptera musculus</i> (Linné)	2750	700	715	26.0

The Geology of the Country around the Great Lake, Tasmania

By

ALAN H. VOISEY

*Senior Lecturer-in-Charge, Geology and Geography, at New England
University College, Armidale*

(Communicated by Professor S. W. Carey)

PLATES II, III and FIGS 1-3

This paper deals with the general geology and physiography of portion of the Central Plateau of Tasmania.

The accompanying map, Plate II, shows country which lies both east and west of the Great Lake.

GENERAL GEOLOGY

The only rocks in the area are dolerites, basalts and glacial deposits. Their boundaries were traversed in the field but much assistance was gained from the stereoscopic study of aerial photographs. The dolerite areas for the most part were not examined in detail but were crossed in several places.

A. JURASSIC DOLERITES

The principal rock type found is dolerite. Its differentiates have been described in some detail by Edwards (1942). Although he does not discuss examples from the Great Lake his remarks are certainly applicable to those from this locality. No petrological work was carried out on the basic rocks so there is little to add to his observations.

B. TERTIARY BASALTS

A most interesting series of rock types ranges from massive basalts to scoriaceous basalts, pumice and tachylyte breccias. The sequence is indicated on the map (fig. 2) and section (fig. 1) of Liaweene Hill. It comprises:—

	Feet
Columnar Basalt	20
Vesicular and massive basalts	15
Massive basalt	30
Vesicular and scoriaceous basalts	40
Columnar basalt	60
Tachylyte breccia, block lava, etc.	215
	380

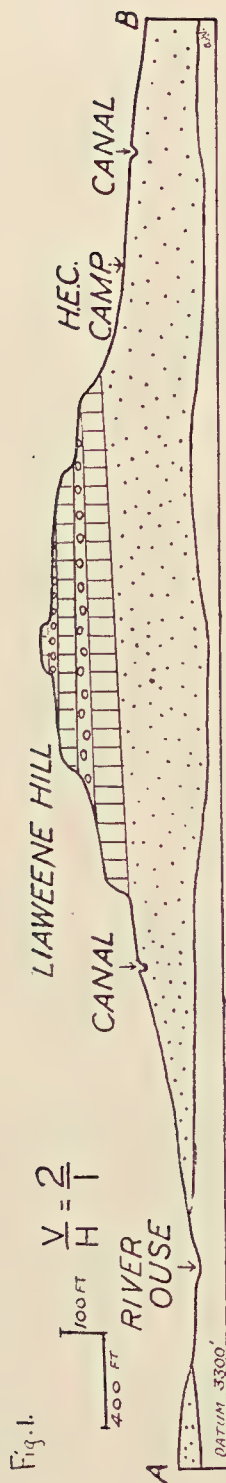


FIG. 1.—Liaweene Map.



FIG. 3.—Section XY across Great Lake Area.

The lower beds are excellently exposed at places along the Liaweene Canal. Although a continuous sequence through the basal units was not examined it is thought that most of the likely variations of the unit have been revealed by excavations.

In the canal cuttings near the end of the fluming west of Liaweene Hill decomposed blocks of lava may be seen. These lie upon one another in a manner similar to the so-called 'pillow-lavas'. They are too altered to be studied at this point but further south in the canal similar blocks were found to consist of fine-grained basalt with a glassy margin. Most are rounded and between eight inches and a foot across. (See photographs, Plate III.) The tachylyte or glassy portions are up to half an inch thick. Associated with the blocks are pumice breccias in which much chabazite was seen. Crystals of this mineral line cavities or fill in the spaces between the pumice fragments. Elsewhere, tachylyte breccia also with the chabazite was abundant.

All kinds of variations in the size of fragments and proportions of tachylyte and pumice to basalt are to be seen along the canal. Particularly good exposures occur near the bridge where the Lake Highway crosses the canal.

At Liaweene Hill the breccias are overlain by massive, vesicular and scoriaceous basalts. The first flow makes a conspicuous feature particularly on the eastern side. Precipitous cliffs, which have resulted from the prismatic jointing are about 20 feet high. Above the cliffs is a flattish area with much vesicular and scoriaceous material scattered over it. This may represent the surface of the flow. Another massive flow with the prismatic jointing well developed gives rise to a second ring of cliffs. This also is followed by vesicular lavas.

A small outlier of massive basalt, again jointed, forms a small oval outcrop at the top of the hill.

The alternation of massive and vesicular lavas has produced the noticeable terracing of Liaweene Hill. It is not the site of a volcano as was indicated to previous observers by the presence of so much scoriaceous material on its sides. (Edwards 1939, p. 180.) (See Map (fig. 2) and Section (fig. 1).)

The same sequence of flows was found in a terraced hill very like Liaweene immediately west of the River Ouse. Further to the south the basalt terraces were found clinging to dolerite hills. Two such patches are isolated from the main mass of basalt west of Skittle Balls Plains.

The lavas cover a large area and much of this plain country is strewn with basalt pebbles, many being vesicular. This apparently led Edwards (1939) to the view that the plain was close to the original flat surface of the flow. While this may well be the case for a particular flow it is a reasonable inference that the massive basalts higher in the sequence once extended over the plain but have since been removed by erosion, re-exposing this surface.

A number of small basalt areas are shown on the map (Plate II), e.g.:—

- (i) on the plateau between First Lagoon and the River Ouse,
- (ii) South-east of Double Lagoon,
- (iii) Reynolds Island,
- (iv) Howell's Neck,
- (v) Todd's Corner.

It would seem from the character of the lower unit that the volcanic eruptions were first of all explosive in character but later became quieter and the massive and vesicular flows were produced. The calculated thickness for the volcanic series is 380 feet but it may well have been greater as the highest flows identified are now only represented by very few outcrops and much erosion is therefore

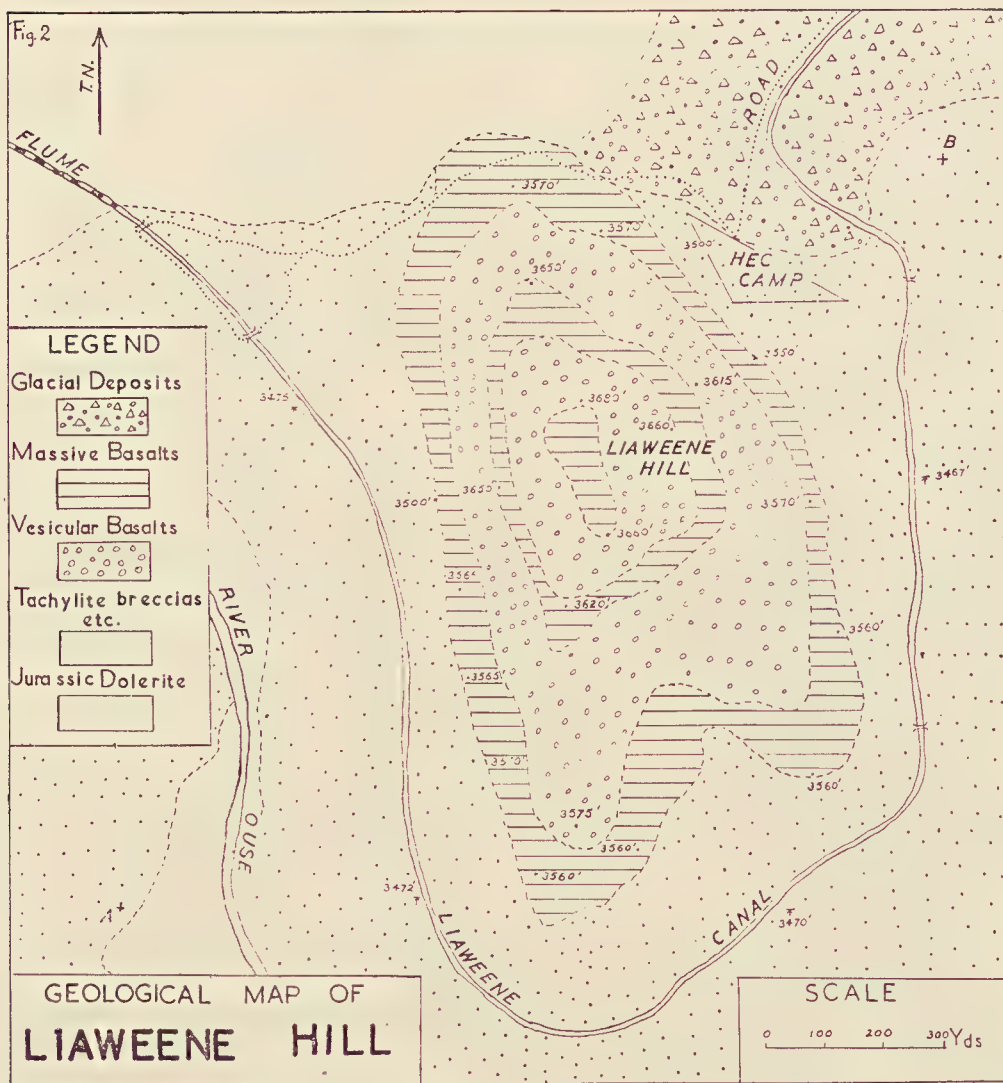


FIG. 2.—Liaweene Section.

indicated. It is probable too that the valley which now contains the basalt was not flat floored so quite a considerable thickness of lava may underlie the Great Lake.

Prider (1948) mentions a thickness of 330 feet of basalt from the valley of the River Nive and 600 feet from Wilson's Creek. Here as in the Great Lake area, the basalt fills in valleys in country which was deeply dissected at the time of the eruptions.

C. PLEISTOCENE GLACIAL DEPOSITS

Liaweene Canal exposes sandstones just east of the Hydro-Electric Commission's Camp. They are coarse-grained and laminated. Associated with them are boulders of dolerite which may well be related to the glaciation. They are indicated both on Plate II and fig. 2.

Other areas of angular boulders occur north of the canal but again it is not certain to what extent they have been moved by ice action.

A moraine partially blocks the entrance to the valley in which First Lagoon lies.

D. RECENT DEPOSITS

The alluvial deposits beside the River Ouse and other streams and the talus of dolerite on the slopes are post-glacial.

PHYSIOGRAPHY

The Great Lake occupies the central portion of the country mapped and extends some distance further to the north.

The water occupies a shallow depression and was said to average only twelve feet deep before the level was raised 30 feet by the building of the Miena Dam. This caused flooding of areas marginal to the lake. Howell's Neck and Reynold's Neck became islands; Pine Island was submerged. Dead trees in the water indicate other areas now incorporated into the lake.

The depression continues for about five miles to the west in the form of a flat treeless plain only a few feet higher than the level of the lake.

The low-lying area corresponds almost entirely with the occurrence of basaltic rocks which, in all probability, underlie most of the lake or have been stripped off the dolerite so that the water rests partly on the revealed pre-basalt surface.

This central depression is encircled by hills of variable height. On the western side is a plateau averaging about 350 to 400 feet above the level of the lake. In the vicinity of Split Rock there is a line of hills rising well above the plateau but falling very steeply into lower dolerite hills between them and the lake.

On the eastern side of the Great Lake the dolerite hills are higher, more rugged, and closer to the water than on the west. The general terrain is that of a dissected plateau. Flat floored, marshy valleys separate boulder-strewn rocky ridges and the country is difficult of access.

The hills on the east swing round towards Miena where the lake drains into Shannon Lagoon.

A basalt plain extends from Todd's Corner southwards and the country opens out in that direction. The land-forms could be dealt with conveniently under the following headings:—

- (1) The Western or Liaweene Plateau.
- (2) The Eastern Uplands.
- (3) The Basalt Lowlands.
- (4) The Islands and Peninsulas.
- (5) The Miena Area.
- (6) The Valley of the Little Pine River.

(1) THE EASTERN OR LIAWEENE PLATEAU

This surface is extraordinarily level and is characterised by low rises consisting of masses of dolerite boulders separated by marshes or lakes. The map shows only part of this extensive plateau and the larger lakes such as Augusta, Ada, Chipman and Kay are beyond its limits.

The lakes shown are portion of Double Lagoon, Second Lagoon and First Lagoon. The margins of these lakes are notable for the masses of closely packed dolerite boulders which Carey (verbal communication) explains as having been due to the expansion of the lake area on freezing during the winter. The ice pushes the boulders forward along the margins. Elsewhere low brown sandhills form the shores of the lakes. The sand could be regarded as being of glacial origin accumulating during Pleistocene time.

Extending south-eastward from Double Lagoon is a low swampy area beside a patch of basalt and evidently worn out of it. North of First and Second Lagoons is another area of basalts.

The association of the lakes and the basalt does not appear to be accidental. The water seems to have accumulated in hollows caused by the action of ice in eroding the softer basalt. Glacial debris has also contributed to the interruption of the drainage as in the case of First Lagoon which is in a small glacial valley blocked by a sand bar. The valley contains much glaciated material. Its sides steepen as it descends from the plateau and the remains of a moraine of large angular dolerite boulders partially crosses it.

Other relics of the ice age are to be seen in the large boulders which are strewn through the marshes and which could not have been carried by the small water-courses which prevail.

The River Ouse traverses the plateau. In the north-western corner of the map it is in a shallow valley less than 50 feet below the general level but it gradually deepens towards the south-east. Terraced basalt cliffs form a noticeable feature where the river follows the boundary between this rock and the dolerite. The stream is deeply incised into the plateau margin forming a V-shaped gorge. A small dam diverts the water into the Liaweene Canal.

The Ouse does not show any glacial features in the section described. It flows in a valley which has the characteristics of one which has been shaped by fluvial erosion. It is interesting to note its position in close proximity to the basalt. This is a feature of many of the streams on the Central Plateau. The basalt has apparently filled its older valley and the stream is displaced laterally. This would make the Ouse not only pre-glacial but pre-basalt. Since the melting of the ice sheet there has been time for fluvial erosion to destroy the shallow glacial valley which may have been developed at the higher level.

The Plateau in places has a raised margin along the southern boundary and extending for a distance of about two miles is a steep escarpment probably due to faulting. A study of the shape of the basalt area and its margins suggests that this faulting is pre-basalt in age.

Between Double Lagoon and the Valley of the Little Pine River the country is less level and marshes are separated by rocky dolerite hills.

An interesting glacial valley with basalt on its floor has an insignificant stream in it. The suggestion is made that here again the ice sheets scooped out the softer lava which filled an earlier tributary of the ancestral Ouse.

(2) THE EASTERN UPLANDS

This country is very rugged. High ridges, some with precipitous sides, rise steeply from the Great Lake. Angular dolerite boulders are spread over the slopes and make access very difficult. Through the maze of dolerite hills run flat-floored marshy valleys.

As may be seen from an examination of the map the directions of the valleys are related in a majority of cases to structures, possibly shear zones, in the dolerite. This connection between marshes and structure lines was noted also by Prider in the Tarraleah area (Prider 1948, p. 128). In both places the usual trend is N.W.-S.E.

(3) THE BASALT LOWLANDS

Apart from the basalt on the Liaweene plateau it could be stated that in the area as a whole the basalt occupies the low land, the dolerite the high. A few basalt hills are present such as Liaweene Hill and other terraced spurs close to the plateau.

The basalt plain is treeless and gently undulating. Edwards (1939, p. 180,) regards the surface as 'distinctly youthful' and regarded it as the surface of a flow which he considered to be post Malanna and pre-Yolande.

The present writer considers that the plain has resulted from the action of an ice-sheet and, on account of the Liaweene section through the basalts, believes that these were very much thicker and that there may have been two hundred feet or more of extrusive rock above the level of the plain.

The River Ouse, after leaving the Liaweene Plateau, cuts down deeply into the basalts, its bed being well below the level of the Great Lake. It has developed small alluvial flood plains and terraces on its sides as it has descended.

The development of the valley has been post glacial as the stream is now below the level of the glacially cut plain and, again, all its features are obviously the result of a fluvial erosion.

The Ouse cuts through a dolerite bar near Skittle Balls Plains. In order to do this the stream must have been superimposed—flowing over a basalt surface and then cutting through the basalt into the dolerite. It is deeply entrenched beside the dolerite—basalt junction where it is crossed by the 'Missing Link' Road just beyond the limits of the map. The fact that the basalt appears to be in an older valley suggests that the Ouse in this section occupies a position close to the course of its ancestor. It is possible that the basalt did not completely fill the former valley and we have an example of a confined lava field.

(4) THE ISLANDS AND PENINSULAS

There are a number of islands in the lake. The larger ones are low lying and composed of basalt. They were originally peninsulas but were converted into islands when the height of the lake was raised by the building of the Miena Dam.

The dolerite islands—Helen's Island, Brandon's Island and Maclanachan's Island are smaller and rougher. Legge (1904) described columnar basalt at water level at Helen's Isle. This was not observed but may now be below water level. The higher rocks are apparently fine-grained dolerite which is also broken by jointing. The peninsulas in the southern part of the Great Lake are generally composed of basalt. They are all low-lying.

North of Lake Elizabeth a dolerite peninsula on which are low rocky hills projects far into the lake, restricting its width to about two miles.

(5) THE MIENA AREA

The outlet to the Great Lake at Miena is through dolerite into the Shannon Lagoon thence to the Shannon River. Lewis (1934, p. 25,) made the suggestion that 'the Great Lake once drained to the Lagoon *via* Todd's Corner'. The basalt is filling an old valley and would be well below the level of the lake. The

present writer prefers to believe that a pre-glaciation and therefore a pre-Great Lake stream occupied the valley and that the dolerite ridge was exposed by the ice-sheet which scooped out the basalt behind it and rode over the harder rock. The lake then spilled over at the lowest point and cut downwards. The projecting dolerite mass north of Todd's Corner may have protected the more easily eroded basalt in that neighbourhood.

(6) THE VALLEY OF THE LITTLE PINE RIVER

The Little Pine River, east of Lake Fergus which lies just beyond the western margin of the map, flows in a typical glacial valley. The floor is flat and marshy and the river has a number of small bends. It takes an almost right-angled turn near Skittle Balls Plains and flows south through wide marshes.

Terraced basalt outcrops lie high up on the western side of the valley suggesting that it too was once partially filled with the lava.

PHYSIOGRAPHICAL HISTORY

The writer's interpretation of the physiography involves the following series of events.

The dolerites which were injected into Triassic and Permian sediments in Jurassic times were exposed by erosion and during early Tertiary times were eroded by streams which made their greatest progress along planes of weakness.

As pointed out by Carey (1946, p. 34) the lower Tertiary peneplain was broken up during the early Miocene by faulting, the Central Plateau was formed, fringed by the Great Western Tiers.

Within the Plateau there was some faulting and it is possible that there was some structural background leading to the development of a stream system in the Great Lake area during the late Tertiary.

Violent outbursts of volcanic activity gave rise to a thickness of some hundreds of feet of basaltic material. This may have almost filled the depression and the subsidiary streams. I would not be inclined to regard the basalts on the Liaweene Plateau as 'older' and the Great Lake basalts as 'younger' as indicated by Lewis (1946, p. 45) though they are separated by 300 to 400 feet. The plateau lavas appear to be merely higher flows in the series or to have arisen from the outpouring of basalt at higher levels. Consequent upon the filling of the earlier depressions there was much disorganisation of drainage. A stream system developed on what was predominantly a basalt surface in the vicinity of the Great Lake.

Probably before the onset of glaciation fluvial erosion had cut valleys into the soft basalt deposits in preference to the dolerite. Ice action further lowered the basaltic areas re-exposing in parts the pre-basalt surface. Along the western margin of the plain what are probably pre-basalt fault-scarps have been revealed.

It is probable that a major ice sheet in the present position of the Great Lake moved southward, over-deepening the land in places and riding over dolerite ridges such as that at Miena. When it melted, water accumulated in the depression, flowing over the Miena ridge at its lowest point.

Streams on the Liaweene Plateau had to fall over an escarpment to the lower basaltic area. As they occupied different positions from those which they had prior to the volcanic eruptions they cut gorges into the plateau margins. The River Ouse is an excellent example of this. Some rejuvenation is apparent almost everywhere that there is a dolerite-basalt contact.

CONCLUSION AND ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS.

This paper is the outcome of geological work carried out for the Hydro-Electric Commission of Tasmania during January and February, 1948, and I desire to thank the Commission for permitting its publication. I am also grateful to Professor S. W. Carey for his helpful advice, hospitality and many kindnesses.

REFERENCES

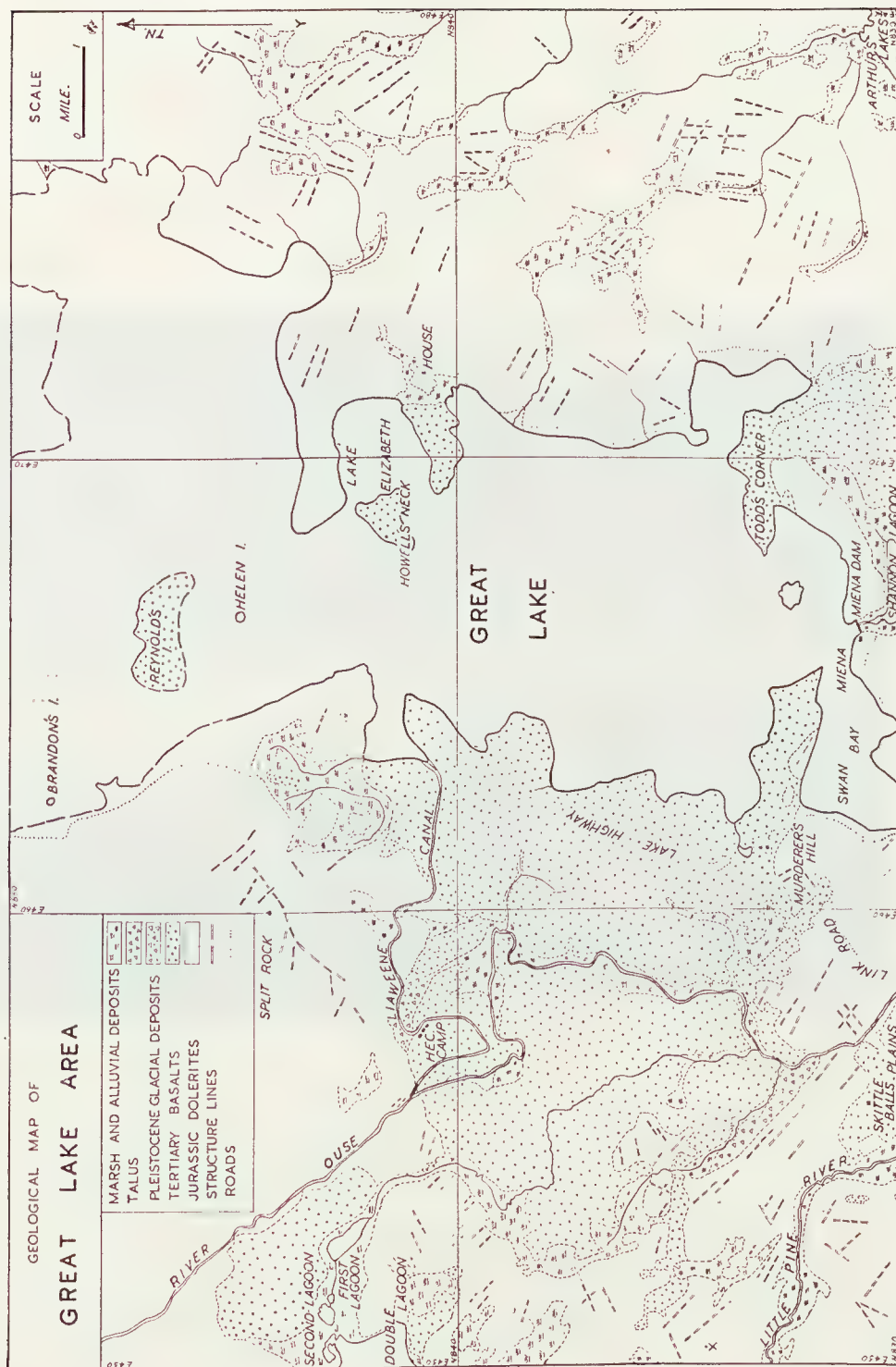
- CAREY, S. W., 1946.—Geology of the Launceston District. *Rec. Queen. Vict. Mus. Launceston*, Vol. II.
 EDWARDS, A. B., 1939.—The Age and Physiographical Relations of Some Cainozoic Basalts in Central and Eastern Tasmania. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.*, 1938.
 ———, 1942.—Differentiation of the Dolerites of Tasmania. *Journ. Geol.*, L.
 LEGGE, W. V., 1904.—A Physiographical Account of the Great Lake. *Proc. A.A.A.S., Dunedin*, Vol. X.
 LEWIS, A. N., 1934.—A Correlation of the Tasmanian Pleistocene Glacial Epochs and Deposits. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.*, 1933 (1934).
 ———, 1946.—The Geology of the Hobart District. (Hobart.)
 PRIDER, R. T., 1948.—The Geology of the Country around Tarraleah, Tasmania. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.*, 1947.

PLATE II

Map of the Great Lake Area.

PLATE III

- FIG. 1.—'Block' lavas exposed by canal near end of fluming, Liaweene.
 FIG. 2.—'Block' lavas, etc., exposed by canal with overlying columnar basalts above half a mile south of dam, Liaweene.
 FIG. 3.—River Ouse in shallow valley on Liaweene Plateau.
 FIG. 4.—Entrance to canal shown looking south from Liaweene Plateau through Ouse gorge. Hills in foreground are dolerite. Liaweene Hill in the middle distance is basalt.





The Geology of the Country between Arthur's Lakes and the Lake River, Tasmania

By

ALAN H. VOISEY

*Department of Geology and Geography, the New England University
College, Armidale*

(Communicated by Professor S. W. Carey)

PLATE IV and FIG. 1

INTRODUCTION

The country between Arthur's Lakes and the Lake River shown on Plate IV is drained in the western part by Tumbledown Creek and Jones Rivulet which flow into the Eastern Lake, and in the eastern by the tributaries of the Lake River. The escarpment of the Western Tiers marks the eastern margin of the Central Plateau of Tasmania.

Mapping was carried out with the assistance of aerial photographs and the structure-lines of the dolerites were obtained from them.

This paper is submitted as a small contribution to the aerial mapping of Tasmania.

GENERAL GEOLOGY

Three main groups of rocks were found outcropping in the area mapped.

- (i) A series of metamorphosed rocks of probable Cambrian age consisting of slates, quartzites and 'porphyroids' which is laced by quartz veins.
- (ii) A series of fossiliferous sandstones, shales and glacial beds of Permian age.
- (iii) The Jurassic dolerites which are in the form of sills injected into the other formations.

There are also deposits of glacial material resulting from the presence of the Pleistocene Ice sheets and masses of dolerite talus of more recent origin.

Alluvium occupies areas marginal to the main streams.

(1) CAMBRIAN

No fossils have been found in the metamorphosed rocks assigned to this system but S. W. Carey (verbal communication) regards them as being the equivalents of similar beds of Cambrian age elsewhere in Tasmania.

Road cuttings expose the beds in the neighbourhood of 'Parknook'. They continue south along the eastern slopes of O'Connor's Peak. Another area of them lies around E. Casey's house beside the Lake River.

The rocks are principally slates with well developed cleavages, grading into phyllites. Interbedded with them are the sheared tuffs which are called 'porphyroids'. Good outcrops may be examined along the south-eastern flanks of O'Connor's Peak.

The Cambrian beds are characterised by veins of milky quartz and fragments of these in the soil were used to determine the presence of the slates when outcrops were few. Bands of quartzite are present in the vicinity of E. Casey's house and were especially well developed close to 'Billop' station just beyond the northern limit of the map.

(2) PERMIAN

Permian beds outcrop on the slopes of the Western Tiers running north-west from the vicinity of W. Casey's house. Another belt runs along the side of the ridge west of E. Casey's house.

The hills north of 'Parknook' are composed of glacial beds probably corresponding to the Basal Glacial Stage (Voisey 1938). Outcrops are very poor indeed and pebbles of West Coast Conglomerate and other rock types in the soil have been used to determine the limits of this unit.

Several other small outcrops are shown on the map. It is probable that they also underlie deposits of dolerite talus and accumulations of boulders in the foothills of the Western Tiers.

Other beds may be assigned to the Ferntree, Woodbridge, Grange and Granton Stages of the Permian System. (See Voisey (1938); Lewis (1946) and Prider (1948).)

The only section which gives any continuous sequence is that just west of W. Casey's house along the Hydro-Electric Commission's Pipeline Survey line between pegs 1 and 13. Even here outcrops leave much to be desired though it is possible to recognise some of the established horizons. Laterally, from this section the vegetation cover and presence of much dolerite talus made mapping of the beds virtually impossible.

The section measured from the Lake River thence up the traverse line reveals a maximum of 1500 feet of sediment but exposures on the low ground are rare and intermittent. Higher in the sequence on the steeper slopes sandstones and mudstones containing marine fossils outcrop. These probably correspond to the Granton facies. Conglomerates which indicate the presence of the Woodbridge Stage follow. About 600 feet below the dolerite base, which here is at approximately 2100 feet, lies the Risdon Sandstone horizon (Carey and Henderson, 1945). The remainder of the section consists of light coloured mudstones of the usual Ferntree type. Occasional fossils were found in this unit.

No comprehensive collection of fossils was made but the usual Permian suite including *Spirifer*, *Martiniopsis*, *Fenestellidae* &c. is present.

(3) JURASSIC DOLERITES

Most of the area is comprised of dolerite. The rock is particularly conspicuous along the north-eastern margin of the Central Plateau where the main sill is approximately 2000 feet thick. The igneous rock also occupies the foothills forming, among others, the prominent O'Connor's Peak.

Although faulting has been responsible for the lower elevation of the dolerite in some parts of the area there is at least one lower sill of considerable thickness as can be seen by a study of the section (fig. 1).

Variations in the petrology of the dolerite mass have been described in some detail by A. B. Edwards (1942). Prider (1948, p. 142) noted that 'at the actual igneous contacts the dolerite is very fine-grained, dense and microporphyritic, consisting of small phenocrysts of olivine, augite, and plagioclase in an aphanitic groundmass'. Several feet from the contact the dolerite is coarser and grain size is not significant in determining whether the contact is intrusive or faulted.

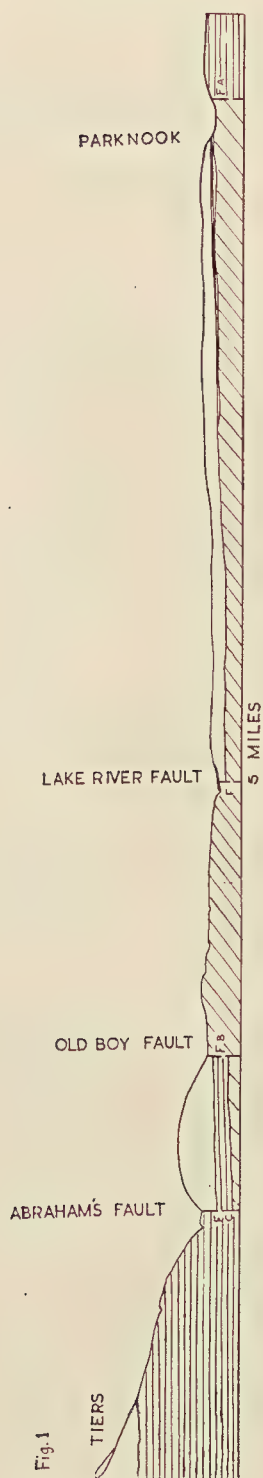


Fig.1

The dolerites have been broken down by weathering processes into boulders which are concentrated on the steep slopes to form deep and extensive masses of talus as indicated on the map. Besides the areas which are almost entirely composed of this loose material the lower slopes are strewn with boulders which obscure most of the underlying Permian formations. These sedimentary beds may be overlooked altogether where they are weathered deeply and only occasional boulders of dolerite protrude through the soil cover.

GEOLOGICAL STRUCTURES

The Cambrian suite has been tightly folded and metamorphosed, dips ranging from 45° to 50° usually to the north or north-east.

The Permian strata dip gently, apparently at only a few degrees.

The dolerite is in the form of two or more large sills. The lowest has been injected along the unconformity between the Cambrian and Permian formations. Some of the basal Permian conglomerates appear to have been caught between the dolerite and the Cambrian basement as pebbles of rocks similar to those in the conglomerates have been found along the south-easterly slopes of O'Connor's Peak and on the north side of Little Billop just north of the area mapped. Pebbles were also found along the eastern face of the ridge which runs west-north-west from E. Casey's house forming an interfluvium between Dabool Rivulet and Abraham's Creek. This ridge, together with O'Connor's Mount and Little Billop is composed of the dolerite of the lower sill.

The higher sill has invaded the Ferntree mudstones probably in a position very close to the junction between the Permian and Triassic systems. Between the two main sills there may be others because the Permian sequence south of W. Casey's house appears to be broken by sheets of dolerite in several places

Large faults have been responsible for breaking the north-east section of the area into a number of blocks. S. W. Carey (1946) discusses them in a general way as the 'Western Tiers Fault System'. He shows diagrammatically (p. 38) two faults giving rise to a step between the lowlands and the Central Plateau. He states that the faults all seemed to be normal with steeply dipping fault planes showing little evidence of strike-slip movement. Carey gives the age of this faulting as Lower Miocene.

The faults indicated on the map (Plate IV) have been determined principally by field work assisted by the stereoscopic examination of aerial photographs.

Fault A which might be referred to as the Parknook Fault is demanded by the relationships between dolerite, Permian and Cambrian outcrops and its presence is supported further by the anomalous steep dips of Permian sandstone outcropping on the hilltop just west of the point where the road crosses the fault.

Fault B or Old Boy Fault is easily picked out by the topography as it lies along the front of a high dolerite ridge. Fault C or Abraham's Fault is responsible for the steep southern slope of this ridge. It brings the dolerite up against the Permian sediments.

The western limits of these faults could not be determined satisfactorily because of the thick vegetation cover, poor outcrops and scattered dolerite boulders. The apparent termination of Old Boy Fault against the escarpment of the Tiers strongly suggests that a major fault runs along the cliffs. This could perhaps change its direction and pass into Abraham's Fault.

Yet another fault which may be referred to as the Lakes River Fault must run in a north-easterly direction under the flats of the Lake River and thence along the lower part of Dabool Rivulet. This is demanded by the presence of Cambrian

beds around E. Casey's house, west of the river. As the O'Connor's Peak sill dips gently to the west it is difficult to account for this occurrence without postulating such a fault. No outcrops of the fault were seen so it is not marked on the map.

Fault D or O'Connor's Fault has been inferred because a steep sided valley is shown on the aerial photographs in this position and structure-lines strongly suggest such a fracture.

In addition to these larger faults there are a number of small dislocations, shears and joints in the rocks, particularly in the dolerite. These structure lines are conspicuous on aerial photographs and are shown on the map. Prider's map of the Tarraleah Area (Prider 1948) shows similar 'shear zones'. Carey (1946 pp. 36-37) says of those on his map 'there are two pronounced systems of joints which show up strongly on the aerial photographs. One trends north-west and the other north-east. Movement in these directions varies considerably, the structures ranging from joints with little or no movement to important shear zones'.

PHYSIOGRAPHY

About three-quarters of the area mapped consists of a glaciated plateau and the other quarter includes portion of the marginal escarpment and foothills. Most of the Eastern and portion of the Western of the two Arthur's Lakes are included.

The surface of the plateau is very uneven though most of it lies between 3700 and 4200 feet. The highest point, Brady's Lookout, rises to 4497 feet.

Numerous marshes separate boulder-strewn dolerite ridges. These marshes are practically treeless but the rocky hills support stunted eucalypts. Ice action has resulted in the formation of lakes and marshes and the deposition of many large boulders. The last named are very wide-spread—practically every marshy area having a share.

Inequalities in the pre-glacial surface may have been tectonic in origin but fluvial erosion must have played a large part in shaping the country. There does not seem to be any real evidence to suggest that Arthur's Lakes are in a down-faulted area although there could be a fault along the boundary of the higher western block which starts close to the western margin of the map (Plate IV).

It is probable that the lakes are due to the action of an ice-sheet which over-deepened what was previously a wide river valley. Morainic material lies at the southern end of the Western Lake.

Little Lake is one typical of glacial origin. It drains into the Eastern Lake through Jones Rivulet—a small stream in a wide flat valley.

The eastern escarpment of the Central Plateau forms the well known Western Tiers which rise 4000 feet above the central valley of Tasmania. Faulting along it and the geological history of the Launceston District have been dealt with by Carey (1946).

To some extent the Lake River shows the characteristics of an antecedent stream. In the south-east corner of the map where it is following the junction between Cambrian and Permian rocks—both more easily eroded than dolerite—it has a wide flood-plain. The valley narrows rapidly where the stream cuts through dolerite and a narrow gorge is developed. It widens once more where the Cambrian beds are met near E. Casey's house. Again the valley is restricted in the dolerite country west of O'Connor's Peak, widening out once more in the Cambrian area shown in the north-east corner of the map.

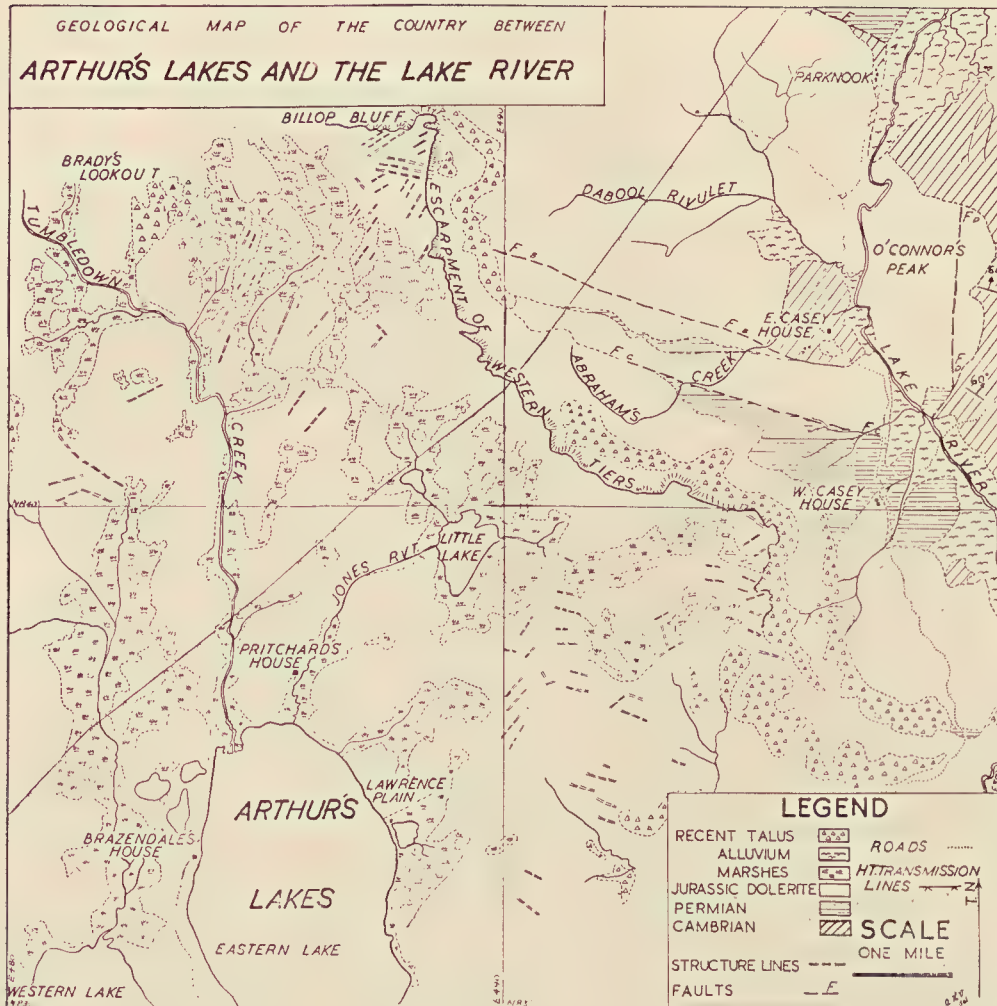
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The investigations which led to the mapping of the country just described were carried out for the Hydro-Electric Commission of Tasmania and I desire to thank the Commission for allowing me to publish this paper.

I am deeply indebted to Professor S. W. Carey, Geological Consultant to the Commission who introduced me to the area and whose advice and assistance were most welcome. I also desire to thank Mr. Frank Brown of Hobart and Mr. William R. Blevin of New England University College, Armidale, for their assistance in the field.

REFERENCES

- CAREY, S. W., 1946.—Geology of the Launceston District. *Rec. Queen Vict. Mus. Launceston*, Vol. II, 1946.
- , and HENDERSON, Q. J., 1945.—Report on the Prospects of Underground Water Supply in the Bellerive-Risdon District. *Geol. Surv. Tas.* (typed report).
- EDWARDS, A. B., 1942.—Differentiation of the Dolerites of Tasmania. *Journ. Geo., L.*
- LEWIS, A. N., 1946.—The Geology of the Hobart District. (Hobart.)
- PRIDER, R. T., 1948.—The Geology of the Country around Tarraleah, Tasmania. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.*, 1947.
- Regional Planning, 1945.—Economic Resources of Tasmania.
- VOISEY, A. H., 1938.—The Upper Palaeozoic Rocks of Tasmania. *Proc. Linn. Soc. N.S.W.*, lxii.



Geology of the Country around Waddamana, Central Tasmania

By

RHODES W. FAIRBRIDGE

University of Western Australia, Nedlands, W.A.

(Communicated by Professor S. W. Carey)

PLATES V-IX, FIGS 1-8

I. INTRODUCTION

This survey covers an area of about 17 by 23 miles in Central Tasmania, with Waddamana rather to the north of centre, and including Lake Echo in the west and the Lagoon of Islands in the north-east. The boundaries of this block on the Australian Military Grid are 450,000 to 490,000 yards E. and 790,000 to 820,000 yards N. These correspond very approximately to latitudes $42^{\circ} 19' S.$ and $42^{\circ} 04' S.$ and to longitudes $146^{\circ} 33' E.$ and $147^{\circ} 00' E.$

The area was surveyed on behalf of the Hydro-Electric Commission of Tasmania during January and February of 1947. This was only a rapid reconnaissance survey, but it was based largely on air photos supplemented by field work on important sections in many parts of the area. In this way we present the first detailed geological map (on a scale of four inches to the mile) of a fairly large block of Central Tasmania. Nevertheless, its limitations must be emphasised and a great deal more field work could be done with value in this area.

It is not known who was the first geologist to visit this region about Waddamana; possibly it was Strzelecki who carried out important traverses in this part of Tasmania more than a century ago. In his classical work (1845) he described briefly the Permian section in Serpentine Creek (Marlborough) which lies a short distance off the north-west edge of our map area (see Prider, 1948). He did not, however, describe, any section in the Waddamana area. Jukes (1847) only outlined the general sequence found in this part of Tasmania.

R. M. Johnston, in his general geological work on Tasmania (1888), also failed to describe any section throughout this large area, but on his map he indicated very roughly the presence of 'diabase' or 'greenstone' over three-quarters of the map area in the north, north-west and west, with 'Permo-Carboniferous' reaching up to 'Ebrington' (Hermitage) in the south-eastern part, a general areal distribution which has been borne out by the present survey. Stephens (1898) reported that the only area of older Palaeozoic and pre-Cambrian in Central Tasmania lay between Lake Echo and the River Nive, but this appears to have been an error, possibly mistaking locally metamorphosed Trias for these.

David's Geological Map of Australia (1931) included an inset of Tasmania, which showed, in addition, some patches of Tertiary basalt in this area, while the latest map to depict the geology of Tasmania, appearing in the State Atlas of Tasmania (1947), indicates no further details in our region. The area was included in a broad physiographic reconnaissance of the Central Plateau by Lewis

(1933), while Edwards has examined its basalts (1939) and its dolerites (1942). No work at all has been done on the Permian or Trias sequences, though a valuable regional survey of the Tasmanian Permian has been made by Voisey (1938). To date, therefore, it appears that only generalized accounts of rapid traverses in this area have been published.

The following work breaks a good deal of new ground, but, at the same time, must only be regarded as the report of a general reconnaissance, to which has been added a discussion on the broader implications in the regional geology.

Justification for the latter was obtained by means of a study of the literature, coupled with regional reconnaissances over Central Tasmania, and, in addition, the West Coast, the Northern and North-western Tiers, the Midlands, Hobart area and Derwent Valley. The friendly and stimulating company of Professor S. W. Carey and Dr. R. T. Prider on several of these trips was particularly appreciated. Valuable help in the field was contributed by student assistants, especially W. K. Sneddon, and later B. Motten and A. A. Northey.

Acknowledgments must be made herewith to the Hydro-Electric Commission of Tasmania, which has kindly given permission for the publication of this report, and whose officers facilitated the survey in every possible way; to Professor S. W. Carey, their geological consultant, and to Dr. R. T. Prider, my colleague, who carried out a similar survey in the region immediately to the west. The use of Dr. Prider's map covering the Dee area in the extreme south-west of the present block is gratefully acknowledged. Dr. Austin Edwards has been kind enough to check carefully through the Ms.; Dr. C. Teichert and Dr. A. Voisey have also read it and assisted me with their comments. Mr. H. O. Fletcher, of the Australian Museum, Sydney, has kindly examined and identified the fossils.

II. PHYSIOGRAPHY

The Waddamana map area may be divided, physiographically, roughly into four equal parts. In the south-west, north-west and north-east there is a high plateau underlain by dolerite rocks, sloping in a more or less southerly direction from elevations of about 3100 feet in the north down to about 2000 feet in the south. The north-west segment includes Lake Echo, east of which broad areas of basalt form a cover over the dolerite (e.g., Bashan Plains). The north-eastern segment includes the Lagoon of Islands and a smaller amount of basalt on the upper part of the Shannon. The south-western part includes lower slopes and plateaux of dolerite and, again, some areas of basalt east of the Dee. In the south-east segment there are more gentle rolling hills and valleys conditioned by the occurrence of sediments (sandstones and mudstones) of Permian and Trias age; the elevation varies from about 2000 to 1500 feet.

There are no true mountain ranges or peaks in this regionally elevated area, but a few hills rising above the plateau are referred to as 'Sugar Loaf'. In this way there are Fisher's Sugar Loaf, south-west of Waddamana (over 2800 feet), Goldie's Sugar Loaf, south of the Lagoon of Islands (over 2700 feet), and Synnot's Sugar Loaf, north of Hermitage (about 2200 feet).

The entire region is drained by three major rivers which flow roughly from north to south: the Ouse which flows almost directly down the centre of the map area, the Dee which drains Lake Echo in the south-west, and the Shannon which comes down from the Great Lake and also drains the Lagoon of Islands through a tributary in the east (Blackman's Rivulet) and joins the Ouse in the extreme southern part of the sheet. Only in the extreme south-east corner of the sheet are there a few small tributaries of the Clyde.

All the main rivers and their tributaries are deeply incised in the southern part of the sheet, but towards the north the valleys become shallower and the streams flow in only slight depressions in the surface of the high plateau. The two lakes, Lake Echo and the Lagoon of Islands, appear to be structurally controlled (see below, under Sections IV—Structure, and V—Geomorphology) and probably represent complex graben collapse structures. In general, the streams are flowing southwards over this southerly tilted plateau and must, therefore, be regarded as originally consequent streams. Deep incision, however, has revealed older structures by superposition and with younger structures antecedent features result. The detailed channels are, furthermore, in many cases considerably influenced by the structural lines of the country, almost every bend reflecting a joint, shear or fault line in the underlying geology. No river terraces of any dimensions have been recognised along their valleys.

Hydro-electric operations have produced an important diversion of the upper part of the Shannon, via a canal and the 'Penstock Lagoon', being carried by pipe-line over 1000 feet down into the Ouse Valley where is situated Waddamana, one of the principal hydro-electric power stations in Tasmania. High-tension power lines radiate from Waddamana to Hobart, Launceston and Shannon. A former line connecting with Tarraleah has now been dismantled and only the telephone line is maintained.

Rainfall in the area varies between 25 and 40 inches, but a good deal of the precipitation falls as snow in the winter-time. A good review of the climate and vegetation of the high plain region, as exemplified at Great Lake, may be found in Legge (1905). The vegetation is mostly of the native eucalypts, and relatively little has been cleared. In the south-east, however, the sedimentary sub-stratum permits a good development of the soil and more extensive pastures are cultivated. This south-eastern section coincides also rather closely with part of the less humid and slightly warmer climatic region of Eastern Tasmania, as recognised by Dr. J. Gentili (see Map No. 25 in the Regional Planning Atlas of Tasmania, 1947). In the south-east there are the old established estates of Hunterston, Hermitage, Southern Field, Dungrove and Cluny.

The Waddamana region is serviced by a number of moderate all-weather roads, including the Lake Highway in the east and the Lyell Highway in the south-west, together with a number of very rough secondary roads and tracks. However, owing to the backwardness of the agricultural and general development of the area, there are rather large sections without any roads at all and these should best be visited on foot or horseback.

III. GENERAL GEOLOGY

1. Permian

The Permian rocks of Central Tasmania have been known for over a century. They consist largely of mudstones, conglomerates and sandstones, in places containing large accumulations of fossil remains, indicating shallow water marine conditions. At certain horizons there is a variety of medium-sized exotic boulders of Western Tasmanian origin, consisting mostly of early Palaeozoic and pre-Cambrian quartzites, schists and various igneous rocks. These have long been considered to be of glacial origin and certainly suggest the rafting and melting of ice-floes and ice-bergs. No true (continental) tillites have been found in this area. In the mudstones, sandstones and conglomerates there are many horizons containing sharp, angular fragments of various minerals, such as unweathered feldspars, which also suggest a rapid sedimentation.

The Permian of Tasmania has long been recognised as being similar in many respects to that of New South Wales and an exact correlation with that State has been attempted with 'Upper and Lower Marine' series, 'Greta' and 'Tomago' series, and so on. Weaknesses in this correlation have been apparent for some time, and both Voisey (1938) and Lewis (1946) introduced local formation names. Some confusion, however, existed between the two, and R. T. Prider (1948), after consultation with Dr. Voisey and Professor S. W. Carey, proposed a general classification for the Permian of Central Tasmania, which appears to be fairly generally applicable. Briefly, the sequence is as follows:—

3. *Ferntree Formation* (of Lewis, 1946).—White unfossiliferous mudstone without pebbles, in places including a sandstone member consisting normally of equal amounts of angular quartz and fresh plagioclase grains (named 'Risdon sandstone' in an unpublished Ms. by Carey and Henderson, 1945, see Carey, 1947). This group is equivalent to the Lindisfarne 'stage' of Voisey (1938).
2. *Woodbridge Formation* (of Voisey, 1938).—Unfossiliferous, pebbly mudstone with small glacial erratics locally intercalated by a pebbly sandstone. This sequence is equivalent to the Lindisfarne formation of Lewis (1946).
1. *Marlborough Group** (of Prider, 1948).—A somewhat variable group of highly fossiliferous sandstones and mudstones. (This is more or less equivalent to the Cascades 'stage' of Lewis, 1946. See Hills and Carey, 1949.) In it three facies are recognised:—
 - (a) *Bronte Facies* (of Prider, 1948).—A silty sandstone (rich in quartz and fresh feldspars) with marine fossils. Locally it passes to mudstones. Prider interprets the material to be fluvio-glacial in origin.
 - (b) *Grange Facies* (of Lewis, 1946).—A yellow mudstone characterised by the fossil *Fenestella* and casts of shelly forms.
 - (c) *Granton Facies* (of Lewis, 1946).—Blue-grey calcareous mudstones with calcareous fossils.

In the present map area, Permian has been identified in a small inlier in the Ouse Valley at Waddamana, where it is partly exposed by faulting and partly by the very deep incision of the Ouse itself. It is overlain on the east by dolerite and on the west by basalt flows. The individual horizons in it are somewhat lenticular and inconstant, but the following section may be taken as a typical representative of the Waddamana sequence:—

7. Grey, sandy mudstone, with blue-grey to olive-brown sandy shales; lenticles of siliceous sandstones occur in places, and angular quartz fragments are common in the mudstones 30 ft.
6. Yellow, silty feldspathic sandstone, passing laterally into sandy shale and mudstone, with lenticular conglomerate and quartz grit bands, locally with shelly fossils 20-50 ft.
5. Yellow, sandy mudstones, with bryozoan 'reef' facies (*Fenestella*, and many other fossils). This facies may interfinger and be intercalated in the overlying sequence of silty sandstones 20-70 ft.

* I am following as closely as possible the proposed Code of Australian Stratigraphic Nomenclature, which was adopted in principle by the Australian and New Zealand Association for the Advancement of Science in 1947 (see Glaessner, Raggatt, *et al.*, 1948). As regards the Marlborough 'series' of Prider, it seems best to regard this as a lithologic group rather than as a time-rock 'series'; in this case the smaller subdivisions may be 'formations', 'members', 'lenses' or 'tongues', but as their status and relationships are as yet undetermined, I am retaining Dr. Prider's suggestion in referring to them as 'facies'.

4. Conglomeratic to sandy mudstone, yellow to reddish-brown in colour. Pebbles are mainly quartzite, but with some granite and schist. Richly fossiliferous in places, especially species of *Spirifer*, *Productus*, *Stenopora*, etc. 20-40 ft.
3. Yellow, sandy to gritty mudstone, locally very felspathic, with some quartzite, granite, gneiss, schist and blue crystalline limestone pebbles, passing to a true felspathic sandstone 50-60 ft.
2. Creamy-white to greyish mudstones, well-bedded and blocky; unfossiliferous at the top, but with many shelly forms lower down. Thin shaley partings; rare pebbles and angular quartz grains 60-70 ft.
1. Blue-grey, block mudstones, with very hard limestone concretions (up to three feet long), mostly unfossiliferous 25 ft. (plus)

Total average thickness, 255 ft.

Nowhere is the base of the sequence seen, since it disappears into the bed of the River Ouse. Even outside the Waddamana area, the base is nowhere seen in Central Tasmania.

Pebbles found in these beds range up to about six inches long as a rule; none were found to be glacially striated. Lithologically and faunistically, the Waddamana sequence corresponds fairly well to Prider's Marlborough group, with its Granton facies (our beds 1 and 2), its Grange facies (our beds 3 to 5), and its Bronte facies (our beds 6 and 7).

Fossils found in the Grange facies, in the Waddamana-Ouse Valley area (kindly identified by Mr. H. O. Fletcher, of the Australian Museum, Sydney), include—

Coelenterata

- Stenopora crinita* Lonsdale.
- S. tasmaniensis* Lonsdale.
- Euryphyllum gregoriana* (de Kon.).

Bryozoa

- Polypora internata* (Lonsdale).
- P. woodsi* (Etheridge).
- Protoretepora ampla* (Lonsdale).
- Fenestrellina propinqua* (de Kon.).

Brachiopoda

- Strophalosia clarkei* (Etheridge).
- S. gerardi* King.
- S. jukesi* Etheridge.
- Terrakea fragile* (Dana).
- T. brachythaera* (Sowerby).
- Linoproductus cora* var. *farleyensis* Eth.
- Linoproductus* sp. (Large form.)
- Spirifer stokesi* König.
- S. duodecimcostata* McCoy.
- S. tasmaniensis* Morris.
- S. vespertilio* Sowerby.
- S. oviformis* McCoy.
- S. glaber* Dana (non Martin).
- Martiniopsis darwinii* (Morris).
- M. subradiata* (Sowerby).
- M. subradiata* var. *bramptonensis* Eth.

Pelecypoda

- Aviculopecten sprengi* Johnston.
- A. multicostata* Fletcher.
- A. engelhardti* Eth. & Dun.
- A. tenuicollis* (Dana).
- Deltopecten fittoni* (Morris).
- D. subquiquelineatus* (McCoy).
- Maeonia carinata* (Morris).
- Stutchburia compressa* (Morris).
- S. costata* (Morris).
- Modiola* sp.

Gastropoda

- Platyschisma ocula* Sowerby.
- Ptychomphalina morrisiana* (McCoy).
- Conularia inornata* Dana.

Further downstream along the Ouse Valley, about six miles below Waddamana, the Permian reappears at the locality known as Nelson's Bend on this river. Here the mudstones outcrop in the bed of the river and up to 100 feet or so around the west and south-west sides of the valley, where they are overlain by a very massive pebbly grit horizon and succeeded by about 300 feet of sandstones. The structure at Nelson's Bend is extremely complex, for there are a series of north-north-west, north-west, west-north-west, north-east and east-north-east faults which reduce the outcrops here to a mosaic of displaced blocks. The dip is, for the most part, between 10 degrees and 20 degrees to the west and north-west. Fossils were not found in the mudstone, and it would seem that the outcrop is probably near the top of the Permian and that the overlying sandstones are possibly the lowermost Trias.

Following the Ouse Valley further south still, in the vicinity of the old road from Hermitage to Victoria Valley via Triangle Marsh (around the side of the former Butler's Bridge), a fossiliferous Permian mudstone is found dipping gently westwards with dolerite abutting it along a faulted intrusive contact on the east. This intrusive contact may be followed for about five miles in a southerly direction along the Ouse Valley, passing just to the east of McGuire's Marsh Farm and near the junction of the River Ouse and the River Shannon. Above this fossiliferous mudstone follows a series of sandstones. The character of the fossiliferous mudstone suggests the Grange facies of the Marlborough Group, and the overlying sandstones appear to be a local variation of the Woodbridge and Ferntree mudstone formations, or possibly Trias, assuming an erosional gap. It seems probable that this intrusive contact is also faulted, since no mudstone was found to the east of it, but additional sandstones were found which possess more of a Trias character, and these may be followed up the River Shannon, and, unless displaced by further faulting, would lead naturally into the sandstones overlying the Permian in the region between Hermitage and Dungrove.

The third and largest Permian outcrop appears in an asymmetric dome-like structure around Hunterston. It is transgressed by dolerites on all sides, and complicated by faulting. It is only here in the north-west that northerly and easterly dips are encountered and everywhere else the dip is away to the south-west from Hunterston towards Hermitage and Dungrove. The successive horizons of the Permian follow one another in uninterrupted sequence, dipping between two degrees and five degrees in the general way towards the south-west, where they disappear beneath sandstones which may be Trias, and eventually are progressively overlapped by dolerite.

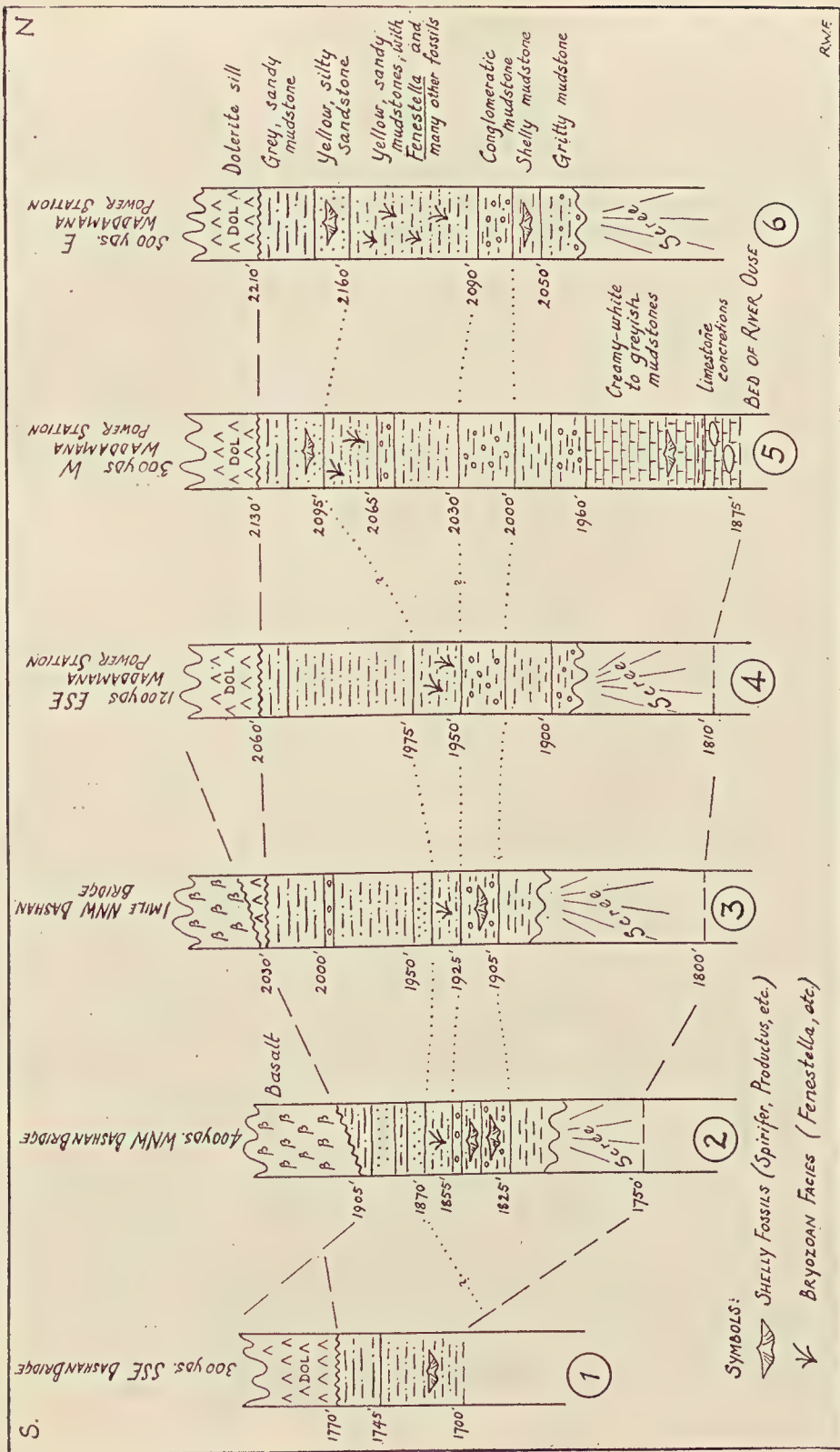


FIG. 1.—Permian stratigraphic columns in the Waddamana area.

The crest of this dome lies in the valley of the Hunterston River, about two miles east-north-east of Hunterston Homestead, where massive blue-grey mudstones outcrop, dipping three degrees north-east on the north side of the stream and three degrees or four degrees south-west on the south side. They are succeeded by about 50 feet of coarse gritty and pebbly sandstone which extends along the strike to the north-west paralleling the Lake Highway near milepost D67, where, however, it appears to wedge out and is replaced by a very fossiliferous band of yellow mudstones with *Fenestella* and various shelly fossils, *Spirifer*, *Productus*, etc.

Just below this mudstone horizon there is a thin sill of dolerite up to about 12 feet in thickness, which has had the effect of baking the overlying fossiliferous mudstones to a thickness of about 10 feet, with the result that the fossils are beautifully preserved in a very hard and resistant rock. This sill may be followed for over a mile around the northern end of the Hunterston Basin. When this same horizon is followed to the east in its sandstone phase, it is found to thicken considerably, so that at a distance of three miles due east of Hunterston Homestead, where it is overlapped by the dolerites of Front Tier, it is found to be dipping at about six degrees to the east and measures more than 200 feet in thickness.

By analogy with the lithology of the Permian in South-eastern Tasmania, we may perhaps correlate the sandstone, the *Fenestella* mudstones, and the blue-grey mudstones below, with Prider's Marlborough Group. It is overlain to the south by a thick sequence of white to creamy mudstones containing scattered pebbles and occasionally erratics of igneous and metamorphic rocks of Western Tasmanian appearance. Fossils in it are rare, but an occasional *Spirifer* was found. This formation shows an immediate analogy with the Woodbridge Glacial formation (of Voisey) and may be followed westwards along the strike, forming hills south of Hunterston Homestead and the range running north-west of Brazen-dale. The dip here is fairly uniformly about five degrees south-west. To the south-east of the Lake Highway the same mudstones may be followed, forming the hills east of the road and exposed by the northern tributaries of Weasel Plains Creek. Further to the south it forms an amphitheatre all round the west and south of Weasel Plains Homestead. The thickness of this mudstone (probably Woodbridge Formation) varies from 200 to 300 feet.

Overlying the probable Woodbridge mudstones, almost along the line indicated by the Hydro-Electric Commission high-tension transmission line (Waddamana-Hobart), there is a thick sequence of alternating sandstones and mudstones. At the base there is a coarse pebbly grit succeeded by yellow and white siliceous sandstones with one or two further grit horizons. This is overlaid in turn by a mudstone which is white, unfossiliferous and, in the general way, does not have the pebbles characteristic of the Woodbridge mudstones. The mudstone is succeeded by two further horizons of sandstone and mudstone respectively, each about 20 feet thick, making a total of about 150 feet.

These mudstones and sandstones are best exposed in the valleys north of Dungrove and between here and Hermitage and in the valley of the River Shannon between Hermitage and Brazen-dale. They also form the hillsides west of the Shannon at Brazen-dale. This alternating sequence in the Dungrove-Hermitage region corresponds, lithologically, with the Fern-tree mudstones (and 'Risdon sandstones') recognised elsewhere in South-eastern and Central Tasmania, but it appears that the repetition of the sandstone members is peculiar to this local section to the extent that sandstones are here more important than the mudstones, whereas at Hobart the reverse is the case. No fossils were found in this upper formation. This entire sequence is conformably overlain to the south-west, roughly on a line

Hermitage to Dungrove to Cluny Park, by a massive quartzitic grit band overlain by several hundred feet of sandstones, grits and sandy shales. By analogy with the Hobart and Midlands areas, this may best be regarded as Trias (*q.v.*).

It may be seen from the above that we have here in the region between Dungrove, Hermitage and Hunterston an extremely well-developed and relatively undisturbed sequence of Permian rocks, and this section may well repay careful examination, since in so many other localities in Tasmania inter-relationships between the different formations are obscured by faulting and by dolerite intrusions. On the contrary, in this area, apart from a few thin sills, dolerite is restricted to the margins, and there is a region about six by ten miles of well-exposed and gently dipping Permian sediments. No other outcrops of Permian are known in this area and the nearest connections are found to the north-west (Marlborough-Bronte region), to the south (Osterley-Ouse region), and to the south-east (Bothwell, Otlands and the 'Midlands').

In broad terms it may be seen that this general sequence of Permian is to be compared with the Hobart area, or southern division of Voisey (1938). It has no coals, tasmanite oil shales or obvious freshwater intercalations; thus clearly it has less in common with the northern and western divisions of Voisey, though admittedly the absence of the basal beds prevents a complete appraisal.

2. Trias

Trias follows Permian more or less conformably, but in many places in the Hobart-Midlands area there is evidence of a hiatus and a slight disconformity (Nye, 1921, 1924), and a basal conglomerate of Permian mudstone pebbles is known. It consists mainly of unfossiliferous sandstones which are generally taken to be of freshwater origin. The sandstones are often similar to those of the Permian, although certain lithological characteristics may be found useful for field distinctions.

The generally recognised sequence of the Trias in South-eastern Tasmania is as follows (Loftus Hills and Carey, 1949):—

4. *Felspathic Sandstone Formation* (of Nye, 1921).—Felspathic sandstones of tuffaceous type, and compare closely with those of Wonthaggi in the Victorian Jurassic.
3. *New Town Formation* (of Lewis, 1946).—Felspathic sandstones, sandy mudstones, shales and coal measures (plants indicate Upper Triassic age—Walkom, 1925-26).
2. *Knocklofty Formation* (of Lewis, 1946).—Often micaceous 'sparkling' quartz sandstones, locally passing to chocolate shales, sometimes with clay-pellet (intraformational) conglomerates, the so-called Hamilton Formation.
1. *Ross Sandstone Formation* (of Nye, 1924).—Believed equivalent to Springs Formation of Lewis (1946). Massive quartz sandstones often micaceous with a rather constant basal conglomeratic grit.

It is apparent that unless a very well developed sequence of Trias is found in any one place, including the various fossiliferous shale horizons, it is sometimes difficult to distinguish its uniform sandstone formations from one another on the basis of lithology alone, although the felspathic horizons are distinctive.

Within the area of this survey, there are a number of small isolated patches of sandstones which may be classified as Trias, but a thick sequence is found only in the south-east, in the beds which overlie Permian rocks outcropping south of

Hermitage and Dungrove and along the Lower Shannon. Here, in a line running from Hermitage to Dungrove to Cluny Park, a massive quartzitic grit horizon initiates a sequence of about 300 feet of sandstones locally intercalated by sandy shales and further grit horizons. The sandstones are mainly quartzitic and are generally cross-bedded. Measurements indicate that the sediment probably came from the west or north-west.

Along the road half-a-mile north-west of Hermitage, it appears that the same grit rests on the Permian marine sequence, and associated with the cross-bedding in the overlying sandstones there are some excellent examples of subaqueous pene-contemporaneous slumping over a band about one to two feet in thickness. The direction of this slumping also indicates a slope from the north-west. It is overlain by sandstones of similar character so there is no question of any external pushing force (such as glaciers) and it is explained as gravity slides on the sea floor under conditions of rapid accumulation with resultant overloading (see Fairbridge, 1946, 1947). The top of this sandstone sequence is transgressed by dolerites west of Hermitage, and even two miles south-west of Dungrove there is no indication of any passage into the chocolate or pink shales which are so widely exposed about ten miles to the south of here in the Hamilton region. This formation, therefore, we correlate provisionally with the Ross Sandstone of the Hobart region.

As mentioned above, there are numerous other small outcrops of sandstones in the present map area. Many of these are simply small inclusions in the intruding dolerites, representing a variety of xenoliths and roof pendants. In places, thin bands are intercalated between thick sills of dolerite. This is particularly so to the west of Dungrove and Southern Field (south of Hermitage) and along the valley of the River Shannon towards its junction with the Ouse. On the northern bank of the Shannon here, about one mile above its junction, there is a small outcrop of flat-lying micaceous sandy shales with flecks of graphite.

Additional small patches of sandstones, presumable Trias, occur at Jean Banks Farm and in several places on either side of the River Ouse about two miles south and south-east of Waddamana. A continuous belt of sandstones is found along the eastern border of Lake Echo and is up to 200 feet in thickness. In the north these sandstones are yellow to pink and felspathic in character, while in the south, near Echo Lodge, they are more quartzitic and have a sparkling character. This sparkling look Prider has shown is due to the euhedral character of the secondary quartz crystallised around the original rounded sand grains, and it is characteristic of the Ross sandstones.

The felspathic sandstones reappear about three miles south of Echo Lodge at Glenmark Farm, while about four miles to the south-west, along Seven Mile Creek, there is a development of sparkling quartzitic sandstones, about 200 feet in thickness. Here they are considerably broken up by both vertical and horizontal intrusions of dolerite. Patches of these sandstones are also found on the surface of the dolerite plateau west of Lake Echo and along the eastern side of Brown's Marsh Creek. In the south, sandstones appear below Victoria Valley beneath the dolerite and extend for a considerable distance up Boggy Marsh Rivulet and in patches up Bashan Plains Rivulet. They are all mainly of quartzitic character.

It is interesting that there are no intercalations of coal measures in our Trias such as are found elsewhere in Tasmania, but since these facies are generally associated with the middle or 'Felspathic Sandstone' beds and the main dolerite sill is generally found between this and the underlying Ross Sandstone (Lewis, 1933, etc.), its absence is hardly surprising, for the former sedimentary cover of the sill is almost entirely stripped off.

3. Jurassic

Following upon the sedimentation of the Trias, there seems to be a complete hiatus in the stratigraphic succession of Central Tasmania, until late Tertiary times. Igneous intrusives, however, in the form of dolerite sills, dykes, laccoliths and even lopoliths, are found intruding the Trias, Permian, and even older rocks. There is no direct evidence as to their age here, except that they must be Mesozoic, but closely analogous dolerites occur in the Karroo System of South Africa which are correlated by du Toit (1920, 1926) with the earliest Jurassic. The most recent and comprehensive study of these dolerites is by Edwards (1942), who made collections through these sills in different parts of Tasmania, showing that not only was the original magma completely uniform and liquid when intruded, but also that it underwent *in situ* differentiation in a remarkably uniform manner.

In the Central Plateau of Tasmania generally, one may readily confirm the observations of earlier authors as to the general characteristics of these intrusions. Here they are normally in the form of vast, more or less continuous sheets or sills, generally of the order of 1000 feet or more in thickness. This aspect may be seen to advantage at many points along the gorge of the Upper Ouse, which, in places, is cut down well over 1000 feet. The bulk of the area is occupied by the exposed surface of only one or two sills. Vertical dyke-like contacts occur in places, but not nearly to the extent found in the Midlands area to the east, where the sill form is less usual. Commonly in Central Tasmania, the intrusion comes up along a vertical (faulted) plane as a dyke, and at a certain horizon spreads out assymmetrically to one side in an enormous sill, as noted elsewhere by Lewis (1927) and by Loftus Hills and Carey (1949). An excellent example is seen coming in along a north-south fault from Nelson's Bend down to the junction of the Ouse and Shannon, and spreading horizontally for many miles to the east.

Thinner sills may also be seen in certain places, particularly in the Permian sedimentary area north of Hunterston and just east of Hermitage church. These vary from only 10 to 20 feet in thickness. An equally narrow dyke may be observed cutting Permian mudstones, quarter-of-a-mile north of Brazendale on the banks of the Shannon.

Various authors have discussed in the past whether there were only horizontal and purely vertical contacts, or whether there were irregular and oblique transgressive contacts in places. Both varieties were found on this survey, but certainly the horizontal and rectangular contacts are most common.

Widespread occurrence of chilled margins has already been observed in the region by Nye, Lewis, Edwards, Prider, and others, and they are particularly useful in our area. Edwards (1942) notes that the base of the sill is often chilled to a thickness of 30 feet. Chilling of this order may be observed well along the east side of the Ouse at Waddamana, where dolerite rests on Permian sandy mudstones. The upper margin, as Edwards also observed, is naturally less often preserved, but in the broad plateau east of Waddamana and between Steppes and Interlaken there are numerous flat 'pavements' of very fine-grained dolerite, which are more often horizontally laminated than elsewhere (where vertical jointing is predominant). These 'pavements' are restricted to the higher levels of the plateau and I take them to represent nearly the surface of the intrusion. In places there is even a little baked shale preserved with it, e.g., about three miles north-east of Hunterston, or one mile east of Echo Lodge.

The dolerite sills may intrude Permo-Trias rocks at practically every horizon it appears, but a marked preference is shown for certain levels. At Waddamana it is in the middle of the Permian sequence, between the Marlborough and Wood-bridge formations. In the sections between Victoria Valley, McGuire's Marsh,

Nelson's Bend, Hermitage and Dungrove, it is a Trias horizon (apparently the top of the Ross Sandstone, as found so often in the Midlands-Hobart region, see Nye, 1921; Lewis, 1933; and others). In the region east of Hunterston and Weasel Plains it appears to be obliquely transgressive, rising from the Permian up into the Trias southwards. A thin segment of Trias, a few hundred feet thick, is caught up between two thick sills of dolerite in the lower Shannon-Butler's Bridge area and again at Lake Echo and east of Brown's Marsh Creek.

The sediments were often tilted to 5, 10 or even 15 degrees during the intrusion, but rarely are they folded. As Lewis (1927) and others noted, there is no evidence of violence associated with these intrusions, apart from the tensional features.

Large xenoliths of sandstone and more rarely shale are often found caught up in the dolerite. They may be an indication of what the former 'roof' material of the sill consisted. Many are found around Victoria Valley, where they are up to 100 yards in lengths, lying at every angle. Here they are almost certainly Trias, since the sandstones of that age underly the sill here and thus presumably also overlay it originally. Another group of sandstone xenoliths occurs south-east of Waddamana, but since they are found in a sill resting on a sedimentary horizon fairly low in the Permian sequence, they may be from one of the mid-Permian sandstones of the type which are so widespread in the Hunterston region.

The sediments in contact with the chilled margins of the dolerite are somewhat metamorphosed, so that the sandstones become quartzites, while the shales and mudstones are 'baked' dark-grey to black, or converted to hornfels or chert. The degree of metamorphism is slight, surprisingly so in view of the statement by Edwards (1942), that the intrusion must have come in at a temperature of about 1000 degrees Centigrade. All authors, however, agree on this (Nye, Lewis, Edwards, Prider, etc.), but there is certainly more alteration at the upper contact than the lower. At the latter contact two-three feet may suffice to carry one down into unaltered sediment, but above I have seen 15-20 feet of baking and silicification; this is true even for some of the quite thin sills, e.g., the ten-foot sill, one-and-a-half miles north of Hunterston Homestead, has so hardened the *Fenestella* beds of the overlying Permian, that these normally rather soft and poorly preserved fossils are very easily collected.

4. Tertiary

As noted above, an extraordinary long phase of emergence followed the close of Trias sedimentation, and it was not until late Tertiary that traces are generally found of lacustrine sediments (see especially Johnston, 1888, 1921; Lewis, 1946). In the Waddamana map-area, probable Tertiary beds were found in only one spot, on the side of the Waddamana-Hermitage road near the head of Black Creek, half-a-mile north-west of Synnot's Sugar Loaf. They rest in a shallow depression in the Jurassic dolerite and amount to no more than ten feet of soft, unfossiliferous yellow-red sandy clays and gravel. The deposit is exposed over a distance of less than 20 yards and is overlain by basalt.

Basalt lava-flows are intimately associated with and overlie the late Tertiary sediments in other parts of Tasmania, and may be compared to some extent with the Newer Volcanic Series of the mainland (Edwards, 1939). Here they cover a fairly large area (56 out of the 391 square miles in the Waddamana map-area). Their existence was recorded in papers by Lewis (1933) and Edwards (1939) between Lake Echo and Waddamana in the Bashan Plains, and north-west of Steppes in St. Patrick's Plains, as well as east of the Dee basalts. These Dee

basalts cover some 12 square miles in the region of Duck Creek between the Dee and Victoria Valley. They form some small plateaux and mild rolling country ranging from 2600 down to 1800 feet.

The largest single area, however, is that of Bashan Plains, which extends from north of the region between Waddamana and Lake Echo to McGuire's Marsh near the junction of the Ouse and the Shannon, covering about 35 square miles. It drops gently in altitude from about 3100 feet in the north down to about 1500 feet in the south, the present gradient averaging about 100 feet per mile.

A third area of basalt lies south of Jean Banks between the Ouse and the Shannon, covering about nine square miles. Another small patch north-west of Steppes adjoins the much larger sheet on St. Patrick's Plains, lying mostly north of this map-area. A thin skin of basalt is found in places reaching south of here down the valley of the Shannon.

The basalt occurs in more or less flat, successive flows, each 30-50 feet in thickness and in places up to a dozen or more in number. Owing to differential erosion, these flows weather into a step-like terraced landscape, which often shows up clearly on air photographs as well as on the ground. The basalt quite clearly flowed down over a fairly dissected landscape, for the most part only part-filling the valleys, and only locally crossing the interfluves (see discussion, in Edwards, 1939). Local thicknesses are thus very variable but range to about 600 feet. Prider (1948) found similar thickness in the Tarraleah area. The lava must have been mostly very fluid, for it appears to have travelled down in single flows over the country for distances of 15 miles and more (e.g., in the Bashan Plains lava field).

No craters or vents were located in this area, but the flows appear to have originated in the north and flowed down a pre-existing slope to the south. As noted above there is generally a gradient of about 1 : 100 from north to south to-day, but how much this is due to an initial gradient and how much to subsequent warping is difficult to say; the question is discussed further below.

The basalts are somewhat variable in texture from top to bottom of each flow. At the base they are generally chilled and fine-grained, towards the middle medium-grained, often porphyritic, and towards the top generally filled with gas bubbles and even scoriaceous. These vesicles are sometimes filled by minerals of the zeolite class. The jointing in this area is not well exposed, but when seen it is generally irregular and not columnar.

Petrographically, the basalts belong to the olivine-basalt type. The olivine occurs generally in small phenocrysts against an almost black fine-grained ground mass.

The more precise dating of some of these late Tertiary basalts is indicated in areas outside our own (overlying Miocene lake deposits in the Derwent and Esk basins), which evidence suggests perhaps a Pliocene age. Edwards (1939), however, on physiographic evidence suggests they may well be late Pliocene or even Pleistocene. Lewis (1945a) concluded that there was in all probability several phases of basalt eruption, and, in the lack of pronounced evidence of glaciated surfaces on the basalts at Great Lake and elsewhere, the youngest may well be mid-Pleistocene. It may be mentioned, however, that glacial action is not very much in evidence in any case in the Great Lake-Waddamana region, and its features have sometimes escaped notice. The basalt plains around Bashan, etc., appear to bear glacially sculptured valleys. Against this, Lewis states (1945a, p. 38) that the Tarraleah-Waddamana basalts are cut by late Miocene-early Pliocene uplifts. So far as I can see at Waddamana, there is no evidence for affixing such an age to the slight post-basalt faulting here: it may just as well be

a late Pliocene-Pleistocene uplift. Prider (1948) has indicated that at Tarraleah he has post-Miocene basalt, probably Pliocene, but there is nothing to fix the age more precisely of the youngest faulting.

5. Quaternary

The general region of the Waddamana map-area is extraordinarily bare of soil, alluvium and other superficial deposits, except in the few areas of older sediments. The latter, of course, break down more readily than do the igneous rocks, which cover 70 per cent of the area. The reason for this absence of superficial cover is almost certainly to be correlated with the Pleistocene glaciation which affected Central and Western Tasmania. Lewis (1926) has remarked that some of this Central Plateau is a near 'desert' owing to the soil having been scraped off almost entirely by the ice-sheets. Insufficient time has elapsed since the glaciations to enable the break-down of the two extremely resistant igneous rock types to form new soil.

In the high plateaux of the Waddamana area, like those also to the north and west, there are, however, scattered depressions (mainly along old structurally controlled drainage lines) which are over-deepened, apparently by glacial scour, and these are practically all filled with Quaternary deposits. In places the depths appear to run up to about 200 feet, but generally they are much less. No deep borings have been carried out, and since these deposits are hardly cut into by the present drainage, they are not easily examined. In the Tarraleah area, however, Prider (1948) made a few post-hole bore tests. These proved that the deposits consisted mainly of glacial till. From the indications in our map-area, there must be similar boulder clays here, and in places there are white quartz sands and silt which suggest peri-glacial stream deposits. Glaciated boulders are small and for the most part infrequent.

The surface of these over-deepened glacial basins is now occupied by 'button-grass plains' and peaty swamps, though farmers have succeeded in draining the bulk of them. The bulk of the depressions have clearly recognisable rock floors and rims, and are not to be explained either by purely tectonic means or as boulder-clay dammed lake deposits.

It seems clear that these depressions contain all that is left of the pre-Quaternary soil cover of Central Tasmania. No trace of older lateritized or bauxitized soils *in situ* were found in this map-area, though they are clearly present in the lower, non-glaciated levels beyond the plateaux (Carey, 1947; and others).

Other relics of the ice-sheets are scarce in this map-area. No cirques, U-shaped valleys, roches moutonnées or drumlins were found, nor even striated surfaces. The evidence suggests rather, that if there was indeed an ice-sheet, as it seems, then it was thin and at least partly stagnant. Lewis (1933, p. 31) referring to this general area says: 'The ice-cap was never very thick; perhaps 100 feet was its maximum . . . and all the then existing hills and prominences protruded as nunataks of bare rock'. Certainly the tops of these hills to-day are strewn with scree, which suggests frost action on the well jointed dolerites.

It has been notoriously difficult to correlate the Tasmanian Quaternary glacial deposits with the world time-scale. It is clear that in places they are superimposed on the youngest basalt flows (see also Lewis, 1934), but in the present survey it has not even been possible to recognise any subdivision in the deposits. It appears to have been Lewis' opinion that our region was affected by the ice of his earliest, Malanna stage, which spread out in broad though relatively thin sheet over much

of the Central Plateau down to the level of about 2700 feet. In this way ice-lobes would have extended down from the north-west to Lake Echo-Waddamana-Lagoon of Islands (Lewis, 1933).

The topography, which we take to be glacially sculptured, extends however rather further south than this. They are found along the Seven Mile Creek, at Victoria Valley and in isolated cases between Waddamana and Hermitage. Great post-glacial erosion is recognised in the valley of the Ouse and elsewhere, on the south side of the Plateau, so that many of the old traces must certainly have disappeared. If our hypothesis regarding the marsh depressions is correct, however, then the lower limit of the ice in this region should be extended down to a little below 2000 feet.

Already in 1894, Montgomery claimed that 'the great lakes of Central Tasmania are almost *prima facie* evidence of glaciation', but this may not hold good for Lake Echo, which appears to be primarily of structural origin. Lake Echo puzzled Lewis (1933) in that it lay rather to the south of his observed limits of glacial phenomena, but he imagined that beyond the dolerite rim it had been further dammed up by morainal material which is now obscured by vegetation in the valley of the Dee. Exploration here disclosed no evidence of this 'moraine', the valley following structural lines in the dolerite (see further, Section V). Other swamp basins and lakes beyond his glacial limit (2700 feet) he ascribed to recent earth movements. Victoria Valley, Bashan Plains and the nearly-filled Lagoon of Islands he included here. All, however, have rock rims and appear to lack the necessary younger structural control (lack of air photos of Lagoon of Islands leaves this case still open). They all have smooth well-rounded contours and a plentiful sedimentary filling: the hypothesis of glacial over-deepening seems to be the most satisfactory of the present state of our knowledge.

Besides these Pleistocene glacial beds, there are very meagre superficial deposits in Central Tasmania. In our map-area the bulk of the streams are actively cutting down their beds, so there is very little alluvium. There are a few patches of recent silts along the bed of the River Ouse, notably where it crosses sediments, as at Waddamana, Nelson's Bend and McGuire's Marsh. Elsewhere along the Ouse and in all of the deeper valleys crossing the dolerite, the valley slopes are covered with masses of angular dolerite screes and the beds are choked with enormous dolerite boulders up to 20 feet or so in length. There is a broader expanse of alluvium, on the sediments again, at the junction of the Shannon with Hunterston Rivulet, and lower down there are patches at Brazendale and Hermitage. Similarly on Weasel Plains and around Cluny the sedimentary substratum gives rise to rich alluvium.

The presence of these broad alluvial tracts, high up along the upper courses of these Central Tasmanian streams, at heights of 1500 up to 2000 feet and more, cannot be explained by eustatic changes of sea-level down at the mouths, since they occur *above* bars and nick-points. Nor are they adequately explained as contemporary flood plains, for the rivers are in places well-enclosed in them, and settlements have been built on them well above flood level. Edwards (personal communication) has indicated that the recession of the bars or nick-points would adequately explain these features.

IV. STRUCTURE

The structural picture of the Central Plateau of Tasmania is at first sight perhaps rather simple, but in fact is more complex. The more or less horizontal superficial layers of Permian, Trias and intercalated Mesozoic dolerite, amounting

in places to several thousand feet in thickness, rest on a peneplaned basement of older Palaeozoic rocks which had folded and metamorphosed in the Devonian orogeny. Evidence for this phase is, however, outside the present area (see Lewis, 1945a; and Loftus Hills, 1922).

Since the Permian marine sediments are all of shallow-water character, in spite of their considerable thickness, a contemporaneous regional subsidence of proportional degree must be assumed. The freshwater character of the Trias suggests regional emergence, but it too possesses a notable thickness which implies relative subsidence between rising marginal blocks.

The next major diastrophic event was a broad warping accompanied by a complex block-faulting which took place at the same time as the dolerite intrusion. Individual fault-blocks thus became tilted to 10-15 degrees, and steeper dips are only found locally in connection with fault drags. Normally, however, the general attitude of the beds remained horizontal and unfolded. Evidence of this 'epi-Trias' faulting is found in many parts of the Midland province, Central Plateau and elsewhere in Tasmania (see Nye, 1921, 1922, 1924, etc.; Lewis, 1927, etc.; Edwards, 1942; Prider, 1948; and others).

With the cooling of the dolerite, a well-developed joint system developed, which is found to be remarkably uniform in character, conforming in some degree to the regional fault pattern. The two thus become difficult to distinguish, unless large displacements occur along the faults. Small displacements, leaving dolerite against dolerite, are hard to identify in the field from simple jointing where there is negligible displacement.

Some minor movements along these already-formed lines of weakness may have occurred subsequently as suggested by movements identified beyond our area. The general evidence here suggests, however, that during the long period from Jurassic to early Tertiary relative quiescence persisted, while the initially uneven, though not tremendously high, relief became gradually reduced by mid-Tertiary times (Lewis, 1945a). Lateritized and bauxitized surfaces of this old peneplain are found in a number of places in Tasmania.

Most observers agree that in about middle to late Tertiary and even Pleistocene times there recurred a period of block-faulting, dismembering the pre-Miocene peneplain. These new major displacements produced intense shearing in the dolerite, in places reducing it in a narrow zone to a greyish, puggy clay. In this way it is very easily eroded along these lines, and many of the important structural lines are followed by watercourses to-day. The actual contacts are not often seen in the field, but Prider (1948) has found them on the Nive and Lewis (1933) reports that during the excavation of the foundations of the hydro-electric dam on Great Lake at Miena, some quite wide bands of this vertically weathered dolerite were found. The presence of these weathered shear-zones suggests a movement that occurred long after the initial faulting which accompanied the intrusions. Basing his observations on the restricted area of the Midlands, Nye (1921, 1928, 1938, etc.) considered this post-dolerite faulting as subordinate in character, but on the basis of broader physiographic observations, Lewis (1927, 1933, 1945a) concluded that these younger movements were important and actually shaped the present-day relief; it seems that only in late Tertiary-Pleistocene times was the plateau elevated to its present height.

With these conclusions I entirely agree. There is no doubt whatever that the late Tertiary basalts flowed down over a well-dissected youthful surface which could only have been engendered by a recent elevation accompanied by further block faulting.

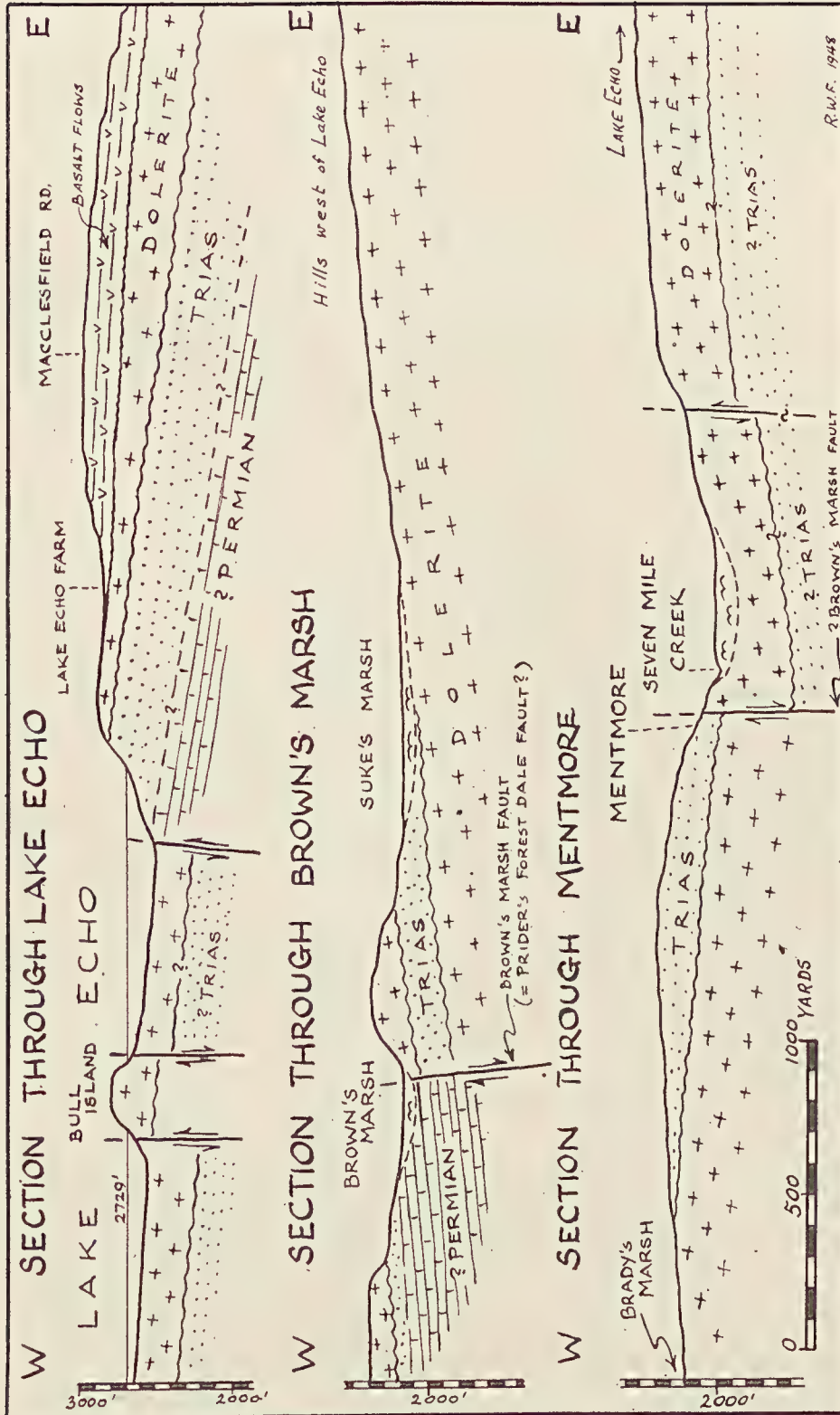


FIG. 2.—Sections through Lake Echo, Brown's Marsh, and Mentmore.

The extrusion of the lavas themselves must have been the outcome of still more taphrogenic disruption, though its traces are not always apparent (Carey, 1947). In the Waddamana map-area the basalts appear to be cut off in a few places by fault-lines, so that if they are glaciated, as they seem to be, then at least in part they would be middle or late Pleistocene in age. Thus at least three distinct periods of displacement have occurred:

- (a) Epi-Trias faulting (with dolerite intrusion), displacing—
 - (i) the peneplaned older Palaeozoic basement.
 - (ii) the Permian-Trias beds, also originally lying more or less in a horizontal attitude.

This older faulting to-day would not be expected to show physiographic expression (Lewis, 1945a, p. 32) unless re-exposed, possibly as fault-line scarps (e.g., Marlborough Fault, Prider, 1948).

The criteria for recognising this epi-Trias faulting are found in correlating across displacements the abovementioned datum-planes or the associated intrusives with true igneous contacts (Lewis, 1945a).

- (b) Mid-Tertiary faulting, disrupting the Cretaceous-Tertiary Peneplain, but ante-dating the Miocene lake beds and Younger Basalts, which flowed out over youthful topography.
- (c) Late-Tertiary to Pleistocene faulting. This disrupted the Miocene, but was associated with Younger Basalt extrusions, which may, according to the evidence of glaciation, have continued into the Pleistocene. Both this movement and the former are well expressed physiographically, but the former is more effaced by erosion and partly obscured by basalt flows.

The final structural pattern of intersecting faults separating a mosaic of jostled and displaced fault-blocks is thus a composite result left by these successive diastrophic phases. It is most probable that repeated movements occurred along old lines. Even the oldest faults are in part parallel to Older Palaeozoic or even pre-Cambrian lines (as noted by Loftus Hills, 1922; Carey, 1947; and others. It is frequently impossible, therefore, to define precisely the age of each fault-line.

Furthermore, owing to the abundance of parallel shears and joints associated with most of the important trends, we may often speak most accurately of 'fault-zones' without being able to define the loci of maximum displacement, sometimes to a width of a mile or so.

In rocks other than dolerite, minor fractures are much less common and are replaced by small warps and flexures. Again, owing to the uniform lithology of both Permian and Trias, just as in the big dolerite sills, even quite large displacements are not always indicated by a change in rock type across the fault.

Consideration of the tectonic patterns indicate thus:

1. Major Joint Pattern

With numerous exceptions, the main dolerite jointing is S.S.W.-N.N.E., W.S.W.-E.N.E. and N.W.-S.E.

2. S.S.W.-N.N.E. Fault Zones

With local deviations, there are about six major fault-zones across the area in a trend varying from N.5°E. to N.40°E. These are, from west to east:

- (a) *The Echo-Mentmore Zone*, a belt of major faults, starting in the south-west near Mentmore, intersecting the south-western shores of Lake Echo, cutting off the two sides of Bull Island and bordering the eastern and western sides of Three Mile Marsh. The throws are partly east and partly west, resulting in a graben at Three Mile Marsh.

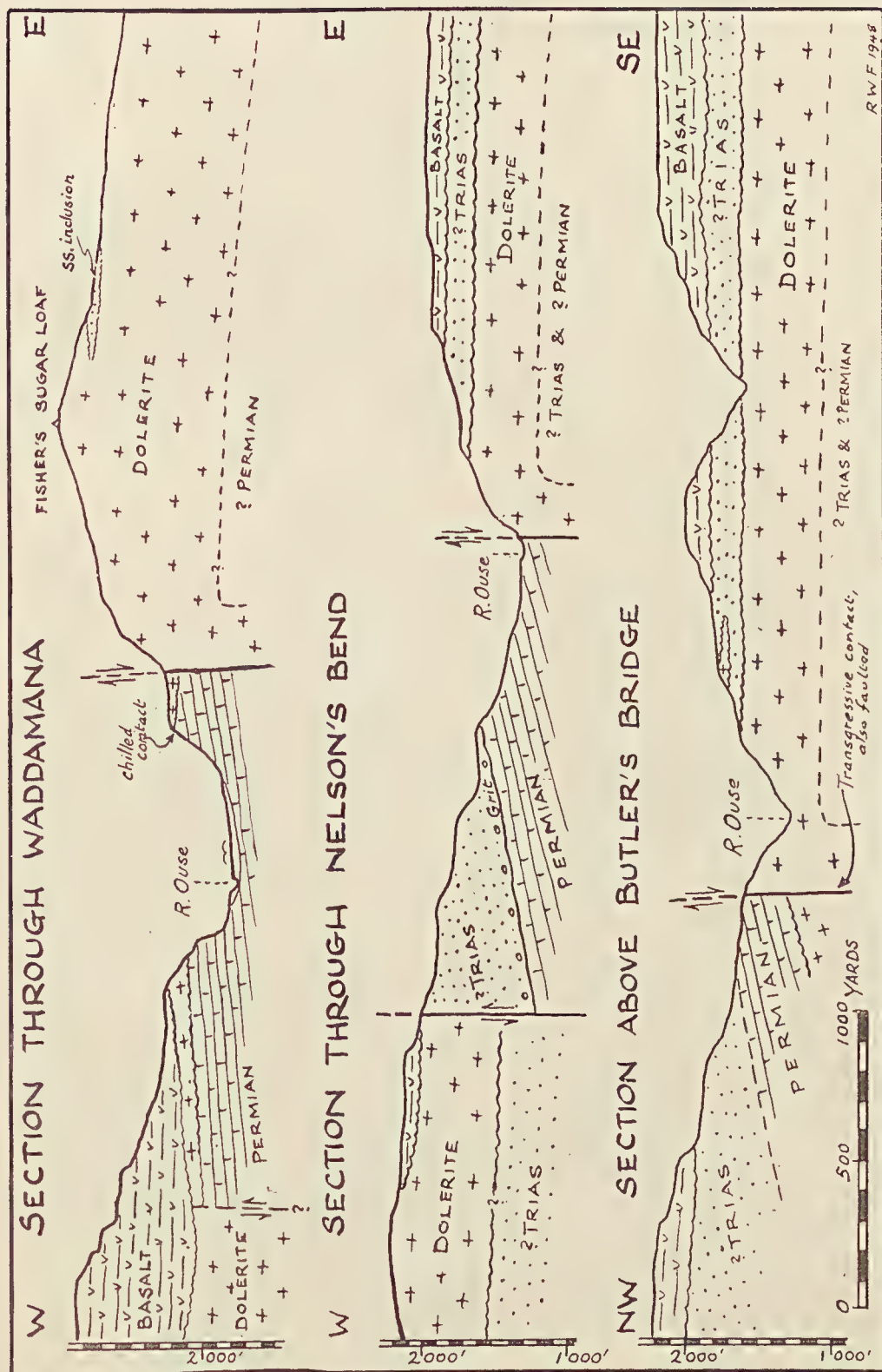


FIG. 3 --Sections through Waddamana, Nelson's Bend, and Butler's Bridge.

Bull Island stands up as a narrow horst on the west side of this zone. The southern and eastern parts of Lake Echo are intersected by this zone (and others, see below) to form a complex 'Senkungsfeld'. Initial movements were probably epi-Trias and mid-Tertiary; latest movements in Pleistocene. Total displacements are probably of the order of a few hundred feet.

- (b) *The Echo-Dee Zone*, a narrow zone, followed by the line of the Upper Dee and the eastern side of Lake Echo. Throw appears to be westerly. In the south it has little physiographic expression, although very clearly seen to be scoured out along the River Dee. It is partly responsible for the 2 to 300 foot drop along the east side of Lake Echo, and in this section Pleistocene (post-Basalt) movement is assumed, because broad sheets of basalt extend along the east side of the fault, but nowhere along the west side, which is up to 300 feet lower. Further north and south, however, where it shows no physiographic displacement, it would seem that no movement had occurred since the mid-Tertiary uplift. The total displacement in the centre may reach 500 feet.
- (c) *The Victoria Valley-Waddamana Zone* is a broad belt of intense shattering and faulting in which the downthrow is to the west on the west side, and to the east on the east side. At Waddamana itself, the basalt appears to overlap the faults, which, although originating in the epi-Trias movements, seem to have controlled a pre-basalt drainage channel west of Waddamana, down which the basalt has flowed, thus displacing the River Ouse to the east. To the south, however, the basalt crosses to the south-east which suggests that the stream maintained itself across this structural zone during the mid-Tertiary uplift. Displacements would seem to range from 1000 to 1500 feet. Lewis (1933, p. 23) has recognised the direct continuation of this line to the north: 'A major fault appears to traverse the length of the Liffey Gorge and this probably runs southward via Half-Moon Marsh, across the site of the Great Lake and down the Shannon Valley, thence in the direction of the present pipe-line to the Ouse Valley in the vicinity of Waddamana.' Traces of this trend were found during the excavations for the Miena Dam.
- (d) *McGuire's Marsh-Nelson's Bend Zone* in the general way is restricted to a single clear-cut fault line, up which one of the major dolerite intrusions have come, spreading out asymmetrically in a sill to the east. In this way, Permian on the west is clearly seen faulted against Trias and intrusive dolerite on the east. The dolerite has baked the Permian at the contact, so the age of the fault is essentially epi-Trias. The line continues for nearly ten miles along the course of the River Ouse, which is superimposed on it, cutting first down into one side and then down into the other regardless of rock hardness. Basalt is seen at rather similar heights on both sides of the valley, and it would seem to have undergone relatively little mid-Tertiary or younger movement. The northern extension of this line disappears beneath the basalt of Jean Banks, but it may control the course of the River Shannon south of its notable right angle bend west of Steppes. The displacement is of the order of 1000 to 1500 feet.

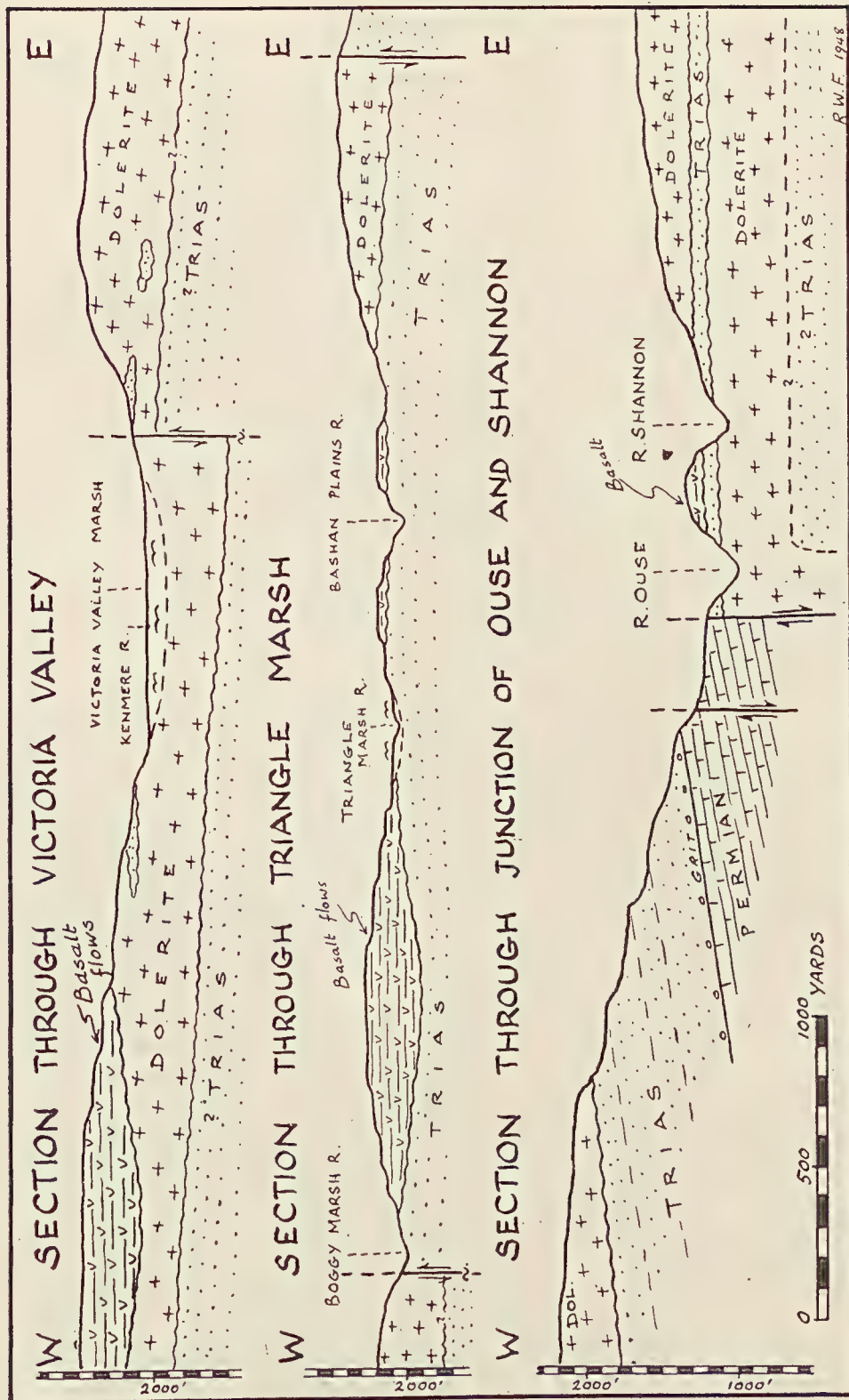


FIG. 4.—Sections through Victoria Valley, Triangle Marsh, and the junction of Ouse and Shannon.

- (e) *The Lower Shannon-Steppes Zone.* This is a weakly developed set of lines, which appear to intersect the dolerite south of the Lower Shannon, to control part of the middle course of the Shannon and perhaps pass through Steppes to form the west boundary of the Lagoon of Islands.
- (f) *The Cluny-Weasel Plains Zone* is a line which runs out of the east boundary of the map east of Cluny and Weasel Plains and follows the eastern borders of Hunterston and along the Upper Clyde towards Interlaken on the shores of Lake Sorell. It is probably of epi-Trias age for the most part, with an easterly throw and is marked by a fault-line scarp, east of the Hunterston-Cluny sedimentary areas, which, because of their elevation, have lost their dolerite sill capping and are now being eroded out into physiographic basins.

3. N.W.-S.E. and N.N.W.-S.S.E. Fault Zones

The north-westerly trends in this part of Tasmania are the most striking. Faults, shears and joints in this trend cross the map sheet in great sheafs. For this reason they are perhaps least easy to define. They are not so rectilinear as the meridional to north-north-east trends, and often possess a slightly sigmoidal character, in the sense of a horizontal drag which would suggest a horizontal (transcurrent) movement to the south-east on the east-side (or north-west on the west); this matter will be discussed further below. The general dominance of these lines, may be explained perhaps by the essentially north-west and north-north-west trends in the underlying basement.

From west to east we may recognise:

- (a) *The Brown's Marsh-Forest Dale Fault*, a rather exceptional feature, since it is almost definable as a single line. It is recognised north-west of our map-area by Prider (1948) as the Forest Dale Fault east of Marlborough where it appears to throw to the east, cutting off Permian with dolerite. It continues directly in line to the south-south-east with a displacement recognised along Brown's Marsh, where a sandstone of Permian appearance west of the line is brought against dolerite and a sandstone of Triassic type. Further south on this line, at Mentmore and along Seven Mile Creek, a Trias-type sandstone is introduced on the west side of the line against dolerite on the east, probably by cross-faulting. Recent drainage patterns are superimposed on this line, so that its age is probably epi-Trias. Its throw may be 1000 feet or more.
- (b) *The Echo-Kenmere Zone* is, unlike the former, an ill-defined belt several miles in width, which crosses Lake Echo from the north-west and reappears along Kenmere Rivulet north of Victoria Valley. It is confused with the north-west to south-east joint patterns and a definite throw is not recognised. Across Lake Echo it appears to have a graben character, and possibly a westerly throw on Kenmere Rivulet. With its present physiographic rôle it may thus have played a part in Pleistocene upheavals, but its origin was probably mid-Tertiary or older. Throws do not appear to exceed a few hundred feet.
- (c) *The Ouse-Hermitage Zone* is a pronounced sheaf of fractures along the upper course of the Ouse, crossing into the plateau behind Waddamana to the east and reappearing down the middle course of the Ouse nearly to Nelson's Bend, where it disappears beneath the Newer

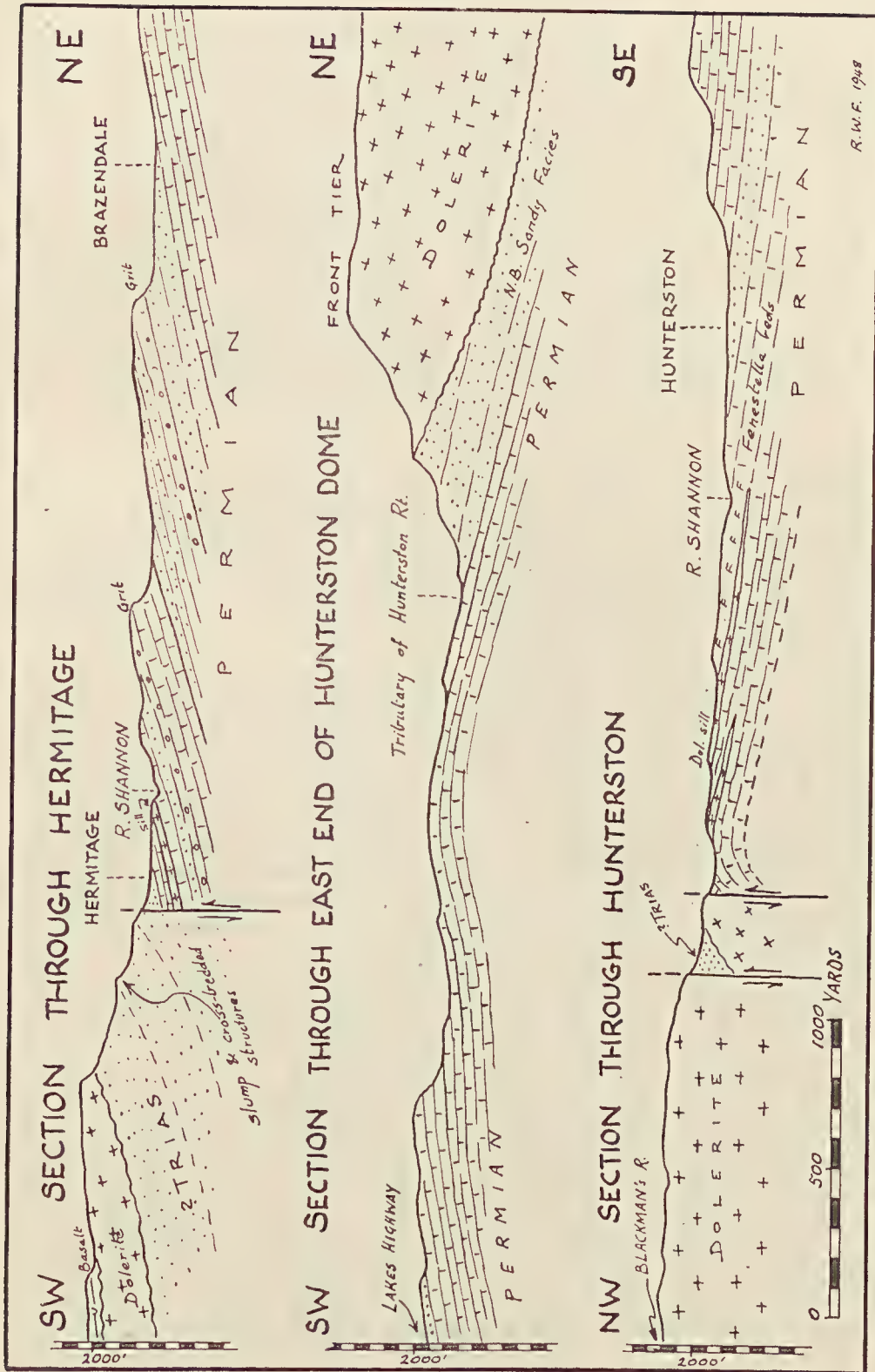


Fig. 5.—Sections through Hermitage and Hunterston.

Basalts in the direction of Hermitage. Between Hermitage, Southern Field and Cluny it seems to reappear in a convergence of various lines from north and north-west. The north-south lines cut off the west side of the Hunterston sedimentary basin and the north-west to south-east lines appear to dive beneath the basalt across the Shannon to reappear along the lower course of Bashan Plains Rivulet. All these faults appear to throw to the south-west. In this way the dolerite hills south of Dungrove (Green Hill, Ware's Sugar Loaf, etc.) are cut off on the south and to the north-west above Nelson's Bend, the west side of the Ouse Valley is generally somewhat lower than the east. In spite of all this physiographic expression, however, the zone is apparently older than the basalts, and probably had its main movements in mid-Tertiary. There is no evidence that it is older than this and none of the individual throws indicates a displacement of more than a few hundred feet. The occurrence of this fault zone along the Ouse Valley has been noted already by Lewis (1933).

4. Folding, Tilting and Regional Warping

As indicated already, there has been no true folding in Central Tasmania since Devonian times, and the general response of the Permo-Trias sediments to subsequent disturbances has been by means of block movements, with vertical displacements, maintaining a horizontal attitude, or with tilting *en bloc* to angles of 10 or at the most 15 degrees. Steeper dips are uncommon and almost invariably associated with fault drag.

An exception is met in the Hunterston-Weasel Plains area, one of the largest outcrops of sediments in Central Tasmania. Here a broad uplifted horst of sediments is surrounded on all sides by faults, throwing down dolerite and the upper parts of the Trias—a Hunterston Fault along the northern margin, a Weasel Plains Fault in the east, a Dungrove Fault in the south-west, and a Hermitage-Southern Field Fault in the west. This elevated block is tilted regionally to the south-west at an average angle of three degrees, but near the faulted margins dips up to 25-30 degrees are recorded. Along the northern and eastern sides there are two gently warped fold structures, giving rise to about one mile of easterly or north-easterly dips. The first is in the eastern part of the Hunterston basin and the second in the basin of Weasel Plains. They are partly separated by a number of small north-west to south-east faults.

These two dome-like structures are anomalous in the general picture of Central Tasmanian tectonics, but hints of intrusive activity are given north of Hunterston and around Weasel Plains by the presence of thin dolerite sills and dykes. It seems quite probable that these domes represent buried laccoliths.

Over the broader area of our map sheet, we may recognise similar areas of regional upwarp or depression, best seen when drawn on a section with an exaggerated vertical scale (x5). Sections drawn to natural scale would emphasise the gentle nature of these broad warps, but it would be difficult to apprehend when reduced to printed size.

Crossing the sheet on this section from east to west we recognise (a) the Hunterston elevated block, (b) the depressed block between the Shannon and the Ouse, (c) the elevated blocks west of the Ouse, rising steadily to Lake Echo, (d) the complex graben or senkungsfeld of Lake Echo, (e) the tilted block west of Lake Echo to Suke's Marsh, and (f) the raised block west of Brown's Marsh.

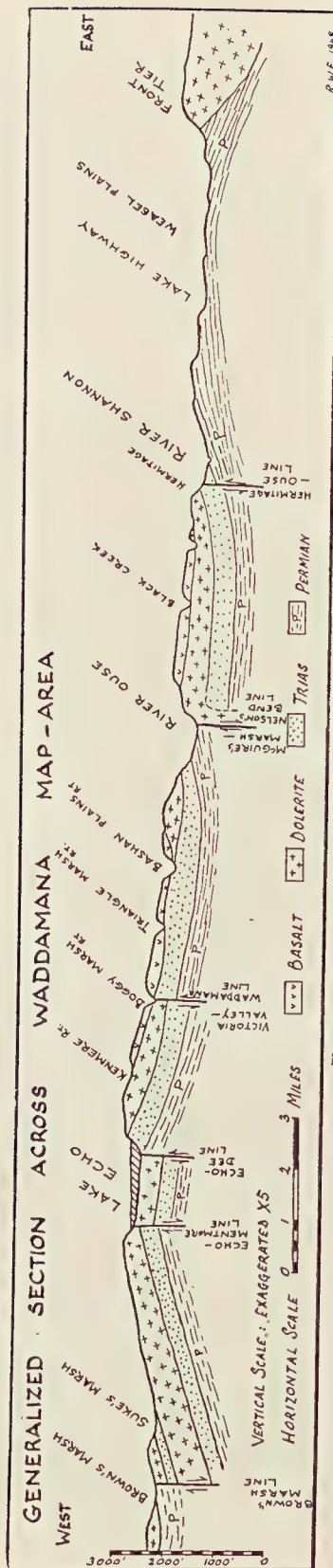


Fig. 6.—Generalised section across Waddamana map area.

Most of these blocks are slightly tilted, some one way and some another. In addition to their east-west tilt factors, most of the blocks are tilted to the south, so that there is a regional uplift towards the north, which averages 1000 feet higher than the southern sides of the blocks. The only exception is the Blue Hill block south of Hermitage and the Range, which has a northerly tilt, down towards the Shannon, rising just off this sheet to 1500 feet above its northern part.

The greatest regional elevations of the north, however, extend to the south in the line of Lake Echo, which stands as a lake-filled graben perched up on the top of one of the upwarps. It has the appearance in miniature of the classical faulted keystone of one of the high rift-valley lakes of Africa. It is the structural opposite from the up-arched horst of Hunterston.

V. GEOMORPHOLOGY

We have, in the Waddamana map sheet, an area where geomorphological considerations have played a major part in unravelling the geological history and structure. Much remains to be done, but some of the broad lines may now be recognised.

In the recognition of lithologic types, the associated land forms may be very helpful. Permian mudstones and sandstones weather in loamy soils of soft, rounded topography, but with cuestas on the hard bands and unmistakable dip-slopes. Very rapid stream dissection in them produces vertical, blocky cliffs (as for example along parts of the Ouse near Waddamana and McGuire's Marsh, and of the Shannon near Hermitage). The Trias sandstones, and rare shales, weather in a similar manner, but whereas the mudstones are generally cleared for farming purposes, the less productive sandstones, and especially the coarse grit bands, are often left untouched or only partially cleared.

The dolerites weather in the valleys into light red bouldery clays, generally too heavily forested for much clearing; on the plateaux most of this soil is missing and an extremely rocky, though still fairly densely forested terrain exists. The topographic forms developed are essentially scarp and plateau lands, though most of the dolerite plateaux are tilted (to a few degrees only) from the true horizontal, and are found in places to pass along indistinct boundaries beneath other rocks (e.g., between Jean Banks and Hermitage, a southerly tilted dolerite plateau disappears beneath basalts along a quite irregular line). Elsewhere the junctions are mainly abrupt, steep scarps controlled by normal faulting.

The second type of igneous rock in the area, the olivine basalt, weathers into black to dark-red bouldery soils, which may be readily distinguished from those of the dolerite as a rule. Topographically it appears in terraced layers with flat plateau tops reflecting the original lava flows. The terrain is bouldery, though not with jagged rocks like the dolerite, but rather with smaller and more rounded boulders. The rock is fairly pervious and is generally drier, supporting less forest than the others, but furnishes a heavy growth of summer grasses and is thus much favoured by pastoralists. This terraced grassland is unmistakable on air photographs.

The topography as seen to-day is generally controlled by dolerite sills which are broken up and tilted to form numerous disconnected high plateaux, but more locally by basalt flows which form terraced plateau lands. Again locally, either as 'windows' in the dolerite sills, or more rarely resting on them or sandwiched between them, there are inliers of Permo-Trias sediments which give rise to rounded topographic forms and valley tracts.

This topography is essentially mature in the high plateau lands, but is suffering progressive rejuvenation from the south. The major streams may be

seen to be steadily eating back headwards, developing deep clefts in the otherwise mature landscape of the north. In the southern part of the area very little is left of this old surface.

We have thus an immature landscape derived from an older mature landscape. Consideration of the drainage pattern, comparative elevations, the dates of the Pleistocene glaciation, the basalt eruptions and of the successive faulting, as seen in the preceding sections, forces the conclusion that we would expect not one peneplain, but traces of repeatedly revived landscapes, not all of which would have time to be reduced to the near-horizontality of peneplains. In simplest terms we might reasonably seek traces of:

- (i) Late Mesozoic—Early Tertiary peneplain,
- (ii) Late Tertiary, pre-basalt landscape,
- (iii) Post-basalt, pre-glacial landscape,
- (iv) Post-glacial landscape, but undissected by post-glacial drainage.

The first we should seek perhaps in the high plateaux, but there is no uniformity in levels here, in spite of claims to the contrary by Johnston, Lewis, and others. Such uniformity would naturally have been broken up by the mid-Tertiary and younger faulting. Relics of older lateritic and bauxitic surfaces are found outside this region (Carey, 1947; and others), but not so far in our map-area. The claim that the tilted surfaces of the plateaux represent the somewhat degraded pre-Miocene peneplain cannot be reconciled with the conclusion that the major faulting was epi-Trias. These tilted dolerite surfaces show a general parallelism in the cross-sections with the bases of the dolerite sills. It might be reasonable to conclude that, since these are infinitely the hardest rock-type in the area, they would be exposed in this manner by the normal processes of differential erosion. Furthermore, in several localities the traces of the chilled upper surface of these sills and even of the baked and contact-metamorphosed roof sediments have been discovered, coinciding with the surface of these tilted blocks. This interpretation is at variance with the one generally accepted so far, but has actually been suggested already by others (e.g., N. F. Gibling, in Nye's discussion, 1928, on Lewis' paper of 1927).

The recognition of stream courses to-day which are superimposed on epi-Trias structures supports Nye's statements (1921, 1928, 1938) that the present system had its inception immediately after the dolerite intrusions. The country was practically reduced to a peneplain (with possibly a few isolated monadnocks) by about mid-Tertiary times. Initially, no doubt, the streams were for the most part structurally controlled; they would naturally be located in subsequent patterns down the tilted slopes and along the major fault zones of the epi-Trias disturbances. As this fault-scarp and dip-slope landscape gradually became reduced in relief, so the structure would progressively lose control of the drainage until, finally, peneplanation was achieved. In this way the streams flowing across the peneplain developed meandering courses, but subsequent regional elevation has caused some to be revived, cutting down and developing a superimposed character on the deeper pre-peneplain structures (e.g., along the Ouse between the Shannon junction and Nelson's Bend).

Lewis believed that all physiographic effects of this epi-Trias faulting would have been effaced by mid-Tertiary times, and, therefore, disagreed with Nye's contention about the great age of the drainage system. There was some truth in both ideas, as we shall see, but to some extent these two argued at cross-purposes. We have already concluded, however, that there was really no justification for assuming that the dolerite intrusion caused enormous regional uplifts, and in this we are agreed with Lewis' opinions (1927, 1945a, etc.) that the region remained

in a state of relatively low relief until after the mid-Tertiary. Later elevations, of course, make the younger drainage developments dominant.

We have seen how regional block-faulting and elevation occurred approximately in mid-Tertiary. Broad upwarps occurred right across the Central Plateau, tilting it to the south-east and south-west and appearing to leave the Midland valley more or less lagging behind (Lewis, 1927, 1933, 1945*a*). Clemes (1924) had already demonstrated three plateau levels, separated by step faults, between Lake St. Clair and Lake Echo, and there are in fact many more attributable to this phase. On this revived landscape an extensive subsequent stream pattern developed, in addition to the older streams which managed to maintain themselves in spite of the structural changes that lead to widespread capture and diversions. The older patterns, of course, became superimposed on the underlying older structures, but the newer streams reflected the new warps and faults. A youthful topography of considerable relief developed. Nye and Blake (1938) suggest that valleys over 1000 feet deep were able to develop before the Newer Basalts appeared.

In our own map-area the pre-basaltic landscape is well illustrated by the course of the basalt flows. The levels of these may be traced down old valley depressions from north-west to south-east. In places the floors of such valleys are found to be more than 300 feet below the dolerite hills on either side. We see that the largest flows in our area converge from Three Mile Marsh and Jean Banks on the Ouse Valley near the Shannon junction. We have already recognised that this section of the river was already in existence (though not as deep, of course, as to-day), and the basalt probably filled its broad meandering valley to a width of about four to six miles. It appears to have been joined here by an ancestral Boggy Marsh Creek on the west and by an ancestral Shannon on the east. These older streams were not coincident with the present, but lay respectively east and west of the present courses. As the basalt flowed down the old valleys it displaced the streams sideways, forming new lateral valleys. The lower part of the Ouse here, being in the centre, may have been blocked altogether, but this could not have been more than temporary, since the main stream has now reasserted itself along very much the same course as before. Higher up, between Waddamana and Bonaparte Creek, it seems that the basalt is thicker and lower about one mile to the west, and therefore the Ouse here may have been displaced to the east. Still higher, between Waddamana and Shannon, there appears to be the old course of the Ouse connecting with the headwaters of the present Shannon. Basalt-filled valleys here indicate displacement to the west, and it seems that the Ouse has captured considerable headwaters south-west of Great Lake, which formerly belonged to the Dee, while the former headwaters of the Ouse are now directed into the River Shannon.

For its part, the Shannon appears to have risen formerly somewhere in the region of Arthur Lakes, to have flowed south through the Lagoon of Islands, Blackman's Rivulet and Black Creek. As we have seen, the Jean Banks basalt flows displaced the lower parts of this course to the east, into the Hunterston region. Meanwhile, a northern tributary from somewhere about St. Patrick's Plains (north-west of Steppes) became displaced to the west by the basalt and captured the headwaters of the old Ouse in the vicinity of Shannon. The course of the Lower Shannon marks, as do other lateral displacements, the junction between the basalts in the west and the non-basalt country in the east; its meanders are thus controlled by structure and relative rock hardness, in notable distinction to the superimposed character of the Lower Ouse.

Similar reconstructions may be visualised for the Dee basalts, where Kenmere Rivulet seems to have been forced to one side and to have beheaded the original valley of Duck Creek, which is now filled with basalt. This basalt area coincides



FIG. 7.—Pre-Basalt stream pattern in Central Tasmania.

broadly with the south-eastern (lower) part of our 'Echo-Kenmere' fault zone which is believed to have developed in mid-Tertiary times. Similar sagging may account for the St. Patrick's Plains and Upper Shannon basalts.

The Hunterston horst region became structurally and topographically high at this (pre-basalt) time, while its western edge formed the eastern limits of the Shannon. It became probably tilted to the west at this time and we now see the tributaries, such as Hunterston Rivulet, superimposed on the structures in the Permian sediments, crossing right over the dome east of Hunterston. In the same way Weasel Plains Creek cuts clean across the southern dome in the opposite direction; it certainly must be older than this mid-Tertiary westerly tilt and is clearly older in character than the post-basalt Lower Shannon. The gradual nature of the uplifts, permitting the maintenance of such superimposed patterns has been emphasised especially by Lewis (1927, etc.).

The basalts flowed down over a landscape of high relief which had been elevated most probably in mid-Tertiary times. The post-basalt landscape saw many displaced streams, paralleling the sides of the old valleys now occupied by volcanic flows, as well as captures and beheading (just as in Victoria, see Keble, 1918; Hills, 1940). In addition, it seems almost inevitable that the basalt extrusions must have been the outcome of further deep-seated block-faulting. Since these faults appear to be old lines of weakness revived, they are often difficult to recognise.

In our region, however, there is considerable geomorphological evidence of post-basalt disruption. Elsewhere, Lewis (1927, 1945a), Edwards (1939) and others, have noted post-basalt faults, and here at Lake Echo there is evidence of movement. There is no question of such lakes being primary depressions in the dolerite, as postulated by Johnston (1894). Structural observations indicate that Lake Echo is not to be explained solely by glacial erosion, as certain other authors have supposed (Montgomery, 1894); situated as it is near the outer limit of glaciation, its great area alone would render such erosion hardly probable. Nor is there any trace of damming by glacial moraines and boulder clays (supposed by Lewis, 1933) or again by basalts (as suggested by Edwards, 1939). The lake basin is interpreted as a complex 'senkungsfeld', in which the latest movement, especially along the middle part of the Dee-Echo-Three Mile Marsh Line, has possibly been post-basalt in age. The basalt is found extending to within half-a-mile of the lake shore on the plateau east of this line, but west of it, a block depressed at least 300 feet below the plateau, there is no trace of basalt. We may perhaps argue that had this broad depression existed before basalt times, it must have been filled by the lava. The fact that it is not, prompts the conclusion that it is a post-basalt feature.

The foundering of Lake Echo took place at the same time as the elevation and tilt of its marginal blocks. Practically no streams enter Lake Echo on the east; on the plateau here they all flow south and south-eastwards. The south-eastwards flowing streams which enter Lake Echo on the north-west follow structural lines, but may represent former tributaries of the Dee. The River Dee itself is superimposed, and partly antecedent too, along the southern extension of this old line of weakness (the Dee-Echo Line) and the streams in the same trend to the north-north-east along Three Mile Marsh may similarly represent its truncated headwaters. In this case the head of the Ouse probably also once flowed through this system into the Dee.

Regional uplift, however, of the whole of Central Tasmania, with local tilting of blocks, must also have occurred in post-basalt times, for, as Lewis has repeatedly emphasised, the large areas of mature topography still preserved at great elevation, would not have survived an unduly long attack by vigorous young streams.

According to Loftus Hills and Carey (1949), the basalt flows follow even thalwegs from over 3000 feet in Central Tasmania right down to below sea-level in the lower Derwent and Tamar. Substantially this concept appears to be correct, but they admit the possibility of post-basaltic movements, and our geomorphological and structural observations (especially at Lake Echo and north of Waddamana) indicate that slight interruptions of such thalwegs are to be expected. At Lake Echo the post-basalt displacement seems to be about 300 feet. Additional indications of faulting during or after the basalt eruptions are scarce in our area, except in the part three to five miles north-north-west of Waddamana, where smaller disturbances are seen.

The next event to exert further modifications to this Central Tasmanian landscape was, it seems, the Pleistocene glaciation, which, to some extent, it seems, overlapped the period of basalt eruptions. The precise age of the basalts is not fixed. Most authors regard the eruptions as continuing over some time. Both Lewis and Edwards accept most of them as Pliocene to early Pleistocene. Lewis (1945*a*) puts the Tarraleah and Waddamana basalts as Miocene, because they were cut 'by late Miocene-early Pliocene uplifts', an hypothesis for which he produced no evidence at all. Prider (1948) has subsequently demonstrated on fossil evidence that the Tarraleah basalt is post-Miocene. Lewis (1927, 1933, 1934) observed that some of the basalts are glaciated in places, as at Tarraleah and Waddamana, though denies that those at Great Lake are. The former he regarded as Miocene and the latter mid-Pleistocene. Edwards, however, considered them as all fairly young in this part of Tasmania; in fact, regarding most of them as young as mid-Pleistocene. Our own observations are that there is some evidence of glaciation on most of our basalt, though the thinness of the ice and the shortness of the period prevented it from very greatly modifying the landscape, apart from removing much of the soil cover, excavating local basins and gouging small valleys.

Most authors agree that even at their maximum extent the ice-sheets could never have covered more than about half of Tasmania (Montgomery, 1894; Lewis, 1945*b*; etc.). Even then it must have been very thin, for no isostatic compensatory elevation of Tasmania has been noticed in the post-glacial period (Lewis, 1927, 1945*b*). On the other hand, the late Pleistocene and Recent eustatic oscillations of sea-level appear to be faithfully recorded on the shore-lines and rivers of Tasmania (Lewis, 1935, 1945*b*; Edwards, 1941). Nevertheless, insufficient accurate levelling work has been done on this subject to be sure that minor isostatic warping has not taken place. Valleys of the main streams are widely terraced, but these features do not reach up as far as our map-areas; except for a most recent terrace which is probably due simply to normal recession of nick-points.

With the semi-mature post-basalt landscape elevated in places to over 2000 feet, there was also a sudden rejuvenation of all streams peripheral to the Central Plateau. Headward erosion took place on a tremendous scale. Rivers like the Ouse, already a composite of parts of the Lower Shannon and Upper Dee, cut down 1000 feet below the basalt level at Waddamana and further north appears to have captured extensive drainage areas.

The Lower Ouse, it seems, is definitely superimposed along an old epi-Trias structural line, over which it had meandered by the time of the break-up of the post-dolerite peneplain. It maintained itself during this mid-Tertiary elevation, only to have its valley blocked by basalt in late-Tertiary. Nevertheless, it appears to have subsequently re-excavated and further entrenched itself along the old line of weakness in post-basalt times.

To the north-east, vigorous erosion of one of the streams of the Western Tiers, according to Lewis (1933), the Lakes River, led to the capture of the

waters of Arthur Lakes and Wood's Lake ('Lake Leacock'), which originally flowed through the Lagoon of Islands and Blackman's Rivulet to the Shannon. As a result of this impoverishment the Shannon has remained for the most part unrevived, in remarkable contrast to its virile neighbour, the Ouse.

The River Dee, long since deprived of its main head-waters by the uplifts about Lake Echo, lost further to the Ouse when river capture took place in the vicinity of Three Mile Marsh, whose clearly southwards directed tributaries are sharply deflected north into the vigorously down-cut Ouse gorge.

Youthful, post-glacial erosion is now advancing steadily up from the southern limits of the plateau. It has not reached the hamlet of the Dee, but very nearly to Victoria Valley in the south-west. The whole of the central part of our area is involved in the rapid down-cutting of the Ouse, and headwards migration of nick-points is to be seen on Boggy Marsh Rivulet, Bashan Plains Rivulet and the Lower Shannon. Not mature section of the Ouse is seen at all in our area, which is in contrast to the Shannon above Hermitage and all its tributaries.

The old post-glacial surfaces are preserved almost intact across the north-eastern, northern and western parts of the map-sheet, except, of course, for the Ouse gorge. Even in the soft sediments of the Hunterston-Cluny area in the south-east there is negligible evidence of revival. Again, it is only in the south within the sphere of the Ouse down-cutting that very active erosion is progressing. Elsewhere we still have semi-mature landscapes, slightly modified by glacial action but much as they were at the close of basalt times.

VI. DISCUSSION

The nature of the Mesozoic-Tertiary diastrophic evolution in Central Tasmania has been discussed before, notably by Lewis (1927, 1945*a*). His main thesis was that deep-seated earth movements of a regional folding character warped the deep crustal basement, resulting in superficial block-faulting dislocation in the relatively thin but brittle surface cover of Permo-Trias sediments and dolerite. With this explanation we may be in general accord, except in his attribution of the gentle basement warps to crustal shortening.

One of his main conclusions (1927, 1945*a*) was that there must have been a period when the country was repeatedly squeezed from the east and south-east against a resistant western buttress or an opposite pressure from the west; this period lasted on and off from Cretaceous to Quaternary. This concept is not altogether in accord with contemporary geotectonic ideas: no large-scale compressive folding or overthrusting is known in this region since the middle-Palaeozoic orogenic phases. The character of the normal block-faulting, associated with warping, fissure volcanics and hypabyssal igneous rocks, quite clearly indicates tensional strains coupled with vertical crustal movements. These points were already made clear by Nye (1921). As Lewis himself often noted, the eruptions and intrusions were not of the violent type; they were not 'squeezed out', however, but rose up on release of pressure along tensional fissures.

We would rather describe the post-Palaeozoic movements as typically epeirogenic, of a type which Stille would call 'undatory' in character; though both broader and more local oscillations are apparent, in dimensions the chief warps would fall into the class of van Bemmelen's 'meso-undations' (1936). By this we mean deep-seated warps of medium size, generally attributed to sub-crustal streaming or convection currents.

An expression of these slow undatory warps, the region has been affected by intense fracturing. In contrast to the slow initial (mainly epeirogenic) movements

during Permian and Trias, these episodes of fracturing (taphrogenic phases*) were, it appears, sharp and relatively short, separated by long periods of quiescence.

Broad radius, *vertical* movements are recognised throughout the Eastern Australian Caledonian-Hercynian orogenic belt from Mesozoic through to late Tertiary times, but it is chiefly in Tasmania that the crust is 'fortified' to some degree of rigidity by the presence of the dolerite sills. Thus the reaction to these vertical movements has been in the form of brittle fractures and tilting of fault blocks, unaccompanied, except quite locally, by the usual asymmetric folds and monoclines so characteristic of the softer, more ductile cover rocks of the mainland. Striking contrast may thus be seen between the clear, sharp-edged, normal faults of the Tasmanian Permo-Trias-dolerite country and the drag-folded faults and monoclines (overlying basement faults) of the South-eastern Queensland Permian and Trias (see Fairbridge, 1948).

In superficial structures resulting from such deep-seated diastrophic forces, much depends therefore on the thickness and character of the overlying rocks: a thick blanket of soft ductile sediments will react very differently indeed to a relatively thin but brittle crust. One has only to refer to the classical works of Stille in the Saxonian belt of North Germany. Nye (1928) made this point when comparing the tectonics of the Midlands with that of the Central Plateau.

Stille (1943) has re-emphasised that the tectonic evolution of any sedimentary belt takes the following sequence: (i) Initial, embryonic undulatory (epeirogenic) warping, with basin and ridge development; (ii) main undulatory (orogenic) folding, with horizontal compression; and (iii) post-orogenic or posthumous undulatory warping. Tasmania experienced stage (ii) in the Devonian already, and since then has been involved in both general and local undulatory (up and down) movements (stage iii). Stille makes a special point that in this post-orogenic stage, the first tendency is towards a general negative undation (downwarp, i.e., in Permo-Triassic-Jurassic times), followed by a general positive movement (upwarp, i.e., in mid and late Tertiary times) irrespective of the various local undations, which are superimposed on the major warps.

The igneous activity normally associated with such epeirogeny and taphrogeny in a maturing continental region (or 'Kraton' of Stille and Kober) is of well-recognised and definite character. First came the Permian downwarping, culminating at the close of Triassic and beginning of Jurassic times with deep-seated tension and block-faulting, accompanied by quiet hypabyssal intrusion of vast dolerite sills and dykes, in places of laccolithic and even lopolithic nature.

After the elapse of nearly two hundred million years in apparently almost complete quiescence, in mid-Tertiary times further block-faulting ensued, only to be revived once more towards the end of the Tertiary (with elevation and the extensive basalt eruptions of Central and South-east Tasmania).

Like the Newer Basalts of Victoria, these essentially olivine basalts of Tasmania are not the type of the Pacific province, but are intermediate to the tholeiites (according to a personal communication from Dr. Edwards). It is thus likewise incorrect to compare them, with Tyrrell (1937), to the 'Flood Basalts' (Geikie's 'Plateau Basalts').

As Edwards (1938) also remarked, in connection with the Victorian examples, it is significant that the region has suffered no major orogeny since the Devonian, and there is thus a notable absence of the geosynclinal and orogenic type of lavas. The region in short is typically epeirogenic, or better kratogenic, to use Kober's

* This is the term Krenkel first used in his early work on the African rifting and was later broadened by Bucher (1933) and Picard (1939).

term, and exhibits the igneous rocks normally associated with an originally semi-rigid but later deeply fractured and stressed crust. This fracturing seems to have reached greater depths by Tertiary times, since the basalts are presumably more 'abyssal' than the tholeiitic dolerites.

In view of the apparently shallower origin of the dolerites, one might also look for some indications of volcanic eruptions which might represent the surface expression of the Mesozoic lopoliths. On the contrary, however, there is an apparent absence of Mesozoic eruptions, except for certain traces of tuff in the late Trias New Town Beds of Hobart (Lewis and Voisey, 1938), but an examination of the thickness of the sedimentary cover for each period may provide the explanation for this fact. The Mesozoic intrusions invaded a thick and more or less resilient mass of sediments ranging up to several thousands of feet in thickness, while the late Tertiary eruptives appeared in precisely the same region, which, far from having had the addition of any further sediments, had actually been exposed to continuous erosion throughout the odd 200 million years of the Jurassic-Cretaceous-Tertiary periods. Some thickening to the crust had been achieved by the intrusion of the dolerite sills, but these were now well fractured along vertical lines.

An additional reason for the absence of large-scaled Mesozoic extrusives may be sought in the nature of the epeirogenic and taphrogenic movements at the time. Just as Edwards had indicated in Victoria, there had also been a long period of down-sagging across the middle of Tasmania between the older, positive or stationary belts; during this period Permian and Trias shallow water marine and lacustrine sediments several thousands of feet thick had accumulated. It is hardly necessary, however, to postulate at the close of the Trias a sudden up-doming of this tectonically negative belt in order to provide space for dolerite lopoliths as did Nye, and others. On the contrary, Lewis (1927) argued that the elevation of Central Tasmania was post-doleritic. It would seem to be more in harmony with the evidence if the marginal blocks continued to rise, and, though the sagging belt between actually stood above sea-level, it continued to react tectonically as a down-warp. Thus, with the increasing load of sediments on the down-sagged belts, the Permian basement rocks were now less able to bend or stretch and started to fracture: rather like a 'green-stick' fracture of a young bone, or like the fracture of a china plate (the Permian) covered by a layer of porridge (the Trias).

In the case of a down-warp, it is the basement which fractures first, whereas in an up-arched structure, compression may occur in the lower horizons, tension in the upper. For this reason I feel inclined to reject the suggestion (of Nye and earlier authors) that the Mesozoic dolerite intrusion accompanied an up-warp. I do not agree entirely with Edwards who wrote (personal communication) that he imagined 'a state akin to the early stage of a geosyncline in miniature', referring to Bucher (1933, p. 478), a subsiding basin in which the lower horizons were fractured in a state of tension, while the soft, upper beds remained ductile. Tasmania during the Mesozoic should not, I feel, be compared with any stage of a geosyncline (see Stille, above): however, we agree entirely about the state of the intruded rocks: faulting in the hardened basement, with ductility in the overlying cover.

A similar situation exists in South Africa, where the Karroo dolerites exhibit close similarities to those of Central Tasmania, not only in their age, style of injection, etc., but also in that they intrude a continental basin sequence, the borders of which appear to have had a *positive* epeirogenic tendency throughout the periods in question. Du Toit (1920) correlated the injection with regional compressive and warping movements, discounting Schwarz' original idea of tension

TECTONIC SKETCH-MAP OF TASMANIA

INDICATING POSITION OF MAP-AREA IN RELATIONSHIP TO
MAJOR FAULT TRENDS

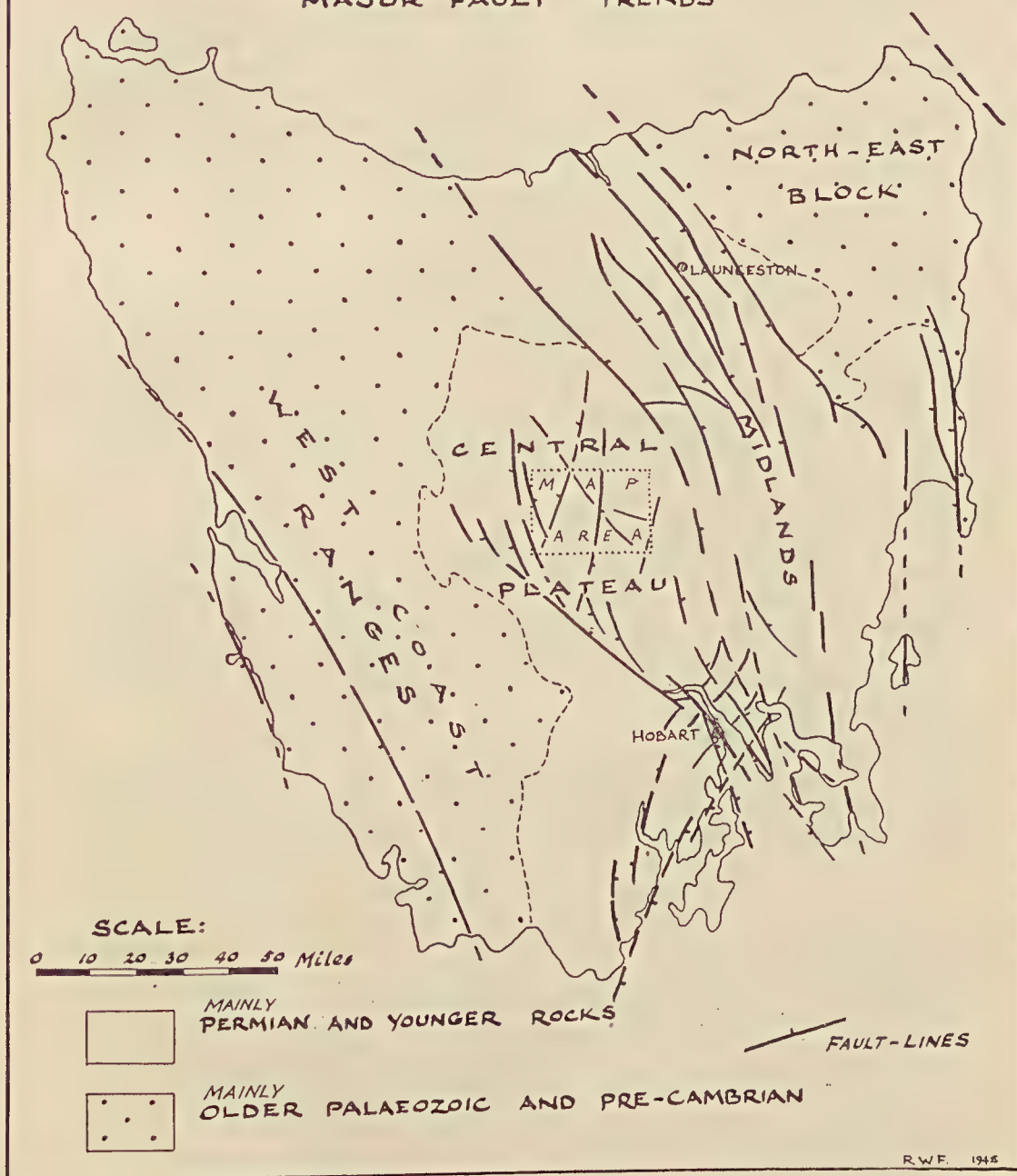


FIG. 8.—Tectonic sketch-map of Tasmania.

at the base of a subsiding trough. The deep-seated vertical fractures, especially in the older consolidated rocks are well-recognised, however, and the spreading out of sills at the junction of any sandstone and thick shale or clay member in the Karroo Beds is commonly found in many areas. Quite recently Jones and Pugh (1948) have confirmed how a wet, clayey horizon is specially effective in blocking the upwards movement of such injections.

It has been sometimes suggested that either, or both, the Mesozoic dolerite and the Tertiary basalt eruptions coincided with the events associated with the disruption of the old Gondwanaland continent, which appears to have existed prior to the Permian. This seems to be correct, for studies elsewhere in the Gondwanaland region also seem to indicate major taphrogenic phases at about the beginning of the Jurassic and towards the end of the Tertiary.

* * * * *

Turning now to review the fracture pattern found in Central Tasmania, we have recognised first and foremost multitudinous sheafs of north-west to south-east lines crossing our map from end to end. They are best developed naturally in the brittle dolerite and tend to be absorbed in the soft sediments. In character they range from true faults and shears down to massive joint swarms. Their net effect is much the same: they appear to have been formed by series of broad north-west to south-east warps.

In addition to these gentle minor undation axes which trend north-west to south-east, there is a second set of major trends essentially of north-south to north-north-east to south-south-west orientation, which are more associated with major displacement than with warps. It is along these lines that major vertical dolerite intrusions are noted.

The complex, intersecting pattern of faults, shears and joints of the Central Plateau of Tasmania naturally calls for explanation beyond the circumscribed limits of our particular map-area. I have therefore sketched in the dominant patterns of faulting in the younger rocks of Tasmania on a tectonic map, in an endeavour to perceive the broader pattern. For clarity the map depicts only the younger tectonic patterns of the country, and omits the pre-Cambrian and Palaeozoic fault-fold trends.

It will be seen immediately that the younger rocks of Tasmania are crossed by a major series of north-west to south-east to north-north-west to south-south-east faults in a complex graben form which extends from Hobart through the Midlands to Launceston and the north coast. Between this shatter zone and the west coast there are many parallel lines. These major trends are intersected, however, by another series of faults which range from north-south to north-north-east to south-south-west; these are mainly subsidiary to the others but in eastern and south-eastern Tasmania they come to play a major role. In this manner the whole of Tasmania itself is triangular in shape and many of the plateaux and basins reflect this structural form.

It seems likely that, along these north to north-north-east trends, the faults break not only the superficial cover rocks, but also the semi-rigid, early Palaeozoic basement (Hills, 1922). The north-west to south-east trends, in Central Tasmania, on the other hand, we have seen are more in the character of fractured warps, and, although some are severely faulted, their habit is more flexural than that of the north-north-east lines. They parallel the older, pre-Cambrian fold-trends (see Twelvetees, 1905; Waller, 1905; Carey, 1947). The resultant segmentation of the contrary into tilted and warped, diamond-shaped fault-blocks is thus of considerable complexity.

This pattern is not restricted to Tasmania, however. Lewis (1936) suggested that the major north-west to south-east lines of the Launceston-Midlands Graben, bounded on the east by the Ben Lomond Line and on the west by the Western Tiers Line, actually seem to cut clean across Bass Strait, to reappear in Victoria, again with intersecting north-east to south-west lines, as the boundaries of the Melbourne sunkland. Lewis showed how this rift conditions the presence of the Bassian Trough in the middle of the Strait, an area of subsidence completely enclosed by the 45 fathom contour and almost inexplicable by any but tectonic means.

The age of this depression has been also discussed by Nye and Blake (1938), who considered that the latest features were probably about early Miocene, though its original lines might go back to the Jurassic. One cannot agree with such an ancient date for the 'latest' features. Faulting is known to extend well into the Pleistocene (faulted basalts) and the basin depression of Bass Strait would have become blocked with sediment if it were anything but a very youthful feature.

VII. SUMMARY

An area of the Central Plateau of Tasmania covering 391 square miles has now been mapped geologically for the first time, mainly by use of air photographs coupled with two months' field work. While the work can only be regarded as a preliminary reconnaissance, the broad results indicate that the geology consists of only one or two massive dolerite sills intrusive into the flat-lying Permo-Trias sediments, locally covered by Tertiary basalt flows. Block faulting took place during the dolerite intrusion and again in the Tertiary, before, during and after the basalt eruptions.

It is believed that the region suffered successive down-warpings in Permo-Triassic times culminating in the intrusion, through basement tension fractures, of dolerite in giant sills and even lopolithic structures. The relief was reduced during Mesozoic-early Tertiary times from one of moderate elevation to that of a peneplain, to be faulted and considerably elevated in several phases in mid and late Tertiary, even Pleistocene, during which basalts erupted and flowed down over an already well-dissected and youthful landscape. Streams are mainly superimposed in character.

The present landscape of tilted plateaux separated by fault-scarps is largely the result of differential weathering exposing the surfaces of the major sills, coupled with deep stream dissection owing to the considerable regional elevation (2000-3000 feet). Glaciation during the Pleistocene is believed to have carved out shallow depressions now occupied by boulder clay and marsh deposits, but otherwise little trace of it remains.

REFERENCES

- VAN BEMMELLEN, R. W., 1936.—The undation theory of the development of the Earth's crust. *Rept. Int. Geol. Congr.* (XVI Washington, 1933), Vol. 2, pp. 965-982.
- BUCHER, W. H., 1933.—The Deformation of the Earth's crust. Princeton, 518 pp.
- CAREY, S. W., 1947.—Geology of the Launceston District. *Rec. Queen Victoria Mus.*, Launceston (for 1946), Vol. 2, pp. 31-46.
- CLEMES, W. H., 1924.—Notes on a geological reconnaissance of the Lake St. Clair district. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1924), p. 89.
- DAVID, T. W. E., 1931.—Geological Map of the Commonwealth of Australia.
- EDWARDS, A. B., 1938.—The Tertiary volcanic rocks of Central Victoria. *Quart. Journ. Geol. Soc.*, Vol. 94, pp. 243-320.
- , 1939.—The age and physiographical relationships of some Cainozoic basalts in Central and Eastern Tasmania. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1938), pp. 175-199.

- _____, 1941.—The North-West Coast of Tasmania. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Vic.*, Vol. 53 (N.S.), pp. 233-267.
- _____, 1942.—Differentiation of the dolerites of Tasmania. *Journ. of Geol.*, Vol. 50, pp. 451-480, 579-610.
- FAIRBRIDGE, R. W., 1946.—Submarine slumping and location of oil bodies. *Bull. Amer. Assoc. Petr. Geol.*, Vol. 30, pp. 84-92.
- _____, 1947.—Possible causes of intraformational disturbances in the Carboniferous varve rocks of Australia. *Journ. & Proc. Roy. Soc. N.S.W.*, Vol. 81, pp. 99-121.
- _____, 1948.—Gravitational tectonics at Shorncliffe, S.-E. Queensland. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Qld.*, Vol. 59, pp. 179-201.
- GLAESSNER, M. F., RAGGATT, H. G., TEICHERT, C., and THOMAS, D. E., 1948.—Stratigraphical Nomenclature in Australia. *Aust. Journ. Sci.*, Vol. 11 (1948-49), pp. 7-9.
- HILLS, E. S., 1940.—The Physiography of Victoria. Melbourne (Whitcombe & Tombs), 292 pp.
- HILLS, C. LOFTUS, and others, 1922.—The Coal Resources of Tasmania. *Dept. of Mines, Tas., Min. Res.*, No. 7.
- _____, and CAREY, S. W., 1949.—Geology and Mineral Industry. *Aust. N.Z. Assoc. Adv. Sci.*, Handbook for Tasmania, pp. 21-44.
- JOHNSTON, R. M., 1888.—Systematic Account of the Geology of Tasmania. Hobart (Govt. Printer).
- _____, 1894.—Notes on the geology of Lake St. Clair and its immediate neighbourhood, together with observations regarding the probable origin of our numerous Tasmanian lakes and tarns. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1893), pp. 135-146.
- _____, 1921.—The R. M. Johnston Memorial Volume. Hobart (Govt. Printer), 470 pp.
- JONES, O. T., and PUGH, W. J., 1948.—The form and distribution of dolerite masses in the Builth-Llandrindod inlier, Radnorshire. *Quart. Journ. Geol. Soc.*, Vol. 104, pp. 71-98.
- JUKES, J. B., 1847.—Notes on the Palaeozoic Formations of New South Wales and Van Diemen's Land. *Quart. Journ. Geol. Soc.*, Vol. 3, pp. 241-249.
- KEBLE, R. A., 1918.—The significance of lava residuals in the development of Westernport and Port Phillip drainage systems. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Vic.*, Vol. 31 (N.S.), pp. 129-165.
- LEGGE, W. V., 1905.—A physiographic account of the Great Lake, Tasmania. *Rept. Aust. Assoc. Adv. Sci.* (Dunedin, 1904), Vol. 10, pp. 348-375.
- LEWIS, A. N., 1926.—Report on observations of glaciation in Tasmania since 1920. *Rept. Aust. Assoc. Adv. Sci.* (Adelaide, 1924), Vol. 17, pp. 85-90.
- _____, 1927.—Note on the isostatic background of Tasmanian physiography. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1926), pp. 1-24.
- _____, 1933.—Note on the origin of the Great Lake and other lakes of the Central Plateau. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1932), pp. 15-38.
- _____, 1934.—A Correlation of the Tasmanian Pleistocene Glacial Epochs and Deposits. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1933), pp. 67-76.
- _____, 1935.—Correlation of the Tasmanian Pleistocene raised beaches and river terraces in unglaciated areas. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1934), pp. 75-86.
- _____, 1936.—Our pulsating world . . . *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1935), pp. 1-21.
- _____, and VOISEY, A. H., 1938.—A record of volcanic activity in Tasmania during Triassic times. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1937), pp. 31-39.
- _____, 1945a.—Time Scales in the Development of Tasmanian Physiography. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1944), pp. 19-39.
- _____, 1945b.—Pleistocene glaciation in Tasmania. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1944), pp. 41-56.
- _____, 1946.—The Geology of the Hobart District. Hobart (Memorial Vol.), 216 pp.
- MONTGOMERY, A., 1894.—Glacial action in Tasmania. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1893), pp. 159-169.
- NYE, P. B., 1921.—The underground water resources of the Midlands. *Dept. of Mines, Tas., Und. Wat. Sup. Pap.*, No. 1.
- _____, 1922.—The underground water resources of the Jericho-Richmond-Bridgewater Area. *Dept. of Mines, Tas., Und. Wat. Sup. Pap.*, No. 2.
- _____, 1924.—The underground water resources of the Richmond-Bridgewater-Sandford district. *Dept. of Mines, Tas., Und. Wat. Sup. Pap.*, No. 3.
- _____, and others, 1928.—Tasmanian Physiography (Discussion on Lewis, 1927). *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1927), pp. 66-77.
- _____, and BLAKE, F., 1938.—The Geology and Mineral Deposits of Tasmania. *Geol. Surv. Tas.*, Bull. No. 44, 113 pp.
- PICARD, L., 1939.—Outline of the Tectonics of the Earth. *Bull. Geol. Dept., Hebrew Univ., Jerusalem*, Vol. 2, Nos. 3-4.
- PRIDER, R. T., 1948.—The geology of the country around Tarraleah, Tasmania. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1948), pp. 127-150.
- STEPHENS, T., 1898.—Land routes for exploration of the Western country. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1897), pp. 189-196.

- STILLE, H., 1943.—Malaiischer Archipel und Alpen. *Abh. Preuss. Akad. Wiss.* (Berlin), Math.-nat. Kl. (for 1943), No. 1, pp. 1-16.
- STRZELECKI, P. E. DE, 1845.—Physical description of New South Wales and Van Diemen's Land . . . London, 8 vo.
- TASMANIA, 1947.—Regional Planning Atlas. State Economic Planning Authority, Hobart. 2nd ed.
- DU TOIT, A. L., 1920.—The Karroo dolerites of South Africa, a study in hypabyssal injection. *Trans. Roy. Soc. S. Afr.*, Vol. 23, pp. 1-42.
- , 1926.—The geology of South Africa. Edinburgh (Oliver & Boyd).
- TWELVETREES, W. H., 1905.—Note on some axial lines of eruption in Tasmania. *Rept. Aust. Assoc. Adv. Sci.* (Dunedin, 1904), Vol. 10, pp. 210-212.
- TYRRELL, G. W., 1937.—Flood basalts and fissure eruption. *Bull. Volc.* (Napoli), Ser. 2, Vol. 1, pp. 89-111.
- VOISEY, A. H., 1938.—The Upper Palaeozoic rocks of Tasmania. *Proc. Linn. Soc. N.S.W.*, Vol. 43, pp. 309-333.
- WALKOM, A. B., 1925-26.—Notes on some Tasmanian Mesozoic plants, Pts. 1 and 2. *Pap. Roy. Soc. Tas.* (1924-25), pp. 73-89, etc.
- WALLER, G. A., 1905.—Notes on the geological structure of the West Coast of Tasmania. *Rept. Aust. Assoc. Adv. Sci.* (Dunedin, 1904), Vol. 10, pp. 622-630.

PLATE V

- FIG. 1.—Well-bedded, creamy white Permian mudstones, dipping 4° S.S.E., seen on W. bank of R. Ouse, 250 yds. W. of Waddamana Power Station. (Neg. RWF 3855.)
- FIG. 2.—Platey cleavage in dolerite on important N.W.-S.E. shear zone, seen N.W. of Waddamana Power House on floor of R. Ouse. (Neg. RWF 3843.)
- FIG. 3.—Slumped structure in current bedded sandstone (probably Trias), $\frac{1}{2}$ mile N.N.E. of Hermitage. Direction of currents and slumps is from N.W. to S.E. (Neg. RWF 3825.)
- FIG. 4.—Cross-bedding in quartzose sandstones (probably Trias), immediately below dolerite sill 2 miles S.W. of Dungrove Homestead. (Neg. RWF 3888.)

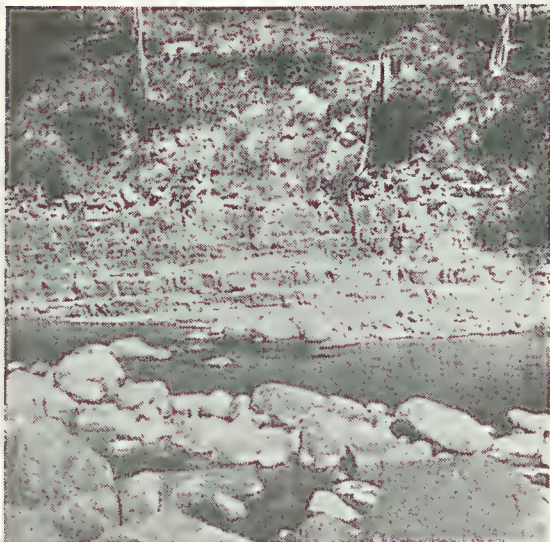


FIG. 1



FIG. 2



FIG. 3



FIG. 4

PLATE VI

- FIG. 1.—Looking E. across Shannon Valley from 1 mile N. of Hermitage. Alternating Permian mudstones and gritty sandstones dip few degrees S.W. (Neg. RWF 3823.)
- FIG. 2.—Looking S. from same spot as fig. 1. Permian mudstones and sandstones dip gently S.W., to be overlain in distance by probable Trias and in turn by overlying hilltops of dolerite (Dungrove Green Hill on left, Ware's Sugar Loaf on right). (Neg. RWF 3822.)
- FIG. 3.—Nelson's Bend on R. Ouse, 8 miles S. of Waddamana. W.-dipping Permian mudstone and sandstone, overlain by probable Trias sandstone. (Neg. RWF 3854.)
- FIG. 4.—Nelson's Bend, looking E., showing horizontal probable Trias sandstones, overlain by basalt, separated by faulting from Permian mudstone in bed of river and dolerite on right-hand side. (Neg. RWF 3852.)



FIG. 1

FIG. 2



FIG. 3



FIG. 4

PLATE VII

- FIG. 1.—Looking from the hills W. of Waddamana across the Ouse Valley towards Fisher's Sugar Loaf, typical monadnock near faulted margin of dolerite country. (Neg. RWF 2826.)
- FIG. 2.—From same spot as fig. 1, but looking S. down Ouse Valley and showing typical horizontal basalt lava flows resting on Permian mudstones (in the valley). (Neg. RWF 2827.)
- FIG. 3.—Lake Echo, N.E. corner. From shore of probable Trias sandstone, looking N.W., past Bull Island to N. shore and dolerite plateau. (Neg. RWF 3861.)
- FIG. 4.—Horizontally laminated dolerite, probably chilled top of 1000 foot thick sill, coinciding with flat top of plateau, 1 mile E. of Steppes. (Neg. RWF 3815.)



FIG. 1



FIG. 2



FIG. 3



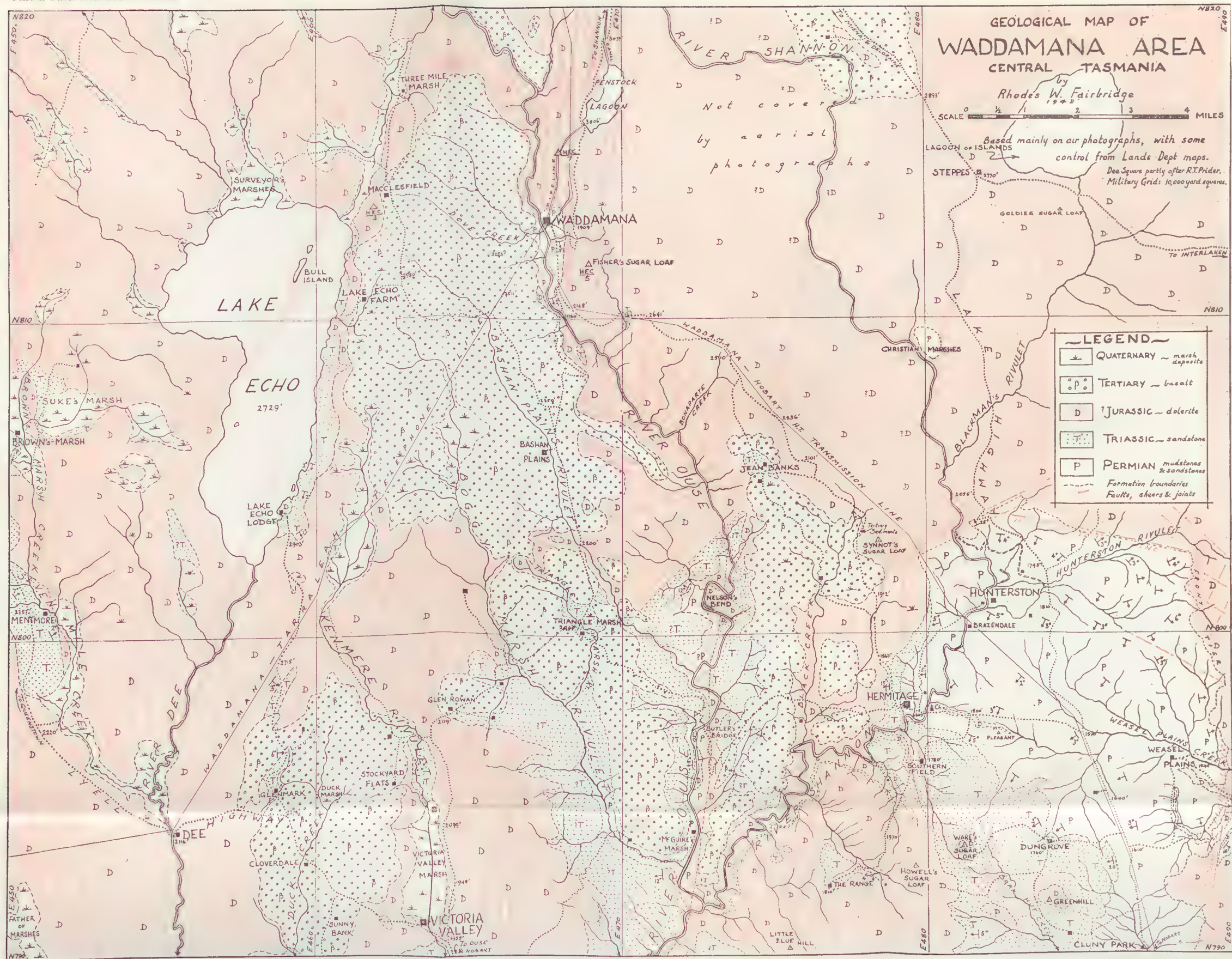
FIG. 4

PLATE VIII

Oblique air photo, looking N.E. over Waddamana, showing pipe-line from Penstock Lagoon, down to Power House in Ouse Valley. Note almost flat dolerite plateau cut off by faulting and deeply incised along the line of the Ouse.



PLATE IX
Geological Map of Waddamana Area.



The Royal Society of Tasmania

1948

Patron:

His Majesty the King.

President:

His Excellency Admiral Sir Hugh Binney, K.C.B., D.S.O.

Vice-Presidents:

W. H. Hudspeth, B.A., 1948.

W. L. Crowther, D.S.O., M.B., F.R.A.C.P., 1948, 1949.

Council:

A. L. Meston, M.A., 1948, 1949, 1950.

J. W. C. Wyett, B.Sc., A.A.C.I., 1948, 1949, 1950.

S. W. Carey, D.Sc., 1948, 1949.

L. W. Miller, M.Agr.Sc., F.R.E.S., 1948, 1949.

V. V. Hickman, B.A., D.Sc., 1948.

J. L. Somerville, M.Sc., F.A.C.I., 1948.

Hon. Secretary and Librarian:

Joseph Pearson, D.Sc. (Manchester), D.Sc. (Liverpool), F.R.S.E., F.L.S.

Assistant Hon. Secretary:

D. Colbron Pearse, M.C.

Hon. Treasurer:

S. Angel.

Hon. Auditor:

H. J. Exley, M.A.

Hon. Editor of the Papers and Proceedings:

D. Colbron Pearse.

Standing Committee:

W. L. Crowther, S. W. Carey, W. H. Hudspeth, J. Pearson.

Annual Report, 1948

The Annual Meeting was held in the Society's Room, Tasmanian Museum and Art Gallery, on the 2nd March, 1948.

His Excellency the Governor, President of the Society, presided.

The following Office-bearers were elected:—

Vice-President: Under the Society's Rules, Mr. L. Cerutti retired from the office of Vice-President, and Dr. W. L. Crowther was appointed in his place (retiring 1950).

Hon. Secretary and Librarian: Dr. Joseph Pearson.

Hon. Assistant Secretary: Mr. D. Colbron Pearse.

Hon. Treasurer: Mr. S. Angel.

Hon. Auditor: Mr. H. J. Exley.

Council: There were two vacancies on the Council caused by the retirement (under Rule 21) of Dr. Crowther and Mr. Wyett. Dr. Crowther, having served for three years, was not eligible for re-election as a member of Council, but was eligible for election as Vice-President (Rule 21). Mr. Wyett, having served only one year, was eligible for re-election (Rule 21).

Only one nomination had been received, that of Mr. J. W. C. Wyett. Accordingly the President declared him duly elected.

The President then called for nominations to fill the second vacancy on the Council. Dr. Crowther proposed and Mr. Hudspeth seconded the name of Mr. A. L. Meston. As no further nominations were received the President declared Mr. Meston duly elected a member of the Council.

The names of the full Council for 1948 are given on the previous page.

The Council made the following appointments at its first meeting:—

Assistant Librarian: Miss H. Taylor.

Standing Committee: Dr. W. L. Crowther, Professor S. W. Carey, Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, and the Hon. Secretary.

The Council elected the following two members of the Society to serve on the Board of Trustees of the Tasmanian Museum and Botanical Gardens:—Mr. W. H. Hudspeth and Mr. F. H. Foster.

Meetings

Nine ordinary meetings and one special meeting were held during the year. Included in these was the R. M. Johnston Memorial Lecture, on Friday, April 30th, delivered by Professor Griffiths Taylor, Professor of Geography at the University of Toronto. The lecture was entitled 'Racial Migrants and Relations'. Professor Taylor was presented with the R. M. Johnston Medal. At this meeting opportunity was taken to bid farewell to the Hon. Secretary, Dr. Joseph Pearson, who had been granted leave of absence to visit England and the United States of America. A *conversazione* followed the lecture. About 300 persons attended.

The Royal Society of New South Wales asked the Council of the Royal Society of Tasmania to present the Walter Burfitt Prize and Medal for 1947 to Dr. J. C. Jaeger for outstanding contributions in the field of mathematics. This presentation was made to Dr. Jaeger at the meeting held on 1st June.

In addition to the lectures given at the ordinary meetings scientific papers were submitted for publication and have been printed in the present volume.

Library

During the year 1352 volumes were added to the Library in addition to a number of reports and pamphlets from British and foreign institutions and learned societies. The number of institutions on the Exchange List for the year was 297, and new exchanges were arranged with the following institutions:—Netherlands East Indies, Batavia; Museum für Volkerkunds, Leipzig Dom Bosco, Goinania, Brazil; Münchner Entomologische Gesellschaft, München; Italian Institute of Idrobiology; Mathematical Department of the Polytechnic Institute of Iassy.

The Library now consists of 23,518 volumes.

Cataloguing the Library

During the year Miss M. Griffiths, B.A., Cataloguer from the University of Tasmania's Library, has continued her work of cataloguing the Society's Library and classifying it under the Dewey System of Classification. As mentioned in the last report, this arrangement was made with the University on condition that in return for Miss Griffith's services, a duplicate author catalogue should be made available to the University Library.

Membership

The Society consists of the following members:—

Honorary members	2
Corresponding members	3
Ordinary members—	
Class A	204
Class B	132
	— 336
Life members	24
Associate members	31
	— 396
	—

During the year 23 names were removed from the List of Members owing to deaths, resignations, etc., and 88 new members were elected, eight of these being life members, 68 ordinary members, and 12 associate members. (Also two ordinary members became life members.)

Deaths

The Council regrets having to record the deaths of the following members during the year:—Miss D. H. Nicholas (1933), Mr. E. A. Elms (1942), Mr. L. A. Evans (1918), Mr. N. D. Ferguson (1944), Mr. G. Fitzpatrick (1943), Mr. E. L. Hall (1924), Mr. W. C. Kent (1946), Mr. W. R. Rolph (1921), Mr. P. B. C. Walch (1918).

Alteration of Rules

A special meeting of the Society was called on 5th August, 1948, in order to consider an alteration to Rule 43 regarding the fee for life membership. Previous to this the fee had been £15, but at this meeting this rule was amended by deleting the word £15 in one line and inserting the word £20 in lieu thereof.

Assistant Librarian

In December Miss Helen Taylor, who had held office as Assistant Librarian for some years, resigned to be married. The Council would like to record its appreciation of Miss Taylor's services in the Library. Her place has been taken by Miss Barbara Veale.

Financial Position of the Society

In the report for 1947 the Council stated that representations had been made to the Hon. Premier for financial assistance to the Society and a conference on this matter had been held when the Society's needs were made known. This resulted in an increase from £200 to £300 in the Government grant for printing that year. When the Budget for 1948 was prepared a deputation waited on the Chief Secretary and asked that financial assistance to the amount of £750 be given to the funds of the Society so that there would be provision for adequate salaries and for the purchase of books, etc. The Society's request was referred to the Premier and Cabinet and on 27th May a letter was received from the Chief Secretary in which he stated it had been decided that financial assistance for clerical staff could not be approved, but the amount already on the Estimates for publications would be increased by £200 per annum, making a total of £400.

Memorial Funds

In conformity with the agreement made concerning the A. N. Lewis Memorial Fund a further £50 was withdrawn from the Hobart Savings Bank and invested in the Commonwealth Loan. This makes a total of £250 invested. Books to the value of £6 19s. 10d. were purchased for the Library from this fund.

Also books were purchased for the Library from the various funds as follows:—

	£	s.	d.
R. M. Johnston	9	10	0
Morton Allport Memorial	7	14	0
Clive Lord Memorial	7	4	11
A. H. Clarke Bequest	6	19	0
Milligan Bequest	6	2	2

Knopwood Diaries

The Council wishes to record its appreciation of the Government's action in presenting to the Society a complete set of enlarged photographic prints of microfilms of Knopwood Diaries in the possession of the Mitchell Library. These photographic prints have been bound and placed in the Library.

Collection and Preservation of Historical Records

The Society is sponsoring a move which has been made to trace and record valuable historical documents (old diaries, etc.) which may be in private hands, with a view to their preservation. The scheme will embrace the whole State. Also it has urged the appointment by the Government of an archivist.

Gifts to the Society

The following is a list of gifts to the Society during the year, in addition to the numerous exchanges received from British and foreign institutions:—

Scott Polar Research Institute, Cambridge, England: The following documents which formed part of the Lefroy Bequest:—

- I. Address to Sir John Franklin on his appointment to the governorship of Van Diemen's Land, signed by citizens of Westbury and Launceston.

Address to Sir John Franklin on his resignation of the governorship of Van Diemen's Land, signed by the landholders, magistrates, and others of the northern part of the island.

- II. Resolution of sympathy with Lady Franklin by the Legislative Council of Van Diemen's Land, 1852.

Address to Lady Franklin from the Tasmanian subscribers to her private search expedition, 1852, with an analysis of the list and details of the sums contributed.

- III. Resolution in the Tasmanian House of Assembly of thanks to Lady Franklin for her gift of Franklin Island, 1868.

A Short History of Latrobe—Centenary of Christchurch, Cullenswood—A Short History of Cressy and Bishopsbourne—Longford, past and present—White Hills and Franklin Village, by K. R. von Stieglitz, presented by the author.

'The Platypus' by Charles Barrett, presented by Miss A. G. Adams.

The Tasman map of 1644, Historical note and description of MS., presented by the Mitchell Library, N.S.W.

THE ROYAL SOCIETY OF TASMANIA.

Statement of Receipts and Payments for Year ended 31st December, 1948.

RECEIPTS.			PAYMENTS.		
	£	s. d.		£	s. d.
Subscriptions—			Balance from last Account		
A—191	286	10 0	Salaries	13	0 7
B—133	139	12 6	Group insurance	188	18 1
Associate (23)	11	10 0	Light and power	4	8 0
Plus Exchange	0	0 6	Library	55	19 4
Life (10)	150	0 0	Stationery	74	3 2
Sale of publications, rents, etc.	587	13 0	Miscellaneous	28	7 1
Friends of Tasmanian Museum—Half cost of	56	1 2	Postage—Papers and Proceedings	38	18 7
R. M. Johnston lecture and conversation	11	14 10	Northern Branch	15	19 3
Transferred from Life Membership Fund to			Insurance	32	12 6
forward to Northern Branch	15	0 0	Petty cash (in hand 1s. 1d.)	9	12 7
Transferred from funds for books, 1947	44	9 11	Refund to Life Membership Fund, Mackness	45	13 1
A. N. Lewis Memorial Fund—Interest, etc.	7	12 11	brochure, etc.	41	14 6
			Refund—A. N. Lewis Fund—Interest, etc.	7	12 11
			Transferred to Life Membership Fund	150	0 0
			Balance to next Account	706	19 8
				15	12 2
				£722	11 10

H. J. EXLEY, Hon. Auditor.
28th February, 1949.

WILFRID H. HUDSPETH, Vice-President.
D. COLBRON PEARSE, Hon. Secretary.

ROYAL SOCIETY FUNDS.

Statement of Balances for Year ended 31st December, 1948.

	£	s.	d.
Reserve Account	0	14	8
Life Membership Fees	292	10	3
Clive Lord Memorial Fund (£200)	10	3	4
R. M. Johnston Memorial (£232)	7	19	8
Morton Allport Memorial Fund (£200)	7	16	0
A. H. Clarke Bequest (£100)	1	14	10
Milligan Bequest (£150)	5	8	4
A. N. Lewis Memorial Fund (Total Fund, £232 17s. 11d.—Invest. Commonwealth Loan, £200)	18	4	5

Abstract of Proceedings

2ND MARCH, 1948

Annual Meeting

The Annual Meeting was held in the Society's Room, Tasmanian Museum. His Excellency the Governor, President of the Society, presided.

The following Office-bearers were elected for 1948:—Dr. W. L. Crowther was elected Vice-President for two years in the place of Mr. L. Cerutti, who retired under Rule 12; Honorary Secretary, Dr. J. Pearson; Assistant Honorary Secretary, Mr. D. C. Pearse; Honorary Treasurer, Mr. S. Angel; Honorary Auditor, Mr. H. J. Exley.

The following were elected members of the Council for 1948:—Mr. A. L. Meston was elected for three years in the place of Dr. W. L. Crowther, who retired under Rule 21. Mr. J. W. C. Wyett, who had been appointed for one year in 1947, in the place of Professor H. D. Gordon, was elected for a further term of three years.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Ordinary Members: Miss E. Bailey, Miss M. G. Rouse, Miss C. Shepherd, Archdeacon J. R. Norman, Mr. R. Pocock, Dr. W. W. Wilson.

Dr. D. G. Osborne, Lecturer in Geology, University of Sydney, delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'New Zealand (Scenic, Geologic, and Seismologic)'.

6TH APRIL, 1948

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, Vice-President, presided.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Ordinary Members: Dr. Ida Birchall, Dr. M. C. Devenish-Mears, Mrs. M. Gallia, Mrs. M. J. Swan, Mr. K. B. Allen, Mr. I. G. Anderson, Professor H. N. Barber, Mr. F. D. Cumbræ-Stewart, Hon. R. K. Green, Mr. E. E. Guiler, Mr. R. M. Gunn, Dr. C. Loftus Hills, Mr. E. D. B. Innes, Dr. T. James, Mr. A. C. Richmond, Mr. A. Roche, Mr. C. J. S. Somerset, Mr. H. Turner, Mr. D. D. von Bibra.

Professor H. N. Barber delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'Genes and Plasmagenes'.

Archdeacon Atkinson presented specimens of *Hedycarya augustifolia*. A. Cunn. 'Djelwuck' or 'Austral-mulberry'. Family *Monimiaceae*, collected in Lancaster's bush and on the banks of Narracoopa Creek, towards the eastern shore of King Island, in October, 1947. He requested that these specimens should be kept at the Herbarium.

30TH APRIL, 1948

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. His Excellency the Governor, President of the Society, presided.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Ordinary Members: Mr. A. M. D. Hewer, Mr. A. C. Thompson, Dr. D. H. Waterworth; Associate Members: Mr. J. E. S. Alwyn, Mr. J. R. Wall.

The President presented the R. M. Johnston Memorial Medal to Professor T. Griffith Taylor, Professor of Geography at the University of Toronto.

Professor Taylor then delivered the R. M. Johnston Memorial Lecture entitled 'Racial Migrations and Relations', illustrated by lantern slides, of which the following is an abstract:—

We are met here to-night to keep green the memory of a very distinguished Tasmanian citizen, R. M. Johnston, who died in 1918 after devoting many years to research in several fields of science. He contributed numerous memoirs on biological and geological problems to the records of the Royal Society, and when I was engaged in pioneer investigations in the geography of this State, his large volume on the 'Geology of Tasmania' was a very important source for my study. I also feel it a special honour to follow the man to whom I owe my early training in geology and geography—Sir Edgeworth David—who gave the first Johnston Memorial Lecture in 1923.

Ever since 1918 I have been more interested in the Patterns of Human Distribution than in any other branch of scientific research. The lengthy monograph by the American biologist, W. D. Matthew, published in New York in 1915, entitled 'Climate and Evolution' deals with the evolution of the mammals. Matthew laid great stress on *Charting the data of distribution* as a key to evolution, and I felt that primitive man who lived long before civilization began, must necessarily obey the same laws of distribution.

I plotted on world-maps all the anthropometric data which was available. Among these data were those dealing with head indices, facial indices, hair waves, nasal shape, skin colour, stature, etc. etc. They gave patterns very like Matthew's zones for the even-toed and odd-toed mammals with which biologists are familiar.

These data were plotted on maps with a special projection, much like that used by Matthew; so that the essential *World Pattern* was emphasised. It consists of a central area or core in southern Asia from which project three 'World Peninsulas'. These are Eur-Africa, Austral-Asia, and the Americas. The nine major environments of the world (from Ice-cap to Selva) are repeated three times on each side of the equator; and this Pattern is an important feature in the theory of Race Migration and Classification which I have been developing for thirty years. (This aspect of Racial geography is fully developed in my book 'Environment Race and Migration', Toronto, Chicago & Oxford University Presses, 1937.)

Let us now consider the pattern in the racial distribution which has developed in the migrations in the Pacific regions of the World. To understand these, we must consider in some detail the very varied environments, including topography and climate. These have changed notably during the time of the Racial migrations—which I believe to have taken several hundred thousand years. We must ignore the complications due to the mixing of peoples in the last 450 years due to large scale emigration across the seas; and consider the zones of races which characterised the world in pre-Columbian times.

Why and how did early man migrate? I do not think he moved willingly from his native haunts. Primitive tribes have quite definite rules as to trespass, as any student of our aboriginals knows. He knew nothing of the outer world and was in general fearful of the unknown. The major factor which drove him away from his favourite haunts was Climatic Change; just as the major migrations of our time have been due to famines, droughts and other features of Climatic change. In the several hundred thousand years involved in our study there occurred the world wide phenomena known as the Riss Ice Age, the warmer Interglacial, and the various fluctuating climates of the Warm Ice Age and of Post-placial Periods. Very convincing evidence has been demonstrated in Scandinavia as to climatic changes there in the last 20,000 years; and as to their effects on the zones of forests and on the movements of early man. (These are discussed fully in my book 'Environment and Nation', Toronto, Chicago & Oxford Universities, 1936.) We may be sure that similar correlations of climate and man will be revealed when detailed research in other lands has been carried out.

A second important element in race migration is the topography. Almost all movements on a large scale seem to have followed well defined 'Corridors'. In our corner of the Old World one may instance the Khyber Pass into North-West India. Down this poured a dozen invasions of the rich plains of Hindustan during historic times. It was equally the gateway in prehistoric times. Into China the broad-head Alpines poured by way of the Jade Gate—which was the north-east corner of the high plateau of Tibet. Every incursion into Australia made use of those 'Stepping stones' which we call the East Indian Islands. During the coldest phases of the Ice Ages we are reasonably sure that a sub-continent (known as Sunda Land) occupied this area. It was drowned by the thaw-waters when the ice-caps melted. (See Fig. 5 in my book 'Our Evolving Civilization an Introduction of Geo-pacifics', Toronto & Oxford Universities, 1947.)

To understand the pattern which develops after a number of migrations along such a Corridor; I use the analogy of a Playing-Field. We may assume it lies on a main road, but a mile or two out of the city. When a notable game is imminent we may picture school-boys moving out in the morning along the main road (the 'Corridor') and for an hour or so roaming over the vast level attractive site of the playing field. About noon the proletariat stream into the field, and the boys climb into trees around the margins of the field, while the proletariat—after moving freely around, occupy the poorest seats. Next come the capitalists by the same route and occupy the best seats. Finally come the cream of our civilization, the cricketers, etc. (who incidentally receive far more attention from the public than do Einstein or Rutherford). They occupy the most attractive area in the region—the central level plain.

If we study any very extensive human migrations we find much this distribution whether it be into India, into Australia or into America. The least attractive areas—such as the deserts or mountains, or dense jungles ultimately receive the earliest and feeblest tribes. They have been 'pushed to the wall' in the struggle for existence. Here inevitably occur the pygmy Negritos, as I have demonstrated in many maps and diagrams. The process as regards the other races is best shown in America—where the migrations were mostly within the last 20,000 years. Here the 'corridor' was clearly along the eastern margin of the Young Mountains; and here accordingly we still find the recently arrived broad-head tribes of Amerinds. In my opinion they are the last-developed and biologically the most advanced. They include the Shoshone, Navaho Aztec, Inca and Araucarian groups.

Pushed out into inhospitable corners we find the narrow-headed tribes notably the Eskimo in Greenland. In unattractive forests in Bolivia some Qurungua tribes are, in my opinion, actually kin to the Australian aboriginal. I think they represent a preglacial migration from Asia long before any Amerinds reached America.

In our own part of the world we find Negritos in the rugged mountains of New Guinea—whereas more advanced Oceanic Negroes occupy the plains of the Fly River. It is likely that the marginal island of Tasmania preserved Negritos until 1875 just as they occur in the mountains of the marginal Philippine Islands to-day. The Australian aboriginal entered Australia probably during the Warm Glacial period, when Sunda Land gave him a rather ready access into the southern Continent.

The Polynesian migrations are rather complex. They occurred relatively late in history, after boat-building was well understood by folk living in the south-east of Asia. I have seen many culture-patterns in south China which recall those of Polynesia. They were marginal peoples, kin to the broad-heads in Western Europe, and were displaced by the still later broad-heads whom we call Chinese.

They sailed far into the Pacific where the earlier Oceanic Negroes had never ventured. It is probable that these later migrations consisted of a broad-head aristocracy, together with many narrow-headed serfs. Hence we do not find pure racial stocks in any islands. However, Easter Island folk have less of the broad-head element than tribes in Hawaii or North Island (N.Z.); while the broadest heads are found in Samoa and Tahiti—which are usually accepted as the most cultured groups of the Polynesians.

In conclusion it has long been clear to me that a general appreciation of the biological migrations and patterns which I have just tried to demonstrate would do much to diminish race-prejudice. All over the world intolerance is due to ignorance. The world is shrinking so rapidly that all races are becoming our neighbours. We must learn to live in harmony with other peoples and races; and cultural geography (especially when directed towards world-peace as in the newer branch called Geo-pacifics) seems to me to be the most practical method of propaganda towards that much-to-be-desired objective.

1ST JUNE, 1948

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, Vice-President, presided.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Ordinary Members: Miss D. J. R. Bell, Mr. M. H. F. Bennett, Mr. H. V. Biggins, Mr. F. F. Fairthorne, Jnr., Mr. E. F. Fricke, Mr. W. J. Gellie, Mr. G. T. H. Harris, Mr. M. H. Hurburgh, Mr. C. C. Lawrence, Dr. W. K. McIntyre, Mr. E. J. Martyn, Mr. E. J. Pitchford, Sir Gordon Rolph, Mr. M. H. Rosenberg, Mr. E. T. Smith, Mr. G. H. Stancombe, Mr. F. L. von Stieglitz, Dr. L. Hardy Wilson; Associate Members: Miss N. J. Purcell, Mr. C. H. Johnson, Mr. A. G. Lyne, Mr. A. J. McIntosh, Mr. G. B. Sharman.

On behalf of the Royal Society of New South Wales, the Chairman presented to Dr. J. C. Jaeger the Walter Burfitt Prize and Medal for 1947. This award was made for Dr. Jaeger's outstanding work in mathematics during the previous three years.

Professor C. D. Hardie delivered a lecture entitled 'Science and Perception'.

6TH JULY, 1948

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, Vice-President, presided.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Ordinary Members: Mrs. E. Glasson, Mrs. M. C. F. McAfee, Mr. M. B. Amos, Mr. J. Bradley, Mr. F. F. Fairthorne, Mr. T. G. Johnston, Mr. H. Vernon Jones, Dr. R. A. Lewis, Dr. H. Spencer Roberts, Mr. R. H. Youl, Dr. Robert Wall; Associate Members: Mr. W. M. Crosby, Mr. R. H. Cruickshank, Mr. N. P. Tilley, Mr. K. R. Walker.

Mr. K. M. Dallas delivered a lecture entitled 'The Political Economy of Van Diemen's Land', of which the following is an abstract:—

The outstanding fact about Van Diemen's Land before 1850 is the high level of prosperity enjoyed by comparison with other Australian colonies. The evidence of capital expansion, of trade, of wage-levels and living standards especially before the depression of the Forties is in striking contrast to its comparative poverty in later periods. The high productivity was certainly due in part to the continued investment of capital by new immigrants and some absentee investors but this too was partly due to the Imperial subsidy on account of the convict establishment. This provided a constant demand for produce, at fixed prices with no risk of bad debts and the primary income from the 'invisible export' of food, materials and services generated secondary incomes of large volume in a community where unused resources were plentiful.

Its importance in the growth of the colony came from its size, from its certainty and because it supplied ample volume of liquid wealth, which was the basis of internal finance and exchange, and was also a reserve of international money, as good as gold, and available for the finance of import trade with Mauritius and Canton for which there was no acceptable export commodity.

Moreover its fluctuations were opposite to those of other exports, declining in good years when numbers of convicts assigned were large and increasing in lean years when they were returned to Government gangs. Thus it provided a stabilising influence unique in colonial development. The absence of bank failures during the Forties depression is due to this stability. Melville estimates that in one year of that period it was as high as £400,000.

The continued attempts at economy by the Imperial Government were largely unsuccessful and the increasing convict population meant that the subvention increased right to the last years of transportation and the decline in prosperity in the Sixties is largely due to the end of this golden rain.

Transportation thus evolved into a subsidised emigration as the pastoral and agricultural industries were stimulated by the demand for wool in England and for food here. The convict working class were better off than the wage-earners of contemporary Britain, and the regulation of rations, clothes and wages was the true origin of Australian wage regulation. The earnings of all were determined by prescribed conditions for assigned service. The convicts outside the penal settlements were 90 per cent of the total and were an average sample of the skills then known in Britain. The opportunities to achieve economic independence, even while legally bound, were many and make the term 'Slavery', as used by Forsyth in 'Governor Arthur's Convict System' merely rhetorical, especially when compared with 'free' employment as it then was in Britain.

The history of the convict period needs to be rewritten in the light of modern economic theory on the relations between Investment and National Income.

5TH AUGUST, 1948

A special meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, Vice-President, presided.

Rule 43 was amended to read as follows:—

A sum of £20 may be paid at any time by a Member as a Life Membership Fee, provided however that any Ordinary Member wishing to become a Life

Member shall first pay any arrears which may be due in respect of his subscription as an Ordinary Member. Such Life Membership Fees shall be invested or at the discretion of the Council be expended only upon permanent improvement of the rooms occupied by or upon the general equipment of the Society. Each Life Member shall receive a copy of the Papers and Proceedings for the year in which his subscription as a Life Member is paid and for each subsequent year without further payment.

5TH AUGUST, 1948

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. W. H. Hudspeth, Vice-President, presided.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Ordinary Members: Miss H. Bayly, Miss D. M. Harvey, Mr. A. D. MacKinnon; Associate Member: Mr. I. F. Reynolds.

Mr. T. D. Raphael delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'Bees—The Production of Pedigree Stock'.

Though the advances made by the animal geneticist and stock breeder are well known, the public does not generally recognise the intensive work and immense strides that have been made in the breeding of bees.

The main objects of workers in this field has been to produce a strain of heavy honey producers, vigorous and adaptable, free from a pronounced tendency to swarm and in temperament docile and easy to handle. Many varieties of bees have been utilised by the apiarist, including Italians, Carniolans, Caucasian, Ligurian and Cyprian in addition to the common Black and many less known types.

The inmates of a normal hive in summer consist of one queen, the mother of the whole colony, several hundred drones and 50,000 or more workers. The queen is the only fully developed female and can lay up to 3000 eggs in a day, the drones are the males and the workers are undeveloped females. It therefore follows that one has only to change the queen to change the whole hive, and queen breeding is, in consequence, one of the most important branches of specialised apiculture.

When a few queens only are required, this can be simply done by dequeening the selected colony when the bees take immediate steps to replace the loss. But as the breeder requires possibly hundreds in a season, other methods must be devised. Commercial practices now generally centre round a three stage process, a separate hive (or section of a composite hive) for starting the queen cells, a hive for feeding the developing larvae and a third from which the young queens are mated. Special conditions have to be created within the hives to stimulate the bees to their individual tasks and considerable skill and ingenuity is required. As bees mate in the air, control of the male parentage is difficult to obtain and a considerable percentage of mismating sometimes occurs. The choice of isolated districts or islands where bees of other strains do not occur, the breeding of large numbers of drones of the desired type and the controlling and concentration of drone flight, are the methods by which crossing has been reduced to a minimum, or even sometimes eliminated. However, during the last two years a technique for the artificial insemination of queen bees has been evolved in America and following further experimental work it is hoped in the near future to perfect a practical and commercial system which will perhaps revolutionise present methods and result in great advances in the genetical side. Anaesthetisation of the young queens with carbon dioxide as a means of inducing early egg production is another advance in this field.

Mr. Angel exhibited a painted aboriginal skull from Northern Australia. This was one of a number of skulls bequeathed to the Museum by the late Howard Amos. The skull was originally given to the Reverend Gillmore of Swansea, while he was a padre in the Army stationed in Arnheim Land in Northern Australia, by one of the natives there. Only two mainland tribes have this type of decoration and it shows the New Guinea influence.

7TH SEPTEMBER, 1948

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Dr. W. L. Crowther, Vice-President, presided.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Ordinary Members: Mr. A. K. Caris, Mr. W. P. Holman, Mr. W. C. Morris; Associate Member: Miss E. M. Smith.

The Chairman announced that the following documents, which formed part of the Lefroy Bequest, had been presented to the Society by the Scott Polar Research Institute, England:—

1. Address to Sir John Franklin on his appointment to the governorship of Van Diemen's Land, signed by citizens of Westbury and Launceston.
2. Address to Sir John Franklin on his resignation of the governorship of Van Diemen's Land, signed by the landholders, magistrates and others of the northern part of the island.
3. Resolution of sympathy with Lady Franklin by the Legislative Council of Van Diemen's Land, 1852.
4. Address to Lady Franklin from the Tasmanian subscribers to her private search expedition, 1852, with an analysis of the list and details of the sums contributed.
5. Resolution in the Tasmanian House of Assembly of thanks to Lady Franklin for her gift of Franklin Island, 1868.

Dr. C. Loftus Hills delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'Geological Research in Tasmania', of which the following is an abstract:—

The subject is approached from the angle of 'adaptation to environment'. It is pointed out that the rise of all civilisations has been the acceptance of a challenge of a new environment and adaptation to it. How has Tasmania answered the challenge of her land surface and climate? The question is answered by a review of the progress of hydro-electric development, mineral exploration and geological research.

The existing close co-ordination of engineering and geological science by the Hydro-Electric Commission is a credit to all concerned.

The history of mineral exploration in Western Tasmania is traced from Philosopher Smith's discovery of Mt. Bischoff in 1871, Sprent's discovery of tin at Heemskirk in 1876, Long and Monk's discovery of silver-lead at Zeehan in 1882, Lynch, McDonough and Karlsen's finding of Mt. Lyell in 1881 and 1883, to McDonald's discovery of Rosebery in 1893, and that of Tullah by Innes in 1897. These discoveries were the foundation of the winning of £100,000,000 of new wealth up to the present time.

It is then shown how the work of successive geologists in Tasmania was related to these pioneering discoveries and the developments that ensued from them. The development of geological knowledge is traced from Charles Gould in the 1860's, R. M. Johnston in the 1870's and 1880's, Montgomery in 1890's, Waller in the early 1900's, Twelvetrees 1900-1920, Ward 1907-1912, Loftus-Hills 1913-1923, Arndel Lewis 1923-1943, to the present application of modern techniques with which are actively concerned Professor Carey, Dr. Loftus-Hills, the Hydro-Electric Commission, the Mines Department, North and South Broken Hill under Dr. Garretty and the Electrolytic Zinc Company under Mr. Graham Hall. A tribute is paid to the valuable contributions of amateur workers of the past; in addition to R. M. Johnston and Arndel Lewis, the names of Thomas Stephens, E. G. Hogg, Trety Noetling, W. F. Petterd and R. C. Stecht are mentioned.

It is emphasised that geological research in Tasmania is really only yet in its early stages. Work done up to the present is incomplete. Existing geological maps are subject to continuous review, adjustment and elaboration. This is illustrated by lantern slide of the evolution of the geologic structure map of Zeehan from 1903 to 1948 and the economic significance of this is pointed out.

It is shown that the present geological research in relation to mineral exploration is based on an expectation of results in from 2-5 years. But effective and efficient adaptation to environment demands a start on a plan of long-dated mineral exploration, designed to locate completely hidden ore deposits of which there is no sign at the surface, which must form the basis of mining operations 25-50 years from now. This will demand geologic research of the highest order in structure and plutonics, steadily applied throughout the years ahead of us.

8TH OCTOBER, 1948

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Mr. W. L. Crowther, Vice-President, presiding.

The following were elected members of the Society:—Ordinary Members: Mr. E. L. Bailey, Mr. A. R. Ellis, Mr. Wm. Hart, Rev. J. Jones, Mr. E. R. Pretymann, Mr. A. F. Ryan; Associate Member: Mr. M. M. Hodgson.

Mr. W. H. Hudspeth delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'The Rise and Fall of Chas. Swanston of the Derwent Bank'. (See p. 1.) The original Deed of Settlement of the Derwent Bank, which had been lent by Mrs. C. N. Atkins, was exhibited.

2ND NOVEMBER, 1948

A meeting was held in the Society's Room. Dr. W. L. Crowther, Vice-President, presiding. The following were elected members of the Society:—Miss M. E. Chapman, Mrs. I. Conybeare Hervey, Mrs. A. K. Wettenhall.

The following papers which had been submitted for publication in the Society's Journal were tabled, and it was agreed to submit them to the Standing Committee:—

Tasmanian Littoral Spiders, by V. V. Hickman. (See page 31.)

Some Tasmanian Opiliones, by V. V. Hickman.

Neonatal Length as a Linear Function of Adult Length in Cetacea, by E. O. G. Scott. (See page 75.)

Tasman's Landing Places, by A. L. Meston.

New Species of Astacilla from Tasmanian Waters, by E. R. Guiler. (See page 45.)

The Vegetation of Mt. Field National Park, by Miss W. Curtis.

A Revised Description of *Dolichotera macalpini* Nicoll 1914, by P. W. Crowcroft.

Mr. G. K. Meldrum delivered an illustrated lecture entitled 'Clover and Infertility in Sheep'.

Northern Branch

Annual Report for 1948

Membership of the Branch increased considerably during the year, from four life members and thirty-five ordinary members to nine life members and fifty-seven ordinary members.

During the year reports were prepared by the Secretary on biological survey and historical research. Proposals for the latter were discussed at a conference in Launceston under the chairmanship of Sir John Morris, the parent Society being represented by Dr. W. L. Crowther. Sir John Morris agreed to go into the possibility of the appointment of an Archivist and later advised that the Government had agreed to make the appointment.

Meetings

27TH FEBRUARY, 1948

A meeting was held at the Museum, Mr. F. Smithies presiding.

Dr. T. Levring, Director of the Marine Botanical Institute, Goteborg, and Assistant Professor, University of Goteberg, lectured on 'Submarine daylight and its effect upon seaweed life'. He described his own researches which are principally concerned with the problem of how seaweeds can make use of sunlight for their growth even though it is diminished in quality as a result of differential absorption and scattering in its passage through the sea-water, and pointed out that the changes which take place in the composition of the light are of great importance in the life of seaweeds, the occurrence of seaweeds of different pigment classes at different depths being associated with this.

21ST APRIL, 1948

Annual General Meeting.—The Annual General Meeting was held at the Museum, Mr. F. Smithies presiding.

The Annual Report and Balance-sheet for 1947 were adopted.

The following Office-bearers were elected:—

Chairman: Mr. J. E. Heritage, in place of Mr. F. Smithies, who retired under the rules.

Vice-Chairman: Mr. Gilbert McKinlay, in place of Mr. J. E. Heritage, who had been elected Chairman.

Members of Council: Hon. R. K. Green, F. Smithies (1948 only), and K. R. von Stieglitz in place of T. Doe and J. R. Forward, who retired under the rules and Gilbert McKinlay, who had been elected Vice-Chairman.

Hon. Secretary-Treasurer: Mr. N. J. B. Plomley.

A paper was given by Mr. K. R. von Stieglitz, entitled 'Some Notes on Paterson's Plains, its Pioneers and Early Life'.

In introducing the Speaker, the Chairman, Mr. Heritage, pointed out the importance of historical work being undertaken in Tasmania without further delay and said the Branch would encourage such work in the future, together with research in Tasmanian geology, biology and ethnology. He said that the work of the amateur was complementary to that of the professional and in Tasmania must provide the nucleus to carry on studies in each branch.

Mr. von Stieglitz dealt with the early history of Paterson's Plains, as St. Leonards with the area including Breadalbane, Franklin Village, Elphin and part of the White Hills was known originally. His reconstruction of the lives of the pioneers showed the difficulties with which they had to contend. Agriculture was at first unsuccessful because local conditions presented many problems and no trained farm workers were available. Crude huts were the only dwellings until as late as about 1825 because skilled building labour was not sent to the Colony,

but retained in New South Wales. Bushranging was rife, an outcome of the convict system and the economic difficulties of the young colony. He related many anecdotes concerning the pioneers and incidents of the times.

17TH JUNE, 1948

A public meeting was held in the Public Library Hall, Mr. J. E. Heritage presiding.

Mr. A. W. Knight, Hydro-Electric Commissioner, gave a lecture on 'Hydro-Electric Developments in Tasmania'. Mr. Knight outlined the general principles and requirements for the development of hydro-electric power, and discussed the utilisation of such power sources in Tasmania. He showed how additional sources would be incorporated into the existing system. In commenting on power requirements in the Launceston area, he said that a power scheme with an installed capacity of 60,000 horsepower would be constructed on the South Esk at Trevallyn to provide for the needs of local industry.

The lecture was illustrated by a series of diagrams and photographs and at its conclusion a colour film was shown of the hydro-electric undertakings.

21ST JULY, 1948

A meeting was held at the Museum, Mr. J. E. Heritage presiding.

Mrs. G. E. Perrin lectured on 'Plant Life in Tasmanian Seas'. The first reviewed the work of botanists who had contributed to a knowledge of the Tasmanian marine algae from the time of the early expeditions to the present, among them La Billardiére, Robert Brown, Ronald Gunn, William Harvey, Mrs. Louisa Meredith and A. H. S. Lucas.

Mrs. Perrin said that of more than 1500 species of seaweeds recorded from the Australian coasts, about 500 species occur in Tasmanian waters, where three species of marine phanerogams are also found. She said that seaweeds grow in the waters of the continental shelf (to a depth of 25 fathoms) and form a very important constituent of the life there; certain reef building forms also occur, thus contributing to the structure of the places in which they live.

Mrs. Perrin then went on to describe methods of collecting and preserving seaweeds. She said that the plants could be collected either in storm wrack, or by wading at low tide, or dredging; to preserve them, they should be washed in fresh water, floated on to a paper mount and pressed and dried with frequent changes of the drying cloths and papers.

The lecturer finally described some of the commercial uses of seaweeds: as fertiliser, and in the manufacture of agar, alginates and many other products. She said that the quantities of marine algae available in certain areas are enormous; growth at Tamar Heads, for example had been noted as much as 18 feet in three months.

At supper after the meeting, fruit jellies were served prepared with agar from *Gracilaria lemaneiformis* collected at Tamar Heads.

10TH SEPTEMBER, 1948

A meeting was held at the Museum, Mr. F. Smithies presiding.

Mr. Maurice Blackburn, M.Sc., Research Officer, Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, gave an illustrated lecture on 'Sea fisheries research, with special reference to Australia'. Describing the methods of fisheries research, Mr. Blackburn said that population studies, based on sampling, were the most

important means of studying the fish crop. Australia was producing now about 70,000,000 lb. of fish per annum, but this represented only about two per cent of the world fish catch.

The lecturer said there were three ways of increasing fish production:—

- (1) Initiating *new* fisheries;
- (2) Taking the *optimum* catch, i.e., the most that can be taken year after year without depleting the population; and
- (3) Increasing the productivity of the environment.

Mr. Blackburn then went on to deal with each of these aspects of fisheries research in detail. He pointed out that such work was only beginning in Australia and much remained to be done. Of the three lines of attack, the first two were of use in sea fisheries; it was not generally practicable to increase the productivity of the marine environment although this may be successful in enclosed waters.

22ND NOVEMBER, 1948

A meeting was held in the Museum, Sir John Morris presided.

Dr. W. E. L. H. Crowther gave an illustrated talk entitled 'Some account of early Tasmanian Sealing and Whaling'. Dr. Crowther first commented upon the biology of whales and showed how the habit of the Southern Right Whale in visiting the coast of Van Diemen's Land for calving permitted the establishment of bay whaling. He said that the fishery was so profitable that in the late thirties and early forties of last century there were as many as forty leases for bay whaling around our coasts, and as many as fifty ships on the register at Hobart.

After a time the whales avoided the shores close to original whaling camps and had to be hunted further afield. Tasmanian ships were among those visiting the New Zealand grounds (vide McNab) and were responsible for the first settlements on the southern coast of Victoria.

Whale oil and whalebone were both important articles of commerce, the oil being used in the manufacture of candles. With the discovery of kerosene the industry declined rapidly, so that Tasmanian whaling had virtually ceased by the seventies.

Dr. Crowther concluded his lecture with a series of slides showing the old whaling ships and scenes of Tasmanian whaling.

Office-bearers, 1948

Chairman: J. E. Heritage, C.M.G., LL.B. (1948, 1949).

Vice-Chairman: Gilbert McKinlay (1948, 1949).

Council: C. Craig, M.B., M.S., F.R.A.C.S. (1948); Hon. R. K. Green, M.L.C., LL.B. (1948, 1949); F. Smithies, O.B.E. (1948); K. R. von Stieglitz (1948, 1949).

Hon. Secretary-Treasurer: N. J. B. Plomley, M.Sc. (1949).

NORTHERN BRANCH.

Statement of Accounts at 28th February, 1949.

RECEIPTS.			EXPENDITURE.		
	£	s. d.		£	s. d.
Balance at 1st March, 1948	27	17 4	Balance at 28th February, 1949—	35	11 6
Subscriptions	66	8 0	Cash in bank	3	0 0
Bank interest	0	4 7	Petty cash in hand		
			Expenditure—		
			Lectures	10	16 0
			Library	9	16 6
			Postage and stationery	8	19 3
			Petty cash	1	6 8
			Miscellaneous	25	0 0
				55	18 5
	£94	9 11		£94	9 11

506
18122

S1533

